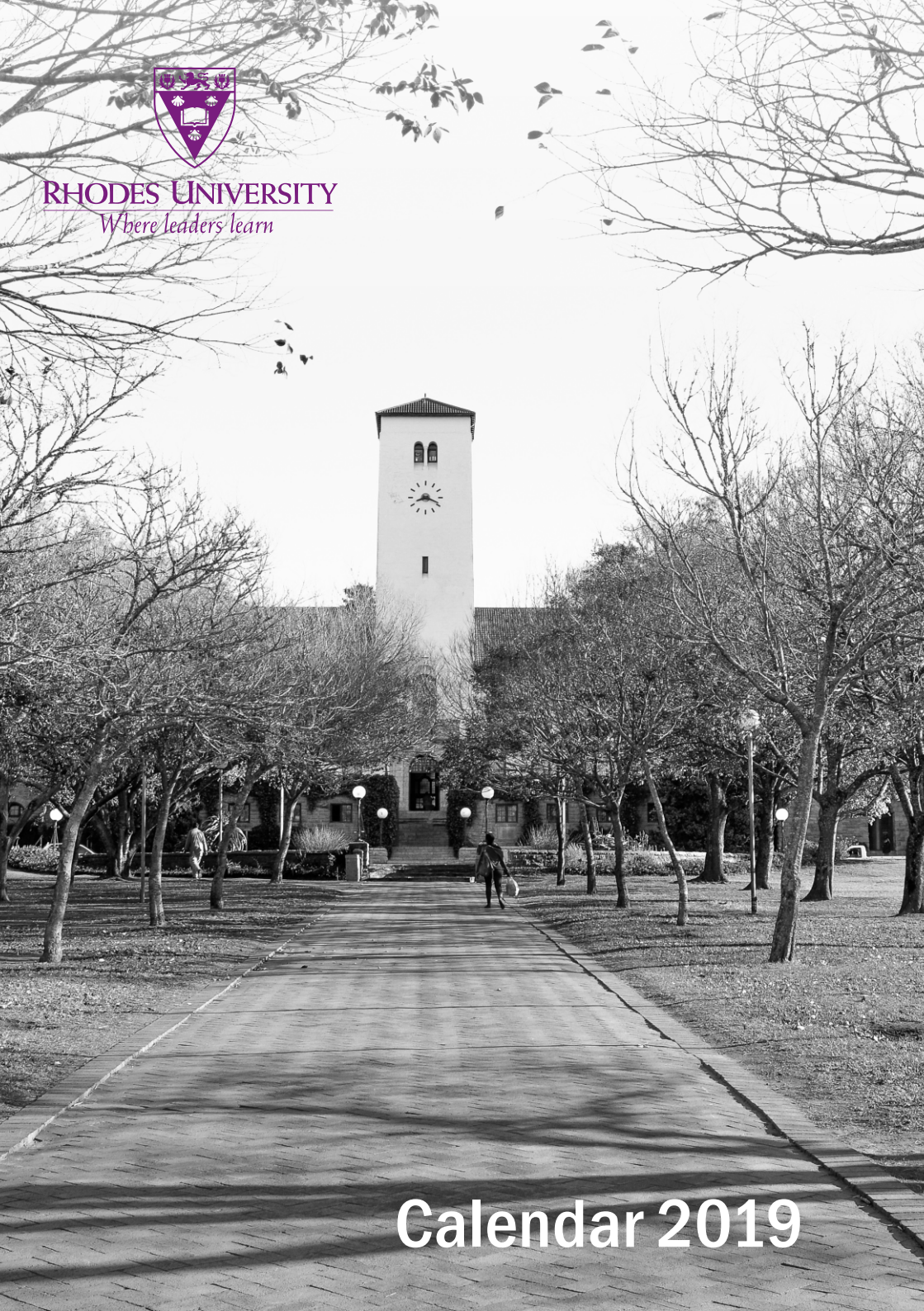




RHODES UNIVERSITY
Where leaders learn



Calendar 2019





RHODES UNIVERSITY

Grahamstown • 6140 • South Africa

VISION AND MISSION STATEMENT

Vision

Rhodes University's vision is to be an outstanding internationally-respected academic institution which proudly affirms its African identity and which is committed to democratic ideals, academic freedom, rigorous scholarship, sound moral values and social responsibility.

Mission

In pursuit of its vision, the University will strive to produce outstanding graduates who are innovative, analytical, articulate, balanced and adaptable, with a life-long love of learning; and to strive, through teaching, research and community service, to contribute to the advancement of international scholarship and the development of the Eastern Cape and Southern Africa.

Accordingly, the University undertakes

- to develop shared values that embrace basic human and civil rights;
- to acknowledge and be sensitive to the problems created by the legacy of apartheid, to reject all forms of unfair discrimination and to ensure that appropriate corrective measures are employed to redress past imbalances;
- to create a research-based teaching and learning environment that will encourage students to reach their full potential, that is supportive of students from disadvantaged backgrounds, and that will produce critical, capable and skilled graduates who can adapt to changing environments;
- to promote excellence and innovation in teaching and learning by providing staff and students with access to relevant academic development programmes;
- to provide an attractive, safe and well-equipped environment that is conducive to good scholarship and collegiality;
- to provide a safe and nurturing student support system as well as a diverse array of residential, sporting, cultural and leadership opportunities that will foster the all-round development of our students, the university and the region as a whole;
- to attract and retain staff of the highest calibre and to provide development programmes for staff at all levels;
- to promote excellence in research and other creative endeavours;
- to play an active role in promoting inter-disciplinary and inter-institutional collaboration within the Eastern Cape Province;
- where appropriate, to assist in the development of the Eastern Cape Province by making available the university's expertise, resources and facilities;
- to play a leading role in establishing a culture of environmental concern by actively pursuing a policy of environmental best practice;
- to strive for excellence and to promote quality assurance in all its activities.

RHODES UNIVERSITY

GRAHAMSTOWN • SOUTH AFRICA

CALENDAR 2019

THE FRONTISPIECE

*The University motto 'Vis, virtus, veritas', means
'Strength, courage, truth'.*

Heraldic description of the arms

Or on a Pile Sable an Open Book inscribed with the words 'Sapientiam Exquiret Sapiens' between three Escallops of the first. On a Chief Argent a Lion passant Gules between two Thistles slipped and leaved proper. And for the crest a Wreath of the Colours upon a Rock the Figure of a Man mounted on a Horse representing 'energy' all Argent.

Derivation of the coat of arms

Black and gold are the livery colours of the Graham family. The pile (inverted triangle) is characteristic of the Graham coat of arms, as are the escallops (shells), an emblem of pilgrimage. The lion and two thistles were taken from the coat of arms granted posthumously to Cecil John Rhodes. The crest is a representation of the famous statue by Watts which forms part of the Rhodes Memorial in Cape Town. The open book is a common feature of the arms of a college or university e.g. Oxford University.

Frontispiece: NB Hodnett

© 2019 by Rhodes University, Grahamstown, South Africa

All rights reserved

ISSN 1018-774X

Cover Photograph: Sarah Wilken

Cover Design and typesetting: Design Office, Printing Services Unit, Rhodes University

*Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa
by Cadar Printers, Port Elizabeth*

CONTENTS

Vision and Mission Statement	2
Useful addresses, telephone and telefax numbers	7
Diary 2019	9
Dedication - Academic Freedom	21
Constitution of the University	21
Officers of the University, Honorary Members and Distinguished Awards Recipients	23
Admission and registration of students	35
General rules for degrees, diplomas and certificates	38
Faculty of Commerce rules	49
Faculty of Education rules	67
Faculty of Humanities rules	83
Faculty of Law rules	102
Faculty of Pharmacy rules	108
Faculty of Science	114
Academic departments and staff	130
Accounting	130
Anthropology	133
Biochemistry & Microbiology	135
Biotechnology Innovation Centre	140
Botany	141
Rhodes Business School	144
Chemistry	151
Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning (CHERTL)	154
Computer Science	155
Drama	159
Economics and Economic History	161
Education	167
Department of Literary Studies in English	176
English language & Linguistics	179
Environmental Science	184
Fine Art	188
Geography	194
Geology	197
History	200
Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE)	203
Ichthyology and Fisheries Science	205
Information Systems	208
Interdepartmental Studies	211
Journalism and Media Studies	214
Languages and Literatures, School of	218
African Language Studies	219
Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies	221
Chinese Studies	223

Classical Studies	223
French Studies	225
German Studies	227
Law Faculty	229
Management	236
Mathematics	240
Music and musicology	244
Faculty of pharmacy	251
Philosophy	257
Physics and electronics	259
Political and international studies	262
Psychology	264
Sociology	269
Statistics	274
Zoology and entomology	277
Research Institutes and Units	281
The Albany Museum	281
Biopharmaceutics Research Institute (BRI)	282
Centre for Social Development	283
Dictionary Unit for South African English (DSAE)	283
Institute for Environmental Biotechnology (EBRU)	284
The Institute for the Study of the Englishes of Africa	285
Institute of Social and Economic Research	286
The Institute for Water Research	288
National English Literary Museum	290
Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project (RUMEP)	291
South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB)	291
Southern Ocean Group	296
The Rhodes University Library Services	297
Cory Library for Humanities Research	299
Electron Microscope Unit	299
Administrative Senior Staff	300
Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates	305
The Residences	307
Student Disciplinary Code	312
Student Affairs	333
The Sports Council	333
Oppidan Union	333
Students Representative Council	335
Constitution for Student Governance	338
General information	349
Rhodes University timetable, 2019	354
Fees for 2019	355

USEFUL ADDRESSES, TELEPHONE AND TELEFAX NUMBERS

Correspondence with the University should be addressed to:

Rhodes University
PO Box 94
Grahamstown
6140

Completed applications should be sent to:

Student Bureau
Rhodes University
PO Box 94
Grahamstown
6140

NB All mail for students in residence should be addressed to the house and hall concerned. See index for "Mail to Residences"

UNIVERSITY TELEPHONE EXCHANGE
(for all departments not listed)
(046) 603 8111

ACADEMIC ADMINISTRATION
(046) 603 8213

STUDENT BUREAU
for: Admissions, Residences, Financial Aid,
Examinations and Graduation
(046) 603 8276

ADVICE ON CAREERS
Acting Head: Ms C Lewis
(046) 603 7070 / 603 7076

CAMPUS HEALTH CENTRE
Sister-in-Charge: Ms H Ferreira
(046) 603 8523

COUNSELLING CENTRE
Acting Head: Ms S Green
(046) 603 7070

DEPUTY VICE-CHANCELLOR: ACADEMIC
& STUDENT AFFAIRS
Dr C Boughey
(046) 603 8149

DEPUTY VICE-CHANCELLOR: RESEARCH
AND DEVELOPMENT
Dr P Clayton
(046) 603 8055

DIRECTOR: COMMUNICATIONS AND
ADVANCEMENT
Mr L Jacobs
(046) 603 8570

DIRECTOR: EQUITY AND INSTITUTIONAL
CULTURE
Ms P Nhlapo
(046) 603 7515

DIRECTOR: FINANCE
Ms D Philipson
(046) 603 8123

DIRECTOR: HUMAN RESOURCES
Ms L Govender
(046) 603 8614

DIRECTOR: INFORMATION AND
TECHNOLOGY SERVICES
Ms N Ripley
(046) 603 7560

DIRECTOR: INSTITUTIONAL PLANNING
UNIT
Dr R Nnadozie
(046) 603 8060

DIRECTOR: INTERNATIONAL OFFICE
Ms O Quinlan
(046) 603 8217

DIRECTOR: LIBRARY SERVICES
(046) 603 8436

DIRECTOR: SPECIAL PROJECTS
Ms S Smailes
(046) 603 8060

DIRECTOR: STUDENT AFFAIRS
Ms N Mrwetyana
(046) 603 8181

STUDENT FEES
(046) 603 8178 / 603 8253

SPORTS CLUBS AND FACILITIES
Acting Manager: Sports Administration
Mr E Gallant
(046) 603 8366

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL
(046) 603 7080

TRANSPORT OFFICE
(046) 603 8234

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S OFFICE
(046) 603 8148

ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS
(046) 603 8111

DEANS OF THE FACULTIES
Humanities: Professor TW Martin
(046) 603 8362

Science: Professor AJ Booth
(046) 603 7232

Law: Professor R Krüger
(046) 603 8427/8

Education: Professor PD Wilmot
(046) 603 8385

Commerce: Professor DA Sewry
(046) 603 7500

Pharmacy
(046) 603 8381

TELEFAX NUMBERS

Academic Administration
(046) 603 8104

Conference Office
(046) 603 8962

Library
(046) 603 7310

Student Bureau
(046) 603 8300

Student Fees
(046) 603 7019

See also the Rhodes University Web Page: <http://www.ru.ac.za>

DIARY 2019

January

1	Tuesday	
7	Monday	
14	Monday	
21	Monday	
		14:15
31	Thursday	9:00

New Year's Day

Rhodes University Opens

Postgraduate Registration Opens

Supplementary Examinations begin

Student Affairs/Hall Wardens' Committee (EG Seminar Room 3)

Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)

February

1	Friday	
		12:45
2	Saturday	
4	Monday	
5	Tuesday	12.30
6	Wednesday	12.30
8	Friday	
11	Monday	
13	Wednesday	14:15
16	Saturday	
18	Monday	14:15
		14:15
19	Tuesday	14:00
		14:15
20	Wednesday	09:00–13:00
		14:15
		14:15
		14:15
21	Thursday	9:00
		14:15
		14:15
22	Friday	9:00
		11:30
		14:15
		14:15
25	Monday	14:15
26	Tuesday	14:15
27	Wednesday	9:00
		12:45
		14:15
		15:00
28	Thursday	14:15

Supplementary Examinations end

NEHAWU/Management (Alumni House Boardroom)

First year registration

Orientation week begins

Major Projects Committee (I&O Boardroom)

NTEU/HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)

Orientation week ends

Undergraduate lectures begin

Commerce Higher Degrees

Undergraduate Registration Closes

Equity & Institutional Culture

CSD Board

RUMED Board of Trustees (Alumni House Boardroom)

Gender Action Forum (Level 4 Meeting Room, Library)

Job Evaluation Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)

Ethical Standards Committee (RUESC)

IPC Size and Shape (Alumni Boardroom)

Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Seminar Room)

Budget Executive Committee

IPC Infrastructure Planning Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)

Lecture Venue Sub-Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)

Employment Equity Committee

Skills Development Committee

ISEA Board (Gold Fields Centre)

Law Faculty

Science Faculty

Education Faculty Board

Pharmacy Faculty Board

NEHAWU/Management (Alumni House Boardroom)

Commerce Faculty

Conference/Vacation Accommodation (Alumni House Boardroom)

Humanities Faculty

March

1	Friday	
4	Monday	14:15
5	Tuesday	14:15
6	Wednesday	12:30
		14:15
7	Thursday	9:00
		10:30
		13:30

Undergraduate Late Registration Closes

Board of Residences

Institutional Planning Committee

NTEU/HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)

Information Technology Steering Committee

Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)

COUNCIL

Remuneration Committee of Council (VC's Office)

2019 DIARY

		15:00	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture (VRACC)
8	Friday	12:00–14:30	Middle Management Forum
		14:15	Cory Library Advisory Board (Level 4 Meeting Room, Library)
11	Monday	11:00	Senate Examinations Committee (Registrar's Office)
		14:15	Institutional Forum
12	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (I&O Boardroom)
		14:15	Executive Committee of Senate (SENEX)
		17:00	Sports Council Executive Committee
13	Wednesday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
14	Thursday	11:00	Naming Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Teaching & Learning Committee
		17:00	Student Affairs/Hall Wardens' Committee (EG Seminar Rm 3)
15	Friday	14:15	Language Committee
18	Monday	11:00	RU Health & Safety Committee
		14:15	HoDs' Forum
19	Tuesday	9:00	Deans' Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Student Services Council
20	Wednesday	14:15	Library Committee (Level 4 Mtg Rm, Library)
21	Thursday		Human Rights Day
25	Monday		Last day of submission for Masters and PhD theses
26	Tuesday	11:00	Orientation Committee
		14:15	Community Engagement Committee
27	Wednesday	14:15	Disciplinary Committee
28	Thursday	14:15	RU Environmental Committee
		14:15	RMR Board (RMR Brd Rm)
29	Friday		Undergraduate lectures end
		14:15	SENATE
		17:00	Mid semester vacation begins
April			
1	Monday	14:15	Wellness Committee
2	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (I&O Brd Rm)
		14:00	RUMED Audit (Telecon/Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Internationalisation Committee
3	Wednesday	14:15	Lecture Venue Sub-Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
4	Thursday	11:00	Academic Freedom Committee
		14:15	Research Committee
5	Friday	11:30	Risk Management Committee (VCs Office)
		12:45	NEHAWU/Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
8	Monday	14:15	IPC Infrastructure Planning Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
9	Tuesday	14:15	IPC Size and Shape Committee
10	Wednesday	14:15	Theatre Management Committee
11	Thursday		Graduation
12	Friday		Graduation
13	Saturday		Graduation
15	Monday		Undergraduate lectures begin
16	Tuesday	11:00	Management/Unions Liaison Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:00	RUMED Board of Trustees (Alumni House Boardroom)
17	Wednesday	12:30	NTEU/HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
18	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)
		9:00	Budget Executive Committee

19	Friday		Good Friday
21	Sunday		Easter Sunday
22	Monday		Family Day
23	Tuesday	14:15	Disability Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		10:00	Board of Governors' workshop
24	Wednesday	14:00	Board of Governors (Grahamstown)
		14:15	Student Affairs/Hall Wardens' Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
25	Thursday	14:15	Equity & Institutional Culture
26	Friday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
27	Saturday		Freedom Day
29	Monday	14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee
30	Tuesday	14:15	Ethical Standards Committee (RUESC)
May			
1	Wednesday		Workers Day
2	Thursday	10:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee
		13:30	Audit Committee
		14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Sem Rm)
3	Friday	12:45	NEHAWU/Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee
6	Monday	9:00	Employment Equity Committee
		11:30	Skills Development Committee
		14:15	Institutional Forum
7	Tuesday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Board
		14:15	Internationalisation Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
		15:00	Conference/Vacation Accommodation Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
8	Wednesday	14:15	Board of Residences
9	Thursday	9:00	Deans' Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
		13:00	Council Nominations Committee
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board
10	Friday	08:00–17:00	RHODES UNIVERSITY OPEN DAY
		14:15	ISER Board of Management (ISER Sem Rm)
13	Monday	14:15	Law Faculty Board
14	Tuesday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board
		12:30	Major Projects Committee (I&O Boardroom)
15	Wednesday	12:30	NTEU/HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Science Faculty Board
16	Thursday	9:30	Pension Fund
		13:45	Provident Fund
		14:15	Education Faculty Board
17	Friday	12:00–14:30	Middle Management Forum
20	Monday	11:00	Senate Examinations Committee (Registrar's Office)
		14:15	Teaching & Learning Committee
21	Tuesday	11:00	Naming Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Institutional Planning Committee
		17:00	Sports Council Executive Committee (Old Mutual Pavilion)
22	Wednesday	11:00	RU Health & Safety Committee
		14:15	Student Services Committee
23	Thursday	9:00	Budget Executive Committee
		14:15	Disability Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)

2019 DIARY

		14:15	Rhodes Music Radio (RMR Brd Rm)
24	Friday		Undergraduate lectures end
		11:30	Risk Management Committee (VCs Office)
		14:15	Research Committee
		14:15	CSD Board (CSD Training Centre)
27	Monday		Swot week begins
28	Tuesday	14:15	Executive Committee of Senate (SENEX)
29	Wednesday	11:00	Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Sem Rm)
		14:15	HoDs' Forum
		14:15	Information Technology Steering Committee
30	Thursday		Swot week ends
		10:30	COUNCIL
		13:30	Remuneration Committee of Council (VC's Office)
		14:15	Community Engagement Committee
		14:15	Library Committee (Level 4 Mtg Rm, Library)
31	Friday		Midyear examinations begin
		11:00	Honorary Degrees Committee
June			
3	Monday	11:00	Financial Aid Committee
		15:15	ISEA Board (Gold Fields Centre)
		14:15	Wellness Committee (Seminar Room 3)
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
4	Tuesday	9:00	RUMED Board of Trustees (Alumni Boardroom)
		12:00	RUMED Annual General Meeting
		17:00	Student Affairs/Hall Wardens' Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
5	Wednesday	15:00	Job Evaluation Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	RU Environmental Committee
6	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)
		10:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee
		13:30	Audit Committee
		14:15	Gender Action Forum (Level 4 Meeting Rm, Library)
7	Friday	14:15	SENATE
10	Monday	12:00	RUMED AGM (General Lecture Theatre)
		12:45	NEHAWU / Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Language Committee
11	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (I&O Board Rm)
12	Wednesday	14:15	Cory Library Advisory Board (Level 4 Meeting Rm, Library)
		14:15	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
13	Thursday	9:00	Constitution Committee (Registrar's Office)
		12:30	NTEU/HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee
14	Friday		Long Service Awards
16	Sunday		Youth Day
17	Monday		Youth Day Celebrated
21	Friday		Midyear examinations end
			Midyear vacation begins
27	Thursday	10:30	COUNCIL
		13:30	Remuneration Committee of Council (VC's Office)
			National Arts Festival Begins

July

7	Sunday		National Arts Festival Ends
15	Monday		Undergraduate lectures begin
		14:15	Equity and Institutional Culture Committee
16	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (I&O Board Rm)
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
		17:00	Student Affairs / Hall Wardens Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
17	Wednesday	12:30	NTEU / HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee (Law Staff Reading Rm)
		14:15	IPC Size and Shape Sub-Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Student Affairs / Hall Wardens Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
18	Thursday		Nelson Mandela Day (Observed Only)
		9:00	Budget Executive Committee
		9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)
19	Friday	14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Seminar Rm)
		14:15	IPC Infrastructure Planning (Alumni House Boardroom)
22	Monday	9:00	Budget Committee
		14:15	Institutional Forum
23	Tuesday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board
		14:15	Education Faculty Board
24	Wednesday	14:15	Commerce Faculty Board
		14:15	Lecture Venue Sub-Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
25	Thursday	9:00	Pension and Provident Fund Special Trustee Meeting
		14:15	Science Faculty Board
26	Friday	12:00–14:30	Middle Management Forum
29	Monday	11:00	Honorary Degrees Committee
		14:15	Law Faculty Board
30	Tuesday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Board
31	Wednesday	14:15	Ethical Standards Committee (RUESC)
		15:00	Conference / Vacation Accommodation (Alumni House Boardroom)
		17:00	Sports Council Executive Committee (Old Mutual Pavillion)

August

1	Thursday	12:45	NEHAWU / Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Institutional Planning Committee
2	Friday	9:00	Employment Equity Committee
		11:00	Skills Development Committee
		11:30	Risk Management Committee (VCs Office)
		14:15	CSD Board (CSD Training Centre)
		14:15	Information Technology Steering Committee
5	Monday	14:15	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture Committee (VRACC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
6	Tuesday	11:00	Senate Examinations Committee (Registrar's Office)
		14:15	Community Engagement Committee
7	Wednesday		
8	Thursday	9:00	Budget Executive Committee
9	Friday		National Women's Day
12	Monday	11:00	Health and Safety Committee
		14:15	Board of Residences
13	Tuesday	14:15	Executive Committee of Senate (SENEX)

2019 DIARY

14	Wednesday	14:15	Internationalisation Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
		14:15	Teaching & Learning Committee
15	Thursday	9:00	Deans' Forum (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Language Committee
16	Friday	12:30	NTEU/HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
19	Monday	14:15	Rhodes Music Radio (RMR Brd Rm)
		14:15	Research Committee
		17:00	Student Affairs / Hall Wardens Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
20	Tuesday	14:15	ISEA Board (Gold Fields Centre)
		14:15	ISER Board of Management (ISER Sem Rm)
		14:00	RUMED Board of Trustees/Benefits Meeting (Alumni House Boardroom)
21	Wednesday	14:15	Student Services Committee
		14:15	Library Committee (Level 4 Mtg Rm, Library)
22	Thursday	all day	Postgraduate Conference
		9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)
		10:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee
		13:30	Audit Committee
		14:15	Gender Action Forum (Level 4 Meeting Rm, Library)
23	Friday	all day	Postgraduate Conference
			Undergraduate lectures end
		14:15	SENATE
		17:00	Mid-Semester Vacation begins
26	Monday		SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATIONS COMMENCE
		09:00–13:00	Job Evaluation Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
27	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (I&O Board Room)
		14:15	Wellness Committee
28	Wednesday	14:15	HOD's Forum
30	Friday	14:15	Disability Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		17:00	SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATIONS CONCLUDE
31	Saturday		RHODES UNIVERSITY CONVOCATION AND AGM

September

2	Monday		Undergraduate lectures begin
		14:15	RU Environmental Committee
3	Tuesday	14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee (Law Staff Reading Room)
4	Wednesday	14:15	IPC Infrastructure Planning Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Theatre Management Committee
5	Thursday	12:45	NEHAWU/ Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Cory Library Advisory Board (Level 4 Meeting Room Library)
9	Monday	08:30–17:00	Academic Promotions Committee
10	Tuesday	08:30–17:00	Academic Promotions Committee
11	Wednesday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
12	Thursday	10:30	Council
		13:30	Remuneration Committee of Council (VC's Office)
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Rhodes Business School)
16	Monday	11:00	Orientation Committee
		14:15	IPC Size and Shape Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
17	Tuesday	9:00	Constitution Committee (Registrars Office)
		12:30	Major Projects Committee (I&O Board room)
		14:00	RUMED Board Of Trustees (Alumni House Boardroom)

		14:15	Lecture Venue Sub-Committee (Eden Grove Sem Rm 3)
		14:15	Institutional Forum
18	Wednesday	12:30	NTEU/HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board
19	Thursday	14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable (CHERTL Seminar Room)
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Board
24	Tuesday		Heritage Day
25	Wednesday	9:00	Disciplinary Committee
		14:15	Science Faculty Board
26	Thursday	9:00	Budget Executive Committee
		9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)
		14:15	Law Faculty Board
		14:15	Student Affairs/Hall Wardens Committee (EG Seminar Room 3)
30	Monday	14:15	Education Faculty Board
October			
1	Tuesday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board
2	Wednesday	11:00	Naming Committee
		14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee
3	Thursday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee
		17:00	Sport Council Executive Committee
4	Friday	9:00	Senate Nominations Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		12:45	NEHAWU/ Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
7	Monday	9:00	Senate Nominations Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		11:00	Management/Unions Liaison Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Community Engagement Committee
8	Tuesday	14:15	Executive Committee of Senate (SENEX)
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Rhodes Business School)
9	Wednesday	9:00	Budget Committee
		14:00	RUMED Audit (Telecon/Alumni Boardroom)
		14:15	Ethical Standards Committee (RUESC)
10	Thursday	14:15	Board of Residences
11	Friday	12:45	NTEU/HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
14	Monday	14:15	Information Technology Steering Committee
		14:15	Disability Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)
16	Wednesday	14:15	Language Committee
17	Thursday	11:00	Senate Examinations Committee
		14:15	Visual Arts, Representation & Culture Committee (VRACC) (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	RMR Board (RMR Brd Rm)
18	Friday		Undergraduate lectures end
		14:15	SENATE
21	Monday		Swot week begins
		11:00	RU Health and Safety Committee
		14:15	Student Services Council
22	Tuesday	9:00	Deans' Forum
23	Wednesday	14:15	RU Environmental Committee
24	Thursday		Swot week ends
		9:00	Budget Executive Committee
		14:15	Wellness Committee
		14:15	CSD Board (CSD Training Centre)

2019 DIARY

25	Friday	11:30	Final examinations begin
		15:00	Risk Management Committee (VCs Office)
28	Monday	08:30–17:00	Conference/Vacation Accommodation Committee
		08:30–17:00	Academic Promotions Committee
29	Tuesday	12:30	Academic Merit Awards Committee - Review Process
		14:15	Major Projects Committee (I&O Board Rm)
30	Wednesday	9:30	Internationalisation Committee
		13:45	Pension Fund Meeting
		14:15	Provident Fund Meeting
		17:00	Library Committee (Level 4 Meeting Rm, Library)
31	Thursday	9:00	Student Affairs / Hall Wardens Committee (EG Sem Rm 3)
		14:15	Budget Committee

Institutional Planning Committee

November

1	Friday	14:15	Equity and Institutional Culture Committee
		14:15	HoD's Forum
5	Tuesday	14:00	Board of Governors (Johannesburg)
		14:15	ISEA Board (Gold Fields Centre)
		14:15	Gender Action Forum (Level 4 Meeting Rm, Library)
6	Wednesday	12:45	NEHAWU / Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Institutional Forum
7	Thursday	9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)
		10:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee
		13:30	Audit Committee
8	Friday	12:00–14:30	Middle Management Forum
		14:15	Cory Library Advisory Board (Level 4 Meeting Rm, Library)
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee (Law Staff Reading Rm)
11	Monday	14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee
12	Tuesday	13:00	Council Nominations Committee
		14:15	Research Committee
13	Wednesday	12:30	NTEU / HR Management (Alumni House Boardroom)
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
14	Thursday	11:00	Financial Aid Committee
15	Friday	14:15	SENATE
18	Monday	9:00	Employment Equity Committee
		11:30	Skills Development Committee
19	Tuesday	9:00	Constitution Committee (Office of the Registrar)
20	Wednesday	14:15	ISER Board (Gold Fields Centre)
22	Friday		Final examinations end
26	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (I&O Board Rm)
27	Wednesday	10:30	COUNCIL
		13:30	Remuneration Committee of Council (VC's Office)
28	Thursday	10:30	Job Evaluation Committee (Alumni House Boardroom)

December

4	Wednesday	9:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board
		14:15	Law Faculty Board
5	Thursday	9:00	Science Faculty Board
		9:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee (Rm 7 Educ Dept)
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board

2019 DIARY

6	Friday	9:00	Humanities Faculty Board
		14:15	Education Faculty Board
		12:00	Last day of submission for Masters and Doctoral theses
16	Monday		Day of Reconciliation
24	Tuesday		Christmas Eve
25	Wednesday		Christmas Day
26	Thursday		Day of Goodwill
31	Tuesday		New Years Eve

A BRIEF HISTORY OF THE UNIVERSITY

Rhodes University College, 1904-1951

The idea of establishing a university in Grahamstown was first put forward in the 1880s. In the early 1900s a small group formed an *ad hoc* committee which recommended that it be called the Eastern Province University College. They changed this to Rhodes University College to leverage funding out of the Rhodes Trust, which administered the will of Cecil Rhodes, who had died in 1902. The Trust granted £50,000 towards the founding of Rhodes University College.

Rhodes University College, then affiliated to the University of the Cape of Good Hope, began functioning in July 1904 with about fifty students, the vast majority of whom were men and all of whom were white, with classes initially being given in St Andrew's College buildings. Early in 1905, operations moved to the university's current site, the old Drostdy grounds. For the first five decades or so of the university's history, student culture was for the most part genteel, constrained as it was by enduring Victorian codes of behaviour and by strict rules and regulations. Social life revolved around tightly controlled dances, respectable courting, and walks on Mountain Drive. Extracurricular cultural activity centred on the debating, musical and dramatic societies. Sport gained momentum, with rugby at the forefront.

The University operated as a racially segregated institution for the first 70 years of its existence. There was a slight relaxation of this stance in the 1940s. Benjamin Mahlasela was appointed in 1942 to teach isiXhosa to first-year students on a part-time basis – he would go on to serve the university for thirty-five years. In 1947 Rhodes eventually agreed to admit black postgraduate students into courses not offered at the University of Fort Hare. In the event, though, only three were admitted over the next twelve years.

Rhodes University in the early apartheid era

Rhodes became an independent university in 1951 (having been affiliated to UNISA since 1918) and took on Fort Hare as an affiliate. The first four decades of Rhodes' existence as an independent university more or less coincided with the apartheid era, which saw a growing polarisation between the defenders and opponents of apartheid in the university community.

While teaching was still considered to be the primary activity, there was evidence that research, writing and artistic output were gaining some momentum in the 1950s and 1960s. The scientist to gain the greatest international renown was JLB Smith, who identified a mysterious fish caught in East London as a coelacanth, believed to have been extinct for millions of years. Among other prominent scientists at Rhodes from the 1950s and 1960s were the physicist, Jack Gledhill, and the zoologist, Brian Allanson. The most notable figures in the Humanities during this time included Guy Butler of the Department of English, and Andre Brink in the Department of Afrikaans. Guy Butler was the driving-force behind the founding of the Rhodes theatre, the Institute for the Study of English in Africa (ISEA), and the National English Literary Museum (NELM). Andre Brink was by far the most prolific writer ever to have taught at Rhodes – the author of over twenty novels, in addition to his critical writings, plays and translated works.

Research productivity was enhanced by work undertaken at various institutes, including the Leather Industries Research Institute, the JLB Smith Institute (later the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity), the ISEA and the Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER). In 1978 the university took over the International Library of African Music (ILAM), comprising a superb collection of African musical recordings and instruments that had been built up over many years by Hugh Tracey and his son, Andrew.

In 1959 the National Party government passed legislation that ended the connection with the University of Fort Hare. This led to protests by students and staff at Rhodes. Fort Hare students who had registered during the affiliation years were permitted to complete their Rhodes degrees. These students were capped at graduation ceremonies held in the Rhodes Great Hall in 1960, 1961 and 1962 – among these graduands were Chris Hani and Griffiths Mxenge.

Unable to escape the dictates of apartheid, political controversies arose in the 1960s. In 1962, the decision was taken to award an honorary doctorate to the state president, CR Swart, an apartheid hard-liner who had previously, as Minister of Justice, cracked down ruthlessly on anti-apartheid activists.

Then, in 1967, the Rhodes authorities refused to allow black student delegates to stay in university residences while attending the annual congress of the National Union of South African Students (NUSAS). Among the delegates was Steve Biko, who proceeded to establish the South African Students Organisation (SASO), a new black student organisation which would become the pioneer of the black consciousness movement in the country.

In contrast, the 1950s and 1960s represented a golden era in the history of Rhodes' sport. Some outstanding cricketers passed through the university – among them John Waite and Colin Bland. There were also fine rugby players, squash players and athletes who studied at Rhodes in this era. The greatest success of all was achieved by Rhodes' swimmers in the 1960s, with several performing especially well at a national level.

Student life at Rhodes continued to be governed by strict residence rules and dress codes. For instance, mixed parties involving men and women students still required the vice-chancellor's permission. Men students had to wear jackets and ties at classes and in the library. As something of the more relaxed, permissive culture filtered into Rhodes from the west in the 1960s, Rhodes' students began to rail against what they saw as outdated regulations and restrictions. Calls for reform culminated in a student civil disobedience campaign in 1971, with students deliberately violating residence rules and dress codes.

The late apartheid era

The last two decades of the apartheid era, from the mid-1970s to the mid-1990s, were years when the National Party government had to contend with both growing international pressure and rising protest and resistance. The government devised a twofold response – mild reform combined with ever harsher repression and a ruthless crackdown on its opponents. Both trends had an impact on Rhodes, giving rise to growing turbulence and polarisation on campus.

The first government reform to have an impact on Rhodes was the slow, limited process of desegregation. From the early 1970s black students could apply for permits to register at white universities for courses not offered at black

universities. In 1983 this policy was replaced by a quota system which allowed white universities to admit black students regardless of their chosen courses, but with a limit on the number who could be admitted.

The first Rhodes' students to register under the permit system mostly took courses in Journalism or Pharmacy, neither of which were offered at black universities. In 1976 Rhodes admitted seven black students; by 1985 black students constituted 18% of the total student population at the university.

Rhodes further expanded its engagement with the wider Eastern Cape community with the opening of its East London satellite campus in February 1981. Initially offering only B.Com. courses, the East London division geared its operations to the needs of the local business sector. It later ran Humanities and Education courses, before being transferred to Fort Hare in 2004 during the government's restructuring of the tertiary education sector.

The post-apartheid era

As South Africa moved into the post-apartheid era in the 1990s Rhodes University, like other South African universities, faced new challenges and pressures. The ANC-led government imposed demands on universities: that they expand their student enrolments; that they reduce their financial dependence on their government subsidy; that they become more responsive to the country's economic needs by producing more high-skilled graduates and more relevant research; and that they transform themselves. The transformation imperative had a number of dimensions – significantly increasing the number of black students and staff; addressing and changing the institutional culture of universities so as to make them more inclusive and congenial to a diverse community; examining and revising curricula and teaching practices to make them more Africa-focused; and reviewing governance structures and practices.

In the sphere of governance, leading black personalities would come to take their place in the upper echelons of the university – Jakes Gerwel as chancellor from 1999, followed by Lex Mpati from 2013; Colin Johnson, appointed as vice-principal in 2001; Saleem Badat, serving as vice-chancellor from 2006 to 2014, to be succeeded by Sizwe

Mabizela, who had previously held the position of vice-principal.

After 1994 there was a gradual change in the racial composition of Rhodes' student population. In 1994 about 32% of the student body were black (in the wider sense of the term), out of a total student population of 4094. By 2014 the proportion of black students had doubled to 64%, out of a total population of 7519 students. There has been less success in achieving equity in the academic staff complement, with the proportion of black academics rising from 16% in 1994 to 25% in 2014. On the other hand, the picture is different in the case of administrative staff (in grades 6-13) – while in 1994 black administrative staff comprised about 27% of the total, this proportion rose to about 58% in 2014.

Reflections on Rhodes' past

The university is now a very different place from what it was fifty years ago, and a different place from what it was in 1994. Life for both students and academics has changed significantly. For several decades teaching was considered to be the primary academic activity. From the 1970s a growing emphasis has been placed on research productivity. Since the 2000s Rhodes University's research output per capita has been among the highest of all South African universities. In recent years its foremost researcher has been Distinguished Professor Tebello Nyokong, who has headed a highly productive team of postgraduate students in the Department of Chemistry, specialising in research into cancer. She herself has received many national and international awards.

Many students have benefited from the enduring commitment to undergraduate teaching, notwithstanding the more recent emphasis on research and postgraduate enrolments. In 2005 the national Council on Higher Education issued a report on Rhodes. There were some critical comments, but the report commended the university for the breadth of its community-related activities – activities which have continued to grow since 2005. The report noted that Rhodes' academic staff were for the most part highly qualified; research activity was on the increase; the library and IT system were well-resourced; and Rhodes' graduation rates were among the highest in the country. Later, in 2012, Rhodes was reckoned to be among the top four universities in the country for its rate of graduating masters and doctoral students.

The years 2015 and 2016 were turbulent ones for Rhodes and other South African universities. Student protests brought to the fore some fundamental issues facing the higher education sector, particularly those relating to institutional culture and finance. The challenges inherent in combining transformation and financial sustainability will continue to be met head on by Rhodes University, going forward into 2019 and beyond.

[This historical outline is derived from an essay by Paul Maylam, 'Rhodes University: a brief history', that appears in a WESSA Grahamstown publication: Roy Lubke & Irene de Moor (eds), *Grahamstown: A Guide to the Natural and Cultural History*. For a recent book on the history of the university, see Paul Maylam, *Rhodes University, 1904-2016: An Intellectual, Political and Cultural History* (Grahamstown: Institute of Social and Economic Research, 2017).]

DEDICATION - ACADEMIC FREEDOM

Rhodes University Declaration of Academic Freedom and other Ethical Principles

As members of the academic community of Rhodes University, we are committed to safeguarding the principle of academic freedom and affirming our commitment to an ethical orientation to our work. The principles listed below are complex and their meanings must be debated. We simultaneously affirm our rights to academic freedom and uphold the firm view that this freedom is matched by an obligation to ethical conduct with regard to our students, colleagues and wider society. In the context of our history and the inequalities of the present, this includes a firm embrace of the transformative commitment to equality and justice as laid out in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa ('Constitution' hereafter) and, more fundamentally, as flowing from a proper understanding of the ethic that ought to guide academic life.

Therefore, we declare our resolute commitment to promoting the following principles:

Freedom: As enshrined in the Constitution, academic freedom is a variety of human freedom, and it is a central condition for a thriving academic life. The proper instantiation of academic freedom requires the steadfast commitment to its survival by academics, students and administrators. Academic freedom includes the right to be critical of the state, the university, private power and our colleagues. Academic freedom is not compatible with the subordination of university life to a corporate or managerial logic that curtails the freedom of staff or students to pursue intellectual projects of their own choosing. Academic freedom does not extend to defamation, fraud and forms of speech prohibited by the Constitution or, more broadly, by the principle

of human decency. It is a misuse of academic freedom, moreover, to invoke it to oppose just change. Academic freedom, finally, is predicated on adequate state funding of the academic project.

Integrity: Academic integrity requires personal and collective vigilance in the face of pressures and incentives that may threaten the autonomy and quality of academic work. It requires a firm commitment to aligning one's work and conduct with the ethical principles that ought to guide academic life. Such alignment cannot properly be achieved without ongoing interrogation of the values that inform current academic work.

Equality: The University is resolutely committed to the democratic ideal of universal equality. This requires active opposition to all forms of unjust discrimination and a vigorous attempt to build a university in which all students and staff are made to feel welcome and enjoy the same rights to participate freely in all aspects of academic life.

Collegiality: Academics should endeavor to foster a collegial environment where all staff and students are given a fair and equal platform to participate in the academic project, including playing an active part in maintaining and fostering proper institutional processes aimed at promoting a collegial environment. Collegiality, properly understood, is compatible with vigorous debate, provided that they are conducted in an ethical spirit, avoiding slander or acts designed to silence dissenting voices.

Excellence: Academics and students should be committed to producing work that is of the highest caliber in all spheres of academic life. Commitment to excellence implies ongoing critical interrogation of established norms of excellence.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNIVERSITY

The University consists of the Chancellor, the Principal (who is also the Vice-Chancellor), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic and Student Affairs), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research and Development), the Council, the Senate, the Institutional Forum, the Convocation, the professors, lecturers and other teachers, the researchers and the students.

The Chancellor, elected by the Council, is the titular

Head of the University and is empowered, in the name of the University, to confer all degrees. For this purpose a Congregation of the University is held at least once a year under his presidency.

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor is the chief academic and administrative officer of the University and is ex officio a member of the Council and the Chairperson of the Senate.

The Council, which elects its own Chairperson, is the governing body of the University, administers its affairs and property, and is empowered, in consultation with, or upon the recommendation of the Senate, to frame statutes and rules governing the general conduct and organization of the University and to make all appointments to the staff.

The Council consists of the following members:

The Principal, the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic and Student Affairs), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research and Development), five members appointed by the Minister, four elected by the Senate, two representatives of the Makana Municipality, the President of the Student Representative Council and the Chairperson of the Post-Graduate Liaison Sub-Committee, one person elected by the Board of Governors of the Rhodes University Foundation, one elected member of the academic staff, two elected members of the administrative support staff, six persons appointed by the Council and not more than four members coopted in terms of the Rhodes University Statute.

The Senate superintends discipline and instruction within the University. It consists of the Principal, the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic and Student Affairs), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research

and Development), the Registrar, the heads of all departments, the professors, the Librarian, two academic staff members elected from each faculty, six members appointed by the lecturers, five members elected by the Students Representative Council and one student elected from each faculty. Certain other officers of the University may be especially appointed as members of Senate.

The University has six Faculties: Humanities, Science, Law, Education, Commerce and Pharmacy, for each of which there is a Board which acts as a committee of the Senate in respect of all matters affecting that Faculty. The Chairperson of the Board is the Dean of the Faculty.

Convocation, which elects its own President, consists of all graduates of the University together with the Principal, the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic and Student Affairs), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research and Development), Librarian, Registrar and all permanent full-time teaching staff of the University. Convocation is required to meet at least once a year, and may discuss and express its opinion on any matter relating to the University.

The Registrar of the University is the Secretary of Council, Senate and Convocation.

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY, HONORARY MEMBERS & DISTINGUISHED AWARDS RECIPIENTS

Chancellor

The Hon Mr Justice L Mpati

Principal and Vice-Chancellor

SG Mabizela, MSc(UFH), PhD(Pennsylvania State)

Deputy Vice-Chancellor:

(Research and Development)

PG Clayton, PhD(Rhodes), FICS, MCSSA, MACM

Deputy Vice-Chancellor:

(Academic & Student Affairs)

CM Boughy, MA(St Andrews), MA(Reading),

PGCE(Wales), DPhil(UWC)

Chairperson of Council

VD Kahla, BA(LLB)(Rhodes)

Vice-Chairperson of Council

President of Convocation

PT Mtuze, BA(Rhodes), MA(UNISA),

MTh(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)DTh

Registrar

AL Moodly, DEd(UNISA)

Executive Director: Infrastructure, Operations & Finance

IN L'Ange, DipTh(St Paul's), BTh(Hons), MBA,

PhD(Rhodes)

Public Orator

P Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens)

Disciplinary Officers

Disciplinary Board

J Williams

A Haller-Barker

R Asmal

E Milton

S Rahim

M McCallum

Proctors

S Rahim

CA Renaud

R Asmal

O Makiwane

K Watt

M McCallum

H Harnett

Prosecutors

T Hartzenberg (Legal and Risk Services Manager)

G Barker

S Smailes

N Molony

C van der Merwe

THE COUNCIL

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor

The Deputy VC: Academic and Student Affairs

The Deputy VC: Research and Development

The Registrar

Appointed by the Minister of Education

Revd Dr V Kgabe (2016-2020)

Ms GT Ndebele (2018-2022)

Professor R Maharajh (2016-2020)

Mr MK Rune (2016-2020)

Elected by Senate

Prof DA Sewry (2015-2019)

Prof LN Strelitz (2015-2019)

Prof CI Macleod (2017-2020)

Prof G Wells (2018-2021)

Elected by the academic staff

Dr SMM Khamanga (2015-2019)

Elected by the administrative/support staff

Ms D Bekker (2016-2020)

Mr M A Vena (2017-2021)

Appointed by the Makana Municipality

Cllr B Fargher (2018-2022)

Cllr R Xonxa (2018-2022)

Elected by the Board of Governors

Mr A Sangqu (2018-2022)

Appointed by Council

Mr M Rusa (2017-2021)

Mr VD Kahla, (2018-2022)

Ms M Schoeman (2016-2020)

Mr C Staple (2016-2020)

Dr N Stubbs (2016-2020)

Co-opted Members

Judge G Bloem (2016-2020)

Ms N Pityana (2016-2020)

Mr TCS Tagg (2016-2020)

Students' Representative Council (SRC)

SRC President

A student elected by the SRC

THE SENATE

Members

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor (Chairperson)

The Deputy VC: Academic and Student Affairs

The Deputy VC: Research and Development

The Registrar

The Deans of the Faculties, 2019

Humanities Prof TW Martin

Science Prof AJ Booth

Law Prof R Krüger

Education Prof PD Wilmot

Commerce Prof DA Sewry

Pharmacy Prof S Daya

Professors

1991 CD McQuaid
 1996 DA Sewry
 1997 H Nel
 1998 EM Stack
 2001 T Nyokong
 2001 JL Jonas (Retired December 2018)
 2002 RD Adendorff
 2005 GJ Euvrard
 2006 LN Strelitz
 2007 P-H Bischoff
 2007 RB Walker
 2007 L Louw
 2007 CI Macleod
 2008 RA Dorrington
 2008 CM Shackleton
 2008 MH Villet
 2008 L Wilbraham
 2008 GCG Fraser
 2009 AK Cowan
 2009 PW Froneman
 2009 MP Hill
 2009 RH Kaschula
 2009 H Lotz-Sisitka
 2009 A Terzoli
 2009 D Thorburn
 2009 GC Wells
 2010 PJ Britz
 2010 MJ Marais
 2010 W Sauer
 2010 DC Klopper
 2010 KI Meiklejohn
 2010 CG Palmer
 2011 DA Wylie
 2011 MH Graven
 2012 RWM Krause
 2012 M Schäfer
 2013 GF Baines
 2013 WN Ellery
 2013 BI Pletschke
 2013 LD Vincent
 2014 LO Juma
 2014 JL Limson
 2014 BS Ripley

2014 JD Snowball
 2015 ML Chithambo
 2016 R Simbao
 2016 PA Tabensky
 2017 JE Akhurst
 2017 S McKenna
 2017 SR Simango
 2017 PD Wilmot
 2018 A Garman

Deputy Deans of Faculties

Accounting JM Williams
Biochemistry J Dames
Botany S Vetter
CHERTL J-A Vorster
Drama H Gehring
Education E Mggwashu
Fine Art M de Jager
Geology IA Meiklejohn
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics S Zschoernack
Information Systems S Flowerday
Law R Krüger
Management T Amos
Music & Musicology C Foxcroft
Philosophy M Vermaak
Rhodes Business School FO Skae
School of Journalism and Media Studies L Strelitz
School of Languages P Mwepu
Statistics J Baxter
Sociology GG Klerck
Library Services vacant

Research Institutes and Units representatives:

Albany Museum

M Vabaza, *Director*

Centre for Social Development

G Harrison, *Director*

Dictionary Unit for South African English

T van Niekerk, *Director*

Institute of Social and Economic Research

Director t.b.a.

Institute for the Study of English in Africa

M Hendricks, *Director*

International Library of African Music

L Watkins, *Director*

National English Literary Museum

BA Thomas, *Director*

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity

A Paterson, *Managing Director*

6 members elected by academic staff

Students' Representative Council

5 students elected by the SRC

2 members elected by the administrative/support staff

In attendance

Director: Communications and Advancement

Mr L Jacobs

Director: Equity and Institutional Culture

Ms P Nhlapo

Director: Finance

Ms D Philipson

Director: Human Resources

Ms L Govender

Director: Information and Technology Services

Ms N Ripley

Director: Institutional Planning Unit

Dr R Nnadozie

Director: International Office

Ms O Quinlan

Director: Special Projects

Ms S Smailes

Director: Student Affairs

Ms N Mrwetyana

THE RHODES UNIVERSITY FOUNDATION

The Board of Governors of the Rhodes University Foundation administers capital funds donated to Rhodes University, investing general donations and its own surplus income in a portfolio of shares and interest-bearing investments. These investments provide capital growth and the income from which grants are made to the University for research, development, bursaries and scholarships.

THE BOARD OF GOVERNORS

Mr M Spicer (Chair)

Dr S Mabizela (Vice-Chancellor)

Mr G de Jager (Honorary)

Mr MR Faku

Mr P Harris

Mr VD Kahla

Ms P Maurice

Ms I Mkhize

Mr R Mkhondo

Mr C Molusi

Ms Z Monnakgotla

Judge L Mpati (Chancellor, Honorary)

Mr D Neale-May (Honorary)

Prof S Nkomo

Ms N Nqweni

Mr A Sangqu

Mr K Socikwa

Ms C Southey

Honorary Life Governors

T Evans

A Gray

RD Hamilton

HS Herman

BE Hersov

PG Joubert

C Murray

RA Plumbridge

DB Riley

P Searle

CB Strauss

WS Yeowart

BS Rayner

CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY

Sir Basil Schonland, CBE, MA, PhD, ScD, DSc, LLD, FRS (1951-1962)

PJ du Toit, BA, PhD, DrMedVet, DSc, DVetSc, LLD, FRS (1963-1965)

WJ Busschau, MCom, DPhil, LLD, CA (1966-1976)

I Mackenzie, DSO, MA, LLD, CA(1977-1990)

GWH Relly, MA, LLD (1991-1998)

Professor GJ Gerwel, BA (Hons), Lic. Germ. Phil, Dlit. et Phil. (Brussels), LLD (1999-2012)

The Honourable Justice Lex Mpati, BA, LLB (Rhodes) (2013 -)

MASTERS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY COLLEGE

Sir John Adamson, CMG, MA, DLitt (1925-1930)

CW Bowles, MA, LLD (1931-1937)

J Smeath Thomas, DSc, LLD, FIC, FRSSAf (1938-1947)

T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1948-1950)

VICE-CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY

T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1951-1963)

J M Hyslop, MA, PhD, DSc, LLD, FRSE (1963-1975)

DS Henderson, BSc, MA, PhD, LLD, FCSSA, FRSSA, FRSSAf (1975-1996) *

DR Woods, BSc, DPhil(Oxon), DCL(Oxon), FRSSAf (1996-2006)

S Badat, B.Soc.Sc(Hons), Cert.H.E.Sc.&Tech Policy, PhD, D.Phil. (2006-2014)
S Mabizela, MSc(UFH), PhD (Pennsylvania State) (2014 -)

PROFESSORS EMERITI

JL Cattanéo, MA, BsLettres Diplôme de l'Ecole Supérieure de Professorat de l'Université de Paris Certificat de Phonétique Française, Chevalier des Palmes Académiques, *Professor of French 1958-1985**
A Noble, BSc, MEd, *Professor of Education 1971-1985*
JK Black, CA(SA), *Professor of Accounting 1977-1987*
D Fivaz, MA(HartfordSeminary), PhD(Wits), *Professor of African Languages 1972-1988*
R Mayr, DrPhil(Innsbruck), LRSM, Graduate in Organ and Pianoforte of the Bruckner Conservatory (Linz), Graduate in Conducting of the Mozarteum Academic of Music (Salzburg), *Professor of Music & Musicology 1973-1988*
BR Allanson, PhD(UCT), Dsc(Natal), FRSSAf, SACNS, *Professor of Zoology 1963-1987*
JB McI Daniel, MA(Cantab), PhD, UED(Natal) *Professor of Geography 1971-1987*
JN Suggit, MA(Oxon), *Professor of New Testament Studies 1976 Professor of Divinity 1969-1988*
TRH Davenport, MA(Unisa), A(Oxon), PhD(UCT), FRHistS, *Professor of History 1975-1990*
CW Cook, BA(UNISA), MA(Cantab), ThD (Princeton), *Professor of Ecclesiastical History 1970-1990*
TMD Kruger, BA(Stell), MA(Pret), DLitt et Phil(UNISA), *Professor of Psychology 1974-1989*
R van der Merwe, BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons) (UNISA), PhD(Rhodes), *Vice-Principal and. Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1986-1991*
DR Cooper, BSc(UNISA), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), AFISA, FSLTC, *Director, LIRI Technologies 1975-1991*
TVR Beard, BA(Natal), MA(Oxon), *Professor of Political Studies 1977-1991*
RB Brooks, MFineArt(Rhodes), *Professor of Fine Art 1981-1996*
ID Schäfer, BA, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Natal), *Professor of Law 1985-1997*
EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS, *Professor of Physics 1969-1998**
H Parolis, PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, MPS(SA), FRSSAf *Professor of Pharmaceutical Chemistry*

1978-1999
PG Surtees, MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA), *Professor of Accounting 1984-1998*
P van der Watt, MSc, PhD(UNISA), *Professor of Statistics 1971-2000*
B Potgieter, MSc(Farm), DSc (PU for CHO), DTD, MRPharmS, MPS(SA), *Professor of Pharmacology 1976-2000*
F Edwards, BSc(Lond), BD(Edin), DPhil(Oxon), *Professor of Contemporary Spirituality 1998-2000*
D Welz, Dr Phil(Hamburg), DLitt(Pretoria) *Professor of German (School of Languages) 1978-2000*
BP Gaybba, STL, SThDoc(Urban), *Professor of Systematic Theology 1989-2002**
PGR de Villiers, BA(Hons), BTh, Lic.Th, Dth(Stell), DrsTh(Calvijn Stichting), *Professor of New Testament Studies 1989-2002*
MAH Smout, MSc(Natal), MA(Newcastle), PhD(London) *Vice-Principal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1992-2001*
M van Wyk Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of English 1979-2002*
MG Whisson, PhD(Cantab), *Professor of Anthropology 1978-2002.*
ME Brown, BSc(Hons)(Wits), PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf, *Professor of Chemistry 1986-2003*
PL-M Fein, BA(Hons)(Hull), PhD(London), Officier dans l'Ordre des Palmes Académiques, KCM, *Professor of French 1988 - 2003 and Head of the School of Languages 1998-2003*
T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE), *Professor of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science 1986-2003*
WJ Kötze, BSc(Hons)(Stell), PhD(McGill), *Professor of Mathematics 1982-2003*
HR Hepburn, MS(Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas) *Professor of Entomology 1990-2003**
IA Macdonald, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Kansas) *Professor of Philosophy 1984-2004*
RE Jacob, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), *Professor of Geology 1990-2005*
J Charteris, BA(Rhodes), MSc(Illinois), *Professor of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1982-2005*
JH O'Keefe, PhD(London), *Professor in the Institute of Water Research 2004-2005*
PA Scott, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Stell), *Professor of Human Kintetics and Ergonomics 1999-2005*
FE Jaques, MA(UCT), PhD(Wits), Licence-eslettres(Dijon), *Professor in the School of Languages 2004-2006*

- PT Mtuzze, BA(Rhodes), MA(UNISA), MTh(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), *Professor in the Department of African Languages / Deputy Registrar 1988-2006*
- JM Haigh, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), MRPharmS, MPS(SA) *Professor of Pharmacy 200 - 2007*
- I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS(SA) *Professor of Pharmacy 1980-2007*
- PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon), FRSC, FRSSAf *Professor of Chemistry 1987-2007*
- JS Gouws, MA(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon) *Professor of English 1989-2007*
- CA Lewis, BA(Wales), PhD(Ireland) *Professor of Geography 1989-2007*
- CR Stones, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), MSAIP, IABMCP, CPsychol, AFBPsS *Professor of Psychology 1990-2008*
- DJA Edwards, MA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol *Professor of Psychology 1985-2008*
- PD Rose, BSc(Hons)(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Biochemistry and Microbiology 1995-2008*
- JR Duncan, PhD(Natal) *Professor of Biochemistry 1999-2008**
- GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Economics 1991-2009*
- AB Edwards, BA(Rhodes), MSc(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Psychology 2007-2009*
- JK Coetzee, MA, BD, DPhil(Pretoria) *Professor of Sociology 1987-2009*
- S Daya, BSc(UDW), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(MED) (MEDUNSA) *Professor of Pharmacy 2000 - 2009*
- PR Irwin, BA(Hons), UED, MEd(Natal), DEd(UNISA) *Professor of Education 1988 - 2009*
- JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(UCT) *Professor of Law 1992 - 2009*
- PS Walters, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of English 1982-2009*
- V Moller, Lic. Phil, PhD(Zurich) *Professor: Institute of Social and Economic Research 1998-2010*
- J Prinsloo, BA(Hons)(Durban), StDip(UCT), MA (Lond), PhD(Wits), *Professor of Journalism and Media Studies 2009-2010.*
- GE Staude, PhD(Rhodes), MBA(Cranfield), UED(Rhodes) *Professor in Business Administration /Management and Director Rhodes Investec Business School 2000-2010*
- PD Terry, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM, *Professor of Computer Science 1981-2010*
- PCJ Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester), *Professor and Nelson Mandela Chair in Politics 2003-2010*
- CEJ Botha, PhD(Natal), *Professor of Botany 1987-2011*
- P Skelton, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Ichthyology in the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology now SALAB 1996-2011*
- CG Whiteley, PhD(Natal), MRSC, CChem *Professor in Biochemistry 1979-2011*
- LS Wright, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Warwick), DPhil(Oxon) *Professor and Director ISEA 1990-2011*
- GJEG Berger, BJourn, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), BA(Hons)(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Journalism and Media Studies 1994-2011*
- MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf *Professor of Chemistry 2002-2012*
- JS Marsh, PhD(UCT) *Professor of Geology 1992-2012*
- PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens) *Professor of History 1991-2012*
- RCG Palmer, BA(Hons)(Durham), MA, DPhil(Sussex) *Professor of Anthropology 2008-2012*
- H van der Mescht, BA(Hons)(UPE), UED(UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Education 2008-2012*
- K Rowntree, MSc(Bristol), PhD(Strathclyde) *Professor of Geography 1986-2013*
- V Murali, MSc(Madras), MSc(Wales), PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 1988-2013*
- S Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Statistics 1986-2013*
- RB Mqeke, BJuris, LLB(Fort Hare), LLM(Rhodes), LLD(Fort Hare) *Professor of Law 1997-2013*
- A Webb, MA, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Economics and Economic History 2004-2013*
- RTV Bernard, PhD(Natal) *Professor of Zoology and Entomology 1996-2014*
- DGN Cornwell, MA, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of English 2010-2014*
- VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED(UNISA), PhD(UCT) *Professor of English Language and Linguistics 1991-2006, Dean of Students 2007-2014*
- CJ de Wet, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Anthropology 1995-2014*
- CM Mann, BA(Wits), MA(Oxon), MA(London),

Hon DLitt (Durban Westville) *Professor of Poetry in the ISEA 2000-2014*
 FT Hendricks, BA(UWC), MSocSc, PhD(Uppsala) *Professor of Sociology 2002-2015*
 NT Bishop, MA(Cambridge), PhD(Southampton), FRAS *Professor of Mathematics 2009–2016*
 AJFK Craig, MSc(UCT), PhD(Natal) *Professor of Zoology and Entomology 2004-2016*
 DA Hughes, PhD(Wales), Pr.Sci.Nat. *Professor in the Institute for Water Research 2005-2016*
 SE Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor of Statistics 2002-2016*
 AP Faure, Dipl (Agric) (US), MA (Economics) (US), DPhil (Economics)(US), PhD (Stell) *Professor: Foord Chair in Investments 2003-2016*
 M Neocosmos, BSc(Loughborough), MA (London), Ph.D. (Bradford, UK) *Director of UHURU 2013-2017*
 AN Hodgson, BSc (Liverpool), PhD (Manchester), DSc (Manchester), FRSSAf *Professor in the Department of Zoology and Entomology 2002-2018*
 C Boughey MA(St Andrews), MA(Reading), PGCE(Wales), DPhil(UWC) *Professor in CHERTL 2008-2018*
 D Wylie, PhD(Rhodes) *Professor in the Department of Literary Studies in English 2011-2018*

ASSOCIATE PROFESSORS EMERITI

FL Coleman, PhD(Edin), DipEd.(Glas), FRHS, FR.HistS, *Associate Professor of Economic History 1976-1987*
 HW Page, MSc(Natal), *Associate Professor of Psychology 1967-1988*
 NC Charton, MA Admin (Pret), BA (UNISA), UED(Rhodes), BTheol(UNISA), *Associate Professor of Political Studies 1968-1985*
 MEH Dickerson, MA(Rhodes), LTCL, LRAM(Lond), PGDEd, Acad DipEd (Lond) *Associate Professor of Drama 1966-1991*
 KS Hunt, BA, UED(Natal), MA(Rhodes), PhD(London), FRHistS, *Associate Professor of History 1980-1986, Registrar 1986-1995*
 ME Donaldson, MA(Durham), PhD(Rhodes), *Associate Professor of Ecclesiastical History, 1994-1995*
 DJ Eve, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FRSD, CChem, *Associate Professor of Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry 1981-1995*
 JA Nell, DipFineArt(Rhodes), *Associate Professor of Fine Art 1982-1995*
 PE Hulley, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Lond), *Associate*

Professor in Entomology 1989-2002
 RA Lubke, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MSc(Science Education)(Keele), PhD(Ontario), *Associate Professor in Botany 1984-2003*
 DA Hendry, MSc(Stell), PhD(UCT), *Associate Professor in Microbiology 1985-2003*
 BJ Wilson, BSP(Sask), MSc(Sask), PhD(Purdue), MPS(SA), *Associate Professor of Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1995-2003*
 NJH Heideman, BSc(Hons)(UCT), AM, PhD(Washington), *Associate Professor in Mathematics 1975-2004*
 AWV Poole, PhD(Rhodes), *Associate Professor of Physics and Electronics 1999-2005*
 PW Court, BSc(Agric)(Stell), HDE(Rhodes), MBA(Wits), PhD(Rhodes) *Associate Professor of Management 2003-2007*
 WS Jacobson, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Birmingham) *Associate Professor of English 2002-2007*
 WT Futter, MCom, PGDHET(Rhodes), ACIS *Associate Professor of Pharmacy 1996-2008*
 JRD Cobbing, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Lancaster) *Associate Professor of History 2000-2009*
 MH Burton, MSc(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) *Associate Professor of Mathematics (Pure and Applied) 2010*
 RJ Foss, BSc(Natal), MSc(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes), MACM *Associate Professor of Computer Science 1999–April 2014*
 D Rosenberg, BCom(Hons), CTA(Rhodes), CA(SA), HDipCoLaw(Wits) *Associate Professor of Accounting 2008–2014*
 R Dowse, BPharm, PhD(Rhodes), MPS(SA) *Associate Professor of Pharmacy 2004–2015*
 D Thram, PhD(Indiana) *Associate Professor of Music and Musicology 2006–2016*
 JC Wells, BA(Colorado College), MA(Yale), PhD(Columbia) *Associate Professor of History 2004–2015*
 JCS Lancaster PhD (Rhodes), CA (SA), RA *Associate Professor Accounting 2008-2018*
 MD Vermaak BA(Hons)(Stell), DrsPhil(Leyden) *Associate Professor Philosophy 1985-2018*

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED RESEARCH AWARD

1991 CD McQuaid, PhD(UCT)
1992 RTF Bernard, PhD(Natal)
1993 JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)
1994 PG Clayton, MSc, PhD(Rhodes)
1995 No award

1996 MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)
1997 EA Pakhomov, PhD(Moscow)
1998 ME Brown, BSc(Hons)(Wits), PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf *Senior Award*
1998 CJ de Wet, MA(Stell), MSt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) *Senior Award*
1998 EL Nel, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes), MA (Wits), PhD(Rhodes) *Research Award*
1999 HR Hepburn, MS(Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas), FRSSAf *Senior Award*
1999 M van W Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) *Senior Award*
1999 BJ Clark, BA, LLB(Rhodes), LLM(Cantab) *Research Award*
1999 PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes) *Research Award*
2000 JR Duncan, PhD(Natal) *Senior Award*
2000 NP Barker, MSc(Wits), PhD(UCT) *Research Award*
2001 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE) *Senior Award*
2001 PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc (Hons) (UNISA), MSc (Natal), DPhil(Oxon), FRSC, CChem, FRSSAf *Senior Award*
2001 L Meintjes-van der Walt, BJuris, LLB(UPE), LLM(Rhodes), LLD(Rijksuniversiteit Leiden) *Research Award*
2002 C McQuaid, PhD(UCT), FRSSAf *Senior Award*
2002 WHH Sauer, PhD(UPE) *Research Award*
2003 T Nyokong, PhD(Western Ontario), FRSSAf *Senior Award*
2003 AJ Booth, PhD(Rhodes) *Research Award*
2004 VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED(UNISA), PhD (UCT)
2005 SE Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) *Senior Award*
2005 MP Hill, PhD(Rhodes) *Research Award*
2006 GL Blatch, BSc(Hons)(Natal), PhD(UCT) *Senior Award*
2006 ML Chithambo, BSc(Malawi), MPhil(Sussex), PhD(Edinburgh) *Research Award*
2007 I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS(SA) *Senior Award*
2007 JE Burgess, PhD(Cranfield) *Research Award*
2008 P Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester) *Senior Award*
2009 PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes) *Senior Award*
2009 LS Wright, DPhil(Oxon) *Senior Award*
2009 R Simbao, BFA(Stell), MWS, MPhil(Toronto), PhD(Harvard) *Research Award*
2010 A Hodgson, BSc(Liverpool), PhD(Manchester), DSc(Manchester), FRSSAf

Senior Award
2010 J Limson, PhD(Rhodes) *Research Award*
2011 MH Villet, PhD(Wits), PGDHE(Rhodes) *Senior Award*
2011 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens) *Senior Award*
2011 S Vice, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Rhodes), PhD(Reading) *Research Award*
2012 D Hughes, PhD(Wales), Pr.Sci.Nat. *Senior Award*
2013 MP Hill, PhD(Rhodes) *Senior Award*
2013 JD Snowball, PhD(Rhodes) *Research Award*
2014 CM Shackleton, PhD(Wits) *Senior Award*
2014 LO Juma, LLB(Nairobi), Dip.Law(Kenya), LLM(Pennsylvania), MA(Notre Dame), LLD(UFH) *Senior Award*
2014 BVW Irwin, PhD(Rhodes), CISSP, MACM, MIEEE *Research Award*
2015 C Macleod, BSc(Natal), HDE, BSocSc(Hons), MEd(Psych)(UCT), PhD(Natal) *Senior Award*
2015 AL Edkins, MSc(Rhodes), MSc Forensic Sci (KCL), PhD(Glasgow) *Research Award*
2016 H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd (JP) (UPE), BEd, DEd (Stell) *Senior Award*
2016 D Nkomo, BA(Hons)(UZ), MPhil, PhD(Stell), PGDHE(Rhodes) *Research Award*
2016 J Coetzee, PhD(Wits) *Research Award*
2017 RH Kaschula, BA (Hons), LLB, HDE, PhD(Rhodes) *Senior Award*
2017 S Matthews, BA, MA(Pretoria), PhD(Birmingham) *Research Award*
2017 F Botha, BComLaw, BCom(Hons) (Economics), M Com (Applied Econometrics) (UFS), *Research Award*

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S BOOK AWARD

2002 JK Coetzee, MA, BD, DPhil(Pretoria)
2003 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens)
2004 TW Martin, BSc(Hons)(Adelaide), BA(Hons) (Adelaide), PhD(UNSW)
2005 P Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester)
2006 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens)
2007 BL Schmahmann, BFA, BA(Hons), MA, PhD(Wits)
2008 D Wylie, PhD(Rhodes)
2009 L Praeg, BA, MA, PhD(Stell)
2010 A Krueger, PhD(Rhodes)
2011 HJ Wasserman, BA(Hons), BJourn(Hons), MA, D.Litt.(Stell)

2012 CI Macleod, BSc(Natal), HDE, BSocSci(Hons), Med(Psych)(UCT), PhD(Natal)
2013 PC Henderson, MA(Wits), PhD(UCT)
2014 L Praeg, BA, MA, PhD(Stell), MEd(Rhodes)
2015 AC Garman, BA(Wits), MA(UKZN), PhD(Wits)
2017 GF Baines, BA, HED(UCT), BA(Hons) (UNISA), MA(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED TEACHING AWARD

1991 EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS
1992 PD Terry, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM
1993 GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE(Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil(UNISA), Couns.Psychol
1994 PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon)
1995 No award
1996 H van der Mescht, BA(Hons)(UPE), UED (UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes)
 PS Walters, BA(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)
1997 S Sparrus, BA(SocWork)(Witwatersrand), BSocSc (Hons)(UNISA), MSocSc, MA(I-O Psych) (UCT)
1998 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE)
1999 DJA Edwards, BA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol.
2000 S Daya, BSc (UDW), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (MEDUNSA)
2000 GE Gordon, BA(Hons)(Natal), MA(CNAA, Great Britain)
2001 M Lester, BCom, CTA(Rhodes), HDipTax (Wits), CA(SA)
2002 P Clayton, PHD(Rhodes), FICS, MCSSA
2002 L Vincent, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon)
2003 GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes)
2003 RC Fox, PhD(Strathclyde)
2004 CEJ Botha, PhD(Natal)
2004 TL Amos, BSocSc(Hons)(Economics), MSocSc(Rhodes)
2005 MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)
2006 L Praeg, PhD(Stell)
2007 DA Sewry, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FICSIT, MCSSA, MACM, MAIS
2007 CZ Tsampiras, BA(Hons) (Rhodes), MA(London)
2008 H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd(JP)(UPE), BEd, DEd(Stell)

2008 RH Kaschula, LLB, BA(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)
2009 KW Maree, MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA) *Senior Award*
2009 MJR Boswell, BSocSc(Hons), MSocSc(UCT), PhD(VU Amsterdam)
2010 J Finestone-Praeg, MA(Rhodes)
2010 J Gambiza, PhD(Zimbabwe)
2011 AC Garman, BA(Wits), MA(UKZN), PhD(Wits) *Senior Award*
2011 DA Seddon, MA(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab)
2012 JD Snowball, PhD(Rhodes) *Senior Award*
2012 L Raubenheimer, PhD(UFS)
2013 U Weber, Staatsexamen I (Bonn) *Senior Award*
2013 A Todd, MSc(Rhodes)
2014 ED Goosen, BSc(Hons)(UOFS), MSc(Weizmann Institute), PhD(UOFS), HDE(UPE) *Senior Award*
2014 KJ Barnard, BComp(UNISA), MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA)
2015 C Foxcroft, BMus(UCT), UPLM(UNISA), Kunstlerische Ausbildung, Kammermusikdiplom, Konzertexamen (Hochschule für Musik and Theater, Hannover, Germany) *Senior Award*
2015 JA Williams, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), HDE(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab)
2015 T Poole, BFA, MFA(Rhodes)
2017 JD Sewry, MSc(Rhodes), HDE(UNISA)

DISTINGUISHED AWARD FOR COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT

2008 W Wrench *Department of Pharmacy*
2008 S Srinivas *Department of Pharmacy*
2009 KM Ngoza *Department of Education*
2009 J Sewry *Department of Chemistry*
2010 M Gagayi *Sports Administration*
2011 A Terzoli *Department of Computer Science*
2012 AEM Sutherland *Department of Computer Science and Telkom Centre of Excellence*
2013 MP Hill, JA Coetzee, GD Martin and JM Hill *Biological Control Research Group*
2014 Jongaphambili Sinthemba Group from the Environmental Science Department (Professor S Shackleton, Dr G Cundill, Mr N Hamer, Mr M Ntshudu, Professor H Lotz-Sisitka)
2015 Siyahluma Project (SA Paphitis, L-A Kelland, CI Macleod, RR du Toit)
 2017 J Akhurst, *Department of Psychology*

HONORARY GRADUATES

1951
 Sir Philip Morris* LLD
 Sir Basil FJ Schonland* LLD

Sir Arthur Trueman* LLD
 Sir William K. Hancock* DLitt
 Lionel Bernard Goldschmidt* LLD
 Hendrik Johannes van Eck* LLD
1952
 Josephine Ethel Wood* MA
1953
 Sir Ernest Oppenheimer* LLD
 Hugh Le May* LLD
1954
 Rt Revd Archibald Howard Cullen* DD
 Davidson Don Tengo Jabavu* PhD
Hon Johannes Hendricus Viljoen* LLD
Hon Percival Carlton Gane* LLD
 Arthur Stanley Kidd* LLD
1955
 Ronald Fairbridge Currey* LLD
1957
 Rt Hon Viscount Malvern* LLD
Hon Albert vd Sandt Centlivres* LLD
1958
 Petrus Johann du Toit* LLD
1959
 Samuel Bonnin Hobson* LLD
 John Edward Holloway* LLD
 Revd Joseph Benjamin Webb* DD
1961
 Alexander Kerr* LLD
 Zachariah Keodirelang Matthews* LLD
1962
 The State President:
 Charles Robberts Swart* LLD
1963
 Ernst Gideon Malherbe* LLD
Hon Olive Deneys Schreiner* LLD
1964
 Thomas Alty* LLD
 Margaret Livingstone Ballinger* LLD
 Thomas Bouchier Bowker* LLD
 Cullen Walter Bowles* LLD
 Sir Evelyn Dennison Hone* LLD
 Harry Albert Kendall* LLD
 John Smeath Thomas* LLD
 Charles Haynes Wilson* LLD
 Sir John Douglas Cockcroft* DSc
1965
 Percival Robson Kirby* DLitt
 Harry Frederick Oppenheimer* LLD
 Very Revd
 Robert Henry Wishart Shepherd* DD
1966

William John Busschau* LLD
 Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw* DLitt
 Alfred William Burton* LLD
 William James Belt Slater* LLD
 Most Revd Robert Selby Taylor* DD
 Revd Abraham Johannes
 van der Merwe* DD
1967
 Col John Augustus I
 Agar- Hamilton* DLitt
 Hon Henry Gluckman* LLD
 Hon Johannes Nicolas Malan* LLD
 Frederick John Todd* LLD
 Mary Agard Pocock* DSc
 Jacobus Petrus Duminy* LLD
 Major the Hon Peter Voltelyn
 Graham van der Byl* LLD
 Adolf Schauder* DSocS
1968
 The Hon Mr Justice Oscar
 Hendrik Hoexter* LLD
 Revd John McDowall* DD
 Vivian Frederick M Fitzsimons* DSc
 Charles John Ross-Spencer* LLD
1969
 John Frederick Vicars Phillips* DSc
 Revd Cedric Edgar Wilkinson* DD
 Marjorie Emma McKerron* LLD
 Sir de Villiers Graaff* LLD
 Sally Herbert Frankel* DLitt
1970
 Monica Wilson* DLitt
 Ian Douglas MacCrone* LLD
 Reginald Arthur Jubb* DSc
1971
 Marjorie Eileen Doris Courtenary-Latimer* DPhil
 Hon Edgar H Brookes* LLD
 Clement Martyn Doke* DLitt
 Mattheiis Uys Krige* DLitt
1972
 Alan Paton* DLitt
 Andries Charles Cilliers* LLD
 William J Waddell* DSc
1973
 The Hon Mr Chief Justice
 Newton Ogilvie Thompson LLD
 Richard William Varder* DSc
 Victor Norton* DLitt
1975
 Ian Mackenzie* LLD
 Thomas Hugh Grocott* MA

1976

Margaret Stuart Fuller* DSocS
Charles Sidney Barlow* LLD
James Morton Hyslop* LLD

1977

The Hon Mr Justice
Johannes Dante Cloete* LLD
John Vernon Lockhart Rennie* LLD
Rt Revd Alpheus Hamilton Zulu* DD

1978

The Hon Mr Justice
Allen Gilmour Jennett* LLD
Sir Laurens van der Post* DLitt
Frederick Johannes van Wyk* LLD
William Hofmeyer Craib* DSc
Edgar Donald Mountain* DSc
John Douglas Roberts* LLD

1979

Winifred Alice Maxwell* DLitt
Hugh James Chapman* LLD
Francis John Hewitt DSc
Donald Bell Sole LLD

1980

The Most Revd
Bill Bendyshe Burnett* DD
Louis Dubb* LLD
Sir Michael Owen Edwardes LLD

1981

Lucy Buyaphi Mvubelo* DSocS
John Hemsworth Osborn Day* DSc
Jack Cope* DLitt

1982

Herbert Walter Pahl* DLitt
James Beaufort Sutherland* LLD
Cuthbert John Skead* PhD

1983

Basil Edward Hersov LLD
Athol Fugard DLitt
Joel Mervis* DLitt

1984

John Ashton Chubb* LLD
Cornelis Johannes Frederick Human* LLD
Denys Graham Kingwill* LLD

1985

Richard Stanley Cooke* LLD
Thomas Lodewyk Webb* DSc
Ernst van Heerden* DLitt

1986

Norman Stanley Bailey* DMus
Es'kia Mphahlele* DLitt
Raymond Ackerman LLD

1987

Margaret Mary Smith* LLD
George Howe Randell* LLD

1988

Cyril Lincoln Sibusiso Nyembezi* DLitt
Michael Roberts* DLitt
Stanley Gordon Shuttleworth* DSc
Julian Ogilvie Thompson LLD

1989

Robin Allan Plumbridge LLD
Theodoor van Wijk* LLD
Vernon Siegfried Forbes* DLitt
Noel Arthur Francis Williams* LLD

1990

The Hon Mr Chief Justice
Michael McGregor Corbett* LLD
Douglas James Livingstone* DLitt
Gwendolen Truda Brock* LLD
Helen Suzman* LLD
Denis Ian Gough* DSc

1991

Gavin Walter Hamilton Relly* LLD
Peter Humphry Greenwood* DSc
Leonard Walter Lanham* DLitt
Kathryn Freda Jagoe* PhD

1992

Chester Arthur Crocker LLD
Miriam Toba Dakile MED
Brian Robert Allanson DSc
Peter Malcolm Searle LLD

1993

Thomas Rodney Hope Davenport DLitt
Bennett Alexander Jacobson MPha
Nganani Enos John Mabuza* LLD

1994

Auriol Ursula Batten* PhD
Frederick Guy Butler* DLitt
Govan Archibald Mvunyelina Mbeki* LLD
Michael Conway O' Dowd* LLD

1995

Omar Hajee Suliman Ebrahim, JP* DSocS
Theocritus Simon Ndziweni Gqubule* DD
Alastair James Kerr* LLD
Alexander McGregor* LLD
Allan William Buchanan Gray LLD

1996

Frene Noshir Ginwala LLD
Cecil Edwin Frans Skotnes* DFA
Wilhelmus Hendricus Welling* DSocS

1997

Kader Asmal* LLD

The Hon Mr Justice Arthur Chaskalson* LLD

Derek Scott Henderson* LLD

The Most Revd

Winston Njongonkulu Ndungane DD

Conrad Barend Strauss DCom

Pieter Dirk Uys DLitt

1998

Aron Bacher LLD

Alexander Lionel Boraine LLD

Gert Johannes Gerwel* LLD

John Kani DLitt

Anthony O'Reilly LLD

1999

John Michael Coetzee DLitt

Aggrey Zola Klaaste* DLitt

Colin Legum* LLD

James Martin LLD

Wycliffe Mlungisi Tsotsi* LLD

2000

Richard Alan Charles Cock DMus

Robin David Hamilton LLD

Nombasa Nini LLD

Neville Wallace Zietsman LLD

2001

Emeka Anyaoku LLD

Fikile Charles Bam LLD

André Philippus Brink DLitt

Thelma Muriel Henderson* LLD

Donald James Woods* LLD

2002

Randy Bush LLD

Seamus Heaney* DLitt

Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela* LLD

George Nicholson DSc

2003

Sipho Arthur Mono Badela* DLitt

Michael Hartnack* DLitt

Ian Cedric Player* LLD

Stuart John Saunders LLD

Gertrude Christina Thomas LLD

Desmond Mpilo Tutu LLD

2004 (Centenary year)

Zisiwe Nosimo Beauty Balindlela LLD

John Wesley de Gruchy DLitt

Brian Patrick Gilbertson LLD

Hugh Sidney Herman LLD

Alice Maud Krige DLitt

Zenzi Miriam Makeba * DMus

Lex Mpati LLD

Dikela Billy Ndwibisa* LLD

Deryck Marshall Schreuder LLD

Amartya Kumar Sen LLD

Charles van Onselen DLitt

2005

Vincent Clifford Moran DSc

Navanethem Pillay LLD

Brian Shepstone Rayner LLD

Marjorie Morris Scardino LLD

2006

Johann Reinder Erlers Lutjeharms* DSc

Peter Magubane LLD

Trevor Andrew Manuel LLD

Derek Brian Riley LLD

2007

Zackie Achmat LLD

Graca Machel LLD

Fatima Meer* D.Litt.

David Randle Woods LLD

2008

William Joseph Kentridge DFA

Reuel Jethro Khoza LLD

Pius Nkonzo Langa* LLD

Bernard Lewis Fanaroff LLD

John Pilger D.Litt.

Jonathan Brian Shapiro LLD

2009

Dennis Brutus* D.Litt.

Sibongile Khumalo DMus

Lynette Marais LLD

Issa G Shivji LLD

2010

Gordon Mitchell Cragg DSc

Marlene Dumas LLD

Abdullah Ibrahim LLD

Kathleen Margaret Satchwell LLD

2011

Tariq Ali D.Litt.

George Bizos LLD

Herbert Kretzmer LLD

Basil Moore LLD

Joe Thloloe LLD

Lillian Cingo LLD

2012

Michael Noel Bruton DSc

Geoffrey John de Jager LLD

Leymah Roberta Gbowee LLD

Raymond Louw D.Litt.

Epainette M Mbeki* LLD

2013

Carol W Hofmeyr LLD

Vusi Sydney Mahlasela LLD

2014

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

Sydney Brenner DSc
Nokugcina E Mhlophe D.Litt.
Neil Turok LLD

2015

Saleem Badat LLD
David Nthubu Koloane DFA
Francie Lund LLD
Thulisile Madonsela LLD
Hugh Ramopolo Masekela DMus*

2016

James David Matthews D.Litt.
Beatrice Mtetwa LLD
Jeunesse Park LLD
Imtiaz Ismail Sooliman LLD
Edward Charles Webster LLD

2017

Marguerite Barankitse LLD
Linton Kewzi Johnson D.Litt.

Barney Ptyana LLD
Penny Siopis DFA
Sheila Sisulu LLD

2018

Sindiwe Magona D.Litt.
Peter Mtuze DLitt
Andrew Mlangeni LLD
Vishnu Padayachee DEcon
Yvonne Machaka LLD
Dikgang Moseneke LLD

** Asterisk next to the name depicts that the person
is deceased*

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

COMPLETED application forms for undergraduate admission to all Faculties should be received by 30 September in the Student Bureau, P O Box 94, Grahamstown 6140 for enrolment in the following year. Applications received after the end of September will be considered at the discretion of the Registrar.

NB late applications will only be considered at the discretion of the Registrar.

Admission requirements

The normal admission requirement for any undergraduate degree at Rhodes University is a National Senior Certificate with endorsement for degree studies. In addition, each faculty has laid down its own minimum requirements for admission.

All students intending to register as candidates for degrees must produce their National Senior Certificates or equivalent certificates either before, or as soon as possible after, entering the University. Failure to do so will result in a change in registration status.

Students who have attended courses at another university should obtain a transcript and, **if they attended another university in the Republic**, a certificate of good conduct from the university previously attended. Application for exemption for courses completed at another university should be directed to the Student Bureau with the initial application to the University, and must be accompanied by brief course outlines.

Registration

The academic year begins in February. Students are expected to register on the stipulated date in February. Late registrations may be accepted with the approval of the Registrar. However, a late registration fee will be charged.

Arrangements of curricula

Students must have their curricula approved by the Dean of the Faculty in which they are to study at the beginning of each year. The Dean will advise on courses and approve curricula on behalf of the Senate.

Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curricula, not only in the current year but for the remainder of the curriculum.

Discontinuing courses

Courses may be dropped **with their Deans and Faculty Officers**. Courses may not be dropped after the last official day of undergraduate lectures in May (1st semester courses) or October (2nd semester and full year courses).

Changes of course or Faculty

Undergraduates who wish to change from one course to another must discuss the proposed change with the Dean of the Faculty concerned or representative and, if a change of Faculty is involved, with the Dean of the Faculty to which they wish to transfer.

Closing dates for change of course

The final closing date for changes of courses is the End of the 2nd week of each semester **for semester courses**. However, a student may discontinue a course after this date with the permission of the Dean. **Students may not register for a full year course after the end of the 2nd week of the first semester.**

Full-time students

A full-time undergraduate student is a student who either is engaged in full-time university studies or is following a full curriculum. A full-time postgraduate student is a student who is engaged full-time in university studies.

Part-time students registered for a degree, diploma or certificate

A part-time undergraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies and is not following a full curriculum. A part-time postgraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies.

Part-time students not registered for a degree or diploma:

Occasional Students are those not registered for a degree or diploma, but who are following a course recognised as a credit towards a degree or diploma. See the Fees and Charges section

1. Occasional students must be in possession of a National Senior Certificate, and will be admitted to a course only if the Head of Department is satisfied that they will profit by the lectures for the course.

2. Occasional students must follow courses in full, which implies attending all classes, completing all class work and assignments, and writing examinations. They must earn Duly Performed (DP) certificates before being permitted to write the final examinations in any course.

3. The University reserves the right to ask occasional students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

NB The Registrar's approval is required before an occasional student who does not intend to take a degree, diploma or certificate may be admitted.

Casual Students are those who take a course for interest, and will only be admitted to a course if:

1. the Head of the Department concerned is prepared to accept them; and
2. the Department's facilities will not be overextended as a result; and
3. the Registrar's approval is obtained.

Such students must comply with the appropriate DP requirements, but may not write examinations for the purpose of obtaining credit towards any degree, certificate or diploma without converting their status and paying the requisite fee.

Casual students wishing to convert their status must comply with the admission criteria and rules of the University. The University reserves the right to ask casual students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

Admission to Residence

Only full-time students are admitted to residence.

Additional requirements for specific courses

Mathematics

For admission to the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 4 for Mathematics in the NSC or an equivalent pass. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate may not take Chemistry 1, Computer Science 1, Mathematics 1, Physics 1, without the level 4 pass in the NSC. See

Rule S.4 in the Faculty of Science.

For admission to the Accounting curriculum in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 4 pass for Mathematics in the NSC. Mathematics Literacy is not accepted.

For admission to the Bachelor of Business Science degree in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 6 pass for Mathematics in the NSC.

For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained at Least level 4 pass in the NSC. Mathematics Literacy is not accepted.

Biology or Physical Science

For admission to the Faculty of Science, candidates for the BSc degree must have obtained at least a Level 4 in either Biology or Physical Science. This is not required of candidates for the BSc (InfSys) degrees. For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained at least level 4 pass in Mathematics and a level 4 pass in Physical Science and Biology

Other Languages

For entry into French 1 or German 1, a candidate must have a pass at level 4 or above in that subject at NSC level, or an equivalent pass at another examination. French Preliminary, German 1 (Foreign Language) or Greek 1, may be taken without a pass in the language in question. Students who achieve a sufficiently high standard in the examination may be allowed to go on to the second course in the language.

See the relevant Faculty of Humanities Rules.

DP (Duly Performed) certificates

See Rule G.19 in the General Rules.

Advice to students

Students requiring advice on academic problems should consult either the relevant Dean of the Faculty or the Head of Department concerned. For advice on non-academic matters, they should consult the Director of Student Affairs, House Wardens, or the Student Bureau. The Career Centre and Counselling Centre are available for relevant advice.

Examination results

The results of June and November examinations are released as soon as they are available. The results will not be posted or given telephonically by the Student Bureau Staff, but will be available on the Rhodes University Web Page, <http://www.ru.ac.za>, under the heading ROSS (Rhodes Online Student Services); or by SMS (register for this service online at <http://ross.ru.ac.za/sms/>).

Information for Masters and Doctoral candidates

is available in the Higher Degrees Guide on the Rhodes University Web Page,
<https://www.ru.ac.za/registrar/forms/>

GENERAL RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

The conditions under which the University grants degrees, diplomas and certificates are laid down in the Rhodes University Statute, the Higher Education Act (No 101, 1997) and these rules are framed in terms of Section 32 of the Higher Education Act (No 101, 1997) as amended.

Credits: The Higher Education Qualifications Sub-Framework (HEQSF) requires credits as a measure of the volume of learning required for a qualification. The credit rating system rates 10 notional study hours as equivalent to one credit. A minimum credit-load of 120 credits per academic year is required for Bachelor's degrees and 180 credits per academic year for Master's degrees and Doctorates. In this Calendar the term "credit" is not always used in its strict sense.

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION

G.1

A candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate in any Faculty must comply with the conditions and meet the selection criteria set out in the University's admissions policy. The Council has the right to refuse admission to any student should it consider it to be in the interests of the University to do so.

G.2

Students are required, on admission, to register by signing the official registration form. Students must also pay the prescribed tuition fee. They must renew their registration and pay the prescribed fee annually as long as they continue to be students of the University; provided that students may be refused permission to renew their registration for any year of study if they fail to satisfy the prescribed minimum requirements of study. (See Rule G.7.)

G.3

Candidates for a degree in any Faculty must be registered as matriculated students of the University and for this purpose must be in possession of a National Senior Certificate (NSC) or its equivalent with endorsement for degree studies. In addition, applicants for admission may be required to have attained such minimum standard in a specified subject or subjects at the NSC or equivalent examination, or such other qualifications as may be prescribed.

G.4

The Senate may refuse to admit any student to

a post-graduate course of study in any subject if the standard of proficiency which the student has previously attained is not, in the opinion of the Senate, sufficiently high.

G.5

Registered students of another higher education institution who desire to be admitted to the University must produce a certificate, satisfactory to the Senate, as to their conduct at the other higher education institution.

G.6

6.1 Students may not be admitted to any course in any subject until their curricula have been approved by the Senate.

6.2 Such curricula may be modified only with the permission of the Senate.

NB *Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curriculae for each year of their registration. In selecting proposed majors, students should ensure that these subjects do not clash (including checking the timetable for subsequent years of these subjects). In the rules which follow, unless otherwise specified or clear from the context, "course" means a course that extends over one academic year. Two half-courses or two semester courses are deemed to be equivalent to one course. "Qualifying courses" means courses accepted as credits towards a degree, diploma or certificate.*

G.7

The Senate may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to benefit from further study, or if they have failed;

7.1 at the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete two qualifying courses:

and in the Faculties of Education and Humanities

7.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete four qualifying courses; or

7.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete six qualifying courses, including two non- initial courses:

and in the Faculty of Science

7.4 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained eight semester credits; or

7.5 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained twelve semester credits, including those for two non-initial courses;

7.6 at the end of every Calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses/semester credits for which they had been registered with the Dean's approval;

7.7 to complete the undergraduate degree within a period of five years;

and in the Faculty of Commerce

as full-time candidates for the BAcc, BBusSc, BCom or BEcon degrees;

7.8 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained ten semester credits; or

7.9 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained fourteen semester credits, including those for two non-initial courses;

7.10 at the end of every Calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses/semester credits for which they had been registered with the Dean's approval;

7.11 to complete the undergraduate degree within a period of five years;

and for students enrolled on the Commerce, Humanities or Science Extended Studies Programmes

7.12 at the end of the first year of the extended programme, to have achieved an average of 60% in the courses read in order to qualify for entry into mainstream courses in the following year.

and in the Faculty of Pharmacy

7.13 in the year of entry into the second year of the BPharm curriculum at this or any other university to complete second year courses to the value of sixty credit points, plus all courses of the first year curriculum;

7.14 in the subsequent years of full time attendance at this or any other university to complete courses to the value of seventy credit points per year;

and in the Faculty of Law

7.15.1 at the end of the first year of study of the four year LLB-programme, a student must have achieved an average of 65% for all the courses taken in the first year of study, and an average of 65% for all the law courses taken in this year of study, in order to progress to LLB2;

7.15.2 students in other years of study of the LLB programme will be excluded if:

7.15.2.1 they are registered for five or more courses in an academic year, and thus they fail 75% or more of the courses in that year, irrespective of the number of credits thus far obtained towards the degree; or

7.15.2.3 they do not fulfil the terms of academic probation.

G.8

The Senate may, after the mid-year examinations in any year, cancel students' registrations for the remainder of that year, and may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if the students are unable to satisfy, by the end of the year, the minimum requirements of study prescribed by the Faculty in which they are registered, and if they are not completing, will not be registered for more than one course in the semester following the mid-year examinations.

G.9

Except with the special permission of the Senate, a student who has been excluded on account of failure to satisfy the minimum requirements of study prescribed for in one Faculty may not be admitted to any other Faculty of the University.

NB Periods of attendance and examination results at another university are taken into account in the same manner as periods of attendance and examination results at this University.

G.10

A student may not be registered for more than one degree or diploma at the same time, or be registered as a student of another university, without the permission of the Senate.

ATTENDANCE AND WORK

G.11

A candidate for a degree or a diploma must attend the courses, perform the work and pass the examinations which are prescribed for that degree or diploma.

G.12

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, students are not deemed to have attended the University in any academic year or any semester unless they have attended for at least three-quarters of that year or that semester.

For the purposes of these rules "academic year" and "semester" are defined in the University Calendar.

G.13

A candidate who is not a full-time student may be required to devote to the curriculum for a degree, diploma or certificate at least one year more than the normal period specified in these rules. The

distribution of the courses in the curriculum of a part-time candidate is subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty concerned.

COMPLETION OF COURSES

G.14

Candidates for a degree, diploma or certificate must comply with all the requirements which Senate has approved for each subject taken by them for that degree, diploma or certificate.

G.15

An undergraduate course in any subject consists of not less than sixty separate class meetings in any year, and half-courses and semester courses consist of not less than thirty separate class meetings in any year.

G.16

Except as provided for in terms of Rules G.44 to G.48 or in terms of Faculty Rules, a candidate obtains credit for a course on meeting the requirements set for that course.

G.17

Except where otherwise provided in Faculty rules, or where in exceptional circumstances Senate waives this rule, students may not

17.1 enter upon the work of the second or subsequent course in any subject unless they have obtained credit for the preceding course in the subject; or

17.2 take examinations in more than one course in the same subject in a single semester.

G.18

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student must have obtained a minimum number of credits in first year courses, as specified in Faculty Rules, before entering on the second course of any subject.

ADMISSION TO EXAMINATIONS

G.19

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student may not be admitted to an examination in any course unless the Head of the Department concerned has certified that the student has satisfactorily attended the class meetings for the course under examination, and has satisfactorily performed the work of the class.

19.1 Certification of attendance and performance under Rule G.19 (usually known as “the issue of Duly Performed (DP) certificates”) will be notified by Heads of Departments to the Registrar after the last class meeting for the course.

19.2 Students failing to present themselves at the June examinations in any non-semesterised course in which any examination is set, without a medical certificate or other reason acceptable to the Senate, shall not qualify for a DP certificate for that course. Exemption from this rule may be granted by the Senate to a department which applies therefore.

19.3 In exceptional circumstances the Board of the Faculty, after consultation with the Head of the Department concerned, may reinstate a student’s previously withdrawn DP Certificate.

19.4 The following exceptions to Rule G.19 have been approved by the Senate:

19.4.1 DP certificates issued in another university may be accepted by the Board of the Faculty provided the Head of Department is satisfied that the standard and syllabus of the other university in the course concerned are equivalent to those of Rhodes University in that course;

19.4.2 Candidates for the BA, BJourn, BCom, BEcon, BSc, BSc(InfSys) or BSocSc degree who have completed the final courses of their major subjects, have attended the university for three years, have not more than two subsidiary courses or four subsidiary semester courses outstanding for the degree, and have left the University, may write the examinations in such subsidiary courses without re-attaining DP certificates; provided that, where practical work is required, evidence must be submitted to the satisfaction of the Head of Department concerned that the candidate has received adequate practical training.

G.20

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, certification in terms of Rule G.19 will be valid only for the examination of the year in which it is issued.

20.1 The following exceptions to Rule G.20 have been approved by the Senate:

20.1.1 A candidate granted a non-continuing pass may rewrite at a subsequent examination in order to obtain a continuing pass, provided that no special examination has to be set for the purpose. Students who have obtained a non-continuing pass in a course may enter, by application to the Dean, for examination in that course without earning a new DP certificate, provided they already had a DP certificate.

20.1.2 With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, the validity of the DP certificate of a student who is in attendance at the University may be extended by one year. In the Faculty of Commerce such extension

will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the FI level and students would normally be required to write and perform satisfactorily in class tests and in the June examinations. An application for such an extension must normally be made within two weeks of the start of the course.

20.1.3 In the case of students who do not return to the University in any year, the validity of their DP certificates for courses in which they failed or did not write the examination in the previous year may be extended by one year by the Dean of the Faculty after consultation with the Head of the Department concerned. In the Faculty of Commerce such extensions will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the FI level. Extension in terms of this rule will not be granted, however, to students who are refused readmission in terms of Rule G.7.

An application for such an extension must normally be made within two weeks of the start of the course.

20.1.4 Candidates registered in Faculties other than the Law Faculty who have achieved an aggregate pass (ACR) in Legal Theory 1, 2 or 3 on a previous year of study, and who achieved a result of 40% or more for any of the component semester course(s) failed in Legal Theory 1,2, or 3, may at any subsequent examination rewrite any such component semester course failed in order to obtain credit towards the LLB degree, provided that no special examinations has to be set for this purpose. Candidates must register in the Faculty for the component Legal Theory semester in terms of this rule at the beginning of the academic year. The coursework component will not be included in calculating the final result. Students registered for the LLB degree in the Law Faculty may not rely on this rule.

G.21

A student, before being admitted to an examination or degree, diploma or certificate shall pay such fees as may be prescribed in each case.

G.22

The Council may refuse to admit to an examination or to a degree, diploma or certificate a student who has failed to pay the required fees due to the University or to an affiliated institute.

EXAMINERS

G.23

An examination of the University qualifying in any subject for a degree, diploma or certificate shall be conducted by at least two examiners, of whom

at least one shall be an examiner who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination; provided that, in the case of an examination qualifying in a first or second year course, other than a final course for a degree, or any examination qualifying for a diploma or certificate, the Senate may waive the requirement that one of the examiners shall be a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the student for that examination.

23.1 Under Rule G.23 the University will appoint as one of the examiners for the examinations set out below a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination, and who is not in receipt of any remuneration other than examiner's fees from the University or from an affiliated institute:

23.1.1 All written examinations in final courses of degree and diploma subjects;

23.1.2 Practical examinations in final courses of degree subjects where required by departments;

23.1.3 All method courses for the PGCE;

23.1.4 The written examinations for the final year of the Music Licentiate Diploma, and all instrumental, practical and oral examinations in the Department of Music and Musicology.

G.24

The Heads of the University Departments in which the subjects under examination are taught shall, *ex officio*, be responsible for the examination processes in their respective departments.

EXAMINATIONS

G.25

The Senate shall be the final authority in deciding the result of an examination.

G.26

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the results of examinations for all courses shall be published under seven heads, four for successful candidates namely, class 1, class 2 (divisions A and B) and class 3, and three for unsuccessful candidates, namely, Failure 1, Failure 2 and Failure 3, in all cases in decreasing order of marks according to the marks obtained by the candidates.

G.27

Senate does not permit re-marking or re-examination of scripts. However, students in all Faculties may request a re-scrutiny of their scripts. Re-scrutiny entails checking that (i) all questions have been marked and (ii) marks have been added up and

transcribed correctly. Such a request should be made through the Office of Registrar within two weeks of the commencement of the University term following the examination concerned.

G.28.1

Senate will permit students in all Faculties to see their scripts. Applications in this respect must be made through the relevant Head of Department and can be made at any stage of the academic year.

G.28.2

Senate will permit students in all Faculties to obtain a copy of their scripts. Applications in this respect must be made through the Office of Registrar, accompanied by payment of the prescribed fee, and can be made at any stage of the academic year.

G.29

Applications under Rules G.27 and G.28 in respect of examinations must reach the Registrar accompanied by the prescribed fee within three weeks of the release of results. In exceptional circumstances Senate may permit relaxation of this rule.

29.1 The fee under G.27 and under G.28 will be refunded if the re-scrutiny effects a change to the students' advantage in the classification of their results.

29.2 The result of the re-scrutiny shall supersede the result of the original examination. Thus a student who applies for a re-scrutiny may be awarded a lower mark and thereby forfeit any advantage (e.g. permission to write a supplementary examination) accruing from the original mark.

G.30

Unless the contrary should appear from the context of these rules, an examination shall consist of such written, oral or other form of test as the Senate may prescribe in each case.

G.31

The examiners may require students to present themselves for *viva voce* questioning, in addition to the tests prescribed by the Senate under Rule **G.30**

G.32

The results of an examination written in a subsequent year on an extended DP Certificate shall normally be calculated by taking into account the same component elements, and the same proportions, as those used for the examination for which the certificate was earned.

G.33

...

G.34

Students who obtain a non-continuing pass and who re-write the examination later than the January/February immediately after the award of the non-continuing pass, shall be placed in the class which reflects the final mark which has been achieved.

G.35

The final marks for students re-writing an examination in terms of G.34 above will be calculated in accordance with Rule G.32.

G.36

Except as may otherwise be prescribed in these rules, ordinary examinations shall be held only at the end of each semester; provided that the ordinary examinations for the degree of Bachelor with Honours in any subject may also be held before the beginning of the following academic year, as may be decided by the Senate; provided further that a part-time candidate for the degree of Bachelor with Honours may, on completion of two years as a registered candidate, and with the permission of the Senate, write a special examination before the beginning of the following academic year.

36.1 Ordinary examinations will usually be held during June and November, save that examinations for the BEd(Hons) degree will be held in February.

36.2 The Senate will permit the examinations for the Honours degree to be held before the beginning of the academic year only in exceptional circumstances.

G.37

The ordinary examinations may be extended by holding supplementary examinations.

37.1 The results of the supplementary examinations shall be calculated by taking into account the same component elements as those used for the ordinary examinations.

37.2 The conditions under which a candidate may be admitted to supplementary examinations shall be prescribed by the Senate.

37.2.1 Except in circumstances provided for in this Rule or in Faculty Rules no supplementary examinations will be allowed in any second-or third-year courses.

37.2.2 Candidates registered for first-year first-semester courses may write supplementary examinations in November if they fail the course in June but attain the required sub-minimum.

37.2.3 Candidates in first-year courses may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department after consulting examiners, be admitted to supplementary examinations in January/February

in at most two courses (four semester-credits) in which they have failed in the ordinary examinations in November.

37.2.4 In all cases, the number of supplementary examinations awarded and the conditions attached to the awards will be at the discretion of the Board of the Faculty in which the candidate is registered.

37.2.5 Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses (or two semester-courses) prescribed for their degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course (or two semester-courses) may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course (or two semester-courses), provided that, subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, such course (or two semester-courses) is(are) not the final course(s) of a major subject. *

In addition candidates in the Faculty of Humanities will be subject to the provisions of Rule H.3.3.

** Exceptions approved by the Senate are: History 3, Legal Theory 3 and Politics and International Studies 3.*

37.2.6 Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses prescribed for the BPharm degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course, may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course.

37.3 Unless otherwise provided for in Faculty rules, candidates admitted to supplementary examinations in terms of Rule G.37.2 above will, if successful, receive a classified result, in addition to the original mark obtained.

37.4 In all those subjects offered at a given level as a pair of semester-credit courses, where both credits are not obtained, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair shall be deemed equivalent to credit in a 2-credit aggregate course for that subject.

37.5 Students who do not obtain credit in both components, but who meet the requirements of an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing credit (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing credit (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate subject, as the Department may allow.

37.6 Credit will not be given for an aggregate course in addition to credit for one or more of its semester-credit components.

G.38

Under exceptional circumstances, the Senate may admit a candidate to a special examination at any time, provided that:

38.1 The provisions of these rules are otherwise

complied with;

38.2 The full cost of such examination is paid by the candidate.

AEGROTAT CASES

G.39

An aegrotat examination may be granted by the Senate to candidates who by reason of illness, duly attested by a medical certificate on the prescribed form, or who for other reason acceptable to Senate have been unable to present themselves at an ordinary examination in any subject.

39.1 Applications must be made within one week of the date of the examination missed.

39.2 *Other reason* above would include the serious illness or death of a near relative at the actual time of the examination. In such a case evidence of the circumstances should be attached in support of the application.

[Forms are obtainable on the Rhodes Online Student Service (ROSS)].

G.40

Candidates who have been admitted to aegrotat examinations in terms of Rule G.39 but who are unable to write those examinations for similar reasons, may be permitted, if their previous work in that subject is deemed by the Senate to be satisfactory, to proceed to the next course in that subject and, on completing that course to be given credit for both courses. Alternatively the Senate may, subject to Rule G.39 above being complied with admit such candidates to subsequent aegrotat examinations. Such subsequent examinations, which may be in written or oral form are normally required to be held before the end of the following semester.

G.41

In cases where a student has already completed part of an examination, the Dean of the Faculty will consult with the internal examiners and the Head of the Department concerned before deciding whether or not to approve the aegrotat examination. In such cases the Dean shall have the power

41.1.1 not to award an aegrotat; or ,

41.1.2 to award an aegrotat in the whole examination, or

41.1.3 to award an aegrotat in those parts which have not been completed.

41.2 An aegrotat examination will not be granted to candidates who have entered the examination hall and seen any one of the papers or practicals of an examination and who subsequently report that they

were ill at the time of the examination.

(If it is found on medical examination that they are unfit to write, the necessary evidence/report is to be obtained by the student in support of their application on the aegrotat application form, which should be submitted within a week of the date of the exam missed.)

G.42

An aegrotat examination will not be granted to a candidate who is unfit to write as a result of having taken drugs or alcohol stimulants.

G.43

No application for aegrotat examinations will be considered unless DP certificates have been obtained in the courses concerned.

EXEMPTIONS

G.44

The Senate may accept, as part of the attendance of a student of the University qualifying for admission to a degree of Bachelor, periods of attendance as a registered matriculated student at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for the purpose, or accept examinations passed in any subject at such university or institution, or passed by an external student of the University of South Africa, or other examinations recognised by the Senate for the purpose, as granting exemption from examinations of the University in such subject.

G.45

Students exempted in terms of Rule G.44 shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor unless:

45.1 they have attended approved courses at the University;

45.1.1 in the case of the Faculties of Humanities, or of Science, or of Commerce, or of Pharmacy, for at least two academic years;

45.1.2 in the case of the Faculty of Law for at least the final two years; and,

45.1.3 in the case of the Faculty of Education for at least the final year;

45.2 their periods of attendance at such recognised university or institution, and at the University, are together not less than the complete period ordinarily prescribed for the degree;

45.3 they have passed such examinations of the University as the Senate may prescribe;

45.4 they have paid such fees as the Council may prescribe;

45.5 they have complied with any other requirements for the degree.

G.46

The following rules have been framed in respect of students who claim credit towards a degree of Rhodes University for subjects passed at another university -

46.1 Credit for courses passed at another university subsequent to registration at Rhodes University is subject to approval by Senate; provided that:

46.1.1 candidates for the BCom and BEcon degrees who have completed their major subjects may be granted credit for not more than three outstanding courses passed at other universities;

46.2 Credit will not be given for more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree at Rhodes University;

46.3 Candidates who have registered for a degree at Rhodes University for at least three years, who have completed at least one of their major subjects for the degree, and who leave the University, may be given credit for at most one final course of a major subject passed at another university, provided that the Head of the Department at Rhodes University is satisfied that the standard of the other university in the course concerned is equivalent to that of Rhodes University in that course;

G.47

Graduates in the Faculties of Humanities, Science, Commerce, or Pharmacy of the University who wish to proceed to a Bachelor's degree in another of these Faculties and who seek exemptions towards the degree in the second Faculty on the ground of having already passed in courses common to both Faculties are governed by these rules:

47.1 Exemption may be given by the Senate in not more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree in the second Faculty.

47.2 Exemption may be given only for first courses in any subject (the year in which such courses are required to be taken being immaterial), except in the case of three course subjects, in which exemption may be given for the first and second courses.

47.3 Any course passed for a degree in one Faculty, for which exemption is not granted for the degree in the second Faculty, may not be taken again as a course for the degree in the second Faculty.

47.4 The minimum period of attendance as a student in the second Faculty shall be two years.

G.48

In the case of a student holding the degree of Bachelor of Arts who wishes to proceed to the degree of Bachelor of Music or the degree of Bachelor of

Fine Art the following rules apply:

48.1 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, may grant exemption from not more than two years' work towards the degree of Bachelor of Music to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Music as a major subject.

48.2 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, may grant exemption from not more than two years work towards the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Fine Art Studies as a major subject.

AD EUNDEM GRADUM STUDENTS

G.49

Persons who have graduated at another university, or who are able to give a portfolio of satisfactory evidence of their suitability for admission into the degree, may be admitted as students to courses of special study and research at the University. Such persons may, on completion of such courses, be admitted to a degree of Master or Doctor; provided that they before being so admitted:

49.1 have paid such fees as may be prescribed;

49.2 have completed the work for the degree, as a registered student of the University, for the prescribed period of the degree;

49.3 have attended at the University such courses as may be prescribed;

49.4 have undertaken research upon a subject approved by the Senate;

49.5 have presented a satisfactory report, dissertation or thesis upon the research undertaken; and

49.6 have complied with such further conditions as may be prescribed by the Senate.

DEGREE OF MASTER (ALL FACULTIES)

G.50

Subject to the provisions of Rule G49 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Master in the Faculty of Humanities (except the degree of Master of Music and Master of Fine Art), or of Science, or of Commerce, until at least two years after admission to the degree of Bachelor or one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours in such Faculty, or, in the case of the degrees of Master of Education by thesis, Master of Fine Art, Master of Laws and Master of Music, until at least one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor. Special

entry criteria for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis are listed in the Faculty of Education Rules. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

50.1 Candidates for Master's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may register up to 1 May.

50.2 Normally only students holding an honours degree will be accepted as candidates for the degrees of MA, MSc, MCom, or MSocSc. Students holding an ordinary degree will be accepted only in exceptional cases.

50.3 Only students who have been admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Laws and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Laws.

50.4 Only students who have been admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Pharmacy.

50.5 Candidates who have obtained the BPharm degree may not present their thesis for a Master's degree until at least 18 months after the date of registration for the MSc or MPharm degree.

G.51

No persons shall be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master unless they have obtained the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned.

G.52

Candidates for the degree shall be registered for and attend an approved course of study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.50: provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

52.1 When a candidate's subject of research has been approved, such approval will remain in force so long as the annual registration fee is paid.

G.53

The Faculty shall appoint a supervisor, or supervisors, to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purpose of this Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a

faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff. Candidates may be permitted to register in an associated Research Institute without requiring a co-supervisor in a related academic department, but the research proposal must be approved by the Dean after considering a recommendation from a member of a cognate department. At least one of the supervisors for such candidates must be a member of the relevant Faculty Board.

53.1 The Senate has decided that candidates for the degree of Master who are exempted from attendance under Rule G.52 will be required to report in person to their supervisors from time to time as directed by the latter, and that the time in which such a candidate may qualify for the award of the degree will be extended by one year (i.e. they must be registered candidates for the degree for at least two years); provided that Senate may waive the additional year in the case of candidates who are conducting full-time research under approved conditions.

G.54

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty concerned, convert the registration of a candidate for the Master's degree by thesis to registration for the PhD degree if they consider that the work is of a standard normally expected of a doctoral student.

G.55

At least two months before the candidates present their theses, they shall give notice in writing to the Registrar of their intention to do so.

55.1 Candidates must submit their theses no later than the date published in the Calendar Diary in the year preceding that in which they hope to graduate.

G.56

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

56.1 Such copies, when submitted, shall become the property of the University.

56.2 The Senate requires that three suitably bound copies of the thesis be presented for examination. Additional copies may be required depending on the number of examiners. The Registrar will inform the student of the exact number of copies required.

56.3 After the examination process has been completed, the candidate is required to submit an electronic version of the final corrected thesis in PDF format for deposit in the University's digital repository, together with the Final Thesis Submission Form signed by the candidate and supervisor to the

Registrar's Division. Candidates and supervisors who would like a digital holding period of between 1 and 2 years before deposit in the digital repository, or a full embargo of the thesis, must request this in the Final Thesis Submission Form. The Library offers assistance and training to post-graduate students for PDF conversion.

G.57

A thesis shall be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidates as to the extent to which it represents their own work. This declaration must be approved by the supervisor.

G.58

If, at the date of its presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, and to make additional copies of it, in whole or in part from time to time, for the purposes of research. The University may, for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

G.59

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may not present themselves for the examination for the degree more than twice in the same subject.

59.1 An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Senate may, on the advice of the examiners invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

G.60

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

G.61

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Master of Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

**DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY
(ALL FACULTIES)**

G.62

Subject to the provisions of Rule G.49 a candidate shall not be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy until at least three years after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours (in any Faculty), or of Bachelor of Laws, or of Bachelor of Education, or of Bachelor of Music, or until at least two years after admission to the degree of Master.

G.63

Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in any Faculty shall be registered for and attend an approved course of special study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.62; provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

63.1 Candidates for Doctor's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may register up to 1 May.

G.64

Before registration, candidates for the degree shall obtain the approval of the Senate to the subject of special study or research which they propose to pursue.

64.1 When a candidate's subject of research has been approved, such approval will remain in force so long as the annual registration fee is paid.

G.65

The Senate shall appoint a supervisor or supervisors to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purposes of the Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a Faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff. Candidates may be permitted to register in an associated Research Institute without requiring a co-supervisor in a related academic department, but the research proposal must be approved by the Dean after considering a recommendation from a member of a cognate department. At least one of the supervisors for such candidates must be a member of the relevant Faculty Board.

65.1 The candidate shall work in such association with the supervisor as the Senate may direct.

G.66

Candidates shall submit a thesis on the results of their study which shows evidence of originality and independent research.

G.67

At least two months before candidates present their theses, they shall give notice in writing to the Registrar of their intention to do so.

67.1 Candidates must submit their theses no later than the date published in the Calendar Diary in the year preceding that in which they hope to graduate.

G.68

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each thesis. In exceptional circumstances one examiner may be internal to the University.

G.69

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

69.1 Such copies, when submitted shall become the property of the University.

69.2 The Senate requires that for a full thesis, four suitably bound copies of the thesis be presented for examination. Additional copies may be required depending on the number of examiners. The Registrar will inform the student of the exact number of copies needed.

69.3 After the examination process has been completed, the candidate is required to submit an electronic version of the final corrected thesis in PDF format for deposit in the University's digital repository, together with the Final Thesis Submission Form signed by the candidate and supervisor to the Registrar's Division. Candidates and supervisors who would like a digital holding period of between 1 and 2 years before deposit in the digital repository, or a full embargo of the thesis, must request this in the Final Thesis Submission Form. The Library offers assistance and training to post-graduate students for PDF conversion.

69.4 Every thesis must be accompanied by a double spaced typewritten abstract in English of not more than 350 words. In addition, if the thesis is in a language other than English, it must be accompanied by an abstract in the language of the thesis. No illustrative materials such as tables, graphs or charts should be included. The abstract must be approved by the supervisor of the thesis and will, in the case of successful doctoral candidates, be submitted to University Microfilms International for publication and distribution. The abstract must be bound together with the thesis and be placed immediately after the title page.

G.70

Candidates shall submit a declaration, satisfactory to the Senate, stating to what extent the thesis is their original work, and certifying that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

G.71

If, at the date of the presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies

of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, make additional copies of it, in whole or in part from time to time and distribute the content in whatever format it deems fit, for the purposes of research. The University may, for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

G.72

Candidates may be required by the Senate, if the examiners so recommend, to submit to a written or oral examination on the subject of their thesis and on the whole field of study which it covers.

G.73

An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Senate may, on the advice of the examiners, invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

G.74

A thesis accepted by the University, and subsequently published in whatever form, shall bear the inscription: "Thesis approved for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", or "Thesis approved in partial fulfilment of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", as the case may be.

G.75

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

GENERAL RULES FOR HIGHER DEGREES

G.76

Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of any candidates whose progress it considers to be unsatisfactory.

76.1 If candidates have not completed their Master's degree within three years from first registration or their PhD degree within five years from first registration or six years if their PhD was upgraded from a Master's degree, their candidacy will lapse unless the Senate is satisfied that an extension is warranted.

GUIDELINES FOR SENIOR DOCTORATES

G.77

When applicants indicate their wish to submit work for a Senior Doctorate, the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, supported by a full motivation, will consider recommending to Senate the acceptance of the work for examination.

G.78

If Senate approves the acceptance of work for a Senior Doctorate, the candidate must submit for the approval of the Senate, six copies of published work dealing with some subject falling within the scope of the studies represented in the University, or, in the case of the degree of Doctor of Music, a set of musical compositions, in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate. Normally the published work should be presented either conventionally bound, or in electronic form (in PDF format) on suitably indexed CD-ROM disks together with an explanatory synopsis. Such work shall constitute a distinguished contribution to the advancement of knowledge in that field.

78.1 Copies so submitted shall become the property of the University.

G.79

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each candidate. In exceptional circumstances one examiner may be internal to the University.

G.80

Every work submitted for the degree must be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidate, satisfactory to the Senate, to the effect that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

Candidates for a Senior Doctorate should communicate with the Registrar, in the first instance.

BREACHES OF RULES

G.81

Subject to the provisions of the Higher Education Act and the Rhodes University Statute, the Senate may *ex post facto* condone any breach of the rules governing a curriculum, if it is satisfied that:

81.1 the students concerned are not themselves responsible for the breach of rules;

81.2 if the breach is not condoned the students concerned would be put to undue hardship; and

81.3 the rule broken is not of fundamental importance.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE RULES

GENERAL INFORMATION

Bachelor of Business Science

The degree of Bachelor of Business Science is a four-year career-focused degree premised on the application of quantitative methods. The curriculum for this degree aims to provide a thorough grounding in the principles of the candidate's chosen field of expertise to the postgraduate level, supported by ancillary subjects which will equip candidates for the professional and managerial requirements of their chosen field at the highest level. To this end, Rule C.14 provides for five specialised curricula, enabling a student to specialise in one or more of the following fields: Economics, Information Systems, Management, Quantitative Management, and Computer Science. Entry into the second and fourth years of study for the degree is by permission of the Faculty Board.

Bachelor of Commerce

This is a three-year degree aimed at providing the graduate with a good academic grounding in the major subject areas of Commerce. The curricula provide for specialisation up to third year level in two or more of any of the following fields : Accounting, Economics, Information Systems, Law, Management, Science, Social Science and Statistics, in any of four curricula as follows:

The General Curriculum allows for a wide combination of subjects in second and third year including at least two major subjects. The curriculum enables students to qualify for or obtain exemption in respect of certain components of various professional qualifications. Further particulars are available from the Student Adviser.

The Accounting Curriculum is intended for students wishing to enter the accounting profession or to take the BCom degree with an accounting emphasis. If this curriculum is followed, the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy can be completed in one further year of study after credit is also obtained for Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3, and Taxation 3. The curriculum enables students to qualify for or obtain exemption in respect of certain components of various professional qualifications. Further particulars may be obtained from the Head of the Department of Accounting.

The Law Curriculum is intended for students wishing to enter the legal profession, or to take a BCom degree with a legal emphasis. Following this curriculum, a candidate can obtain enough exemptions from LLB degree subjects to complete the LLB requirements in two further years of study.

The Inter-Faculty curriculum enables students to include a major subject in the Social Sciences in their BCom degree, and, depending on the subjects chosen, is suitable for candidates interested in personnel management or industrial relations. This curriculum also enables students to include a Science major or any Humanities major in their degree.

Bachelor of Economics

This degree is designed for students who wish to include the maximum number of Economics courses and related subjects in their curriculum. The BEcon degree offers a suitable preparation for candidates interested in economic forecasting and analysis and economic planning, in both the public and private sectors. The following specialised curricula are offered:

The Bachelor of Economics (Environmental Science) is intended for students wishing to pursue careers in the economic aspects of environmental studies. The curriculum is designed to train students in the application of economic principles to environmental studies, and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

The Bachelor of Economics (Mineral Economics) is intended for students who wish to become economists with a geological background. The curriculum is designed to apply economic principles to the exploitation of mineral resources, and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce. Because of timetable constraints this degree cannot be completed in the minimum period of three years.

Master of Business Administration

The Master of Business Administration (MBA) offered by the Rhodes University Business School is a course-work degree together with a research mini-thesis of 15 000 words. The course-work comprises 124 credits and the research mini-thesis 60 credits of

the total 184 credits . The degree is offered on a part-time, modular basis over two and a half years or on a full-time, modular basis over one and a half years.

If part-time, candidates are required to attend three two-week teaching blocks in Grahamstown each year of the first two years and to complete work-based assignments in the periods between the teaching blocks. If full-time, the coursework is completed in six two-week teaching blocks in the first year. The final six months in both cases, is dedicated to the completion of the research mini-thesis.

The Rhodes Business School's essence is "Leadership for Sustainability" and hence leadership and sustainability principles underline all subjects in the MBA curriculum. Emphasis is placed on business continuity, as well as achieving a balance between economic, social and environmental sustainability. The school applies its own unique 4E (Economy, Ethics, Ecology and Equity) model in its teaching and learning practice. The Business School has committed itself to abide by the Principles for Responsible Management Education (PRME).

Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least a NQF Exit Level 8 qualification (i.e. a Bachelor Honours Degree, Postgraduate Diploma or four year Bachelor Degree) in any discipline, are proficient in English and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMAC™ Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

Master of Commerce Degree in Financial Markets (by coursework and thesis)

The degree is aimed specifically at a specialized career in the financial/banking sector. Exposure is given in the coursework to banking and monetary policy, debt and foreign exchange markets, equity and derivative markets, and portfolio theory and management. The coursework component is usually examined during the first year of academic study and the dissertation of approximately 30000 words is expected to be submitted by the end of the second year of study.

The coursework component constitutes 50% of the mark, with the balance being awarded to the dissertation. Admission requirements are those normally applicable to the Master of Commerce degree.

Master of Commerce Degree in Taxation (by coursework and thesis)

The coursework component consists of thirteen modules covering important aspects of taxation and tax planning at an advanced level, from which nine essay assignments are submitted for assessment. Two three-hour examinations are written on the coursework component. The dissertation on an appropriate topic would normally not exceed 30000 words. The duration of the coursework component is approximately fourteen months with examinations written on completion of the coursework component. The coursework and examinations together represent 50% of the total mark and the dissertation 50%. Admission requirements are those normally applicable to the Master of Commerce degree.

Commerce Extended Studies Programme

This programme is intended to supplement the instruction of major subjects within the Commerce Faculty. Students enrolled in the Commerce Extended Studies Programme receive additional literacy and numerical instruction via extended, augmented or developmental courses. Successful completion of the programme is recognized with the awarding of a certificate. Students, after successfully completing the two years of the programme, are awarded with 165 SAQA credits and may proceed to the regular degree streams offered by the Faculty.

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

This diploma is accredited by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants for admission to SAICA's Initial Test of Competence (ITC); however the diploma does not confer any professional rights. Graduates are entitled to complete their SAICA training contracts in three years instead of five.

Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management

The diploma equips graduate students who have not majored in Management or its equivalent with knowledge and expertise to start their own businesses and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business. The Diploma is offered on a one-year full time basis and on a part-time basis over two years.

Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation

The diploma builds upon the knowledge level of taxation achieved in any Bachelor of Commerce degree which includes Taxation 3 as one of its courses. It equips these graduate students with the specialised taxation knowledge and expertise to consult and advise clients in dealing with their tax affairs.

Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis

The diploma provides a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance.

Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)

The degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) is offered for students wishing to become computer specialists in a commercial environment. This degree combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce, and is administered by the Faculty of Science. See Faculty of Science Rule S.13.

RULES FOR DEGREES AND CERTIFICATES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Commerce only. Rules C.3 to C.11 apply to all Bachelors degrees in the Faculty. Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules no candidate shall be admitted to any of the degrees of

Bachelor in the Faculty unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration for degree study for at least the minimum time specified for each degree.

C.1

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Commerce:

Name To be denoted by the letters

Bachelor of Business Science BBS
NQF Level 8 (480 credits)

Bachelor of Commerce BCOM
NQF Level 7 (360 credits)

Bachelor of Economics BECO
NQF Level 7 (360 credits)

Bachelor of Commerce with Honours BCOH
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

May be taken in the following subjects:

Accounting, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Statistics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.

Bachelor of Economics with Honours BECH
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

May be taken in the following subjects:

Accounting, Anthropology, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Statistics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Politics, Psychology, Sociology, Taxation, Environmental Science, History, Philosophy, Geology.

Master of Commerce (by full thesis) MCOM
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)

May be taken in the following subjects:

Accounting, Applied Statistics, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.

Master of Commerce MCOM 1, 2, 4
(by coursework and thesis)
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)

May be taken in the following subjects:

Financial Markets, Taxation

Master of Economics MECO
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)

Master of Business Administration MBA
NQF Level 9 (184 credits)

Doctor of Philosophy PHD3
NQF Level 10 (360 credits)

May be taken in the following subjects:

Accounting, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy HDAC
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation PGTX
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management PDEM
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis PGBA
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

The degrees and diplomas comprise, among others, the following courses offered by the Faculty.

Code	Mnemonic	Subject name	*	NQF level	NQF credit
Accounting					
4101101	ACC 101	Accounting 101	S1	5	15
4101102	ACC 102	Accounting 102	S1	5	15
4101112	ACC 112	Accounting 112	S2	5	15
4101200	ACC 2	Accounting 2	Y	6	30
4101213	ACC 2PA	Principles of Prof Accounting	Y	7	30
4101300	ACC 3	Accounting 3	Y	7	60
4102100	AUD 3	Auditing 3	Y	7	45
4104100	TAX 3	Taxation 3	Y	7	45
4108300	MAF 3	Man Acc & Finance 3	Y	7	45
CHERTL					
400110A	ECO 1E1	Economics 101 Extended Studies	S1	5	0
41011F0	ACC 1F	Accounting 1f (Half Course)	Y	5	15
41011G0	ACC 1G	Accounting 1g (Half Course)	Y	5	15
420610A	MAN 1E1	Management 101 Extended Studies	S1	5	0
420610B	MAN 1E2	Management 102 Extended Studies	S2	5	0
Economics and Economic History					
4001101	ECO 101	Economics 101 Intro Micro Ecos	S1	5	15
4001102	ECO 102	Economics 102 Intro Macro Ecos	S2	5	15
4001201	ECO 201	Economics 201 Microeconomics	S2	6	15
4001202	ECO 202	Economics 202 Macroeconomics	S1	6	15
4001312	ECO 312	Economics 312 Int Trade Theory	S1	7	15
4001313	ECO 313	Economics 313 Public Finance	S2	7	15
4001314	ECO 314	Economics 314 Sa Economy	S2	7	15

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

4001315	ECO 315	Economics 315 Econometrics	S1	7	15
4001316	ECO 316	Economics 316 Bank+Int Finance	S2	7	15
4001317	ECO 317	Economics 317 Environmental EC	S1	7	15
4001318	ECO 318	Economics 318 Mathematical Eco	S1	7	15
4400400	BBS ECO	Economics 4 (BBS)	Y	8	120
4400405	BBS ECJ	Economics 4 (BBS) Joint	Y	8	60
Information Systems					
4207201	INF 201	Information Systems 201	S1	6	15
4207202	INF 202	Information Systems 202	S2	6	15
4207203	INF 203	Information Systems 203 (Acc)	S2	6	15
4207301	INF 301	Information Systems 301	S1	7	30
4207302	INF 302	Information Systems 302	S2	7	30
420740A	BBS INF	Information Systems 4 (BBS)	Y	8	120
420740B	BBS INJ	Information Sys 4 (BBS) Joint	Y	8	60
Management					
4206101	MAN 101	Management 101	S1	5	15
4206102	MAN 102	Management 102	S2	5	15
4206211	MAN 211	Management 211 Human Resources	S1	6	8
4206212	MAN 212	Management 212 Supply Chain Man	S1	6	8
4206213	MAN 213	Management 213 Marketing	S2	6	8
4206214	MAN 214	Management 214 Financial Man	S2	6	8
4206311	MAN 311	Management 311 Human Resources	S1	7	15
4206314	MAN 314	Management 314 Financial Man	S1	7	15
4206315	MAN 312	Management 312 Strategic Management	S2	7	15
4206316	MAN 313	Management 313 Marketing B	S2	7	15
4101770	BBS ACC	Financial Management 4 (BBS)	Y	8	120
410177J	FMN BBS	Financial Management 4 (BBS) Joint	Y	8	60
4400401	BBS MAJ	Management 4 (BBS) Joint	Y	8	60
440040A	BBS MAN	Management 4 (BBS)	Y	8	120

* Y=Year course; S1= Semester 1; S2=semester 2

C.2

Candidates for Bachelors degrees in the Faculty may present themselves for examination in the following courses; unless otherwise indicated each course listed is equivalent to two credits:

C.2.1

Accounting 1,2,3
 Anthropology 1,2,3
 Applied Statistics 3
 Auditing 3
 Commercial Law 1, 2
 Computer Science 1,2,3
 *Computer Science 101
 *Computer Science 102
 *Computer Science 112
 Economics 1,2,3 and 3B
 Industrial Sociology 2,3
 Information Systems 2,3
 Introduction to Philosophy
 # #Principles of Professional Accountancy
 Latin 1A or 1B
 Legal Theory 1,2,3
 English Language & Linguistics 1,2,3
 *Logic
 Management 1,2,3
 Management Accounting and Finance 3
 Mathematical Statistics 2,3
 *Theory of Finance and *Statistics 1D
 *Statistics 101, 102
 Mathematics 1,2,3
 Organisational Psychology 2,3
 Politics 1,2,3
 \$ Professional Communication
 \$ Professional Communication for Accountants
 Psychology 1,2,3
 Sociology 1,2,3
 Taxation 3

A course in a modern language

**Each of these is a one-credit course.*

Principles of Professional Accountancy normally taken in a student's second year of study and is compulsory for the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum

\$ *Professional Communication is a one-credit course offered by the Department of English Language and Linguistics. It is normally taken in a student's second year of study and it is compulsory for all Commerce undergraduate curricula except for the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum in which students are required to complete Professional Communication for Accountants, a one-term course*

offered by the Department of English Language and Linguistics in conjunction with the Department of Accounting.

For major subjects in the Faculty see Rule C.11.

C.2.2 Any approved course offered in the Faculties of Humanities or Science.

C.2.3 Any approved sequence of three courses leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or in the Faculty of Science.

C.2.4 Students registering for the degree will be allowed to choose as an elective a course not offered at Rhodes University, provided a strong case can be made for its inclusion. Permission will be granted at the discretion of the Dean.

C.3

For the purpose of the BCom, BEcon and BSc(InfSystems) degrees, credit in both Accounting 1F and 1G will be deemed to be equivalent to credit in Accounting 1.

C.4

For the purpose of these Rules, and in Rule G.7 as it applies to Commerce, unless otherwise indicated or clear from the context, "course" will mean a course which is equivalent to two credits, a one-semester course being equivalent to one credit.

C.5

The onus is on students to ensure that they register for a curriculum which will lead to a degree or diploma as the case may be. The Dean's approval of a curriculum does not imply permission to obtain a degree or diploma following a curriculum different from those contained in these Rules. Choices of subjects offered for a degree or certificate may be limited by the University timetable. Students who wish to take a degree over more than the minimum period of time are urged to consult the Dean or Deputy Dean to ensure that their choice of curriculum is feasible on the University timetable.

C.6

Credit shall not be given for:

Afrikaans-Nederlands 1 and 2 and also Afrikaans 1 and 2

Commercial Law 1 and Legal Theory 1

Commercial Law 2 and any course in Legal Theory

Psychology 2 and also Organizational Psychology 2

Psychology 3 and also Organizational Psychology 3

Sociology 2 and also Industrial Sociology 2

Sociology 3 and also Industrial Sociology 3

More than one of Statistics 1D, and Statistics 1

C.7

7.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate,

candidates may not proceed to any course listed in Group I below unless they have obtained credit in, or have been exempted from, the corresponding prerequisite course listed in Group II.

Group I	Group II
Applied Statistics 3	Mathematics 1 Statistics 102 and Mathematical Statistics 2
Auditing 3	Accounting 2 and Principles of Professional Accountancy
Computer Science 3	Computer Science 2 and Mathematics 1C1 (MAT 1C1)
Industrial Sociology 2	Sociology 1
Information Systems 2	Computer Science 112
Legal Theory 3	Legal Theory 2
Management 2	Management 1, Accounting 1
Management 3	Accounting 1, Economics 1, Management 2, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D
Management Accounting and Finance 3	Accounting 2, and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1
Mathematical Statistics 2	Mathematics 1 and Statistics 102
Mathematical Statistics 3	Mathematics 1 Statistics 102 and Mathematical Statistics 2
Organisational Psychology 3	Organisational Psychology 2
Taxation 3	Accounting 2 and Principles of Professional Accountancy

7.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the courses Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D, 101, 102 unless they have obtained at least an Admission Points Score (APS) in Mathematics of 4 or higher in the National Senior Certificate or a pass in Mathematics at another examination deemed to be equivalent thereto. Candidates seeking admission to the BBS Degree require Mathematics at a rating 6 or above.

7.3 Candidates who have credit in Management 1 may register for Management 2 only if they have credit in, or are concurrently registered for, Accounting 1.

7.4 Candidates who obtain credit in Latin 1B may proceed to Latin 2 only with the permission of the Head of the School of Languages.

7.5 Candidates who have passed Organizational Psychology 2 may be permitted by Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department to take Psychology 3. Candidates who have completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Organizational Psychology 3 except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set, in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

7.6 A student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for Information Systems 2.

7.7 Owing to physical constraints, it may be necessary to limit the numbers of students admitted to Information Systems 2 and 3. Should this become necessary, candidates may be required either to have completed the first year towards a degree or to have obtained at least ten credits before being admitted to Information Systems 2. Should the number of candidates qualifying for admission to Information Systems 2 and 3 exceed the number that can be admitted, admission will be on merit, and those who fail to be thus admitted will be given priority for the following year.

7.8 Save with the permission of the Head of the Department of English Language and Linguistics, a student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for the course Professional Communication.

7.9 Students wishing to proceed to the final year of the BCom (Accounting) degree and register for Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3 must have obtained a mark of 60% or greater for Accounting 2. Students who obtain a mark of 50-59% for Accounting 2 will only be permitted to register for Accounting 3 and two of: Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3.

C.8

Candidates taking a course in the Faculty of Humanities shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.3, H.4, H.5, H.6, H.13, H.14.

C.9

Candidates taking Mathematics or a course given only in the Faculties of Science and Pharmacy shall be governed by the provisions of the Rules S.4 and S.23.

C.10

10.1 Candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than twelve credits in the first academic year and ten credits in the second academic year.

10.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than seven semester credits in any year of study in which they are engaged on the final course of a major subject (normally no more than three in any semester, plus Professional Communication). The exception approved by the Senate being Accounting 3 when taken with Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3, and Taxation 3.

10.3 For all Bachelors degrees, candidates with fewer than six credits shall be deemed to be in the first year of study for the degree. Candidates with six or more credits, but with fewer than sixteen credits, shall be deemed to be in the second year of study unless they are registered for the final courses of at least two major subjects for the degree. Candidates who have at least sixteen credits towards the degree, or who are registered for the final courses in at least two major subjects shall be deemed to be in the third year of study.

10.4 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have obtained credit in at least two courses before they may enter on the second course in any subject.

10.5 Last Outstanding Credit – Supplementary Examinations:

- a) Last outstanding credits will be allowed only for the last semester credit outstanding for the degree, provided this applies to one discipline only, and to a course written in the final calendar year of study; and
- b) Provided the student has a Duly Performed Certificate for the course concerned.

C.11

The degree certificates of candidates for three-year Bachelor's degrees who pass in Class I in the third year course of any subject listed in C.2.1 and C.2.3, shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. These subjects shall be regarded as major subjects within the Faculty. For the purpose of this Rule the final mark in these courses shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of their component semester courses.

NB Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3 are not regarded as third year courses for the purpose of this Rule.

C.12

Aggregation Rules:

- a) Aggregation is permitted between semester papers written in the same academic year and with the supplementary papers written in February of the following year. Where the February result is invoked the supplementary mark is recorded on the transcript as "P" in the event of a pass and "ACR" where the mark results in an overall aggregated pass.
- b) In Accounting 1 students obtaining between 40-49% in Accounting 101, together with a corresponding mark of 51% and above for Accounting 102, and an aggregate mark of 50% or more, are awarded a continuing credit to Accounting

2. Where the student passes Accounting 101 but fails 102 with a mark of between 40-49%, and aggregates to 50% or more a non-continuing credit is awarded.

c) A credit for Management Accounting and Financial Management will only be awarded where students have successfully completed both MAF 101 and MAF 102.

d) For other subjects administered by the Commerce Faculty (Economics, Information Systems and Management) aggregation is permitted where one semester has been failed at the 45-49% level, provided that the overall average mark for the two semester marks is 50% or more.

e) Where a course consists of 4 modules aggregation is permitted where 3 modules (papers) are passed and the fourth failed with a mark of 40% or more, provided that the overall average mark for the 4 modules is 50% or more.

f) Where a course consists of 4 modules aggregation is permitted where 2 modules (papers) are passed and two failed with marks between 45 and 49%, provided that the overall average mark for the 4 modules is 50% or more.

g) Subminima for other subjects taken by Commerce students may differ from this rule but aggregation always conforms to (a) above.

C.13

All students registered for a degree in the Faculty are required to pass Economics 1 and 2.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF BUSINESS SCIENCE

C.14

14.1 The curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Business Science shall extend over not less than four years of full-time study.

14.2 Candidates who do not pass all the courses for the Degree in the first year of study will be automatically reregistered in the second year as Bachelor of Commerce / Economics students with the approval of the Board of the Faculty.

14.3 Admission to the fourth year of study for the degree is subject to approval by the Board of the Faculty.

14.4 Candidates will not be admitted to any fourth year course for the degree if they have not obtained credit in or been exempted from all the courses prescribed for the first three years of study for the degree.

14.5 Candidates normally require a minimum of 60% in their third year of study in the subject they

wish to continue with in their fourth year.

14.6 Candidates wishing to be admitted to the fourth year of study in any discipline must note that the course can only be offered to a limited number of students. Departments reserve the right to select the best students regardless of the degree being studied.

14.7 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who fail the fourth year will, depending on courses passed, be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Commerce or the degree of Bachelor of Economics.

14.8 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who have the required credits, may elect to be awarded the BCom or BEcon degree. Such candidates may not subsequently be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Business Science, but may be admitted to an Honours degree.

14.9 A paper in Strategic Management in the fourth year is compulsory for all students reading for full Management Honours, as well as those joint-honours students where Management is the dominant component. Other fourth year students may elect to read a paper in Strategic Management, which will count as 20% of their final fourth year mark. The weighting of the Strategic Management course for joint-honours students not reading Management as the dominant component, and in which Management is either a minor component or not taken at the fourth year level, will be split equally (10%) between the two Departments in which the student is studying.

14.10 All candidates are required to submit a research essay/project in partial fulfilment of the fourth year of study. Where the candidate is taking the 60/40 split between two subjects, the research essay is normally supervised and examined by the dominant department. This paper will represent a maximum of 20% of the course content of the fourth year of study.

Candidates for the degree should note that they may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.14, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule.

NB It is important that candidates plan their curricula fully in advance to ensure feasibility on the lecture timetable.

CURRICULUM 1 (Economics)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 & Statistics 1D or Statistics

102 (prerequisite for MST 2)

3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2
4. Management 2
5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One of: Management 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3

Year 4

1. Economics Honours
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

CURRICULUM 2 (Information Systems)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 and Statistics 1D or Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Information Systems 2
2. Economics 2
3. Mathematical Statistics 2 or Mathematics 2
4. Management 2 or Accounting 2
5. Commercial Law 1

Year 3

1. Information Systems 3
2. One of: Economics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Management 3; Accounting 3
3. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Information Systems Honours or Joint Honours. (as prescribed in Rule C.16)
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

CURRICULUM 3 (Management)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 & Statistics 1D or Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Management 2
2. Economics 2
3. Accounting 2 or Information Systems 2
4. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2
5. Commercial Law 1

Year 3

1. Management 3
2. One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3
3. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Management Honours, or Joint Honours (*as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2*)
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

CURRICULUM 4 (Quantitative Management)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 and Statistics 1D or Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Mathematical Statistics 2
2. Economics 2
3. Two of: Management 2; Information Systems 2; Accounting 2; Mathematics 2
4. Commercial Law 1
5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Mathematical Statistics 3
2. One of: Economics 3; Management 3; Information Systems 3; Accounting 3; Mathematics 3

Year 4

1. Mathematical Statistics Honours, or Joint Honours (*as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2*).
2. Strategic Management. (C.14.9)

CURRICULUM 5 (Computer Science)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1
6. Statistics 1D or Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)

NB: Candidates should register for Computer

Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year.

Year 2

1. Computer Science 2
2. Economics 2
3. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2
4. Management 2 or Information Systems 2
5. Commercial Law 1

Year 3

1. Computer Science 3
2. One of: Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3
3. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Computer Science Honours or Joint Honours (*as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2*).
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

A. THE ORDINARY DEGREE

C.15

15.1 Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain at least twenty-three credits in the courses contained in one of the curricula set out below.

15.2 Candidates offering more than the minimum number of courses for the degree must select the additional courses from those listed in C.2.1.

15.3 Candidates for the degree may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.14.3, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule. Thus, for example, a candidate wishing to include Computer Science 2 in Curriculum 1 must take Computer Science 1 as the option in item 4 of Year 2, but must take the course in Year 1, and the course it displaces in Year 1, in Year 2. Similarly a candidate wishing to take Information Systems 2 in Year 2 must take Computer Science 112 in Year 1 and any semester course in Year 1 omitted as a consequence, in Year 2 or thereafter.

CURRICULUM 1 (General)

This curriculum is intended for candidates who wish to specialise in one or more of the following fields: Economics, Information Systems, Management, Statistics.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1 or Psychology 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D or Mathematics 1

NB See Rule C.15.3 above. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D. They should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
3. One of: A course listed in (2) above not already taken; Computer Science 2; Commercial Law 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Organisational Psychology 2
4. Commercial Law 1; if already taken: any other two-credit course, or two one-credit courses, from C.2.1 or C.2.2 (*Attention is drawn to Rule C.6*)
5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3
2. One of: A course listed in (1) above not already taken; Applied Statistics 3; Computer Science 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Organisational Psychology 3

CURRICULUM 2 (Accounting)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Computer Science 112
4. Economics 1
5. Management 1
6. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D

Year 2

1. Accounting 2
2. Economics 2
3. Information Systems 2
4. Principles of Professional Accountancy
5. Professional Communication for Accountants

Year 3*

1. Accounting 3
2. Two** of: Auditing 3; Management Accounting

and Finance 3; Taxation 3

3. -

** Candidates may not take any other course if all four of Accounting 3; Auditing 3; Management Accounting and Finance 3; and Taxation 3 are taken. See also rule C.7.9.*

*** Candidates who intend to take the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy must include all three of these subjects in their curriculum.*

CURRICULUM 3 (Law)

Year 1

1. Legal Theory 1
2. Accounting 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. One of the following: A course in a modern language; Latin 1A or Latin 1B; Mathematics 1 or 1E, or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D

NB See Rule C.15.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D.

Year 2

1. Legal Theory 2
2. Economics 2
3. One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
4. Any other two-course, or two one-credit courses, from C.2.1, or C.2.2
5. Professional Communication (*Attention is drawn to Rule C.6*)

Year 3

1. Legal Theory 3
2. One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

CURRICULUM 4 (Inter-Faculty)*

NB Candidates are reminded of the need to plan any proposed curriculum with regard to its viability in terms of the University lecture timetable.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Economics 1
3. Management 1
4. A first-year course leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
5. One of the following: Commercial Law 1; Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D, or Mathematics 1

NB See Rule C.15.3. Candidates are reminded

that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D.

Year 2

1. A second-year course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
2. Economics 2
3. One of the following: Accounting 2; Commercial Law 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
4. Commercial Law 1; if already taken: any two credit course or two one-credit courses from C.2.1 or C.2.2 (*Attention is drawn to Rule C.6*)
5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. The final course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
2. One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

** For the purpose of this curriculum a major in the Faculties of Humanities and Science will be any major subject which can be taken for the BA, BSocSc and BSc degrees, excluding Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Information Systems, Legal Theory and Management.*

B. THE HONOURS DEGREE

C.16

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree (excepting Legal Theory), or in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

C.17

17.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course in the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to the honours course unless they have obtained a good second class pass in the final undergraduate year in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

17.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided that:

17.2.1 they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to Honours in that subject;

17.2.2 the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

17.2.3 the Heads of the Departments concerned and the Dean of the Faculty approve such arrangements.

17.2.4 Accounting Honours may not be taken jointly

with any other subject.

C.18

Candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after being admitted to the ordinary degree or to the status of that degree and shall pursue a course of advanced study in the chosen subject.

C.19

The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study. Such candidates may not take up any full-time employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another department concurrently with their honours degree.

C.20

Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Economics and Economic History, a full-time candidate who has been awarded the ordinary degree may be permitted to take the Honours and Master's degree in Economics concurrently. The candidate shall write the full Honours examination in no more than two years, and if successful may submit the Master's thesis at any subsequent date without further attendance requirements, provided the candidate remains a registered student.

C.21

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit a student to take an honours course as a part-time student: Provided that:

21.1 the honours classes are attended within the normal timetable of the Department; and

21.2 the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of Senate, not more than two years.

C.22

Candidates taking the honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

C.23

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates shall not be permitted to present themselves for the examinations for the degree more than once in the same subject.

C.24

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate candidates must write all parts of the examination at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination, provided that a part-time candidate, or a candidate taking the degree over two years, may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study and part at the end of the second year of study.

C.25

Exceptions have been approved by Senate for the following subjects, and in these subjects parts of the Honours examination may be written at the discretion of the Head of the Department at any official examination session of the University pertaining to the period of study prescribed in Rules 6 and 8:

Computer Science,
Economics,
Information Systems,
Management,
Mathematics,
Statistics.

C.26

Candidates will not be admitted to the Honours degree in Accounting (Financial Accounting) unless they have achieved at least the minimum requirements for admission to the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy set out in Rules C.32 and C.33.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

C.27

Candidates will not be admitted to the Honours degree in Accounting (Financial Management) unless they have achieved the requirements for admission to the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy set out in Rules C.32. This implies the requirement to pass papers 1 to 6 in aggregate and to satisfy the requirements of Rule C.23.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ECONOMICS

C.28

The degree of Bachelor of Economics may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

A. THE ORDINARY DEGREE

C.29

Candidates must obtain at least twenty-three credits as set out in the following curricula.

CURRICULUM 1 (Business Sciences)

Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D, or Mathematics 1
3. Two from: Accounting 1; Commercial Law 1; Computer Science 1; Management 1; Statistics 1; an approved course.

NB: Candidates should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year.

See Rules C.6 and C.7.1.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Two from: Accounting 2; Computer Science 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; one other approved non-initial course.
3. Any two-credit course, or two one-credit courses from C.2.1 or C.2.2.
4. Professional Communication

See Rule C.2.

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One from: Accounting 3; Applied Statistics 3; Computer Science 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; the final course of an approved major subject.

CURRICULUM 2 (Environmental Science)

Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D; or Mathematics 1
3. Earth Science 101 and Geography 102, plus one from: Anthropology 1; Botany 1; Geology 102; Zoology 1
4. Management 1

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Environmental Science 2
3. One of: Management 2; Information Systems 2 (if Computer Science 112 passed in Year 1)
4. One of: Accounting 1; Botany 2; Geography 2; Zoology 2; Computer Science 112 and any one credit course
5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Economics 3
2. Environmental Science 3.

CURRICULUM 3 (Social Sciences)

Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D, or Mathematics 1
3. Two from: Anthropology 1; History 1; Introduction to Philosophy; Management 1; Politics 1; Psychology 1; Sociology 1; one other approved course.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Two from: Anthropology 2; History 2; Industrial Sociology 2; Management 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; Organisational Psychology 2; Philosophy 2; Politics 2; Psychology 2; Sociology 2; one other approved non-initial course.
3. Any two-credit course, or two one-credit courses, from C.2.1 or C.2.2.
4. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One of: Anthropology 3; History 3; Industrial Sociology 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Organisational Psychology 3; Philosophy 3; Politics 3; Psychology 3; Sociology 3; the final course of an approved major subject.

CURRICULUM 4 (Mineral Economics)

This degree may be required to be taken over more than three years because of timetable clashes which cannot be resolved.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Chemistry 1
3. Economics 1
4. Geology 1
5. Management 1

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Geology 2
3. Management 2
4. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D
5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Economics 3
2. Geology 3

B. THE HONOURS DEGREE

C.30

The degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree, or in Operations Research, or in a combination of any two of these subjects.

C.31

Rules C.17 to C.25 above shall also apply to the degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

The Master of Business Administration (MBA) offered by the Rhodes Business School is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis.

The curriculum is weighted as follows: Coursework: 124 credits Research Mini-Thesis: 60 credits. The degree is offered on a part-time, modular basis over two and a half years or on a full-time, modular basis over one and a half years.

If part-time, candidates are required to attend three two-week teaching blocks in Grahamstown each year of the first two years and to complete work-based assignments in the periods between the teaching blocks. If full-time, the coursework is completed in six two-week teaching blocks in the first year. The final six months in both cases, is dedicated to the completion of the research mini-thesis.

The Rhodes University Business School's essence is "Leadership for Sustainability" and hence leadership and sustainability principles underline all subjects in the MBA curriculum. Emphasis is placed on business continuity, as well as achieving a balance between economic, social and environmental sustainability. The school applies its own unique 4E (Economy, Ethics, Ecology and Equity) model in its teaching and learning practice. The school has committed itself to abide by the Principles for Responsible Management Education (PRME). Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least an NQF Exit Level 8 qualification (i.e. a Bachelor Honours Degree, Postgraduate Diploma or four year Bachelor Degree) in any discipline, are proficient in English and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMAC™ Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

The coursework component comprises a number of modules, comprising compulsory and elective, which are assessed by a mixture of assignments, texts and/or examinations, depending on the credit weighting of the module, which together count 67% of the degree. Each module comprising the coursework component of the degree must be

passed. The research mini-thesis component which counts 33% of the degree must be passed.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE IN FINANCIAL MARKETS CURRICULUM:

The Master of Commerce in Financial Markets (MCom (Financial Markets)) is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis. The curriculum is weighted as follows:

Coursework:	90 credits
Research Mini-Thesis:	90 credits

The coursework component comprises a number of modules and industry examinations. In terms of Financial Services Board's requirements for traders and advisors, candidates are required to sit industry examinations set by the South African Institute of Financial Markets (SAIFM) and the Johannesburg Securities Exchange. The coursework modules and industry examinations together count 50% of the final mark:

Coursework modules (with industry examinations added):

1. ECO 507 - Macroeconomics, Monetary Policy and Financial Markets

Industry examinations: Introduction to Financial Markets; and Regulation and Ethics of the SA Financial Markets

2. ECO 504 - Debt and Foreign Exchange Markets
Industry examinations:

The South African Money Market;
The Bond Market; and
The Foreign Exchange Market

3. ECO 505 - Equity and Derivative Markets
Industry examinations:

The Equity Market;
The Derivatives Market

4. ECO 508 (Paper 1) - Quantitative Finance

5. ECO 508 (Paper 2) - Financial Econometrics

6. ECO 506 - Portfolio Theory and Management

An aggregated credit (ACR) may be awarded for the coursework component provided that no more than one paper is failed and that the mark for this paper is between 45% and 49%. Students falling into this category do have the option of repeating the course during the second year of study. No supplementary examinations will be set. Students failing no more than two papers are obliged to repeat these courses during the second year of study and no aggregation of marks will be allowed in this case. Students failing more than two papers will not be permitted

to continue with the programme except with the special permission of the Head of Department. Such permission is not automatic and motivations provided by affected students will be considered on a case-by-case basis. The coursework component of the degree must be passed.

The research mini-thesis comprises a written report and counts 50% of the final mark. The research mini-thesis component of the degree must be passed. Students registered for the degree must normally be full-time and in-attendance for the first year of study.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE IN TAXATION

The Master of Commerce in Taxation (MCom (Taxation)) is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis. The curriculum is weighted as follows:

Coursework:	90 credits
Research Mini-Thesis:	90 credits

The coursework component comprises a number of modules and two three-hour examinations which together count 50% of the final mark:

1. Income tax - aspects of the "gross income" definition
2. Income tax - further aspects of the "gross income" definition
3. Capital gains taxation
4. Income tax - aspects of the "general deduction formula"
5. Income tax - further aspects of "the general deduction formula"
6. Income tax - special deductions and allowances
7. Tax planning and anti-avoidance measures
8. Employee benefits and retirement planning
9. Tax strategy
10. Estate planning
11. Taxation of special classes of taxpayer
12. The Tax Administration Act
13. Research methodology and design

The two three-hour examination papers can be written in Grahamstown or, subject to special arrangements, other universities in South Africa. The coursework component of the degree must be passed.

The research mini-thesis comprises a written report and counts 50% of the final mark. The research mini-thesis component of the degree must be passed.

COMMERCE EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

Curriculum

Only students who receive permission from

the Dean of Commerce may be admitted to the Commerce Extended Studies Programme which extends over four years of study. The first two years of study comprise a foundation phase. Candidates who successfully complete the foundation phase with an aggregate mark of at least 60% join the other students enrolled in three year programmes for their final two years of study.

Courses

Foundation Phase Year One

<i>First Semester</i>	<i>Second Semester</i>
1. Accounting 1F	1. Accounting 1F
2. Theory of Finance	2. Theory of Finance
3. Management 101	3. Management 102*
4. Management 101 (Augmented)	4. Management 102 (Augmented)
5. Introduction to Computers	

*Prerequisite

Management 102 – obtain 35% in Management 101

Foundation Phase Year Two

<i>First Semester</i>	<i>Second Semester</i>
1. Accounting 1G	1. Accounting 1G*
2. Computer Science 112	2. Computer Science 112
3. Commercial Law 101	3. Commercial Law 102*
4. Economics 101	4. Economics 102
5. Economics 101 (Augmented)	5. Statistics 1D

*Prerequisites:

Accounting 1G – obtain a credit in Accounting 1F
 Computer Science 112 – 90% attendance required in Introduction to Computers
 Commercial Law 102 – Obtain credit or valid DP certificate in Commercial Law 101

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ACCOUNTANCY

C.32

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

32.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and

32.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting. *The Department of Accounting reserves the right to limit the number of students accepted into the programme.*

C.33

33.1 Candidates who have been admitted to the degree

or status of bachelor and who subsequently wish to obtain the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy must obtain or have credit in Information Systems 2, Theory of Finance and Statistics, Economics 1, Commercial Law 1, Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3, Taxation 3, and such other courses as directed by the Board of the Faculty before being admitted to study for the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy.

33.2 Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite courses they may be exempted from those courses provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty.

C.34

A pass mark of 50% is required in each of the four courses. Candidates must pass all courses simultaneously.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT

C.35

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless :

35.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor, and

35.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

C.36

Candidates who have credit in Management 3 (or its equivalent) are not eligible for admission to the Diploma.

C.37

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must attain at least 50% for the Alpha (full-time) or Problem Based Learning Project (part-time), 50% or more for at least six of the remaining seven papers listed below and an overall aggregate of at least 50%. In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 45% applies to each paper. In the case of a candidate passing six papers and attaining an overall aggregate of 50% or more but failing to attain the sub-minimum in one paper, he or she shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that paper.* It is possible, however, subject to a maximum of three papers, for a candidate to be exempted from writing the examination for a course, with a credit being awarded for the paper, if the candidate obtains at least 70% for all individual assignments and for all tests for the paper, with two

internal moderators concurring regarding the marks awarded for both forms of assessment and a review of the written work by the external examiner.

*in the same way that a last outstanding credit would normally be treated.

Papers constituting the one-year full-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are: Paper 1: Strategic Marketing Paper 2: Financial Management Paper 3: People Management Paper 4: Supply Chain and Project Management Paper 5: Entrepreneurial Law Paper 6: Computerised Accounting for Small Business Paper 7: Entrepreneurship

Papers constituting the one-year part-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are: Paper 1: Strategic Marketing Paper 2: Financial Management Paper 3: People Management Paper 4: Sustainable Business Modelling Paper 5: Sustainability Paper 6: Leadership Paper 7: Intrapreneurship

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN TAXATION

C.38

Candidates for the Diploma shall normally not be admitted to the course unless:

38.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and completed an appropriate undergraduate taxation course and normally achieved a mark of 65%; and

38.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting.

38.3 Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite papers they may be exempted from those papers provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty

C.39

Candidates must pass all papers simultaneously in the aggregate. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in any individual paper.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

C.40

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

40.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or an Advanced Diploma in a related discipline (Information Systems, Business Analysis, Project Management) or have admitted to the status of bachelor, and

40.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School

40.3 the status of bachelor would be determined on the basis of Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), taking into consideration having at least three years as a Business Analyst, but also consider age, seniority, number of tertiary level courses attended. Each candidate will be considered on their own merits. A rule of thumb, only 10% of the class may be admitted under RPL.

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module and attain at least a 50% aggregate for the coursework and 50% for the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE).

In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 40% applies to each component of each module. In the case of a candidate passing three modules and attaining an overall aggregate of 50% or more but failing to attain the sub-minimum in one module, he or she shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that module.* The coursework comprises 67% (80 credits) of the diploma and the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE) 33% (40 credits). The overall mark is a weighted average of coursework and Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE).

**in the same way that a last outstanding credit would normally be treated.*

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance. In so doing the number and quality of working Business Analysts in Africa who are able to effectively communicate and apply their understanding of the theory, principles, purpose, role, methods and techniques of business analysis, business modelling and business process improvement to achieve sustainable business performance will be achieved.

The PGDip(Business Analysis) is a one year, full-time or one and a half year, part-time modular programme, comprising four modules, where students are required to attend four teaching blocks. Between teaching blocks, students are required to complete work-based assignments. A practical 24 hour examination is undertaken at the commencement of the 4th teaching block, covering

all four modules. A Project with Portfolio of Evidence (POE), is to be submitted by the end of the second semester for full-time students or at the end of the first semester of the second year for part-time students.

Modules constituting the PGDip(Business Analysis) course are:

Module 1: Sustainable Business Models

Module 2: Business Process Modelling

Module 3: Business Process Analysis

Module 4: Communicating and Consulting

HONOURS DEGREE IN ACCOUNTING

The Honours degree in Accounting can be presented in any one of the following specialisation areas:

- Accounting
- Auditing
- Finance
- Management Accounting

In each case papers forming part of the Postgraduate Diploma in Accounting will form the basis of the

degree, together with a paper in an Introduction to Research Methodology and Design and a research essay. In each specialisation area one or more additional papers are prescribed. Candidates for the Honours Degree shall normally not be admitted to the course unless:

- they have a Bachelor's degree in the Accounting curriculum and have completed the appropriate undergraduate course majors and normally achieved a mark of 60% in each of the major subjects relevant to the Honours degree;
- they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Accounting.

The Department of Accounting reserves the right to limit the number of students accepted into the programme.

HIGHER DEGREES

The Faculty's Rules for the Degree of Master of Commerce, Degree of Master of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, are identical to those set out for Master's and Doctoral degrees in the General Rules.

FACULTY OF EDUCATION RULES

Teacher education qualifications are in a transitional phase with a new national policy framework, which sets out the rules and regulations governing teacher education at a national level, being phased in from 2016. 2019 is the last year that students will be enrolled on existing qualifications. The new policy framework has subject choice implications for students wishing to qualify as **Foundation Phase teachers** (Grades R to 3) and as **Intermediate**

Phase teachers (Grades 4 to 6). Students intending to enroll in the Postgraduate Certificate in Education Initial Teacher Education courses are **strongly advised** to check their undergraduate subject choice with the Dean of Education.

The following certificates, diplomas and degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Education, although not all are offered every year.

Name

Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Foundation Phase Teaching)
 Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Intermediate Phase Teaching)
 Postgraduate Certificate in Education
 (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching)
 Postgraduate Certificate in Education
 (Further Education and Training Teaching)
 Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching)
 Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) [In-Service]
 Bachelor of Education (Intermediate Phase Teaching) [In-Service]
 Bachelor of Education (Senior Phase and
 Further Education and Training Teaching) [In-service]
 Bachelor of Education
 (Further Education and Training Teaching) [In-service]
 Bachelor of Education Honours
 Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education
 Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (for Academic Developers)
 Master of Education
 Doctor of Philosophy

To be denoted by the letters

PGCE (FP Teaching)
 PGCE (IP Teaching)
 PGCE (SP and FET Teaching)
 PGCE (FET Teaching)
 BEd (FP Teaching)
 BEd (FP Teaching)
 BEd (IP Teaching)
 BEd (SP and FET Teaching)
 BEd (FET Teaching)
 BEd Hons
 PGDip (HE)
 PGDip (HE)
 MEd
 PhD

RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following additional rules apply to the Faculty of Education. Course changes will normally be allowed only within the first fourteen days after the official registration date.

Students wishing to register for an additional credit over and above such credits required by the standard curriculum for the course for which they are registered, need to obtain the permission of the Dean, in consultation with the Head of Department and lecturers concerned.

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Foundation Phase) (Grades R to 3)

The PGCE is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 7.

E.71 Purpose

71.1 The PGCE is a ‘capping’ qualification for persons wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling after having completed an appropriate Bachelor’s degree (at least 360 credits) other than a BEd.

71.2 This certificate, following an approved degree, is recognised by Statute and employing authorities as equivalent to a Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase) degree.

E.72 Access

72.1 The entrance requirements for the course are:

72.1.1 The candidate has been awarded an appropriate bachelor’s or higher degree.

72.1.2 The candidate has passed two official languages in their undergraduate degree – one of these being an African language. Candidates who have only passed one official language in their undergraduate year will be permitted to register for the requisite course concurrently with the PGCE (FP) curriculum. Please refer to 72.1.6.

72.1.3 The candidate has passed Psychology at first year level (30 credit).

72.1.4 The candidate has passed two Life Skills subjects

72.1.5 The candidate has passed one Mathematics subject at the first year level.

72.1.6 Candidates who do not have the appropriate 30 credit first year prerequisite for Mathematics or a Language course may be permitted to take a 30 credit first year course for non-degree purposes concurrently with the PGCE, 15 credits of which may be assessed through recognition of prior learning, this requires the Dean's approval.

72.2 A candidate will not receive the certificate

until all the requirements of the degree have been fulfilled.

72.3 The approved degree referred to in E.72.1.1 shall comply with the requirements as laid down from time to time by the Council on Higher Education (CHE) and the South African Qualification Authority (SAQA).

72.4 The PGCE provides access to the BEd Hons degree at NQF Level 8.

E.73 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year.

E.74 Curriculum

Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Foundation Phase) PGCEF		
Compulsory modules		
<i>Course Title</i>	<i>NQF</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Literacy And Numeracy (PGCEF)	7	8
Education Studies (PGCEF) (M)	7	24
Education Environment (PGCEF)	7	6
Found. Of Learning (PGCEF)	7	12
Mathematics Education (PGCEF)	7	12
Life Skills Education (PGCEF)	7	9
Teaching Practice (PGCEF)	7	28
Education Technologies (PGCEF)	7	4
First Add. Lang Eng (PGCEF)	7	9
One of the following:		
Home Language (English)	7	12
Home Language (isiXhosa)	7	12
One of the following:		
First Add. Lang (Afrikaans) (PGCEF)	7	9
First Add. Lang (isiXhosa) (PGCEF)	7	9
Compulsory Endorsements		
Computer Literacy (PGCEF)		0
Lang Endorsement (ENG) (PGCEF)		0
Lang Endorsement (XHO) (PGCEF)		0
Additional Endorsements		
Lang Endorsement (AFR) (PGCEF)		0

E.75 Assessment

75.1 A candidate must pass all courses in the curriculum.

75.2 Assessment of learning is through coursework and summative assessments.

75.3 The PGCE is a professional qualification and acceptable professional conduct in all aspects of the programme is expected and is continually assessed.

75.4 The certificate will be awarded “with distinction” and the parchment endorsed to this effect if the student achieves a Class 1 pass in each of the following:

Education Studies

The Education Environment or Foundations of Learning

Teaching Practice

75.5 A candidate who fails Teaching Practice shall normally be required to re-do Teaching Practice.

75.6 A candidate who fails at the F1 level: any of Education Studies, Education Environment, Foundations of Learning, or any of the teaching methods, shall be granted a supplementary examination for these courses.

75.7 A candidate who fails any of Education Studies, Education Environment, Foundations of Learning or any of the teaching method courses at F2 level and below, or fails the supplementary examination in any of these courses shall normally be required to re-attend the course for those subjects.

75.8 A candidate who fails three or more of Education Studies, Education Environment, Foundations of Learning, Teaching Methods and Teaching Practice shall normally be required to re-attend the entire curriculum for the certificate.

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Intermediate Phase) (Grades 4 to 6)

The PGCE is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 7.

E.76 Purpose

76.1 The PGCE is a ‘capping’ qualification for

persons wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling after having completed an appropriate Bachelor’s degree (at least 360 credits) other than a BED.

76.2 This certificate, following an approved degree, is recognised by Statute and employing authorities as equivalent to a Bachelor of Education (Intermediate Phase) degree.

E.77 Access

77.1 The entrance requirements for the course are:

77.1.1 The candidate has been awarded an appropriate bachelor’s or higher degree.

77.1.2 Candidates must have passed 30 credit first year courses in two official South African languages in their undergraduate degree (see 77.1.4).

77.1.3 Candidates must have subjects at first year level in their undergraduate degree that enable them to teach two of the following methods: mathematics, natural sciences and technology, and social sciences (see 77.1.4).

77.1.4 Candidates who have only one official language and/ or subjects in their degree that enable them to teach only one Intermediate Phase teaching subject, may be permitted to register for a 30 credit first year course for NDP concurrently with their PGCE(IP) curriculum, provided the Dean of the Faculty approves.

77.2 A candidate will not receive the certificate until all the requirements of the degree have been fulfilled.

77.3 The approved degree referred to in E.77.1.1 shall comply with the requirements as laid down from time to time by the Council on Higher Education (CHE) and the South African Qualification Authority (SAQA).

77.4 The PGCE provides access to the BED Hons degree at HEQF Level 8.

E.78 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year.

E.79 Curriculum

Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Intermediate Phase) PGCIP		
Compulsory modules		
Course Title	NQF	Credits
Education Studies (PGCEIP) (M)	7	26

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

General Professional & Pedagogical Practices (GPP) (PGCEIP)	7	12
Teaching Practice (PGCEIP)	7	26
Education Technologies (PGCEIP)	7	4
First Add. Lang Eng (PGCEIP)	7	14
One of the following (see note below):		
Home Language (Afrikaans) (PGCEIP)		
Home Language (English) (PGCEIP)	7	14
Home Language (isiXhosa) (PGCEIP)	7	14
Two of the following (see note below):		
Social Sciences (PGCEIP)	7	14
Mathematics Education (PGCEIP)	7	14
Natural Sciences and Technology (PGCEIP)	7	14
Life Skills Education (PGCEIP)	7	14
Mathematics in Society *	5	8
* Mathematics in Society must be taken if a student does not take the Mathematics Education Elective		
Optional Modules		
isiXhosa First Additional Language (PGCEIP)	7	14
Afrikaans First Additional Language (PGCEIP)	7	14
Compulsory Endorsements		
Education Technology (PGCEIP)	5	1
Computer Literacy (PGCEIP)	5	1
Lang Endorsement (ENG) (PGCEIP)	5	1
Lang Endorsement Conversational (XHO) (PGCEIP)	5	1
Optional Endorsements		
Lang Endorsement Conversational AFR) (PGCEIP)	5	1

All Intermediate Phase students must specialize in Home Language teaching in one of the official languages, together with English First Additional Language teaching.

- If a student selects Afrikaans as Home Language, and English as a First Additional Language, then the student must also study an African Language at a basic conversational level in order to meet the language requirements relating to conversational competence.
- If a student selects English as a Home Language, and English as a First Additional Language

the student must study an additional official language (other than English) at the level of Home Language or First Additional Language. If the additional language is Afrikaans, the student must also study an African Language at a basic conversational level.

- If a student selects to study an African Language at Home Language level, the student must study English at First Additional Level, and could study Afrikaans at basic conversational level.

Apart from the requirement of competence to teach at least two official languages, the student must also specialise in the teaching of at least two

other Intermediate Phase subjects chosen from Intermediate Phase Mathematics, Science and Technology, Life Skills, and Social Science.

E.80 Assessment

- 80.1. A candidate must pass all courses in the curriculum.
- 80.2. Assessment of learning is through coursework and summative assessments.
- 80.3. The PGCE is a professional qualification and acceptable professional conduct in all aspects of the programme is expected and is continually assessed.
- 80.4. The certificate will be awarded “with distinction” and the parchment endorsed to this effect if the student achieves a Class 1 pass in each of the following:
 - Education Studies or General Professional and Pedagogical Practices
 - Two of the four teaching methods
 - Teaching Practice
- 80.5. A candidate who fails Teaching Practice shall normally be required to re-do Teaching Practice.
- 80.6. A candidate who fails at the F1 level: any of Education Studies, General Professional and Pedagogical Practices, or any of the teaching methods, shall be granted a supplementary examination for these courses.
- 80.7. A candidate who fails any of Education Studies, General Professional and Pedagogical Practices, or any of the teaching method courses at F2 level and below, or fails the

supplementary examination in any of these courses shall normally be required to re-attend the course for those subjects.

- 80.8. A candidate who fails three or more of Education Studies, Education Environment, Teaching Methods and Teaching Practice shall normally be required to re-attend the entire curriculum for the certificate.

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training)/ (Further Education and Training)

The PGCE is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 7.

E.81 Purpose

The PGCE is a ‘capping’ qualification for persons wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling after having completed an appropriate Bachelor’s degree (at least 360 credits) other than a BEd.

E.82 Access

- 82.1. The entrance requirements for the course are:
- 82.2. The candidate has been awarded an appropriate bachelor’s or higher degree.
- 82.3. A candidate will not receive the certificate until all the requirements of the degree have been fulfilled.
- 82.4. The appropriate degree referred to in E.82.1.1 shall comply with the requirements as laid down from time to time by the Council on Higher Education (CHE) and the South African Qualification Authority (SAQA)

PGCE 2019

TEACHING METHODS AND SUBJECT REQUIREMENTS

Senior Phase: Grades 7 - 9

<i>School subject</i>	<i>University subject(s) and minimum year level</i>
Arts and Culture	At least two subjects from a range of appropriate Arts subjects e.g. Music, Drama, Anthropology, Classics, Dance Studies, Visual Arts, Design, Theatre Arts.
Economic and Management Sciences	A combination of any two of the following subjects at first-year level; Accounting, Management or Economics.
Languages - First Additional Language	English: English 1 AND one of the following: English and Linguistics 1, Applied Language Studies 1, African Literature 1, Literary Theory 1, Communication and Media Studies 1. isiXhosa: isiXhosa (Mother-Tongue) 1 OR isiXhosa (Additional Language) 2
Languages - Home Language	A 1st year in that language

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

<i>School subject</i>	<i>University subject(s) and minimum year level</i>
Arts and Culture	At least two subjects from a range of appropriate Arts subjects e.g. Music, Drama, Anthropology, Classics, Dance Studies, Visual Arts, Design, Theatre Arts.
Economic and Management Sciences	A combination of any two of the following subjects at first-year level; Accounting, Management or Economics.
Life Orientation	A combination of two of the following subjects, one of which must be at second year level; Psychology, Philosophy, Anthropology, Sociology, Social Work, HKE, Politics, Labour Studies, Industrial Studies. Psychology MUST be one of the subjects.
Mathematics	Mathematics 1
Natural Sciences	A combination of at least one subject from Life Sciences AND Physical Sciences; e.g. Botany 1, Biology 1, Chemistry 1, Earth Sciences 1, Geography 1, Geology 1, Physics 1, Zoology 1, Physical Geography 1, Environmental Science 1, Biological Sciences 1.
Social Sciences	Geography 1 and History 1.

PGCE 2019

TEACHING METHODS AND SUBJECTS REQUIREMENTS

Further Education and Training: Grades 10 – 12

<i>School subject</i>	<i>University subject(s) and minimum year level</i>
Accounting	Accounting 2
Business Studies	Management 2
Information Technology	Computer Science 2 OR Computer Science 1 + Information Systems 2
Computer Applications Technology	Computer Science 1 OR Information Systems 2
Design	A combination of subjects from a range of appropriate technology-related subjects, e.g. Fine Art Practice, Computer Science, Design Studies, Physics, Chemistry, Mathematics, Engineering, Graphic Design, Architecture, Fashion Design, Interior Design. Each application to be examined and decided on its merits, including consideration of matric subjects.
Dramatic Arts	Drama 2
Economics	Economics 2
Geography	Geography 2 or Environmental Science 2
History	History 2
Language - First Additional Language	The particular language at 2nd year level English: English 2 AND one of the following: Linguistics 1, Applied Language Studies 1, African Literature 1, Literacy Theory 1, Communication and Media Studies 1 OR English 1 + Linguistics 2 isiXhosa: isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 2 OR isiXhosa (Additional Language) 3

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

Language - Home Language	The particular language at 2nd year level e.g. English 2 OR English 1 AND Linguistics 2, Applied Language Studies 2, African Literature 2, Literacy Theory 2, Communications and Media Studies 2 isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 2
Life Orientation	Psychology 2 AND one of the following subjects; Philosophy, Anthropology, Sociology, Social Work, HKE, Politics, Labour Studies, Industrial Studies at first-year level.
Life Sciences	Combination of any two of the following: Biological Sciences, Biochemistry, Microbiology, Physiology, Biology, and Zoology, with one taken at second year level at least, is required to specialize in Life Sciences Teaching, provided that first year modules in Biology or Botany and Zoology are also included.
Mathematics	Mathematics 2 OR Mathematics 1 + Maths Stats 2/Applied Maths 2
Mathematical Literacy	Matric Mathematics + one or more of a range of subjects in the Mathematical field at first year level: Applied Mathematics, Statistics, Mathematical Modelling, Numerical Analysis, Dynamics and Mechanics. Each application will be considered on merit.
Music	Musicology 3 + Instrument at 2nd year level + Theory of Music (Grade 8) + Piano (Grade 5)
Physical Sciences	Physics 2 + Chemistry 1 OR Physics 1 + Chemistry 2
Visual Arts	Art History and Visual Culture 2 AND Fine Art Practice 2 e.g. Drawing, Multimedia, Painting, Sculpture, Printmaking, Ceramic Art, Fibre and Textiles, Heavy Metal and Jewelry Arts.

82.5 The PGCE provides access to the BEd Hons degree at NQF Level 8.

E.83 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one year full-time study.

E.84 Curriculum

84.1

Compulsory modules		
<i>Course Title</i>	<i>NQF</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Community Engagement (PGCES)	7	4
Education Studies (PGCES) (M)	7	24
Education Technologies (PGCES)	7	6
Teaching Method 1 (PGCES) FET	7	24
Teaching Prac 1 (PGCES) FET	7	13
Teaching Method 2 (PGCES) SP/FET	7	24
Teaching Prac 2 (PGCES) SP/FET	7	13
At least one/two teaching subject from the following FET range: Accounting, Afrikaans First Additional Language, Afrikaans Home Language, Business Studies, Computer Applications Technology, Computer Studies, Design, Dramatic Arts, Economics, English First Additional Language, English Home Language, French (Foreign Language Teaching), Geography, German (Foreign Language Teaching), History, IsiXhosa First Additional Language, IsiXhosa Home Language, Life Orientation, Life Science, Mathematics, Mathematics Literacy, Music, Physical Science, Visual Arts;		

and/or another teaching subject from the following Senior Phase range: Afrikaans First Additional Language, Afrikaans Home Language, Creative Arts, Economic Management Sciences, English First Additional Language, English Home Language, French (Foreign Language Teaching), German (Foreign Language Teaching), IsiXhosa First Additional Language, IsiXhosa Home Language, Life Orientation, Mathematics, Natural Sciences, Social Sciences, Technology. (Entry requirements for these Teaching Methods are according to guidelines spelled out in Gov Gazette No 34467)

Compulsory Endorsements

Computer Literacy (PGCES)		0
Lang Endorsement (ENG) (PGCES)		0
Lang Endorsement (XHO) (PGCES)		0

Optional Endorsements

Lang Endorsement (AFR) (PGCES)		0
--------------------------------	--	---

84.2 Candidates will be required to do a minimum of 10 weeks of Teaching Practice

E.85 Assessment

85.1 A candidate must pass all courses in the curriculum.

85.2 Assessment of learning is through coursework and summative assessments.

85.3 The PGCE is a professional qualification and acceptable professional conduct in all aspects of the programme is expected and is continually assessed.

85.4 The certificate will be awarded “with distinction” if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass for Education Studies, a Class 1 pass in at least one of the Teaching Practice Methods and a Class 1 pass in at least one of the following: Teaching Method 1, Teaching Method 2 or the remaining Teaching Practice Method.

85.5 A candidate who fails Education Studies or one of the Teaching Methods, at the FI level (i.e. scoring between 45% - 49%) shall normally be permitted to write a supplementary examination in that subject at the beginning of the following year.

85.6 A candidate who fails Education Studies or one of the Teaching Method courses at below FI level, or who fails the supplementary examination in any of these courses, shall normally be required to re-attend the course for that subject.

85.7 A candidate who fails two or more of Education Studies, Teaching Method 1, Teaching Method 2,

Teaching Practice Method 1 or Teaching Practice Method 2, shall normally be required to re-attend the entire curriculum for the certificate.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (Foundation Phase)

The BED is a 480 credit qualification at NQF Level 7.

E.86 Purpose

The BED(FP) is for persons wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling at the Foundation (Grades R to 3).

E.87 Access

87.1 The candidate must fulfil the general rules for admission to the first degree. Normally candidates must have achieved Level 3 or above for Mathematics or Level 4 for Mathematics Literacy and Level 4 for English Home Language or Level 4 for First Additional Language in NSC.

87.2 The BED provides access to the BED Hons degree at NQF Level 8.

E.88 Duration

The duration of the course should not be less than 4 years full-time study.

E.89 Curriculum

The curriculum for the BED (FP) shall be as follows:
89.1

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

First Year		
Modules		
<i>Course Title</i>	<i>NQF</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Foundation Phase Studies 1 (Children's Literature)	5	10
Education & Professional Studies 1A (The Whole Child in Context)	5	25
Education & Professional Studies 1B (Holistic Development of the Teacher)	5	25
Teaching Practice 1A	6	10
Two of the following language courses in the Faculty of Humanities:		
English 1/English Language & Linguistics 1	5	30
isiXhosa (Mother-Tongue)/isiXhosa (Additional Language) 1*	5	30
Afrikaans 1/1P	5	30
* Students who do not have conversational competence in an African Language, must register for isiXhosa (Additional Language) 1 in their first year		
Second Year		
Modules		
<i>Course Title</i>	<i>NQF</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Performance and Multimodalities 1	6	15
Understanding the Social & Physical World 2	6	15
Education & Professional Studies 2	6	10
Teaching Practice 1B	6	10
Continue with one of the following languages from the Faculty of Humanities:		
English 1/English Language & Linguistics 2	6	30
isiXhosa (Mother-Tongue)/isiXhosa (Additional Language) 2	6	30
Afrikaans 2	6	30
Foundation Phase Studies Year 2*		
FP 1: First Additional Language English	6	7
FP 1: Mathematics	6	10
FP 1: Life Skills	6	10
One of the following:		
Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language English OR	6	10
Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language isiXhosa	6	10
One of the following:		
Foundation Phase Studies 1: First Additional Language Afrikaans OR	6	8
Foundation Phase Studies 1: First Additional Language isiXhosa	6	8

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

* Pre-requisites for the selection of options in Foundation Phase Studies in second year:		
1) Students intending to select isiXhosa Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for isiXhosa Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 1.		
2) Students intending to select English Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for English Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for English 1, OR have obtained credit for English Language and Linguistics 1.		
3) Students intending to select isiXhosa First Additional Language in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for isiXhosa Home Language or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR must register concurrently for isiXhosa (Additional Language) 2.		
4) Students intending to select Afrikaans First Additional Language in Foundation Phase Studies must normally have obtained credit for EITHER Afrikaans Home Language or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR Afrikaans 1/IP.		
Third Year		
Modules		
<i>Course Title</i>	<i>NQF</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Education & Professional Studies 3	7	30
Performance & Multimodalities 2	6	15
Understanding the Social & Physical World 3	6	15
Teaching Practice 2	6	25
Foundation Phase Studies Year 3*		
FP 2: First Additional Language English	6	9
FP 2: Mathematics	6	9
FP 2: Life Skills	6	9
Continue with one of the following:		
Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language English OR	6	9
Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language isiXhosa	6	9
Continue with one of the following:		
Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language Afrikaans OR	6	9
Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language isiXhosa	6	9
Fourth Year		
Modules		
<i>Course Title</i>	<i>NQF</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Education & Professional Studies 4	7	30
Teaching Practice 3	7	24
Foundation Phase Studies Year 4*		
FP 3: First Additional Language English	6	9

FP 3: Mathematics	6	9
FP 3: Life Skills	6	9
Continue with one of the following:		
Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language English OR	6	9
Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language isiXhosa	6	9
Continue with one of the following:		
Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language Afrikaans OR	6	9
Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language isiXhosa	6	9

89.2 The curriculum for the degree shall include not less than three different School Experience opportunities (Teaching Practice) of a total duration of at least 20 weeks.

89.3 Candidates are required to be competent in 2 official languages to be eligible for permanent status as a teacher. If one of these languages is not an official African language, they must also demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

89.4 Candidates may normally not proceed to the second year of study unless they have:

- 1) Obtained credit in their main Language (i.e. the Language they intend doing in second year).
- 2) Obtained credit in both Education and Professional Studies 1A, and Education and Professional Studies 1B.

89.5 Candidates may normally not proceed to the third year of studies unless they have:

- 1) Obtained a credit in both first year Languages.
- 2) Obtained credit in Foundation Phase Studies 2 e.g. you must obtain credit in Mathematics Method 1 to do Mathematics Method 2.
- 3) Candidates who are repeating courses may have to forego their Teaching Practice block in the 3rd year.

89.6 Candidates may normally not proceed to fourth year of studies unless they have:

- 1) Obtained credit in Education and Professional Studies 3.
- 2) Obtained credit in Foundation Phase Studies 3 e.g. you must obtain credit in Mathematics Method 2 to do Mathematics Method 3.
- 3) Candidates who are repeating courses may have to forego their Teaching Practice block in the 4th year.

E.90 Assessment

90.1 A candidate must pass each subject in the curriculum.

90.2 A candidate must obtain a subminimum of 40%

for both the year mark and the final examination.

90.3 The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class 1 in any of the following subjects shall be endorsed “with distinction” in that subject:

Education and Professional Studies 4

Foundation Phase Studies 4

Teaching Practice (School Experience) 3

90.4 The award of distinction in Teaching Practice (School Experience) is based on the results achieved at the end of the Teaching Practice period conducted in the fourth year of the degree.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION

(In-service all Phases)

All BEd degrees are 480 credit qualifications at NQF Level 7. The BEd for a continuing Professional Development Qualification (i.e. for in-service teachers) route may include RPL credits and be no less than 180 new credits.

E.96 Purpose

The BEd for Continuing Professional Development purposes is for teachers wanting to upgrade to an initial degree.

E.97 Access

97.1 The candidate must fulfil the general rules for admission to the first degree.

97.2 An appropriate 360 credit Level 6 qualification.

E.98 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than three years part-time study.

E.99 Curriculum

A candidate must obtain or be granted credit in:

Literacy and Numeracy

Academic Teaching Subjects

Education Studies

School Experience

Technology (for Senior and FET Phases only)

The Education Environment

E.100 Assessment

100.1 It is the intention of the B Ed In-Service to assess the progress of learners on a continuous basis using a wide variety of techniques.

100.2 The year mark, consisting of a number of assessments of both class-based and home-based tasks, will comprise 50% of the final mark, with an examination, written at the end of the course, comprising the other 50% (i.e. the final mark is an aggregate of the year mark and the final examination).

100.3 All class and homework assignments are compulsory and must be handed in on the due date.

100.4 Subminimum of 40% for both the year mark and final examination will normally be required, e.g. marks of 40% for the year mark and 60% for the final examination (and vice versa) will normally result in a pass, whereas marks of, for example, 75% and 25% will not.

100.5 A pass mark for a subject is 50% or more, calculated by aggregating the year mark and the final examination mark as described above.

100.6 A candidate may fail in only three subjects over the course of the degree as a whole, and in those subjects only once.

100.7 A candidate who fails in more than three subjects, or in any subject twice, or in more than two subjects in any given year, will normally not be permitted to re-register.

100.8 A candidate who has only one outstanding failed subject from the final examinations will qualify for a supplementary examination in that subject regardless of sub-minimum requirements,

100.9 A supplementary examination may be granted if the candidate obtains a final mark between 45% and 49%. However, rule 100.8 provides for exceptions where the subject failed is the only outstanding credit for the qualification.

100.10 A candidate who fails the major Academic Teaching Subject in the first year will not be permitted to reregister.

100.11 A final mark of less than 45% in any other subject, will normally mean that the candidate will be required to repeat the subject. This will normally

require the student to re-register for the subject and attend classes again.

100.12 A distinction grade for a subject is a mark of 75% or more.

100.13 The degree will be awarded with distinction if the candidate obtains an average of at least 75% for all courses, and an average of at least 75% for the major Academic Teaching Subject.

E.101 Recognition of Prior Learning

Prior Learning (in the form of under-graduate qualifications and experience) is recognised where appropriate.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION HONOURS

The Bachelor of Education Honours degree is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 8.

E.102 Purpose

The Bachelor of Education Honours aims to consolidate and deepen the student's expertise and theoretical engagement in educational practice, and develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of educational research.

E.103 Access

103.1 The entrance requirement for the course is

103.1.1 A four-year professional teaching degree OR an appropriate bachelor's degree and a recognized professional teaching qualification OR a four-year professional teaching qualification as well as an Advanced Diploma in a cognate subfield of education at HEQFS level 7.

103.1.2 The satisfactory fulfilment of the requirements of the selection process.

103.2 The Bachelor of Education Honours provides access to a 180-credit HEQFS Level 9 Master of Education/Professional Master's degree in Education.

E.104 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

E.105 Curriculum

A candidate must obtain credit in the four foundation courses and in two electives.

First Year Modules		
<i>Course Title</i>	<i>NQF</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Philosophy in Education	8	15
Psychology in Education	8	15
Research in Education A	8	15
Sociology in Education	8	15
Second Year Modules		
<i>Course Title</i>	<i>NQF</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Research in Education B	8	10
Elective A	8	25
Elective B	8	25
Two of the following electives can be selected: Education Leadership and Management, English Language Teaching, Environmental Education, Information Communication Technology, Mathematics Education A, Primary Education and Science Education		

E.106 Assessment

106.1 Full-time candidates shall be required to present themselves for the final written examination in all courses in the same examination period.

106.2 All courses are assessed by means of assignments (for example, essays, tests and other tasks completed during the year) and examinations. The former will comprise a year mark. The year mark and the examination mark will normally be weighted equally (50:50) in the calculation of the final mark.

106.3 The degree will be awarded with distinction if a candidate achieves an average of 75% across all six courses.

106.4 A pass mark for a course is 50% or more, calculated by aggregating the year mark and the final examination mark as described above.

106.5 A subminimum of 40% for both the year mark and final examination will normally be required, for example, marks of 40% for the year mark and 60% for the final examination (and vice versa) will normally result in a pass, whereas marks of, for example, 75% and 25% will not.

106.6 A candidate who fails a subject at the F1 level (i.e. scoring between 45% and 49%) and provided that a sub-minimum of 40% for both the year mark and final examination are obtained, may write a supplementary examination in that subject.

106.7 A candidate may only write one supplementary

examination in the entire degree.

106.8 A candidate who fails in more than one subject, or in one subject twice will not be permitted to re-register.

106.8 A candidate who fails in a subject below the F1 level (i.e. scoring less than 40%) must normally repeat that course when next it is offered.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION

The PGDip (HE) is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 8 (Honours level).

E.107 Purpose

The PGDip (HE) aims to facilitate the professional development of lecturers as reflexive practitioners in higher education by developing their knowledge of Higher Education (HE) as a field of study. The course is designed to assist lecturers to enhance their ability to facilitate, manage and assess students' learning as well as provide professional accreditation for HE practitioners.

E.108 Access

108.1 The entrance requirements for the course is 108.1.1 a Level 7 qualification on the Higher Education Qualifications Sub-Framework

108.2 candidate has to be employed as a lecturer at a higher education institution for duration of registration

108.3 candidate must be proficient in both oral and

written formal English

108.4 candidates must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

E.109 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

E.110 Curriculum

Candidates are required to complete either five or four core modules: Becoming a critically reflexive practitioner, Learning in Higher Education, Curriculum Development, Assessment of Student Learning and Evaluation of Teaching and Courses. Candidates who undertake four core modules must also undertake an elective research module. Research electives include topics such as: Design and Develop eLearning, Design and Structure Experiential Learning, Supervision of Research in Higher Education, Leadership in Higher Education, Service Learning and Research in Higher Education.

E.111 Assessment

111.1 All candidates will be required to complete an assignment for each of the core modules of the course.

111.2 All candidates will be required to submit an integrated, evidence-based portfolio for final assessment of the qualification.

111.3 Candidates may be required to present an oral defense of their portfolios

111.4 The diploma will be awarded with distinction if the candidate achieves 75% or more for the portfolio.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION (for academic developers)

The PGDip (HE) for academic developers is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 8 (Honours level).

E.112 Purpose

The purpose of the PGDip (HE) for academic developers is to advance academic developers' knowledge of higher education as a field of study and to enable them to conceptualise, design and implement formal and informal academic development initiatives (with a particular focus on academic staff development) appropriate to their specific contexts.

E.113 Access

113.1 The entrance requirements for the course is

113.1.1 preferably a Level 8 qualification on the Higher Education Qualifications Sub-Framework

113.2 candidate has to be employed as an academic

developer or cognate role at a higher education institution

113.3 candidate must be proficient in both oral and written formal English

113.4 candidates must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

E.114 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

E.115 Curriculum

Candidates are required to complete six core modules: The higher education context, Teaching and Learning in Higher Education, Curriculum Development, Assessment of Student Learning, Development, enhancement and assurance of quality of teaching and learning, Conceptualising and designing contextually appropriate academic development initiatives.

E.116 Assessment

116.1 All candidates will be required to complete an assignment for each of the core modules of the course.

116.2 All candidates will be required to submit an integrated, evidence-based portfolio for final assessment of the qualification.

116.3 Candidates may be required to present an oral defense of their portfolios.

116.4 The diploma will be awarded with distinction if the candidate achieves 75% or more for the portfolio.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF EDUCATION

See also General Rules.

E.117 Purpose

The MEd is a postgraduate qualification which accredits candidates' capacity to undertake well-founded and independent inquiry in the field of education.

E.118 Access

118.1 The following criteria govern admission to the degree of Master of Education (MEd):

118.1.1 For the MEd by research only, the minimum entry requirement is normally the Bachelor of Education Honours degree.

118.1.2 For the MEd by coursework and research in the fields of Educational Leadership and Management, English Language Teaching, Environmental Education, General Education Theory and Practice Primary Education, and Information and Communication Technology, the

minimum entry requirement is normally either the postgraduate Bachelor of Education Honours degree or an honours degree plus PGCE or PGDip (HE) with, in each case, a credit in the underlying discipline at least at the second-year level, and at least three years of teaching experience in the field of MEd specialisation.

118.1.3 For the MEd by coursework and research in the fields of Educational Leadership and Management, English Language Teaching, Environmental Education, General Education Theory and Practice, Primary Education, and Information and Communication Technology, the minimum entry requirement is normally the Bachelor of Education Honours degree, or an appropriate honours degree, with, in either case, the additional requirement of relevant professional involvement in the field.

118.2 The MEd provides access to the PhD degree.

E.119 Duration

119.1 The degree of Master of Education (MEd) part-time or full-time shall consist of research (thesis), or a combination of coursework and research (thesis or projects).

119.2 The degree by coursework and research runs over a two year cycle with coursework being offered only in alternate years.

119.3 Full-time candidates can complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study.

119.4 Prior to commencing thesis work the candidate shall submit a research proposal to the satisfaction of the supervisor. This research proposal must be accepted by the Education Faculty Higher Degrees Committee.

119.5 The examination must be completed during the first year of study, in order for the candidate to proceed to work on the research in the second year of study.

119.6 The registration of a candidate for the Master's degree by research only may be cancelled if an adequate research proposal has not been submitted within a period of four months from the date of acceptance of the candidate for the Master's degree.

119.7 Except with the permission of the Senate a candidate for the degree of MEd by coursework and research will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

119.8 The final date for submission of research shall be no later than the second Friday of December

in the year prior to when the candidate intends to graduate. While every endeavour will be made to provide candidates with a result of the examination of their work in time for April graduation if the examination is successful, the University does not guarantee this.

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY RESEARCH

E.120 Curriculum

120.1 The research, in the form of a thesis, must show that the candidate:

120.1.1 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

120.1.2 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate literature;

120.1.3 has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree.

120.1.4 In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

120.2 Save for exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for a thesis in the case of a Master's degree by research only will be 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH

E.121 Curriculum for coursework and half-thesis

121.1 The coursework component should be spread over one year with examinations being written at the end of the year.

121.2 The coursework component shall be valued at 50% of the final total mark. The thesis shall represent the other 50%.

121.3 With due consideration for the more limited nature of the work, criteria E.115.1.1 to E.115.1.4 above apply equally to the evaluation of the thesis component.

121.4 The length of the thesis shall not exceed 30 000 words of text (approximately 100 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices). Coursework and projects

E.122 Curriculum for coursework and research projects

122.1 The coursework component should be spread over one year with examinations being written at the end of that year.

122.2 The coursework component shall be valued at 50% of the final total mark. The projects shall represent the other 50%.

122.3 The projects shall consist of the following components:

122.3.1 The study and application of a range of research methods used in the social sciences and education. This shall include learning how to conduct research in differing circumstances requiring different approaches, and by undertaking and critically evaluating a range of small-scale research projects using different methods.

122.3.2 Development of the theoretical and practical capacity to critically evaluate research being done in education in South Africa and abroad.

E.123 Assessment

The overall examination procedure for MEd by coursework and research shall be as follows:

123.1 A subminimum of 50% for both the year mark and the final examination for the coursework component is normally required.

123.2 A candidate must normally obtain a minimum of 60% for the coursework component of the first year of the degree, in order to be allowed to proceed to the research component of the degree.

123.3 In order to be awarded the degree, candidates must obtain a minimum of 50% for the research component (half-thesis or research projects) and an aggregated mark of 50% for the coursework component (year mark and examination) and the research component (half-thesis or research projects). Candidates obtaining an aggregate of between 50% and 74% will obtain a pass mark for the MEd degree.

123.4 A distinction may be awarded to a candidate only if a Class 2A (70%-74%) or better has been obtained for the coursework component and a Class

1 (75% or more) is obtained for the research (half-thesis), provided that an aggregated mark of 75% or more is obtained.

123.5 No supplementary examinations for the coursework component will be permitted.

123.6 An examiner may recommend that the research be revised and resubmitted for examination.

123.7 An external examiner will be appointed for the coursework examination.

123.8 A different external examiner may be appointed for the research examination.

123.9 The final assessment of the candidate is made by the Head of the Department and the Dean, based on the external examiner's report on the coursework examination scripts and the examiners' reports on the research. Where there is clear conflict between internal and external examiners concerning the evaluation of the research, these documents along with all the examiners' reports will be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Faculty.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

E.124 Curriculum

The PhD qualification signifies that persons on whom it is confirmed have submitted a thesis which:

124.1 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

124.2 is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature;

124.3 has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree;

124.4 has made a substantial and original contribution to knowledge in the discipline, the substance of which is worthy of publication in a scholarly journal or book.

124.5 is satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES RULES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.
The Rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Humanities only.

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Humanities:

Name to be denoted by the letters

Bachelor of Arts	BA
Bachelor of Arts with Honours	BA(Hons)
Bachelor of Fine Art	BFA
Bachelor of Music	BMus
Bachelor of Journalism	BJourn
Bachelor of Social Science	BSocSc
Bachelor of Social Science with Honours	BSocSc(Hons)
Master of Arts	MA
Master of Fine Art	MFineArt
Master of Music	MMus
Master of Social Science	MSocSc
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Literature	DLitt
Doctor of Music	DMus
Doctor of Social Science	DSocSc
Diploma in Fine Art	DFA
Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language*	DipESL(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching*	DipELT(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies	DipIS(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration*	DipLGA(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology*	DipPsychol(PG)
Higher Diploma in Psychology*	HDipPsychol
Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism	DipJourn(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management	DipMedMgmt(PG)

** All these degrees and diplomas are not necessarily offered every year.*

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS AND BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

H.1

The degree of Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Social Science may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

H.2

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.48 of the

General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their satisfactory completion of the National Senior Certificate, or other examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent, for at least three years.

H.3

Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain credit in not less than ten courses; they may present themselves for examination in not more than four of these in the first year of study, and not more than four in the second year of study; provided that:

3.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must have obtained credit in at least two courses before entering on the second course in any subject;

3.2 Candidates with unweighted Admission points higher than 50 will normally be granted permission to take a fifth course in their first year of study;

3.3 Candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in one additional course in the second year of study provided that the Dean of the Faculty is satisfied that the candidate has an above average academic record; and

3.4 Candidates who have only one course, other than a major course, outstanding for the degree may be permitted by the Senate to present themselves at a supplementary examination, provided that this concession will be granted only if candidates failed the course in the current year and obtained at least an F2 classification in the course;

3.4.1 Candidates may not enter the final course of any of the subjects listed in Rule H.7 for the BA degree or H.20 for the BSocSc degree until they have at least five credits towards the degree;

3.4.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate candidates who have obtained credit for the final course of a major subject may not present themselves for examination in the final course of any further major subject until they have at least seven credits towards the degree;

3.5 In any given semester the final course of a major subject may not be taken in conjunction with more than two other courses.

H.4

Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in two courses, including at least one of the subjects specified in Rule H.9 or H.20; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have passed the final course of a

major subject; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

H.5

Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following subjects:

GROUP A

Afrikaans
 Anthropology
 Art History & Visual Culture
 Chinese Studies
 Classical Studies
 Drama
 English Language and Linguistics
 English (Literary Studies in)
 Ethnomusicology
 Fine Art Practice (Fine Art)⁴
 French
 German Studies
 Greek I
 History
 Industrial and Economic Sociology
 Instrumental Music Studies
 Journalism and Media Studies
 Latin I
 Legal Theory
 Modern Fiction 2
 Music Culture and History
 Music Theory and Analysis
 Organisational Psychology
 Philosophy
 Politics
 Psychology
 Sociology
 Sound Technology
 Xhosa

GROUP B

Group B comprises all other subjects offered by the Faculties of Commerce, Law or Science for credit towards any undergraduate Bachelor's degree at Rhodes University. Candidates taking any course in the Faculty of Commerce, Law or Science shall be governed by that Faculty's rules pertaining to that course.

1 Not necessarily offered in any particular year.

2 May not be taken in a candidate's first academic year in terms of regulation A.2

3 Economics 3B may also be offered as a credit provided credit has been obtained for Economics 2. (Economics 3B does not count as a major for the

degree.)

4 Only for students who intend to major in the subject and only together with Art History & Visual Culture.

5 Students who do not major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics may take only the first-year course in this subject.

NOTE Students are advised to take in their first year curriculum only courses which lead to possible majors.

H.7

A candidate must obtain credit in all the required courses in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects, which are taken at the third year level (NQF level 7). At least one such major subject (and 180 credits overall) must be chosen from Group A.

NOTE Candidates who are permitted to register for the final courses of three major subjects in any one year will normally be required to write one in February of the following year.

H.8

A candidate must obtain credit in at least four non-initial courses. All second- and third-year courses and Modern Fiction count as non-initial courses.

H.9

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have attained the pass standard in Afrikaans, English or French at the National Senior Certificate examination or another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent, prior to the commencement of a course in these subjects; Provided that this shall not apply to courses designated French Preliminary, German Studies 1, Greek I, and Latin I.

NB Candidates who have passed an examination in French deemed to be equivalent to the National Senior Certificate examination may, at the discretion of the Dean of Faculty in consultation with the Head of the School of Languages and the respective Subject Head, be admitted to French 1.

H.10

Save in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate candidates

10.1.1 who have obtained a National Senior Certificate or equivalent qualification with German as a subject shall not be permitted to register for the course German Studies 1, as the language component starts at beginners' level.

10.1.2 who are German mother-tongue speakers shall not be permitted to register for German Studies courses, as the language components are at foreign language level.

10.2 who are French mother-tongue speakers will not be allowed to register for French 1.

10.3.1 whose first language is isiXhosa shall not be permitted to register for Xhosa (NMT) courses; and 10.3.2 who have passed isiXhosa at the National Senior Certificate level or other equivalent examination shall not be permitted to register for Xhosa 1 (NMT).

10.4 who have passed Xhosa as 2nd or 3rd language at the National Senior Certificate level or other equivalent examination may be permitted to proceed to the second level course in Xhosa (NMT) on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty in consultation with the Head of the School of Languages.

H.11

11.1 Candidates who obtain credit in French Preliminary may proceed to the second course in that language if they have obtained a first-class pass or if they are permitted to do so by the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Languages.

11.2 Prerequisites for Practical and Commercial French are a pass in French in the National Senior Certificate examination or an equivalent examination, or a satisfactory pass at French 1P.

H.12

12.1.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Sociology 1 before proceeding to Industrial and Economic Sociology 2.

12.1.2 A candidate who has passed Industrial and Economic Sociology 2 may take Sociology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has passed Sociology 2 may not take Industrial and Economic Sociology 3 except with permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a satisfactory level of performance must be achieved.

12.2 A candidate must obtain credit in either Anthropology 1 or Introduction to Philosophy or Journalism 1 or Legal Theory 1 or Politics 1 or Psychology 1 or Sociology 1 or Economics 1 before entering Philosophy 2.

12.3.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Psychology 1 before proceeding to Organisational Psychology 2.

12.3.2 A candidate who has passed Organisational Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Organisational Psychology 3, except

with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

H.13

13.1 Only 120 first-year students gain entry into Journalism and Media Studies 2. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance, portfolio of journalistic work completed by students, tutors reports and biographical questionnaires. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second try.

13.2 A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 2 will not automatically be admitted to the four-year degree but will be permitted to take Journalism and Media Studies 3 as a major in the Bachelor of Arts degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 3 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Production components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. A candidate who fails to obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass. No such candidate shall be permitted to re-register for the course or rewrite the examination. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will be able to complete a Bachelor of Arts degree.

13.3 No candidate registered for a course in Journalism and Media Studies may carry a workload of more than 10 credit points, except with the permission of the Head of the Department. The maximum workload permitted may not exceed 12 credit points.

H.14

Students who major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics must include the following in their degree: 14.1 Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 2, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 3.

14.2 All the required courses in a second major subject to be selected from those listed in Rule H.7.

14.3 Such additional courses as may be required to complete the degree, selected from subjects listed in Rule H.8.

14.4 Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than three courses additional to those prescribed.

H.15

Candidates may not take a course in Fine Art Practice unless they are taking the corresponding course in Art History & Visual Culture in the same year, or unless they have obtained credit in the corresponding course in Art History & Visual Culture.

H.16

16.1 Candidates taking Mathematical Statistics as a major subject must obtain credit in Mathematics 1 or 1E.

16.2 Credit in Mathematics 1 or MAT 1E (or at least two semester credits of MAT 101, MAT 102, and STA 1D or STA 101) is required before a student may register for Mathematical Statistics 2.

H.17

Credit shall not be given for:

17.1 more than one of Mathematics 1 or 1E;

17.2 more than one of Statistics 1 or 101 or 1D;

17.3 Psychology 2 and Organisational Psychology 2 or for Psychology 3 and Organisational Psychology 3.

17.4 Sociology 2 and 3 and also for Industrial and Economic Sociology 2 and 3.

17.5 English 1 and English 1A.

H.18

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class I in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

The following additional Rules apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Social Science degree:

H.19

Candidates may present themselves for examination in subjects chosen from at least two of the following Groups and, except under exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the curriculum must be in conformity with the conditions applying to each Group:

GROUP C

At least five credits including at least one major subject must be chosen from this group:

Anthropology; Economics; Organisational

Psychology; Industrial and Economic Sociology; Politics; Psychology; Sociology, Journalism and Media Studies.

NOTE: If Economics is chosen as a major subject the other major must be chosen from Group A (as listed in H.5 above).

A second major subject may be chosen from Group A or B (as listed in H.5 above).

1 Economics 3B may also be offered as a credit provided credit has been obtained for Economics 2. (Economics 3B does not count as a major for the degree.) Refer also to Rule H.21.

2 A student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for Information Systems 2. Refer also to Rule C.7.7).

3 Candidates who do not satisfy the Faculty of Commerce entry requirements for first time entering students may not be registered for more than one of Management 1, Accounting 1, Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D.

H.20

...

H.21

...

H.22

Candidates taking any Group A course in the Faculty of Science shall be governed by Science Faculty rules pertaining to those courses.

THE HUMANITIES EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

Special provision is made in the Faculty of Humanities to accommodate students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of BA, BSocSc or BJourn. A number of special credit earning courses are offered from which a curriculum suited to the needs of each student admitted to the Extended Studies Programme will be drawn up at Registration by the Dean, in consultation with appropriate Heads of Departments. Because of the nature of the programme, the number of students admitted to it in any one year will be limited.

The structure of the first year programme shall normally consist of:

Academic and Computer Literacies *plus* 2 full courses from:

Anthropology, Journalism & Media Studies, Politics and Sociology.

THE HONOURS DEGREE

The Rules that follow apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Arts (Honours) and Bachelor of Social Science (Honours) degrees.

H.23

The honours degree may be taken in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

NOTE: *The Faculty offers Interdisciplinary Honours degrees in African Studies, Development Studies, Gender Studies, Industrial Relations and Southern African Cultural Studies. See the entry under "Interdepartmental Studies" in the Calendar.*

H.24

24.1 A candidate who has been awarded the ordinary degree, or has been admitted to the status thereof or, being a graduate of another Faculty, has passed such examinations as are deemed by the Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the honours degree, or has completed all the requirements thereof except the requirement regarding attendance, may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.31-H.35 inclusive, be admitted to the course for the honours degree.

24.2 For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1), candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the said requirements and pursue a course of advanced study in their chosen subject.

24.3 As an alternative to sub-paragraph (1), a candidate may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.26 and H.27 and H.31, be admitted to the course for the honours degree from the beginning of the third academic year of study for the ordinary degree.

24.4 For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), a candidate shall attend the University for a further period of not less than two academic years and comply with such further requirements as may be prescribed by the Senate.

24.5 Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, candidates who have been awarded the ordinary degree may be admitted to a two-year course to take the honours and Master's degrees concurrently. At the end of this period, they shall write the full honours examination, and, if successful, may submit their Master's thesis at any subsequent date without further attendance requirements.

NB *This paragraph does not apply to those Departments in which the Master's degree is taken by examination.*

H.25

25.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department or Departments concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

25.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided

25.2.1 that they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to honours in that subject;

25.2.2 that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

25.2.3 that the Board of the Faculty approves such arrangements.

25.3 Except for the Honours degree in African Studies and the Honours degrees in Development Studies, Gender Studies, Industrial Society and Southern African Cultural Studies, candidates may normally not present themselves for examination in more than two subjects.

25.4 If more than 60% of the honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

H.26

Candidates taking the honours degree under Rule H.23 will be required to study and write examinations in only one of their major subjects, but they will be required to study that subject more widely and with greater thoroughness than in the case of candidates for the ordinary degree; they will be required to write such additional papers in that subject or some branch of it, or some subject closely allied to it, as the Head of the Department may require; and they may be required to take a compulsory ancillary subject, which shall not, however, be a third year course. In their final year, candidates will be required to pursue a course of advanced study in their chosen subject.

H.27

27.1 A candidate taking the honours degree under Rule H.24.3 will be required to take

27.1.1 a preliminary examination at the end of the third year of study; and

27.1.2 a final examination at the end of the fourth year of study.

27.2 In the preliminary examination the candidate will write, in addition to the normal examinations for the major, two or three 3-hour papers on topics prescribed by the Head of the Department concerned and approved by the Board of the Faculty.

NB *Both parts of the preliminary examination will be examined externally and the results recorded.*

27.3 The final examination shall consist of the same number of papers as required for the normal honours course.

H.28

The periods referred to in Rule H.24 are the periods of full-time study required of an honours degree candidate. Such candidates may not take up any fulltime employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another Department concurrently with their honours degree.

H.29

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit students to take an honours course as a part-time student: provided that

29.1 they attend the honours classes within the normal timetable of the Department, and

29.2 the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, not more than two years.

H.30

Candidates taking the honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

H.31

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the honours degree in terms of Rule H.24.3, unless they have obtained credit in not less than eight courses in such a manner that all the requirements of the ordinary degree, except the requirements regarding attendance, could be fulfilled in one further year of study.

H.32

32.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the combined honours degree in Philosophy,

Politics and Economics, unless they have obtained at least three credits in each of two of those subjects and at least one credit in the remaining subject.

32.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the honours degree in African Studies unless they have a major in at least one of the following: Anthropology, Economics, History, Industrial and Economic Sociology, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology or Sociology. Students will normally be expected to offer at least two papers in the honours programme conducted by a Department in which they majored.

H.33

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained credit in such compulsory ancillary courses as may be prescribed for that course.

H.34

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, honours degree candidates may not present themselves more than once for examination for the honours degree in the same subject.

H.35

Candidates must write all parts of the examination, other than the translation test (if required) at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination: provided that part-time candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of their examination at the end of their first year of study and part at the end of their second year of study.

NB *Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, a research essay must be handed in before or at the same time as the other examinations are written. Normally a research essay of a maximum of 10 000 words shall be regarded as the equivalent of one paper.*

H.36

A candidate who has been admitted to the course for the honours degree in terms of Rule H.24.3, and has failed to satisfy the examiners, may be awarded the ordinary degree.

H.37

Candidates who have obtained the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism may be accepted as candidates for the Honours or Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies, provided that the candidate has passed such examinations as could be deemed by Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the relevant degree. Candidates wishing to enrol for the

Master's degree may be required to complete one or more papers from the honours degree and must satisfy the general Rules governing the Master's degree in the Faculty of Humanities.

FINE ART

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ART

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Department of Fine Art only. Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

H.38

38.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in:

38.1.1 Two 30-credit courses in any subject approved by the Board of the Faculty, which would normally be taken during the first two years of study;

38.1.2 All the courses listed below:

FIRST YEAR

Fine Art Practice 1 (FAP 1A = FAP 1B)

Students are introduced to specialist media and diverse working methods through a series of projects in drawing, painting, sculpture, photography, printmedia and digital arts.

Art History and Visual Culture 1 (AHV 101 + AHV 102)

The course introduces students to the context of 'art history' and 'visual culture', and addresses the politics of visibility.

SECOND YEAR

Fine Art Practice 2 (FAP 2A + FAP 2B)

Students continue their study of specialist media and diverse working methods through a series of projects in drawing, painting, sculpture, photography, printmedia and digital arts.

Art History and Visual Culture 2

Art History and Visual Culture 2 examines the concept of authorship in artistic practice.

THIRD YEAR

Fine Art Practice 3

Each student is based in a specialist media area (Digital Arts, Painting, Photography, Printmedia, Sculpture) but, by arrangement with the appropriate staff, is encouraged to work across the media areas. Teaching is primarily via projects and self-directed study.

Art History and Visual Culture 3

The course focuses on the overall theme of "Art, Power and Society", deconstructing various politics of display, discourse and visual languages at work in the field of visual arts and culture.

FOURTH YEAR

Fine Art Practice 4

Each student is based in a specialist media area (Digital Arts, Painting, Photography, Printmaking, Sculpture) but, by arrangement with the appropriate staff, is encouraged to work across the media areas. Teachers direct students in such a way that they are able to develop their own areas of exploration rather than completing projects.

Art History and Visual Culture 4

This course, which is only for BFA students, comprises two courses and a research essay.

H.39

With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than two courses additional to those prescribed in Rule H.38.

H.40

Candidates taking Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands, English, Latin, Greek, French, German, or an African language shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.9 to HH.11

H.41

41.1 Candidates who fail Art History & Visual Culture 101 or Art History & Visual Culture 102, must obtain credit in at least one of these before proceeding to the next year of study. Candidates who fail Art History & Visual Culture 2 must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

41.2 Candidates who fail in any other course must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

H.42

Fine Art Practice: In first, second and third year, work will be examined via two assessments, one in mid-year and one at the end of the year. Midyear assessment counts 25% towards final mark. In fourth year, work will be examined via work-in-progress assessment in midyear, and summative assessment at the end of the year.

H.43

The degree certificate of candidates who pass in class I of the final examination shall be endorsed with distinction in Fine Art Practice and/or Art

History & Visual Culture, as the case may be.

FINE ART OPTIONS FOR THE BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE

NOTE: *Candidates may major in Art History and Visual Culture in the BA without doing the practical course.*

Students undertaking a BA degree in the Faculty of Humanities may also obtain Fine Art credits by the following routes:

* BA students may major in Fine Art Practice if they also major in Art History and Visual Culture.

* BA students may study Art History and Visual Culture without studying Fine Art Practice.

* BA students who are not studying Fine Art Practice may major in Art History and Visual Culture but may also study Art History and Visual Culture for one or two years only.

DIPLOMA IN FINE ART

H.44

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Diploma in Fine Art unless

44.1 they have passed the School Leaving Certificate examination of the Independent Examinations Board, or another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent; or

44.2 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Fine Art, is satisfied as to their suitability to take the course.

NB

44.2.1 For the purpose of this Rule the Senate will recognise a Cambridge Overseas School Certificate, plus passes in two matriculation subjects at subsidiary level in the Cambridge Overseas Higher School Certificate or at the "M" level examination conducted by the Associated Examining Board as equivalent to the School Leaving Certificate of the Independent Examinations Board.

44.2.2 Admission in terms of Rule H.44.2 above is only considered on the grounds of mature age and/or exceptional ability.

H.45

A candidate for the diploma shall attend the University for not less than four years after being admitted to the course, and must obtain credit in all the following courses:

First Year: Fine Art Practice 1, Art History and Visual Culture 1

Second Year: Fine Art Practice 2, Art History and

Visual Culture 2

Third Year: Fine Art Practice 3, Art History and Visual Culture 3

Fourth Year: Fine Art Practice 4, Art History and Visual Culture 4

Examinations for practical subjects will be by assessment as follows:

Years 1-3

Advisory mid-year review of all practical work and end of year assessment by portfolio review of work produced during that year.

Final Year

A mid-year portfolio review, and final end of year assessment by exhibition and portfolio review of work produced during that year.

H.46

With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than two courses additional to those prescribed in Rule H.45.

H.47

47.1 Candidates who fail Art History and Visual Culture 1 or 2 must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

47.2 Candidates who fail in any other course must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

H.48

The diploma certificate of candidates who pass in class 1 of the final-year examination shall be endorsed with distinction in Fine Art Practice and/or Art History and Visual Culture, as the case may be.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ART

Two options are offered for this degree, Option A and Option B.

Option A: The examination comprises an exhibition of studio work and the presentation of a mini thesis. The exhibition of studio work that the candidate submits for examination will be artwork produced since admission to the degree. It should be supplemented by a presentation of sketchbooks and/or other appropriate evidence of research and development. The mini thesis should be between 12 000 and 15 000 words and should be on a topic related to the candidate's studio work. The two components form an integrated submission and are assessed as such. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The completed mini thesis must be submitted to the

Registrar's Division at least three days before studio work is submitted for examination. *A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the studio work and mini thesis is given to each candidate.*

Option B: The examination comprises an exhibition that the candidate has curated in a major museum and a thesis. Unless the candidate is already employed in the museum sector, completing the curriculum will require him or her to undertake an internship in the museum hosting his or her exhibition. The final mark for the degree comprises 50% for the exhibition and 50% for the thesis. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The completed thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least two weeks before the exhibition is submitted for examination. *A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and thesis is given to each candidate.*

MASTER OF ARTS (Thesis)

A thesis must be submitted for examination on any approved topic within the fields of Art History and Visual Culture. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's rules governing Master's degrees by thesis apply.

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's rules governing Doctoral Degrees apply. No candidate may be admitted who is not already in possession of a Master's Degree in Fine Art or History of Art or any other qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent for the purpose of entrance to this degree.

MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY

RULES FOR BMUS DEGREE CURRICULUM FOR BMUS DEGREE

FIRST YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 1
Music Culture and History 1
Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102
Sound Technology 1 OR one Bachelor of Arts or Science course

SECOND YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 2
Music Culture and History 201 and 202
Music Theory and Analysis 2

Sound Technology 1 or 2 OR one Bachelor of Arts or Science course

THIRD YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 3

Students choose two of the following courses: IMS 3, MCH 3 and MTA 3

FOURTH YEAR

Students must do five papers or their equivalent in credit points (5)

Compulsory: At least one of the following:

Paper 1: Extended essay (2) or

Paper 2: Full Recital (2) or

Paper 3: Full Composition Portfolio (2)

Options: Remaining credit points are acquired from the following courses. If Paper 1 has not been chosen, the options must include Musicology 4, or Analysis 4, or Ethnomusicology 4. All options are not necessarily offered every year.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)

Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)

Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)

Paper 7: Sound Technology (1)

Paper 8: Short composition portfolio (1)

Paper 9: Short public performance (1)

*Paper 10: Instrumental Music Studies 4 (1)

Paper 11: Conducting (1)

Paper 12: Chamber Music Recital (1)

Paper 13: Concerto Performance (1)

Paper 14: Music Education (1)

Paper 15: Arts Management (1)

**Paper 10 may not be taken in conjunction with Papers 2 and / or 9.*

BA, BSocSci AND BSc DEGREES WITH MUSIC AS A MAJOR

Normally not more than FIVE music subjects may be taken in the BA or FOUR in a BSc degree (see the relevant Faculty Rules).

FIRST YEAR COURSES

Students may choose from the following:

Instrumental Music Studies 1

Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102

Music Culture and History 101 and/or 102

Sound Technology 1

SECOND YEAR COURSES

Students may choose from the following:

Instrumental Music Studies 2

Music Culture and History 201 and/or 202

Music Theory and Analysis 2

Sound Technology 2

THIRD YEAR COURSES

Students may choose one of the following:

Instrumental Music Studies 3

Music Culture and History 3

Music Theory and Analysis 3

MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)

Curriculum and syllabi are identical to BMus Fourth Year

NB

1. *All Instrumental Music Studies students are required to take part in at least one approved ensemble: RU Chamber Choir, Opera / Vocal Ensemble, Jazz Ensemble, Flute Ensemble, Guitar Ensemble, String Ensemble, etc. for the duration of their course of study. Please note that tuition in and examination of the ensemble component (or second instrument) of Instrumental Music Studies is in addition to these requirements. Attendance of a minimum of three quarters of the rehearsal schedule is obligatory.*

DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC

See also the General Rules for Master's degrees.

A Master's Degree may be awarded by submission of:

- (i) a thesis,
- (ii) a portfolio of compositions*,
- (iii) two public recitals*(60%) and mini-thesis (40%)
- (iv) two public recitals (60%) and short composition portfolio (40%)

*See also the General Rules for the Degree of Master.*Any culture or style may be included.*

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

See also the General Rules for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

In addition to, or in modification of these Rules, the following apply:

- 1. A candidate for the PhD degree is required to submit for the approval of the Senate a thesis or a set of compositions. A candidate who submits a set of compositions in place of a thesis shall be required to submit 3 copies of the compositions.
- 2. A special treatise may be offered as a thesis on a subject previously approved by the Senate.
- 3. A set of compositions must consist of at least three substantial original compositions (not less than 70 minutes in duration), the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of

the Department and the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee.

4. Where compositions are submitted, the candidate must also submit an explanatory statement (not less than 25 000 words) referring to important aspects of the scores, including in particular a description of the form or forms employed and of any contrapuntal, harmonic and orchestration devices used. This document should detail the portfolio's theme or contextualising thread. Recordings of Compositions are required.

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MUSIC (Senior Doctorate)

The General Rules for the Degree of Doctor, other than Doctor of Philosophy, in all Faculties apply to the degree of Doctor of Music. The set of musical compositions referred to in Regulation G.39 may be printed or in manuscript together with suitable recordings.

In addition, the following apply:

- 1. A candidate for the degree of DMus is required to submit for the approval of Senate a published work or a set of compositions.
- 2. The published work must be of historical or theoretical or analytical research in music, and must open new aspects of the subject discussed.
- 3. A set of compositions must consist of three original compositions, the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF JOURNALISM H.62

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

H.63

63.1 Candidates for the degree must obtain credit in at least eleven courses which must include the following:

63.1.1 Journalism and Media Studies 1, 2, 3 and 4; and

63.1.2 all the required courses in a subject to be selected from those major subjects listed in Rule H.7 or Rule S.8 of the Faculty of Science Rules, or Human Kinetics and Ergonomics or Information

Systems, or Management.

63.1.3 No student may register for any course in Management or Information Systems, unless Management or Information Systems is intended as a major.

63.2 The remaining courses must be selected from those Humanities courses listed in Rule H.5; provided that:

63.2.1 Candidates who select a major subject from Rule S.8 must select ancillary courses as prescribed in Rule S.23.

63.2.2 Candidates who select Management may include two courses in Accounting in their curriculum.

The pre-requisite for a major in Management will apply.

NB

(1) Only 120 first-year students gain entry into Journalism and Media Studies 2. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance, portfolio of journalistic work completed by students, tutors reports and biographical questionnaires. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. Candidates wishing to return at a later stage must reapply before the 1st day of Term 4 of the previous year. If a student withdraws from the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course for certified reasons of illness or trauma or is excluded s/he will not be allowed to repeat completed modules or exams. These candidates will need to inform the School of their intention to return by the end of the first week of January. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second attempt.

(2) A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 2 will not automatically be admitted to the four-year degree but will be permitted to take Journalism and Media Studies 3 as a major in the Bachelor of Arts degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 3 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Production components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. A candidate who fails to obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass. A candidate who passes Journalism

and Media Studies 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will be able to complete a Bachelor of Arts degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 4 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 60% for both the Media Studies and Production component of the Journalism and Media Studies 3 course.

Candidates accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 4, and who are registered for a Bachelor of Arts degree, may change their registration to Bachelor of Journalism subject to the rules for a Bachelor of Journalism degree being met.

(3) A student registering for a Bachelor of Journalism degree with a major selected from Rule S.8 or a major in Management will be permitted into Journalism 4 subject to the successful completion of both majors at third-year level and subject to their having at least 8 credits.

H.64

Candidates for the Bachelor of Journalism degree who take their second major subject from the subjects listed in H.7 or who major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Information Systems or Management, must either

64.1 major in a basic subject; provided that candidates majoring in Classical Civilization or Philosophy will be required to complete one other course from the list of basic subjects, (including Introduction to Philosophy); or 64.2 complete a first and second course of two basic subjects; or

64.3 complete a first and second course of one basic subject and first-year courses in two other basic subjects.

NB Basic subjects in the Faculty of Humanities are:

(1) Any language course listed in Group A of H.8; provided that this is not an introductory language course which has no literature component in its curriculum.

(2) Anthropology, Economics, English Language and Linguistics, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology, Sociology.

(3) Classical Civilization, History, Geography.

(4) Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, Statistics.

(5) History and Appreciation of Music, Art History & Visual Culture.

H.65

Candidates for the Bachelor of Journalism degree who take their second major from the subjects listed in Rule S.8 must complete three courses from the following basic subjects: Biochemistry, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Economics,

Entomology, Geography, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Psychology, Zoology, Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, Microbiology.

NOTE Students intending to major in any of the subjects listed in Rule S.8 are referred to the prerequisite subjects listed in Rule S.23.

H.66

66.1 A candidate taking the course Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 3 must obtain credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 2.

66.2 A candidate majoring in Management must have obtained credit in Accounting 1, and Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D or Mathematics 1 or 1E.

Credit in Accounting 1 (and Economics 1) must be obtained before admission to Management 3. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D, or Mathematics 1 or 1E, may be taken concurrently with Management 3 with the permission of the Head of the Department of Management.

66.3 Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in Journalism and Media Studies 1 and credit in at least one course in one further subject; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have obtained credit in either Journalism 3 or the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.63; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study when they have at least eight credits including the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.63 and are engaged in the study of Journalism 4; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

66.4 During their first, second and third years of study, candidates shall be subject to Rules H.3.1, 3.2, 3.4,3.5, H.5 ,H.6, H.8, H.9 to H.12 and H.14 to H.17, and, for courses in the Science Faculty, S.19 and S.23.

66.5 Candidates shall not be permitted to enter the course Journalism 4 until they have obtained at least nine credits including the final course, other than Journalism and Media Studies, of a subject taken under H.63.

H.67

The degree certificates of candidates shall be endorsed "with distinction" if they obtain an average mark equivalent to a Class 1 pass for the modules of their Journalism and Media Studies 4 course taken together.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN JOURNALISM

H.68

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies (PgDip) if they have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor in any Faculty of the University; provided that a student with a major in Journalism and Media Studies from Rhodes University will not be admitted to courses already covered within that student's major; or

H.69

Candidates for the Diploma will be admitted on the recommendation of the Head of School. The School reserves the right to limit the enrolment for the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism to 12 students for any one academic year.

H.70

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain credit in all prescribed courses.

(For further curriculum information, refer to the Journalism and Media Studies departmental entry.)

H.71

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.72

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MEDIA MANAGEMENT

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

H.73

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any faculty of the University; provided that a student with a major in Journalism and Media Studies or a credit in Management 1 from Rhodes University will not be admitted;

H.74

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least three of the following five papers and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% for the five papers combined:

Paper 1: Media Theory

Paper 2: Extended Essay

Paper 3: Management

Paper 4: Media Economics, Press Law and Policy

Paper 5: Media Management

H.75

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.76

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN INTERNATIONAL STUDIES

H.77

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

H.78

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least four of the five courses and obtain an overall aggregated of at least 50 percent in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. The examination consists of five papers from the following typical course listing:

International Relations

African Political Economy

Peace and Conflict in Africa

Diplomacy

Political Economy

African Politics

Africa in World Politics

International Law

H.79

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.80

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT ADMINISTRATION

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

H.81

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

H.82

82.1 A candidate for the Diploma must pass in at least two of the three non-practical components as well as pass the practical component, and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50%, in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. The basic components of the Diploma are:

Basics of Local Government

Local Government finance and administration

The role of Local Government in development and transformation

Practical in Local Government.

82.2 A pass will be obtained in the practical component by means of submission of a report by the candidate and by assessment of the performance of the candidate in the three-month placement.

H.83

The duration of the Diploma course shall be not less than one academic year.

H.84

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

H.85

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor EITHER with a language major and at least one credit in English or Linguistics OR with an Education major and at least three language credits, one of which must be English or Linguistics.

H.86

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. There will be four components to the assessment of the Diploma course, each contributing equal amounts to the final grade:

Paper 1: General linguistics

Paper 2: Teaching methodology and language testing

Paper 3: Psychology of second language learning and teaching AND Language in society and education

Class record: Based on the course-work during the year.

H.87

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.88

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

MASTER'S DEGREES

In addition to Rules G.50 to G.61 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Master. The thesis must show that the candidate

(a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

(b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature; and

(c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree.

In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation. Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for masters' degrees in the Faculty of Humanities is 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

MASTER'S DEGREE BY COURSEWORK

1. Master's by coursework candidates will be required to register full-time in attendance for at least one year except for the Master's in English Second Language, and the Master's in Journalism and Media Studies.

2. The coursework section should be spread over one year with the examinations for that section written in November of that academic year, except in the case of students in Journalism and Media Studies.

3. The thesis shall be submitted not later than one year after the initial examination.

4. The coursework degree shall normally comprise three papers of three hours' duration together valued at 50% of the total final mark. The thesis shall represent 50% of the total.

5. The length of a thesis in the Master's degree by coursework should normally not exceed 30 000 words, but should not under any circumstances exceed 50 000 words (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes illustrative material and appendices). The word limit for the extended writing project for the Masters in Creative Writing is 80 000.

6. The topics to be covered by the examination and the research project must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The research proposal, including those for the MFA, must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

7. The examination procedure shall be as follows:

7.1 A candidate must obtain a minimum of 50% for the papers as a whole as well as for the thesis to qualify for an overall pass.

7.2 Candidates obtaining between 50% - 74% will obtain a pass mark for the Master's degree.

7.3 A distinction may be awarded for a Master's degree taken by coursework and thesis if the aggregate mark for both components of the course

is > 75% and provided that a subminimum of at least 70% was achieved for the individual components of the degree.

7.4 Candidates will not be permitted to rewrite any papers in the examination section. No supplementary examinations will be permitted.

7.5 The examiner may recommend that the thesis be revised and resubmitted for examination.

7.6 The formal examination plus a thesis are to be regarded as sub-components of an overall assessment and the examination should be handled in the same way as an honours examination. The scripts of the candidate and the thesis should go in the end to a single external examiner, who should have before him/her the internal examiner's marks for the scripts but not the internal examiner's mark for the thesis. The external examiner should be required to pass judgment on the candidate's overall performance in the formal examination plus the writing of the thesis.

7.7 Where the coursework degree has a research report which constitutes 35% or less of the marks, a distinction is awarded if the candidate obtains 75% or above in the coursework component and a 2A or better in the research report and the aggregated final mark is 75% or above.

8. Candidates may be admitted to the Master's degree by coursework and thesis in Journalism and Media Studies if they

8.1 have obtained a four year degree (B.Journ) or an honours in Journalism and Media Studies or in a discipline deemed by the Head of Department to be an adequate foundation for a Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies, or

8.2 have been admitted to an honours degree in a different discipline, but have in addition at least five years of professional experience in journalism and/or media studies; provided that

8.3 a candidate will not be able to repeat any topic completed before in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies;

8.4 a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours degree;

8.5 a candidate may be required to take the degree over two years,

8.6 satisfy the general Rules governing the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.

9. A master's degree by coursework and thesis is also offered in Interdisciplinary Studies (refer to the Interdepartmental entry).

NOTE *The Board of the Faculty of Humanities has approved the following procedures for a Master's*

by examination in the Department of Psychology only:

The formal examinations are regarded as Part One of the examination and the department should appoint an external examiner for those papers and publish the results of the examinations. When the student completes the thesis, which is regarded as Part Two of the examination, this may go to an entirely different examiner who may see the thesis only. The final assessment of the candidate is made by the Head of Department and the internal examiners, based on the external examiner's report on the formal examination scripts and the external examiner's report on the thesis. Where there is clear conflict between Part One and Part Two, the candidate's examination scripts and the thesis are to be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

DOCTORAL DEGREES

In addition to Rules G.62 to G.75 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy:

The thesis must show that the candidate:

- (a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;
- (b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature;
- (c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree; and
- (d) has made a substantial and original contribution to knowledge in the discipline, the substance of which is worthy of publication in a scholarly journal or book.

In addition such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

Anthropology					
Subject code	Mnemonic	Subject name	*	NQF level	NQF credits
3001101	ANT 101	Anthropology 101	S1	5	15
3001102	ANT 102	Anthropology 102	S2	5	15
3001200	ANT 2	Athrop[ology	Y	6	30
3001300	ANT 3	Anthropology 3	Y	7	60
CHERTL					
160110A	POL 1ES	Politics 1 Ext Studies	Y	5	0
170110A	JRN 1ES	Journalism 1 Ext Studies	Y	5	0
300110A	ANT 1ES	Anthropology 1 Ext Studies	Y	5	0
320110A	SOC 1ES	Sociology 1 Ext Studies	Y	5	0
51011B3	ACL 1	Academic & Computer Literacies	Y	5	0
Drama					
2301100	DRA 1	Drama 1	Y	5	30
2301200	DRA 2	Drama 2	Y	6	30
2301300	DRA 3	Drama 3	Y	7	60
English					
1101101	ENG 101	English 101	S1	5	15
1101102	ENG 102	English 102	S2	5	15
1101201	ENG 201	English 201	S1	6	15

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

1101202	ENG 201	English 202	S2	6	15
1104200	AES 2	English Studies 2	Y	6	30
1101301	ENG 301	English 301	S1	7	30
1101302	ENG 302	English 302	S2	7	30
1104300	AES 3	Combined English Studies 3	Y	7	60
English Language and Linguistics					
19051L0	ELN 1	English Language+Linguistics 1	Y	5	30
1903110	PROCOM1	Prof Communication Accountant	S2	6	15
190311A	PROCOM2	Prof Communication General	S1	6	15
19052L0	ELN 2	English Language+Linguistics 2	Y	6	30
19053L0	ELN 3	English Language+Linguistics 3	Y	7	60
Fine Art					
2410101	AHV 101	Art History & Visual Culture 101	S1	5	15
2410102	AHV 102	Art History & Visual Culture 102	S2	5	15
24221A0	FAP 1A	Fine Art Practice 1A	Y	5	30
24221B0	FAP 1B	Fine Art Practice 1B	Y	5	30
2410200	AHV 2	Art History & Visual Culture 2	Y	6	30
24222A0	FAP 2A	Fine Art Practice 2A	Y	6	30
24222B0	FAP 2B	Fine Art Practice 2B	Y	6	30
2410300	AHV 3	Art History & Visual Culture 3	Y	7	60
2422300	FAP 3	Fine Art Practice 3	Y	7	60
2410400	AHV 4	Art History & Visual Culture 4	Y	8	60
2422400	FAP 4	Fine Art Practice 4	Y	8	60
History					
1401101	HIS 101	History 101	S1	5	15
1401102	HIS 102	History 102	S2	5	15
1401201	HIS 201	History 201	S1	6	15
1401202	HIS 202	History 202	S2	6	15
1401306	HIS 306	History 306 Africa In Crisis	S1	7	15
1401311	HIS 311	History 311 Sa Environmental	S2	7	15
1401312	HIS 312	History 312 Zimbabwean Themes	S1	7	15
1401318	HIS 318	History 318 Inequality A Global His	S2	7	15
1401319	HIS 319	History 319 University in South Africa PAst and Pr	S1	7	15
1401321	HIS 321	History 321 Africa Maritime	S2	7	15

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

Journalism and Media Studies					
1701100	JRN 1	Journalism & Media Studies 1	Y	5	30
1701200	JRN 2	Journalism & Media Studies 2	Y	6	30
1701300	JRN 3	Journalism & Media Studies 3	Y	7	60
1701400	JRN 4	Journalism & Media Studies 4	Y	8	120
Music and Musicology					
2553111	MCH 1WE	Western Art Music 1	S1	5	15
2553112	MCH 1WO	World Music 1	S1	5	15
2553113	MCH 1MH	Music Health and the Brain 1	S2	5	15
2553114	MCH 1JZ	Jazz 1	S2	5	15
2554101	MUS 101	Music Theory and Analysis 101	S1	5	15
2554102	MUS 102	Music Theory and Analysis 102	S2	5	15
2557100	IMS 1	Instrumental Music Studies 1	Y	5	30
2559100	STC 1	Sound Technology 1	Y	5	30
2553211	MCH 2WE	Western Art Music 2	S1	6	15
2553212	MCH 2WO	World Music 2	S1	6	15
2553213	MCH 2MH	Music Health and the Brain 2	S2	6	15
2553214	MCH 2JZ	Jazz 2	S2	6	15
255420A	MUS 2	Music Theory and Analysis 2	Y	6	30
2557200	IMS 2	Instrumental Music Studies 2	Y	6	30
2559200	STC 2	Sound Technology 2	Y	6	30
2553300	MCH 3	Music Culture and History 3	Y	7	60
2557300	IMS 3	Instrumental Music Studies 3	Y	7	60
2554400	MUS 4	Music 4	Y	8	120
Philosophy					
1501101	PHI 101	Philosophy 101	S1	5	15
1501102	PHI 102	Philosophy 102	S2	5	15
1501111	zoBOM A	IiNtetho zoBomi 101	S1	5	15
1501112	zoBOM B	IiNtetho zoBomi 102	S2	5	15
1501201	PHI 201	Philosophy 201	S1	6	15
1501202	PHI 202	Philosophy 202	S2	6	15
1501300	PHI 3	Philosophy 3	Y	7	60
Political Studies					
1601101	POL 101	Political/Int Studies 101	S1	5	15
1601102	POL 102	Political/Int Studies 102	S2	5	15
1601200	POL 2	Political/Int Studies 2	Y	6	30

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

1601300	POL 3	Political/Int Studies 3	Y	7	60
Psychology					
2701101	PSY 101	Psychology 101	S1	5	15
2701102	PSY 102	Psychology 102	S2	5	15
2701201	PSY 201	Psychology 201	S1	6	15
2701202	PSY 202	Psychology 202	S2	6	15
2702211	ORG 201	Organisational Psychology 201	S1	6	15
2702212	ORG 202	Organisational Psychology 202	S2	6	15
2701301	PSY 301	Psychology 301	S1	7	30
2701302	PSY 302	Psychology 302	S2	7	30
2702311	ORG 301	Organisational Psychology 301	S1	7	30
2702312	ORG 302	Organisational Psychology 302	S2	7	30
Registrar's					
0000001	0000001	Special Subject Humanities	Y	0	0
School of Languages					
12011A0	FRE 1A	French 1	Y	5	30
12011B0	FRE 1P	French Preliminary	Y	5	30
1302100	GER 1FL	German Studies 1	Y	5	30
1801101	CLIA101	Cultures & Languages in Africa 101	S1	5	15
1801102	CLIA102	Cultures & Languages in Africa 102	S2	5	15
1805100	XHS 1M	IsiXhosa (Mother-Tongue) 1	Y	5	30
18051N0	XHS 1N	IsiXhosa 1 (2nd Lang)	Y	5	30
1806100	CHI 1	Chinese Studies 1	Y	5	30
180710C	XHO JRN	isiXhosa for Journalism	Y	5	30
1907000	MOD FIC	Modern Fiction	Y	5	30
2001101	CLA 101	Classics 101	S1	5	15
2001102	CLA 102	Classics 102	S2	5	15
2003101	GRE 101	Ancient Greek 101	S1	5	15
2003102	GRE 102	Ancient Greek 102	S2	5	15
2005101	LAT 101	Classical Latin 101	S1	5	15
2005102	LAT 102	Classical Latin 102	S2	5	15
7001130	PC444A	*isiXhosa for Pharm.(PC444)*	S1	5	15
180610A	UND CH	Understanding China	S1	6	15
1001200	AFN 2	Afrikaans/Nederlands 2	Y	6	30
1201200	FRE 2	French 2	Y	6	30
1302200	GER 2FL	German Studies 2	Y	6	30

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

1805200	XHS 2M	IsiXhosa (Mother-Tongue) 2	Y	6	30
18052N0	XHS 2N	IsiXhosa 2 (2nd Lang)	Y	6	30
1806200	CHI 2	Chinese Studies 2	Y	6	30
2001201	CLA 201	Classics 201	S1	6	15
2001202	CLA 202	Classics 202	S2	6	15
2003200	GRE 2	Ancient Greek 2	Y	6	30
2005200	LAT 2	Classical Latin 2	Y	6	30
1001300	AFN 3	Afrikaans/Nederlands 3	Y	7	60
1201300	FRE 3	French 3	Y	7	60
1302300	GER 3FL	German Studies 3	Y	7	60
1805300	XHS 3M	IsiXhosa (Mother-Tongue) 3	Y	7	60
18053N0	XHS 3N	IsiXhosa 3 (2nd Lang)	Y	7	60
1806300	CHI 3	Chinese Studies 3	Y	7	60
2001301	CLA 301	Classics 301	S1	7	30
2001302	CLA 302	Classics 302	S2	7	30
2003300	GRE 3	Ancient Greek 3	Y	7	60
2005300	LAT 3	Classical Latin 3	Y	7	60
Sociology & Industrial Sociology					
3201100	SOC 1	Sociology 1	Y	5	30
3201200	SOC 2	Sociology 2	Y	6	30
3202200	INS 2	Ind & Eco Sociology 2	Y	6	30
3201300	SOC 3	Sociology 3	Y	7	60
3202300	INS 3	Ind & Eco Sociology 3	Y	7	60

FACULTY OF LAW RULES

GENERAL INFORMATION

Bachelor of Laws

The Faculty of Law offers all the courses required for the LLB degree, and in addition offers courses for degree curricula in other faculties. The Faculty offers the LLB in three streams, and admission to each of the streams is limited in accordance with University and Faculty enrolment planning, and the availability of resources.

1. A three-year LLB for graduate students

Students enter this stream after having completed any Bachelor's degree without law subjects, or with an insufficient number of law credits for a two-year programme.

2. A five-year combined Law and Humanities OR Law and Commerce OR Law and Science LLB stream

Students enter this stream with the intention of following an undergraduate programme in Law and Humanities OR Law and Commerce OR Law and Science leading to a BA/BSocSc or BCom/BBusSc or BSc and thereafter a two-year LLB. The objective of a broad-based education is achieved in this stream by including courses which ensure that the student has a thorough grasp of at least one discipline outside of Law. Students register for a BA, BSocSc, BCom, BBusSc or BSc in their first year of study and continue with that degree with Legal Theory as a major subject. Having obtained the first degree, students then register for the LLB, to be completed over two years. To do so they must have obtained sufficient law credits in the first degree, which

is usually the case if they have majored in Legal Theory.

3. A four-year LLB stream

Students who meet the admission requirements for the LLB on the basis of their NSC, NBT (or equivalent school exit level examinations), may be admitted to the LLB in their first year of study to follow the four-year curriculum.

Students who are registered in any one of the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce and who successfully complete the Legal Theory 1 course as part of their first year curriculum in terms of rule L.3.2 may, after their first year of study, apply for admission to the LLB to follow the four-year LLB curriculum.

Master of Laws, Doctor of Philosophy, and Doctor of Laws

A thesis on an approved topic must be submitted. The rules are the same as those for similar degrees in the other faculties.

RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all faculties. The rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Law only.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Law:

<i>Name</i>	<i>To be denoted by the letters</i>
Bachelor of Laws	LLB
Master of Laws	LLM
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Laws	LLD

Law					
Subject code	Mnemonic	Subject name		NQF level	NQF credits
9640001	LA N41	*LLB 4 Elective 1*	S2	0	0
9640002	LA N42	*LLB 4 Elective 2*	S2	0	0
9640003	LA N43	*LLB 4 Elective 3*	S1	0	0
9640004	LA N44	*LLB 4 Elective 4*	S1	0	0
9640011	LA MT2	*LLB Final Year Moot*	S1	0	0
9632101	COL 101	Commercial Law 101	S1	5	15
9632102	COL 102	Commercial Law 102	S2	5	15
9660000	LA FND	LLB Foundations Of Law	S1	5	15
9760000	LT FND	LT1 Foundations Of Law	S1	5	15

FACULTY OF LAW

9649000	LA ACC	LLB Legal Accounting	S1	5	10
9658000	LA XHO	LLB Isixhosa	S2	5	10
9615000	LA INTR	LLB Introduction To Law	S2	6	15
9715000	LT INTR	LT1 Introduction To Law	S2	6	15
9632201	COL 201	Commercial Law 201	S1	6	15
9632202	COL 202	Commercial Law 202	S2	6	15
9612010	LA PLU	LLB Legal Pluralism	S2	7	10
9622000	LA PART	LLB Law Of Life Partnerships	S1	7	10
96260X0	LA PERS	LLB Law Of Persons	S2	7	10
96610A0	LA CT A	LLB Law Of Contract A	S1	7	10
96610B0	LA CT B	LLB Law Of Contract B	S2	7	10
96620A0	LA PS A	LLB Law Of Property A	S1	7	10
96620B0	LA PS B	LLB Law Of Property B	S2	7	10
96630A0	LA CN A	LLB Constitutional Law A	S1	7	10
96630B0	LA CN B	LLB Constitutional Law B	S2	7	10
9664000	LA INT	LLB Legal Interpretation	S1	7	10
97260XA	LT PERS	LT2 Law of Persons	S1	7	10
97630A0	LT CN A	Lt2 Constitutional Law A	S1	7	10
97630B0	LT CN B	Lt2 Constitutional Law B	S2	7	10
9764000	LT INT	Lt2 Legal Interpretation	S1	7	10
960500A	LA CPA	LLB Civil Procedure A	S1	7	10
96070A0	LA CMA	LLB Criminal Procedure A	S1	7	10
96650B0	LA CL B	LLB Criminal Law B	S2	7	10
9667000	LA LSK	LLB Legal Skills	S2	7	10
9668100	LA PAR	LLB Law Of Partnerships/Trusts	S2	7	10
9669000	LA LPRA	LLB Legal Practice (Sem 1)	S1	7	10
966900B	LA LPRB	LLB Legal Practice (Sem 2)	S2	7	10
9712010	LT PLU	LT3 Legal Pluralism	S2	7	10
9722000	LT PART	Lt3 Law Of Life Partnerships	S1	7	10
97610A0	LT CT A	Lt3 Law Of Contract A	S1	7	10
97610B0	LT CT B	Lt3 Law Of Contract B	S2	7	10
97620A0	LT PS A	Lt3 Law Of Property A	S1	7	10
97620B0	LT PS B	Lt3 Law Of Property B	S2	7	10
960500B	LA CP B	LLB Civil Procedure B	S1	7	10
96070B0	LA CM B	LLB Criminal Procedure B	S1	7	10
9617003	LA CONV	LLB Intro To Conveyancing	S2	7	10

FACULTY OF LAW

9633100	LA TAX	LLB Law Of Tax/Estate Planning	S2	7	10
9640012	LA IMT	LLB International Moot	S2	7	10
9656010	LA ALT	LLB Alternative Dispute	S1	7	10
9668000	LA PAY	LLB Law Of Banking & Payments	S1	7	10
96080A0	LA CO A	LLB Company Law A	S1	8	10
96080B0	LA CO B	LLB Company Law B	S2	8	10
9616000	LA JUR	LLB Jurisprudence	S1	8	10
96210A0	LA EV A	LLB Law Of Evidence A	S2	8	10
9643000	LA PUB	LLB Public International Law	S2	8	10
9652000	LA LS	LLB Law Of Sale & Lease	S1	8	10
9653000	LA SALE	LLB Law Of Agency & Insurance	S2	8	10
96650A0	LA CL A	LLB Criminal Law A	S1	8	10
9617002	LA IND	LLB Labour Law	S1	8	10
96210B0	LA EV B	LLB Law Of Evidence B	S2	8	10
9629000	LA SUCC	LLB Succession/Admin Estates	S2	8	10
9648000	LA ENV	LLB Environmental Law	S2	8	10
9651000	LA RES	LLB Research Essay	Y	8	20
9657000	LA ETH	LLB Ethics/Prof Responsibility	S2	8	10
9666000	LA AL	LLB Administrative Law	Y	8	20
9670010	LA DEL	LLB Law of Delict	Y	8	20
9671000	LA LIT	LLB Constitutional Litigation	S2	8	10
9675100	LA CMP	LLB Competition Law	S2	8	10
9677000	LA COPY	LLB Copyright And Trade Marks	S1	8	10
9678000	LA TRA	LLB International Trade Law	S1	8	10

* Y= Year course S1 = Semester 1 S2 = Semester 2

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS

L.1

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules and in Rule L.9 below, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless they:

- 1.1 have been registered for at least four years;
- 1.2 have completed the curriculum set out in L.4 below;
- 1.3 have performed satisfactorily in at least one moot in their final year of study.

L.2

2.1 The period of study for the degree shall be four years for candidates who are full-time students of the University

2.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate,

candidates may be allowed to qualify for the degree in three years, provided that they have no more than forty semester courses, or their equivalent, to complete during this period of three years.

2.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may be allowed to qualify for the degree in two years, provided that they have no more than thirty-two semester courses, or their equivalent, to complete during this period of two years.

2.4 The curriculum of candidates who during the course of their studies for their degrees change from full-time to part-time status, or vice versa, may be rearranged by the Dean.

L.3

3.1 Candidates who meet the admissions criteria for

the LLB may be admitted to the LLB in their first year of study.

3.2a Candidates who do not meet the admission criteria for the LLB, may, subject to enrolment planning and the availability of resources, register for Legal Theory as a subject as part of their curriculum in another Faculty.

3.2b Normally candidates who do not have a degree may be admitted to the second year of study for the LLB degree (the four-year curriculum), provided that they have passed each of the law courses offered in their first year of study (Foundations of Law and Introduction to Law) with an average of 65% as well as have obtained an overall average of 65% for three non-law courses studied in that year. (Students who do not meet these criteria must follow the five-year route.) Candidates who have completed more than one year of study must not only meet the first-year criteria, but must also have obtained an overall average of 65% for the subjects registered in the previous year of study.

3.3 Candidates who have a degree without any law credits or with insufficient law credits, may be admitted to the second year of study for the LLB degree (the three-year curriculum), provided that they obtained 60% for their major subjects. Where a candidate has not met this requirement, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown and subject to availability of Faculty resources.

3.4 Candidates who have a degree with sufficient law credits may be admitted to the third year of study for the LLB degree (the two-year curriculum). Normally, and subject to availability of places, candidates who obtained at least 60% in their Legal Theory major will be admitted, as will candidates from other universities who obtained an average of at least 60% in their previous year of study. Where a candidate has not met these requirements, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown and subject to availability of Faculty resources. Preference will be given to those candidates who obtained their first degree at Rhodes University.

L.4

Subject to the provisions of Rule L.8 candidates must obtain credit in all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

FIRST YEAR

(1) In the First Semester: Foundations of Law

(2) In the Second Semester: Introduction to Law

(3) Three non-legal courses as referred to in Rule L.5 below.

SECOND YEAR

(1) In the First Semester:

Constitutional Law A

Law of Contract A

Law of Life Partnerships

Law of Property A

Legal Interpretation

(2) In the Second Semester:

Constitutional Law B

Law of Contract B

Law of Persons

Law of Property B

Legal Pluralism

(3) One non-legal course as referred to in Rule L.5 at second-year level.

THIRD YEAR

(1) In the First Semester:

Civil Procedure A

Company Law A

Criminal Procedure A

Criminal Law A

Jurisprudence

Law of Sale and Lease

(2) In the Second Semester:

Criminal Law B

Company Law B

Law of Agency, Insurance and Credit Agreements

Law of Evidence A

Law of Partnerships and Trusts

Public International Law

(3) In both First and Second Semesters, counted as one semester course: Legal Skills

(4) In either First or Second Semester, counted as one semester course: Legal Practice

FINAL YEAR

(1) In the First Semester:

Administrative Law (first half)

Civil Procedure B

Criminal Procedure B

Labour Law

Law of Delict (first half)

2 Electives offered in the First Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.6 below.

(2) In the Second Semester:

Administrative Law (second half)

Law of Evidence B

Law of Delict (second half)

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates
2 Electives offered in the Second Semester, selected from the list set out In Rule L.6 below.

L.5

5.1 With the permission of the Dean, and subject to time-table constraints, a candidate may select any non-legal course offered at the University.

L.6

6.1 Candidates may select their elective courses, referred to in the curriculum set out in Rule L.4, from the following list (note that not all electives listed below are offered every year):

In the First Semester:

Alternative Dispute Resolution (limited registration)
Copyright and Trade Marks
International Human Rights and Humanitarian Law
International Trade Law
Law of Banking and Payments
Legal Accounting

In the Second Semester:

Constitutional Litigation
Environmental Law
Introduction to Conveyancing
IsiXhosa
Law of Patents, Designs and Geographical Indications
The Law of Obligations in a Global Context
Law of Tax and Estate Planning

In both the First and Second Semesters:

Research Paper (counted as two semester courses)
LLB candidates are permitted to complete a Research Paper in a topic of their choice, subject to the availability of a suitable supervisor and the approval of the Dean.

Research Paper: International Moot (counted as one semester course)

Participation in the African Human Rights Moot Court Competition or any other International Moot Competition may qualify as a research paper provided that the research material for the moots is presented in a coherent written form.

6.2 All electives will not necessarily be offered every year and the semester in which electives are offered may also be varied. The availability of options, and the semester in which they will be taught, will depend upon enrolment numbers and teaching arrangements in the Faculty of Law. Student numbers may be restricted in any particular elective.

6.3 Candidates may not take more than three electives in any one semester.

6.4 Candidates who have obtained a university credit in an accounting course may not register for Legal Accounting.

6.5 Candidates who have obtained a university credit in a Taxation course may not register for Tax and Estate Planning.

6.6 Candidates who have obtained a university credit in an IsiXhosa course may not register for IsiXhosa. Mother tongue speakers of isiXhosa may not enrol for this course

6.7 A candidate may not register for more than one research paper elective, except where a candidate participates in an International Moot Court Competition and presents a research paper on that participation. A student is only allowed to present one such research paper, irrespective of the number of times the student participated in International Moot Court Competitions.

L.7

The order in which courses are taken may be varied by the Dean on good cause shown.

L.8

Full-time candidates shall not be permitted to register for more than nine courses in a semester (including courses being repeated).

L.9

9.1 Candidates may be granted exemption from obtaining a credit in any course or courses; provided that they have passed any equivalent course or courses at Rhodes University or elsewhere, and have attained in such course or courses the standard required by the Faculty of Law.

9.2 Candidates who have been granted exemption in terms of sub-paragraph 9.1, but who are unable to qualify for the degree in two years in terms of Rule L.2, shall allocate the remaining courses to each of their three years of study in accordance with the direction of the Dean; provided that in their Final Year they include at least eight semester courses prescribed for that year.

L.10

10.1 Candidates registered must pass both Foundations of Law and Introduction to Law with an aggregated mark of at least 65%, as well as have obtained an overall average of 65% for their non-legal courses in order to proceed into the second year of study.

10.2 To proceed to the Penultimate Year, candidates must have no more than thirty-two semester courses, or their equivalent, outstanding for the award of the degree.

10.3 To proceed to the Final Year, candidates must have obtained credit in all the courses prescribed in the first year of study and must have no more than eighteen semester courses, or their equivalent, outstanding for the award of the degree and, further, must comply with the provisions of Rule L.8.

L.11

The Board of the Faculty of Law may permit candidates to write supplementary examinations in January/February of the following year in accordance with the following rules:

11.1 Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained a result of less than 40%.

11.2 Candidates will be eligible for supplementary examinations in no more than four semester courses or their equivalent in any one year, provided that they have passed at least four semester courses, or their equivalent, in that academic year.

11.3 Candidates who fail Legal Practice, Legal Skills and the Research Paper are not eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations.

L.12

Candidates in their Final Year who have obtained credit in all semester courses for the degree, save four, may, with the permission of the Dean, register at another university for a similar course or courses to those outstanding for the award of the degree, and may, on successful completion, be granted credit for such course or courses.

L.13

13.1 Candidates for examination in any course may be required to present themselves for oral examination.

13.2 Candidates in their Final Year of study who, after the November examinations, have one or two courses outstanding for their degree, will be eligible for an oral examination in those courses, subject to any policy determined by Faculty.

L.14

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF LAWS

L.15

The provisions set out in the General Rules apply.

L.16

16.1 All postgraduate admissions in the Faculty of Law are subject to the availability of resources and supervisory capacity.

16.2 To be admitted to the Master's degree, candidates must have obtained at least a 65% average in the final year of their LLB degree.

16.3 Where a candidate has not met the requirement set out in L16.2, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown.

16.4 Admission to the PhD degree is at the discretion of the Dean of Law, on good cause shown.

FACULTY OF PHARMACY RULES

GENERAL INFORMATION

The Faculty of Pharmacy at Rhodes University is dedicated to achieving excellence in an environment of interdisciplinary co-operation, mutual respect, consistent with the mission of the University and with the mission of the profession of Pharmacy.

MISSION

The mission of the Faculty is to promote pharmaceutical care through education, research, scholarship, creative endeavour and service. Thus its priorities are to:

- Prepare its students for entry into the practice of pharmacy as informed, caring and ethical citizens and professionals;
- Prepare pharmaceutical scholars and researchers through professional, undergraduate, graduate and post-doctoral programmes of distinction;
- Conduct postgraduate education to advance the knowledge, expertise and competence of pharmacists and pharmaceutical scientists;
- Analyse and apply knowledge about pharmaceutical products and services, their use in society through basic and applied research and to advance, communicate and preserve that knowledge;
- Promote, facilitate and conduct educational programmes to extend the knowledge of drugs and medicines in addition to the rational and cost-effective use of medicines.

The course for the BPharm degree is of four years duration. The degree meets the academic requirements as laid down by the South African Pharmacy Council and entitles holders who are either South African Citizens or permanent residents to apply for registration as a pharmacist in South Africa after completing an internship and subsequently serving one year of community service in the public sector.

The University is prepared to consider recognizing prior learning by granting credits to students who have obtained credits in such courses or equivalent courses at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for this purpose, subject to the provisions of Rule G.46 of the General Rules.

Performance in a course is assessed in terms of:

- (a) the results of prescribed written and/or oral examinations, and/or
- (b) assessment of such essays, exercises, tests,

reports, assignments and/or practical work as may be prescribed for a course.

The registration in the Faculty of Pharmacy of any student who is convicted for the illegal use or possession of any illicit drug or medicinal substance in a court of law (in any country) may be terminated by the Vice-Chancellor after consultation with the Dean of the Faculty of Pharmacy.

RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties..

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Pharmacy shall be the end of the second week of the first term.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Pharmacy:

<i>Name</i>	<i>To be denoted by the letters</i>
Bachelor of Pharmacy	BPharm
Master of Science	MSc(Pharm)
Master of Pharmacy	MPharm
Doctor of Pharmacy	PharmD
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Science	DSc

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PHARMACY

The BPharm degree is registered on the NQF as a level 8 qualification.

P.1

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses for at least four years subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student.

P.2

Normally candidates shall not be admitted to the courses for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy unless they have:

2.1 obtained either the National Senior Certificate with Bachelor status, or obtained a matric exemption certificate from the Board.

2.2 obtained at least a rating of 7 for Mathematics, Life Sciences and Physical Sciences to receive a firm offer.

2.3 Mathematical Literacy will not be considered.

2.4 if a candidate has 45 points and above they may receive a firm offer, if between 35 and 44 points then admission will be at the Dean's Discretion. Normally candidates who have 34 points or less are

likely to be rejected.

2.5 candidates who have obtained a matric exemption of the Joint Matriculation Board must normally have obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics, Physical Science and Biology on the Higher Grade.

P.3

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of BPharm unless they have:

3.1 obtained credit in all courses of the following curriculum: (with the consent of the Board of the Faculty, courses may be taken in years other than those specified);

3.2 candidates who have obtained at least a rating of 5 in Computer Science in the National Senior Certificate or a pass in Computer Science deemed to be the equivalent of the above in another examination, may be permitted to take Computer Science 101 instead of Computer Science 1L;

3.3 obtained credit in electives chosen, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, from the electives listed under Rule P.9 or other courses approved by the Senate for this purpose;

P.4

4.1.1 Candidates in first year may not take Chemistry 102 or Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1 if they have not obtained a credit for Chemistry 101, or are awarded a re-write for Chemistry 101.

4.1.2 Candidates who fail the subminimum for Chemistry 101 may be permitted to take Chemistry 1R and will not be permitted to register for Chemistry 102 or Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1.

4.1.3 Candidates in first year who fail Cell Biology and are not awarded a re-write may not continue with Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1.

4.1.4 Candidates in first year who fail either Introduction to ICT or Mathematics for Life Sciences with the option of a re-write may continue with second semester subjects unless they have also failed Chemistry 101 or Cell Biology without the possibility of a re-write.

4.1.5 Candidates in first year who fail all four first semester subjects will be excluded.

4.2 Normally students repeating second-year courses with a total value exceeding 50 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses. With the permission of the Dean, candidates carrying 50 or fewer credit points from their second year may be admitted to appropriate third-year courses.

4.3 Normally students repeating third-year courses with a total value exceeding 60 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses. With

the permission of the Dean, candidates carrying 60 or fewer credit points from their third year may be admitted to appropriate fourth-year courses.

4.4 Normally students may only register for courses in Pharmacy Practice 4, Elective courses, Research Methodologies and Pharmacotherapy in the year they will complete the BPharm curriculum.

4.5 Students transferring from other universities may not normally take courses from the second year of the BPharm curriculum unless they have obtained credits in courses deemed to be equivalent to those listed in the first-year BPharm curriculum.

4.6 Normally, candidates will not be permitted to register for any course more than twice.

P.5

5.1 Before admission to a course, a candidate must have obtained credit in all prerequisites for that course except as provided for in 5.2 below.

5.2 On the recommendation of the Dean, Senate may permit a candidate to repeat ONE prerequisite course concurrently with the courses for which it is designated a prerequisite provided that

5.2.1 credit has been obtained in all other prerequisite courses, and that

5.2.2 such permission will not normally be granted in respect of courses which themselves lead to more advanced courses in the same subject area.

5.3 Credit in a course will be conditional on obtaining a pass in its prerequisite courses.

P.6

At the Dean's discretion, candidates may be granted a supplementary examination in one of the courses for which they are registered – other than in the first year of study - provided that:

7.1 they are taking the full complement of courses for that year;

7.2 they have failed no other courses in that year;

7.3 they have no examination outstanding for that year of study.

P.7

8.1 Courses in the Faculty of Pharmacy are measured in terms of credit points. Each credit point is based on the notional hours that an average student would require to master the content and develop skills in a subject. In this respect in the BPharm curriculum one credit point is equivalent to 10 notional hours.

8.2 Candidates must have the permission of the Dean to undertake a work-load exceeding 120 credit points in the first and second year of study, and 135 credit points in the third and fourth year of study.

8.3 For the purpose of General Rule G.46.2, credit

in courses to a total of 360 credit points must be obtained at the University towards the degree.

P.8

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes with an average of not less than 3,0 merit marks per credit point in all courses of the second year and subsequent years shall be endorsed "with distinction". Merit marks are awarded in respect of each course on the basis of the credit points of the course multiplied by the numerical value of the class as follows:

Class Numerical value

I	4
II (Div.1)	3
II (Div.2)	2
III	1

P.9

9.1 All candidates must complete elective courses to the value of 30 credit points to be admitted to the degree.

9.2 All candidates must take two elective courses offered within the Faculty of Pharmacy or a full year course offered by any department in another

Faculty that are relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the BPharm 4 timetable.

9.3 For the purposes of 9.2 an elective course within the Faculty will count 15 credit points and a full year course 30 credit points.

9.4 The elective courses offered within the Faculty of Pharmacy will be dependent on relevance to the Pharmacy profession, staff availability and expertise.

9.5. With the permission of the Dean and subject to the provision of rules P.4 and P.7 candidates may take elective courses in the second and third year of study provided they are courses offered by other departments and can be accommodated into the timetable.

P.10

All candidates must complete the research methodologies course and a project to the value of 30 credit points to be admitted to the degree.

P.11

The Calendar for the year in which students enter the first-year programme will govern their curriculum for the BPharm degree.

BACHELOR OF PHARMACY CURRICULUM

Code number	Course Title	Prerequisite (P) or Co-requisite (C)	First semester			Second semester			Total credit points
			L	T	P	L	T	P	
FIRST YEAR									
CEL 101	Cell Biology 101	See Departmental entries in Faculty of Science prospectus for first semester subjects	5		1				15
CHE 101	Chemistry 101		5		1				15
CSC 1L	Introduction to ICT		4	1	1				15
MAT 1S	Mathematics for the Life Sciences		5	1					15
CHE 102	Chemistry 102	Chemistry 101				5		1	15
PC 111	Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1	Chemistry 101				5			10
PC 110	Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1	Cell Biology 101				5		1	20
PC 101	Foundations of Pharmacy					5			15

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

SECOND YEAR									
PC 250	Anatomy Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathology	Cell Biology (CEL 101)(P),	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
PC 221	Pharmaceutical Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology	Cell Biology (CEL 101) (P), Chemistry 101(P), Chemistry 102(P), PC111 (P), PC222(C)	3			3		0.25	20
PC 222	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2	Chemistry 101(P), Chemistry 102(P), PC221(C)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
PC 231	Pharmaceutics 2	Chemistry 101(P), PC 101 (P) Chemistry 102(P), PC222(C)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
PC 241	Pharmacy Practice 2	PC 101 (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25

THIRD YEAR									
PC 322	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3	PC222(P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 332	Pharmaceutics 3	PC222(P) PC231(P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 342	Pharmacy Practice 3	PC241(P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 351	Pharmacology 3	PC322(C) PC250(P) PC221(P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 301	Biostatistics		4	1					15

FOURTH YEAR									
PC4521	Pharmacology 4	PC 351(P)	4	1	0.5				15
PC4331	Pharmaceutics 4	PC322(P) PC332(P)	3		1				15
PC4431	Pharmacy Practice 4	PC342(P) PC351(P)	4		1				15
PC464	Research Elective								30
	Elective courses in Pharmacy	Elective course in other departments							2 x 15 1 x 30
PC491	Research Methodologies and Project								30
PC4012	Pharmacotherapy					3	2	1	30

DEGREES OF MASTER OF SCIENCE AND MASTER OF PHARMACY

See General Rules and entry under Master's Degrees, Faculty of Pharmacy, in the Academic Departments section of the Calendar.

DOCTOR OF PHARMACY DEGREE (PharmD)

The programme leading to the PharmD degree is normally of three years' duration, taken full time in attendance at an approved clinical site.

P.12

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have completed the approved research rotations in the three year PharmD programme undertaken subsequent to their registration as a pharmacist with the South African Pharmacy Council.

P.13

Candidates shall not be admitted to the courses for the degree of Doctor of Pharmacy programme unless they have obtained an undergraduate degree

in Pharmacy and are registered as a pharmacist with the South African Pharmacy Council. NB Because of limited facilities the Faculty reserves the right to limit the intake to the Doctor of Pharmacy Degree.

P.14

14.1 Candidates will not be admitted to the degree of PharmD unless they have obtained credit in all the research rotations of the following curriculum.

14.2 Candidates who have obtained credits in research rotations deemed to be equivalent to those listed in the above curriculum may be granted credits in those rotations.

P.15

15.1 Notwithstanding the provisions of rule P.7 the courses for the PharmD degree are measured in terms of 30 credits per course and 120 credits per year.

15.2 Each credit is counted as equivalent to 10 notional hours.

P.16

16.1 Normally, candidates must successfully have completed two research rotations and have submitted

a third one for examination prior to proceeding to a subsequent year of study.

16.2 Normally, candidates must submit the fourth research report by the end of March of the following year in order to continue in the second or third year of study.

16.3 The elective research project conducted in the final year of the PharmD programme may be undertaken in any of the research areas covered in the various rotations of the PharmD Curriculum.

16.4 Each rotation will be examined independently as partial fulfilment of the requirements for admission to the Doctor of Pharmacy degree.

DOCTOR OF PHARMACY DEGREE

See the entry under the Doctor of Pharmacy (PharmD) Degree, Faculty of Pharmacy, in the Academic Departments section of the Calendar.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

See General Rules.

Code Number	Course Title	Total credit points
First Year		
PC 911	Introduction to the Pharmaceutical Care Process	30
PC 912	Pharmaceutical Systems and Management Practices	30
PC 913	Advanced Pharmaceutical Care: Paediatrics	30
PC 914	Advanced Pharmaceutical Care: Infectious Diseases	30
Second Year		
PC 921	Advanced Pharmaceutical Care: Cardiovascular Disorders	30
PC 922	Advanced Pharmaceutical Care: Psychiatry	30
PC 923	Advanced Pharmaceutical Care: Endocrine Disorders	30
PC 924	Advanced Pharmaceutical Care: Surgery	30
Third Year		
PC 931	Elective Research Project	30
PC 932	Advanced Pharmaceutical Care: Immunologic Disorders	30
PC 933	Therapeutic Drug Monitoring	30
PC 934	Advanced Pharmaceutical Care: Intensive Care	30

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

BPHA ACYR: 1					
Subject code	Mnemonic	Subject name	*	NQF level	NQF credit
5001101	CHE 101	Chemistry 101	S1	5	15
5001102	CHE 102	Chemistry 102	S1	5	15
5101101	CSC 1L1	Introduction To ICT (Sem 1)	S1	5	15
540101S	MAT 1S	Mathematics 1S	S1	5	15
5902101	CEL 101	Cell Biology	S1	5	15
7001101	PC1012	Pharmacy Foundations (PC1012)	S2	5	15
7001110	PC1102	Pharm Anatomy & Phy 1 (PC1102)	S2	5	20
7001111	PC1112	Pharm. Biochemistry 1 (PC1112)	S2	5	10
BPHA ACYR: 2					
7001112	PC222	Pharm Chem 2 (PC222)	Y	6	25
7001113	PC231	Pharmaceutics 2 (PC231)	Y	6	25
7001114	PC241	Pharmacy Practice 2 (PC241)	Y	6	25
7001115	PC221	Biochem Micro Immun. (PC221)	Y	6	20
7001116	PC250	Anat. Phys Path PPhys (PC250)	Y	6	25
BPHA ACYR: 3					
7001117	PC351	Pharmacology 3 (PC351)	Y	7	30
7001118	PC322	Pharm Chem 3 (PC322)	Y	7	30
7001119	PC332	Pharmaceutics 3 (PC332)	Y	7	30
7001120	PC342	Pharmacy Practice 3 (PC342)	Y	7	30
7001121	PC1BST	Biostatistics (PC1BST)	S1	5	15
BPHA ACYR: 4					
7001122	PC4331	Pharmaceutics 4 (PC4331)	S1	8	15
7001123	PC4431	Pharmacy Practice 4 (PC4431)	S1	8	15
7001124	PC4521	Pharmacology 4 (PC4521)	S1	8	15
7001125	PC4012	Pharmacotherapy 4 (PC4012)	S2	8	30
7001126	PC491	Research Methodologies (PC491)	Y	8	30

* Y= Year course; S1 = Semester 1; S2 = Semester 2

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

RULES FOR DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Science only.

See the Faculty webpage (<http://www.scifac.ru.ac.za>) for further information on activities and programmes in the Faculty of Science.

S.1

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Science:

<i>Name</i>	<i>To be denoted by the letters</i>
Bachelor of Science	BSc
Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)	BSc(InfSys)
Bachelor of Science with Honours	BSc(Hons)
Master of Science	MSc
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Science	DSc

S.2

S.2.1 Most undergraduate subjects in the Faculty of Science are offered as pairs of semester-courses, each of which can earn one semester-credit towards the total needed for a degree. A few subjects are offered as indivisible two-credit courses, and some are offered as single semester-credit courses.

S.2.2 In the rules and tables that follow, subjects are denoted sometimes by their full names, and sometimes by mnemonics and numbers (for example the subject Physics 1 (or PHY 1) consists of the two semester-credit courses PHY 101 and PHY 102). The first or only digit of the number denotes the level (year) at which the subject is offered; a 3 digit number denotes a semester-course or semester-credit subject. Note, however, that “01” and “02” do not always imply “first semester” and “second semester”, and candidates should consult the timetable to determine in which semester a course will be offered in any particular year.

S.2.3 As a result of the semester structure of degrees it may happen that a major in a particular subject may sometimes be earned for a set of subjects that do not all carry the name of the major subject itself (see Rule S.23.5).

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE

S.3

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47 of the

General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as students for at least three years.

S.4

S.4.1 Candidates shall not normally be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless either they have met the minimum admission requirements for Bachelor's degree programmes requiring a National Senior Certificate (NSC) or they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have achieved English (Home language or additional language) at a rating of 4 or above and at least a rating of 4 in Mathematics or a rating of 6 in Mathematical Literacy in the NSC, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, or they have successfully completed a year of study under the provisions of the Science Extended Studies Programme.

S.4.2 Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall not be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless they have obtained a pass in Life Sciences or Physical Sciences at a rating of 4 or above in the NSC, OR equivalent subjects in another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent thereto.

S.5

Notwithstanding any exceptions to Rule S.4 approved by Senate, candidates will not normally be admitted to various courses in Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics or Statistics unless they have achieved a rating of 5 or above in Mathematics in the NSC or have completed Mathematics 1F. It should be noted that these restrictions may apply to some courses that act as ancillary requirements to certain major subjects (see Rule S.23.5); ineligibility to register for an ancillary course may thus preclude certain major subjects from being selected for a candidate's degree.

S.6

A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.4 may be admitted under the auspices of the Science Extended Studies Programme (see Rules S.45 to S.47).

S.7

Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain not less than eighteen semester-credits (or in some combinations, twenty semester-credits) in courses in various approved subjects.

S.8 Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following subjects:

S.8.1 Group A Science subjects

Subject	Code	Courses
(offered as 6 semester-credit major subjects)		
Botany	BOT	102,201,202,301,302
Chemistry	CHE	101,102,201,202,301,302
Computer Science	CSC	101,102,201,202,301,302
Economics	ECO	101,102,201,202,301,302
Geography	GOG	102,201,202,301,302
Geology	GLG	102,201,202,301,302
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics	HKE	101,102,201,202,301,302
Mathematics	MAT	1C1,1C2,301,302
Mathematics & Applied Mathematics	MAM	201, 202
Physics	PHY	101,102,201,202,301,302
Zoology	ZOO	101,201,202,301,302
(offered as 1, 2, 4 or 5 semester-credit major subjects)		
Applied Mathematics	MAP	301,302
Applied Statistics	AST	302
Biochemistry	BCH	201,202,301,302
Entomology	ENT	201,202,301,302
Environmental Science	ENV	201,202,301,302
Ichthyology	ICH	201,202,301,302
Mathematical Statistics	MST	(STA 102), 201,202,301,302
Microbiology	MIC	201,202,301,302
(offered as single semester or ancillary courses only)		
Cell Biology	CEL	101
Computer Science	CSC	303
Earth Science	EAR	101
Electronics Literacy	PHY	1E2
Physics for Life Sciences	PHY	1E1
Statistics	STA	101, 1D
Introduction to ICT	CSC	1L1
Business problem solving with computers	CSC	112
Mathematics for Pharmacy & Life Sciences	MAT	1S
Subjects for BScF (extended studies)		
Introduction to Science Concepts & Methods	ISCM	1
Mathematics	MAT	1F
Computer Science	CSC	1S

* **NOTES:** The first semester of both GOG 1 and GLG 1 is the common Earth Sciences course, Earth Science 101.

The first semester of both ZOO 1 and BOT 1 is the common Cell Biology course CEL 101.

CSC 303 is an additional third year level semester. Students majoring in CSC MUST take both CSC 301 and CSC 302.

The three year major in Mathematics comprises MAT 1C1, 1C2, MAM 201, 202, MAT 301, 302.

The three year major in Applied Mathematics comprises MAT 1C1, 1C2; MAM 201, 202, MAP 301, 302.

Mathematics and Applied Mathematics MAM 2 is the common prerequisite for both MAT 3 and MAP 3.

The two-and-a-half year major in Mathematical Statistics comprises STA 102, MST 201, MST 202, MST 301 and MST 302.

S.8.2 Group B

Group B comprises all other subjects currently offered for credit towards any undergraduate Bachelor's degree at Rhodes University.

S.9

S.9.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in all the required courses in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects.

S.9.2 A candidate who selects both major subjects from Group A shall obtain a minimum of 18 semester-credits, of which at least 14 semester-credits must be chosen from Group A. The remaining 4 semester-credits may also be chosen from Group A, or alternatively, may be chosen from subjects offered in a single department in Group B, provided that the Dean is satisfied that the combination is academically sound.

S.9.3 A candidate may select at most one major subject from Group B. In this case the entire degree shall be made up of a minimum of 20 semester-credits. Apart from the courses and required ancillary courses needed for the major subject itself, the other credits for the degree shall all be earned for subjects in Group A, provided that in the case of Music at most 8 semester-credits shall be allowed for courses in Music, Ethnomusicology and Instrumental Music Studies. Registration for a major subject in Group B shall be subject to the rules of the Faculty in which the department which offers the subject is placed.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (INFORMATION SYSTEMS)

This degree is intended for students who wish to become computer specialists in a commercial or technical environment, and comprise courses

offered by departments in the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

S.10

S.10.1 Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration for at least three years.

S.11

Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the full curriculum for the degrees of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) unless either they have met the minimum admission requirements for Bachelor's degree programmes requiring a National Senior Certificate (NSC), or have a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have achieved English (Home language or additional language) at a rating of 4 or above and at least a rating of 5 in Mathematics on the NSC, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent.

S.12

S.12.1 A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.11 may be admitted under the auspices of the Science Extended Studies Programme (see Rules S.45 to S.47).

S.13

S.13.1 A candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) must obtain 20 semester-credits in courses as set out in the following curriculum:

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

1. Computer Science (CSC 1 and CSC 2)
2. Information Systems (INF 2)
3. Economics (ECO 1) OR Management (MAN 1)
but see S.13.3
4. Accounting (ACC 1)
5. Statistics (STA 101 or STA 1D, or STA 102 as a prerequisite for MST 2)
6. Mathematics (MAT 1C1 or MAT 1C)
7. Electronics Literacy (PHY 1E2)
8. Business problem solving with computers (CSC 112) must be taken in first year
9. Two further semester-credits in Management or Economics or Mathematics or Statistics or Mathematical Statistics or some other subject approved by the Dean.

THIRD YEAR

1. Computer Science 3

2. Information Systems 3, or one of the following: Accounting 3, Applied Statistics 3, Economics 3, Mathematical Statistics 3, Management 3, Mathematics 3.

S.13.3 Candidates will be advised at registration as to how the first two years of these degrees are to be structured, taking into account timetable constraints and their previous performance or experience in Computer Studies and Mathematics. Normally candidates will be required to register for Computer Science, Accounting, Economics, Management, MAT 1C1 and CSC 112.

S.13.4 Candidates for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) who fail CSC 2 in their second year at Rhodes will be required to change registration to a degree in the Faculty of Commerce.

RULES COMMON TO THE BSc AND BSc(InfSys)

S.14

If a candidate in the BSc and BSc(InfSys) selects more than the minimum number of courses required for a degree, the additional courses may be in any of the subjects prescribed in Rule S.8.

S.15

S.15.1 At the start of the year students will normally register for both components of a semesterised subject, unless they make it clear that they intend taking only one of the semester-courses to obtain a single semester-credit, or to complete an outstanding component of a semesterised subject.

S.15.2 Students will be allowed to register after July for semester-courses held in the second semester in subjects for which they have not previously been registered (provided that they have met the prerequisite requirements for such courses). Such registrations will be at the discretion of the Dean, in consultation with the Head of the Department concerned.

S.15.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Science shall be the end of the second full week of the semester in which the course begins.

S.15.4 Candidates who fail to perform adequately in the first semester component of a subject may have their registrations for the second semester component of that subject cancelled. This decision may sometimes be reversed, on appeal through the Head of Department to the Dean of the Faculty.

S.15.5 Candidates are strongly advised to include at least six second-year level semester-courses in their curricula.

S.16

S.16.1 In all those subjects offered at a given level as a pair of semester-credit courses, where both credits are not obtained, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair shall be deemed equivalent to credit in a 2-credit aggregate course for that subject, as the Department may allow.

S.16.2 Students who do not obtain credit in both components, but who meet the requirements of an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing credit (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing credit (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate subject, as the Department may allow.

S.16.3 Credit will not be given for an aggregate course in addition to credit for one or more of its semester-credit components.

S.17

S.17.1 Credit for any course normally requires that a student score an overall mark of at least 50%. At the discretion of the Board, non-continuing credit may occasionally be awarded for an overall mark of at least 48%.

S.17.2 Credit for an aggregate course also requires that a student has met any adequate performance subminima imposed for each constituent.

S.17.3 Subjects for which aggregated credit may be granted are shown in the table that accompanies Rule S.23.

S.17.4 If an aggregate pass is not achieved, credit in any semester-credit course passed can still be earned towards the degree as a whole.

S.17.5 In the case of first-year first semester subjects, candidates awarded re-write examinations in terms of Rule S.25.1 who have scored the necessary sub-minimum may be permitted either to write the re-write examination in November, or to take a chance of obtaining an aggregate pass if the Department feels that their performance in the remaining (November) paper may achieve this.

S.17.6 Aggregate course credit will normally only be granted on the basis of marks earned for the first semester course of a subject obtained in June (or for the replacement mark earned during the November re-write examination for that course) and for the second semester course obtained in November (or at a supplementary examination in the following February) of a single academic year.

S.17.7 Aggregate course credit will be given only for two semester-courses offered within a single subject, with the following exceptions:

<i>Aggregated credit</i>	<i>Comprising of a semester course in each of</i>
Botany 1	Cell Biology (CEL 101) and Botany (BOT 102)
Geography 1	Earth Science (EAR 101) and Geography (GOG 102)
Geology 1	Earth Science (EAR 101) and Geology (GLG 102)
Introductory Molecular Biology IMB2	Biochemistry (BCH 201) and Microbiology (MIC 202)
Physics with Electronics IE	Physics (PHY 1E1) and Electronics (PHY 1E2)
Zoology 1	Cell Biology (CEL 101) and Zoology (ZOO 101)

Botany Note: aggregated credit may not be earned for both Geography 1 and Geology 1; at most three semester-credits may be earned for EAR 101, GOG 102, GLG 102. Similarly, aggregated credit may not be earned for both Botany 1 and Zoology 1; at most three semester-credits may be earned for CEL 101, BOT 102, ZOO 101.

S.18

For the purposes of Rule G.7 as it applies to the Faculty of Science, students may be refused permission to renew registration in the Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study, or if they have failed:

S.18.1 by the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this university to have obtained four semester-credits; or

S.18.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained eight semester-credits; or

S.18.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained twelve semester-credits, including those for two non-initial courses; or

S.18.4 at the end of every calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses / semester-credits for which they were originally registered; or

S.18.5 to complete the undergraduate degree within a period of five years; or

S.18.6 (for students enrolled on the Science Extended Studies Programme) by the end of the first year of

study to have passed all courses offered as part of the programme and to have achieved an average of 60% in the courses read in order to qualify for entry into mainstream courses in the following year.

S.19

S.19.1 A candidate is not allowed to obtain credit for certain overlapping combinations of subjects. The table below lists, for each of certain subjects and courses, those other courses for which credit will not also be given:

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Credit may not be obtained in more than one of:</i>
Accounting	ACC 1; ACC 1F/ACC 1G
Computer Science	CSC 101; CSC 1L1
Computer Science	CSC 1L1; CSC 112
Computer Science	CSC 1S; CSC 1L1
Statistics	STA 101; STA 1D
Mathematical	MST 3; AST 3
Statistics	
Physics	PHY 1; PHY 1E1
Psychology	ORG 2; PSY 2
Psychology	ORG 3; PSY 3
Maths	MAT 1P*; MAT 1S
Maths	MAT 1S; MAT 1C1
Maths	MAT 1S; MAT 1F

**Indicates a course taught in 2012 and earlier*

S.20

Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained at least six semester-credits in the first level courses specified in Rule S.8 or S.13; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study when they have obtained at least ten semester-credits and are engaged in or have passed the final courses of a major subject. Otherwise they shall be in their second year of study.

S.21

S.21.1 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than eight semester-courses in the first year of study for a BSc, and in not more than ten semester-courses in the first year of study for a BSc(InfSys); provided that the Senate may permit candidates for a BSc to present themselves for examination and obtain credit in two additional semester-courses approved by the Senate.

S.21.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than eight semester-courses

in their second year of study and not more than six semester-courses in their final year of study; provided that candidates in their final year of study may be permitted by Senate to present themselves at supplementary examinations for which they are eligible under Rule G.37, so as to obtain two additional semester-credits in subjects in which they have previously failed.

S.22

S.22.1 Except with the permission of Senate, candidates may not enter the second year of any subject unless they have obtained at least six semester-credits in first-year level courses, and may not enter the third year of any subject until they have obtained at least ten semester-credits.

S.22.2 Notwithstanding Rule S.22.1, candidates may not register for second year courses in the second semester if they have not previously been registered as second year students in the first semester.

S.23

S.23.1 Except with permission of the Senate, candidates may not enter courses in any subject unless they have satisfied all prerequisite conditions imposed for entry into such courses, and may not obtain credit for any subjects until they have obtained credit in all prescribed ancillary courses for such subjects.

S.23.2 There may be prerequisite (ancillary) requirements that must be met before a candidate may register for a particular course, and similar requirements that must be met before a candidate may obtain credit for a given course. Credit requirements will usually be stricter than registration requirements, which might stipulate “adequate performance” in an ancillary subject (or even at a lower level in the same subject) rather than “credit”.

S.23.3 Permission of the Senate is necessary to attend any course concurrently with a higher level course for which it is a prerequisite. Permission will not normally be given to attend a required first

course concurrently with a final course. Applications in this regard should be made to the Dean of the Faculty at Registration.

S.23.4 A candidate who has passed the final course of a major subject, but has failed in a prescribed ancillary subject, may rewrite the examination in that ancillary subject without being required to rewrite the examination in the related major subject.

S.23.5 The accompanying tables summarise, for each major subject, those constituent credits and ancillary subjects in which credit must be obtained, and, for specific constituents, the prerequisite credits needed for registration.

The following notes apply to the courses marked with the appropriate superior numbers in the tables below; for further details, candidates should consult the departmental entries elsewhere in the Calendar.

1. Permission may be given to register for this course concurrently with the course for which it is a required ancillary however it is expected that students will attempt the course in their first year.

2. A candidate who has passed Organizational Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3, but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Organizational Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

3. MAT 1S has replaced MAT 1P which was taught in 2012 and earlier.

4. MAT 1S and MAT 1F are equivalent single-semester credit courses. The difference is that MAT 1F is taught over two semesters and MAT 1S over one.

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

(a) Major Subject	Credit needed in each of
Accounting	ACC 1; ACC 2; ACC 3
Applied Mathematics	MAT 1C; STA 102; MAM 2; MAP 3
Applied Statistics	MAT 1C ; MST 2; AST 3
Biochemistry	CHE 1; BCH 2; BCH 3
Botany	CEL 101; BOT 102; ZOO 101; BOT 2; BOT 3; CHE 11
Chemistry	CHE 1; CHE 2; CHE 3; 2 semesters from first year CSC, MAT, PHY ; STA1
Computer Science	CSC 1; CSC 2; CSC 3, MAT 1C1 or MAT 1C1
Economics	ECO 1; ECO 2; ECO 3
Entomology	CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 102; CHE 11; ENT 2; ENT 3
Environmental Science	GOG 1; 1 of BOT 1, GLG 1, ZOO 1, ECO 1 or ANT 1; ENV 2; ENV 3;
Ethnomusicology	ETH 1; ETH 2; ETH 3
Geography	EAR 101; GOG 102; GOG 2; GOG 3
Geology	EAR 101; GLG 102; GLG 2; GLG 3; CHE 101 plus one from CHE 102, first year physics or first year MAT1
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics	HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3
Ichthyology	CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 102; CHE 11; ICH 2; ICH 3;
Information Systems	2 of CSC 101, CSC 102, CSC 112, STA 101, STA 102, STA 1D, MAT 1S3,
Instrumental Music	MAT 1F4, MAT 1C1, MAT 1C2
Studies	CSC 112; INF 2; INF 3
Legal Theory	IMS 1; IMS 2; IMS 3
Management	LAW 1; LAW 2; LAW 3
Mathematics	MAN 1; MAN 2; MAN 3; ACC 1; MAT 1C; ECO 1 or (TOF 1 & STA 1D)
Mathematical Statistics	MAT 1C; MAM 2; MAT 3
Microbiology	MAT 1C; STA 102; MST 2; MST 3
Music	CEL 101; BOT 102 or ZOO 101; MIC 2; MIC 3; CHE 1
Organizational	MUS 1; MUS 2; MUS 3
Psychology	PSY 1; ORG 2 or PSY 2; ORG 32
Physics & Electronics	PHY 1; PHY 2; PHY 3; MAT 1C; MAM 2
Psychology	PSY 1; PSY 2 or ORG 2; PSY 32
Zoology	CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 102; CHE 11; ZOO 2; ZOO 3

(b) Subject / Course	Aggregate	Prerequisite credit needed in
Accounting ACC 101, ACC 102 ACC 201, ACC 202 ACC 3	ACC 1 ACC 2 none	ACC 1 ACC 2
Applied Mathematics MAM 201, MAM 202 MAP 301, MAP 302	MAM 2 MAP 3	MAT 1C MAM 2
Applied Statistics MST 301, AST 302	AST 3	MST 2; MAT 1C; STA 102
Biochemistry BCH 201, BCH 202 BCH 301, BCH 302	BCH 2 BCH 3	CHE 1 BCH 2
Botany CEL 101, BOT 102 BOT 201, BOT 202 BOT 301, BOT 302	BOT 1 BOT 2 BOT 3	CEL 101; BOT 102; ZOO 101; CHE 11 BOT 2

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Chemistry CHE 101, CHE 102 CHE 201, CHE 202 CHE 301, CHE 302	CHE 1 CHE 2 CHE 3	NSC Mathematics not maths literacy CHE 1; 2 credits from first year CSC, MAT, PHY, STA1 CHE 2;
Computer Science CSC 1L1 CSC 112 CSC 1S CSC 101, CSC 102 CSC 201, CSC 202 CSC 301, CSC 302 CSC 303	CSC 1 CSC 2 CSC 3	NSC Mathematics not maths literacy CSC 101, CSC 102 CSC 2; MAT 1C1 or MAT 1C CSC 2
Economics ECO 101, ECO 102 ECO 201, ECO 202 ECO 301, ECO 302	ECO 1 ECO 2 ECO 3	ECO 1 ECO 2
Entomology ENT 201, ENT 202 ENT 301, ENT 302	ENT 2 ENT 3	CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 1021; CHE 11 ENT 2
Environmental Science ENV 201, ENV 202 ENV 301, ENV 302	ENV 2 ENV 3	GOG 1; 1 of BOT 1, GLG 1, ZOO 1, ANT 1 or ECO 1 ENV 2
Geography EAR 101, GOG 102 GOG 201, GOG 202 GOG 301, GOG 302	GOG 1 GOG 2 GOG 3	GOG 1 GOG 2
Geology EAR 101, GLG 102 GLG 201, GLG 202 GLG 301, GLG 302	GLG 1 GLG 2 GLG 3	GLG 1; CHE 101, and one of CHE 102, a first year physics course, MAT 1S3, MAT 1F4, MAT 1C11 GLG 2
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics HKE 101, HKE 102 HKE 201, HKE 202 HKE 301, HKE 302	HKE 1 HKE 3 HKE 3	HKE 1 HKE 2
Ichthyology ICH 201, ICH 202 ICH 301, ICH 302	ICH 2 ICH 3	CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 1021; CHE 11 ICH 201, ICH 202; 2 of CSC 101, CSC 102, CSC 112, STA 1D, STA 101, STA 102, MAT 1S 3, MAT 1F4, MAT 1C1, MAT 1C2
Introductory Molecular Biology BCH 201, MIC 202	IMB 2	CHE 1
Information Systems INF 201, INF 202 INF 301, INF 301	INF 2 INF 3	CSC 112; Must be a second-year student INF 2

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Journalism & Media Studies JRN 1 JRN 2 JRN 3		JRN 1; Limited to a maximum of 110 students JRN 2
Legal Theory LAW 1 LAW 2 LAW 3		LAW 1 LAW 2
Management MAN 101, MAN 102 MAN 201, MAN 202 MAN 301, MAN 302	MAN 1 MAN 2 MAN 3	MAN 1; ACC 11 MAN 2; ACC 1; MAT 1C or (TOF 1 & STA 1D)
Mathematics MAT 1S3 MAT 1F MAT 1C1 MAT 1C2 MAM 201, MAM 202 MAT 301, MAT 302	MAT 1C MAM 2 MAT 3	NSC Mathematics NSC Mathematics NSC Mathematics not maths literacy MAT 1C MAM 2
Mathematical Statistics MST 201, MST 202 MST 301, MST 302	MST 2 MST 3	MAT 1C; STA 102; MST 2; MAT 1C; STA 102
Microbiology MIC 201, MIC 202 MIC 302, MIC 302	MIC 2 MIC 3	CEL 101; ZOO 101 or BOT 102; CHE 1 MIC 2
Music MUS 1, ETH 1, IMS 1 MUS 2, ETH 2, IMS 2 MUS 3, ETH 3, IMS 3		MUS 1 or ETH 1 or IMS 1 (respectively) MUS 2 or ETH 2 or IMS 2 (respectively)
Organizational Psychology ORG 2 ORG 3		PSY 1 ORG 2 or PSY 22
Physics & Electronics PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2 PHY 101, PHY 102 PHY 201, PHY 202 PHY 301, PHY 302	PHY 1E PHY 1 PHY 2 PHY 3	NSC Mathematics not maths literacy PHY1; MAT 1C PHY 2; MAM 2
Psychology PSY 101, PSY 102 PSY 2 PSY 3	PSY 1	PSY 1 PSY 2 or ORG 22
Statistics STA 101, STA 102	STA 1	NSC Mathematics not maths literacy
Zoology CEL 101, ZOO 101 ZOO 201, ZOO 202 ZOO 301, ZOO 302	ZOO 1 ZOO 2 ZOO 3	CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 1021; CHE 11 ZOO 2

S.24

S.24.1 Notwithstanding the provisions of Rule G.36, at the discretion of Departments in the Faculty of Science, a student's performance in a subject shall be assessed either

- entirely at the end of the academic year
- 50% in June and 50% in November (2-credit courses with write-offs)
- 50% in June and 50% in November (aggregated 2-credit courses)
- entirely in June or November, when the course is completed (1-credit courses)

S.24.2 Student assessment may incorporate class and practical records, as well as written examinations. The implication is that departments shall, where applicable, compute a first semester composite mark in June. Where assessment is subject to external examination, June assessments should be regarded as provisional, since external examiners usually perform their duties at the end of the year.

S.25

S.25.1 Students who have failed first-year first-semester courses but who have reached the necessary subminima may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, be admitted to re-write examinations, normally written in November. Students who have passed first-year first-semester courses, but who wish to try to improve their classification may also be admitted to such examinations. Attention is drawn to Rule S.25.5.

S.25.2 Students will be required to have at least four semester-credits, and to have reached the necessary subminima, before being eligible for admission to supplementary examinations for first-year second-semester courses, to be written in January/February.

S.25.3 Only in exceptional circumstances will supplementary examinations be allowed in second- or third-year courses for subjects administered in the Faculty of Science.

S.25.4 A supplementary examination will be permitted for the last semester credit outstanding for the degree and for a course written in the final calendar year of study provided that the student has previously written the examination for the course concerned.

S.25.5 Results of supplementary examinations for courses offered in the second semester are recorded in full and not as just a pass or fail.

S.25.6 A candidate who sits a re-write examination for a first semester course shall have the mark and classification earned in the later examination

recorded for that semester-credit course, and any computation of an aggregate course mark shall be performed on the basis of the marks earned for the later examination, and not on the basis of the highest mark ever obtained.

S.26

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in class 1 in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. For the purpose of this rule, the final mark in a major subject shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of the semester-credit component courses.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE WITH HONOURS

S.27

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for an honours degree unless they have been awarded the ordinary degree, or have been admitted to the status thereof; or have completed all the requirements therefor, except the requirements regarding attendance. Attention is drawn to the provisions of Rule G.49 of the General Rules.

S.28

S.28.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year of the subject in which they wish to take honours.

S.28.2 The continued registration of Honours candidates beyond the first semester may be dependent on a satisfactory review of their progress.

S.29

A candidate who has satisfied the requirements of Rule S.27 by completing an ordinary degree in a faculty other than Science may, with the approval of Senate, be admitted to the status of BSc, and allowed to study for the degree of BSc(Hons).

S.30

S.30.1 A candidate shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the requirements of Rule S.27, and pursue a course of advanced study in a subject approved by the Senate.

S.30.2 The following subjects have been approved by the Senate for this purpose:

African Vertebrate Biodiversity, Applied Mathematics, Biochemistry, Biotechnology, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Electronics,

Entomology, Environmental Water Management, Environmental Science, Ergonomics, Geography, Geology, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Marine Biology, Mathematical Physics/Theoretical Physics, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Microbiology, Physics, Telecommunications, Zoology.

S.30.3 A Group B subject (as defined in Rule S.8) may also be offered for the honours degree; except that a candidate for an honours degree in such a subject may be required to obtain permission to transfer registration to the Faculty in which the subject is normally offered, and to proceed to an honours degree in that Faculty, depending on the combination of papers to be offered.

S.31

S.31.1 The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study.

S.31.2 Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit candidates to take honours courses over two years as full-time or as part-time students; provided that they attend the honours classes (including practicals) within the normal timetable of the Department, and that the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, no more than two years.

S.31.3 Students who originally register to take the honours degree over two years may, if progress is satisfactory, be allowed to change registration to complete the degree in the first year as full-time students. Full-time students who originally register to take the degree over one year may be advised by the Head of Department to take the degree over two years, or may opt to change registration to part-time. Any such changes must be effected no later than the end of the second week of the second semester.

S.31.4 Full-time candidates may withdraw from an Honours course during the second semester, but may not alter their registrations otherwise. On the recommendation of the Head of Department, candidates who withdraw may be permitted to register for the course in the following year, but will be required to complete all requirements for examination (including practical and project work) as though they had not previously been registered.

S.31.5 Any project work that forms part of the examinable material of an Honours degree must be completed and submitted before the final examinations are written.

S.32

A candidate may not take up any full-time employment while engaged in the course. However, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, with the approval of Senate, part-time employment is permitted.

S.33

An honours candidate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend concurrently and write the examination in a maximum of two semester-credit undergraduate courses in the same or another department.

S.34

S.34.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, or as provided in Rule S.34.2, the subject of an honours degree shall be one which the candidate has completed as a major subject for the ordinary degree.

S.34.2 Candidates for Honours degrees in various subjects not offered as major subjects in the ordinary degree shall normally have credit in cognate major subjects as provided in the following table:

African Vertebrate	
Biodiversity	Zoology
Biotechnology	Biochemistry or Microbiology
Electronics	Physics with Electronics
Environmental Water Management	Geography
Ergonomics	Human Kinetics and Ergonomics
Marine Biology	normally Zoology or Ichthyology
Mathematical Physics/Theoretical Physics	Physics and either Pure or Applied Mathematics
Telecommunications	Physics with Electronics

S.35

Candidates may, with the approval of the Senate, present themselves for examination in more than one subject; provided that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination. If more than 60% of the honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

S.36

Candidates who fail an honours examination may be permitted by the Senate to re-present themselves at most once for that examination, and for this purpose they shall be required to re-attend the course prior to such re-examination.

S.37

S.37.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must write all parts of the examination at one time, and shall not be exempted from any part of such examination; provided that students who are required to take the degree over two years may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study, and part at the end of the second year of study.

S.37.2 Exceptions have been approved for the following subjects, where parts of the examination may, at the discretion of the Head of Department, be written at any official examination session of the University.

Biochemistry, Biotechnology, Computer Science, Information Systems, Mathematics, Microbiology, Mathematical Statistics, Physics, Electronics.

**DEGREES OF MASTER OF SCIENCE,
DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR
OF SCIENCE**

See General Rules and individual departmental entries.

S.38

The continued registration of MSc and PhD students (and, in particular, past the first year) is conditional on the Dean receiving satisfactory reports on their progress.

S.39

Applications to upgrade from MSc to PhD registration must be made on the official form and must normally be submitted within the first 18 months of registration.

**THE SCIENCE EXTENDED STUDIES
PROGRAMME**

Special provision is made in the Faculty of Science to accommodate students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of Bachelor of Science, Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) or Bachelor of Science (Software Development), or who are identified as having potential, but as lacking an adequate educational background in certain key subjects. The Science Extended Studies Programme extends over a year, during which specially designed courses are offered, which earn credit towards a full degree.

S.40

S.40.1 Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme unless they are in possession of a National Senior Certificate or a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom.

S.40.2 Candidates are normally expected to have achieved at least a level 4 in Mathematics in the NSC, and to have achieved at least a level 4 in either Biology or Physical Science at the NSC.

S.41

S.41.1 A student admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme will register for a first-year curriculum that will earn four semester-credits if completed: Computer Skills 1S, Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods, Mathematics 1F.

S.41.2 A student admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme is required to obtain credit in all these foundation courses before later being admitted to other full courses.

S.41.3 A student admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme is expected to obtain credit in 20 semester credits before being admitted to the degree of BSc.

S.41.4 Attention is drawn to Rule S.18 and Rule S.23.

S.42

A candidate admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme may be permitted by the Dean to change registration to a regular curriculum during the first two weeks of term.

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Biochemistry and Microbiology					
Subject code	Mnemonic	Subject name	*	NQF level	NQF credits
5004201	BCH 201	Biochemistry 201	S1	6	20
5004202	BCH 202	Biochemistry 202	S2	6	20
5601201	MIC 201	Microbiology 201	S1	6	20
5601202	MIC 202	Microbiology 202	S2	6	20
5004301	BCH 301	Biochemistry 301	S1	7	30
5004302	BCH 302	Biochemistry 302	S2	7	30
5601301	MIC 301	Microbiology 301	S1	7	30
5601302	MIC 302	Microbiology 302	S2	7	30
Botany					
6002102	BOT 102	Botany 102 Plant Evol. & Ecol	S2	5	15
6002201	BOT 201	Botany 201	S1	6	20
6002202	BOT 202	Botany 202	S2	6	20
6002301	BOT 301	Botany 301	S1	7	30
6002302	BOT 302	Botany 302	S2	7	30
Chemistry					
5001101	CHE 101	Chemistry 101	S1	5	15
5001102	CHE 102	Chemistry 102	S2	5	15
50011R1	CHE 1R1	Chemistry 1R1	S2	5	15
50011R2	CHE 1R2	Chemistry 1R2	S1	5	15
5001201	CHE 201	Chemistry 201	S1	6	20
5001202	CHE 202	Chemistry 202	S2	6	20
5001301	CHE 301	Chemistry 301	S1	7	30
5001302	CHE 302	Chemistry 302	S2	7	30
CHERTL					
51011B0	CSC 1S	Comp Skills 1S (Science)	Y	5	15
51011B9	INT ICT	Intro to Computers (Commerce)	S1	5	0
51011F2	CSC 11F	Computer Science 112 Foundation	Y	5	0
6601100	ISCM 1	Intro To Sci Concepts/Methods	Y	5	30
Computer Science					
5101101	CSC 1L1	Introduction To ICT (Sem 1)	S1	5	15
5101112	CSC 112	Computer Science 112	S2	5	15
51011P3	CSC 101	Computer Science 101	S1	5	15
51011P4	CSC 102	Computer Science 102	S2	5	15
5101201	CSC 201	Computer Science 201	S1	6	20

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

5101202	CSC 202	Computer Science 202	S2	6	20
5101301	CSC 301	Computer Science 301	S2	7	30
5101302	CSC 302	Computer Science 302	S1	7	30
5101402	BBS CSC	Computer Science 4 (BBS)	Y	8	120
5101403	BBS CSJ	Computer Science 4 (BBS) Joint	Y	8	60
Environmental Science					
2602201	ENV 201	Environmental Science 201	S1	6	20
2602202	ENV 202	Environmental Science 202	S2	6	20
2602301	ENV 301	Environmental Science 301	S1	7	30
2602302	ENV 302	Environmental Science 302	S2	7	30
Geography					
2601102	GOG 102	Geography 102	S2	5	15
26011G1	EAR 101	Earth Science 101	S1	5	15
2601201	GOG 201	Geography 201	S1	6	20
2601202	GOG 202	Geography 202	S2	6	20
2601301	GOG 301	Geography 301	S1	7	30
2601302	GOG 302	Geography 302	S2	7	30
Geology					
5201102	GLG 102	Geology 102	S2	5	15
5201201	GLG 201	Geology 201	S1	6	20
5201202	GLG 202	Geology 202	S2	6	20
5201301	GLG 301	Geology 301	S1	7	30
5201302	GLG 302	Geology 302	S2	7	30
Human Kinetics and Ergonomics					
2207101	HKE 101	Human Kinetics & Ergon 101	S1	5	15
2207102	HKE 102	Human Kinetics & Ergon 102	S2	5	15
2207201	HKE 201	Human Kinetics & Ergon 201	S1	6	20
2207202	HKE 202	Human Kinetics & Ergon 202	S2	6	20
2207301	HKE 301	Human Kinetics & Ergon 301	S1	7	30
2207302	HKE 302	Human Kinetics & Ergon 302	S2	7	30
Ichthyology & Fisheries Science					
6201201	ICH 201	Ichthyology 201	S1	6	20
6201202	ICH 202	Ichthyology 202	S2	6	20
6201301	ICH 301	Ichthyology 301	S1	7	30
6201302	ICH 302	Ichthyology 302	S2	7	30

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Mathematics and Applied Mathematics					
540101A	MAT 1C1	Mathematics 1C1	S1	5	15
540101B	MAT 1C2	Mathematics 1C2	S2	5	15
540101S	MAT 1S	Mathematics 1S	S1	5	15
54011L1	MAT 1F	Mathematics 1F	Y	5	15
55041T0	TOF 1F	Theory Of Fin Found	Y	5	15
55041Z0	TOF 1	Theory Of Fin Main	S1	5	15
5401203	MAM 201	Maths And Applied Maths 201	S1	6	20
5401204	MAM 202	Maths And Applied Maths 202	S2	6	20
5401311	MAT 311	Maths 311 Algebra	S1	7	18
5401313	MAT 313	Maths 313 Real Analysis	S1	7	18
5401315	MAT 315	Maths 315 Topics in Mathematics	S2	7	18
5401316	MAM 311	Maths MAM 311 Complex Analysis	S2	7	18
5411311	MAP 311	Appl Maths 311 Num Analysis	S1	7	18
5411312	MAP 312	Appl Maths 312 Dynamical Systems	S2	7	18
5411314	MAP 314	Appl Maths 314 Partial Diff Equ	S1	7	18
Physics and Electronics					
5701101	PHY 101	Physics 101	S1	5	15
5701102	PHY 102	Physics 102	S2	5	15
57011Z1	PHY 1E1	Physics 1E1	S1	5	15
57011Z2	PHY 1E2	Physics 1E2	S2	5	15
5701201	PHY 201	Physics 201	S1	6	20
5701202	PHY 202	Physics 202	S2	6	20
5701301	PHY 301	Physics 301	S1	7	30
5701302	PHY 302	Physics 302	S2	7	30
Registrar's					
0000006	0000006	Special Subject Science	Y	0	0
Statistics					
5504101	STA 101	Statistics 101	S1	5	15
5504102	STA 102	Statistics 102	S2	5	15
55041D0	STA 1D	Statistics 1d (Half Course)	S2	5	15
5501201	MST 201	Mathematical Statistics 201	S1	6	20
5501202	MST 202	Mathematical Statistics 202	S2	6	20
7001121	PC1BST	Biostatistics (PC1BST)	S1	5	15
5501301	MST 301	Mathematical Statistics 301	1	7	30
5501302	MST 302	Mathematical Statistics 302	S2	7	30

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

4400407	BBS STJ	Maths Stats 4 (BBS) Joint	Y	8	60
440040B	BBS MST	Maths Stats 4 (BBS)	Y	8	120
Zoology and Entomology					
5801101	ZOO 101	Zoology 101	S2	5	15
5902101	CEL 101	Cell Biology	S1	5	15
5801201	ZOO 201	Zoology 201	S1	6	20
5801202	ZOO 202	Zoology 202	S2	6	20
6101201	ENT 201	Entomology 201	S2	6	20
6101202	ENT 202	Entomology 202	S1	6	20
5801301	ZOO 301	Zoology 301	S1	7	30
5801302	ZOO 302	Zoology 302	S2	7	30
6101301	ENT 301	Entomology 301	S2	7	30
6101302	ENT 302	Entomology 302	S1	7	30

ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS AND STAFF

ACCOUNTING

KPMG/CU Peat Memorial Professor of Accounting

EM Stack, DCompt (UNISA), CA (SA)

Associate Professor and Head of Department

JA Arendse, PhD (Rhodes), MTP(SA), CA(SA)

Associate Professors

MB Bunting, PhD (Rhodes), CA(SA), FCA, CFA, FIFM, FAIA(Acad)

JCS Lancaster, PhD (Rhodes), CA(SA)

KW Marce, MCom (Rhodes), CA(SA)

JM Williams, PGDHE (Rhodes), MCom (Rhodes), CA(SA)

Senior Lecturers

D Coopasamy CTA (NMMU), CA(SA)

L Coopasamy, MCom (UP), CA(SA)

H Harnett BAcc (Rhodes), CA(SA)

EB Horn, MCom (Rhodes), CA(SA)

N Latif Kader, PGDipAcc (UNISA), CA(SA)

S Mabaso HDipAcc (Wits), CA(SA)

LP Myers, PGDHE (Rhodes), MEd (Rhodes)

R Poole, MCom (Rhodes), MTP(SA)

P Qwesha, CTA (UKZN), CA(SA)

A van der Merwe, BAcc (Hons)(UFS), CA(SA)

Lecturers

MR Hockly, BCompt (Hons)(UNISA)

A Wagenaar, CTA (UKZN)

The following subjects and courses may be studied for degree and higher diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Accounting are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Humanities (in Social Science).

Bachelor's Degree Courses

Accounting 1 consists of two one-credit courses **ACC101** and **ACC102** or **ACC112**

ACC101 (One three-hour paper)

The accounting cycle; presentation and disclosure of financial statements; adjustments; accounting for receivables and payables; inventories; cash and cash equivalents.

ACC102 (One three-hour paper)

Accounting for non-current assets; partnerships; companies; statements of cash flow.

*This course will have a greater focus on company accounting when compared to **ACC112**. A credit in both **ACC101** and **ACC102** will permit entry into **ACC201**.*

ACC112 (One three-hour paper)

Non-current assets; partnerships; companies; statements of cash flow.

*A credit in **ACC112** will not permit entry into **ACC201**.*

Accounting 1F (One three-hour paper)

This course consists of **ACC101** taken over a full academic year.

Accounting 1G (One three-hour paper)

This course has the same syllabus as **ACC102**, but may only be taken by students who have passed **Accounting 1F**.

NB A credit in both **Accounting 1F** and **1G** is equivalent to a credit in **Accounting 1**.

Principles of Professional Accountancy (One three-hour paper)

Fundamental Principles of: Management Accounting, Corporate Finance, Taxation, Governance & Risk Management, and Business Ethics.

Accounting 2 (One three-hour paper)

Intermediate financial accounting, including individual company financial statements and tax; introduction to management accounting and specialised financial accounting topics.

Accounting 3 (One three-hour paper)

Consolidations. Equity accounting. Income Taxes. Foreign exchange. Forward exchange contracts. Leasing. Borrowing costs. Government grants. Presentation of financial statements. Accounting policies, estimates, errors. Provisions and contingencies. Earnings per share. Revenue. Segment information. Events after the reporting period. Financial instruments (excl. derivatives).

Auditing 3 (One three-hour paper)

Nature, definition and objective of an audit. The auditor: qualities, qualifications, duties and responsibilities. The South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA) Code of Professional Conduct. The Companies Act and the Auditing Profession Act. The King Code of Corporate Governance. The audit process. Internal controls. Compliance and substantive auditing of the major business cycles. Completing the audit. Audit reports. Computer auditing.

Management Accounting and Finance 3 (One three-hour paper)

Management Accounting: cost concepts; job, process, joint, absorption, variable, activity-based and standard costing; relevant costs and revenues; the budget process; cost estimation. Corporate Finance: time value of money; capital budgeting; capital costs and values; capital structure and the payout decision; working capital management; using accounting numbers in corporate finance; governance and ethics; traditional, family and Islamic finance.

Taxation 3 (One three-hour paper)

Principles of income tax. Practical application of the Income Tax Act, the Value-Added Tax Act, the Tax Administration Act and other relevant tax Acts to financial and commercial transactions. Preparation of estate duty calculations in deceased estates. Anti-avoidance provisions in tax-related matters.

Postgraduate Studies in Accounting

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

Accounting 4

Advanced financial accounting (including advanced group accounting) with specific emphasis on International Financial Reporting Standards published by the International Accounting Standards Board. The Accounting 4 curriculum includes advanced work on all topics covered in Accounting 3.

Auditing 4

The topics included in the first course with more emphasis on analysis and application, together with issues of a topical and important nature.

Management Accounting and Finance 4

Topics included in the first course with more emphasis on analysis and application. Strategy, risk management and governance implications for management decision making & control and financial management

Taxation 4

The law and procedures in South Africa relating to taxation. The Income Tax Act, Value-Added Tax Act, Estate Duty Act, Tax Administration Act and other relevant Acts, court decisions and SARS rulings and Interpretation Notes. The preparation of statements and the calculation of taxes payable. Estate and tax planning.

Accounting Honours Course (with specialisation in Financial Accounting)

Paper 1 Accounting 4

Paper 2 Management Accounting and Finance 4

Paper 3 Auditing 4

Paper 4 Taxation 4

Paper 5 A research essay on a topic approved by the Head of the Department

Paper 6 Introduction to Research Methodology and Design.

Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation

The programme comprises modules on advanced aspects of taxation, each module assessed by a written assignment; the Taxation 4 paper (see above); an introductory module on research methodology and design; a research essay on an approved topic.

Master's Degree in Taxation (by coursework and thesis)

The programme comprises a coursework component assessed by written assignments, two coursework examinations and a dissertation of limited scope. The requirement for admission is an Honours degree or the equivalent of a Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy with a CA(SA) qualification, with a good academic record.

Master's Degree in Financial Accounting, Auditing, Management Accounting & Finance or Taxation

Full thesis, addressing a research question approved by the Head of Department and the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Commerce

Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Financial Accounting, Auditing, Management Accounting & Finance or Taxation

Full thesis, addressing a research question approved by the Head of Department and the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Commerce. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on a good academic record, the acceptance of a topic statement and the availability of expertise in the department to supervise the project.

NB Not all the above courses will be offered in any one year.

Course Admission Prerequisites

ACC102

sub-minimum in ACC101

ACC112

sub-minimum in ACC101

Accounting 1G

Accounting 1F

ACC2

ACC101 and ACC102 or Accounting 1 (continuing pass) with ACC101 and ACC102 aggregated

Principles of Professional Accountancy

ACC 101 and ACC 102 or Accounting 1 (continuing pass) with ACC 101 and ACC102 aggregated

Accounting 3

Accounting 2

Management Accounting and Finance 3

Accounting 2, Principles of Professional Accountancy, Theory of Finance and Statistics

Auditing 3

Principles of Professional Accountancy, Accounting 2

Taxation 3

Principles of Professional Accountancy, Accounting 2

A candidate who fails any first semester course shall be permitted to proceed to the corresponding second semester course provided the required sub-minimum in the first semester course has been obtained. A pass in the second semester course in such circumstances shall **NOT** relieve the candidate of the need to pass the first semester course in order to gain the full course credit.

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy: *normally* an average of a minimum of 58% across all 4 subjects, with a sub-minimum of 55% in each of Accounting3, Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3 and Taxation 3 with the examinations for all four subjects written in a single examination session in the academic year immediately preceding the year of registration for PDipAcc.

Accounting Honours Course (with specialisation in Financial Accounting)

As for the PDipAcc, with a minimum mark of 60% for Accounting 4.

Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation

Bachelor of Commerce with an undergraduate exit-level credit in Taxation with a minimum of 60%.

ANTHROPOLOGY

Head of Department, Associate Professor

ML Cocks BSocSci, BSocSci (Hons)(Rhodes), MSocSci (Rhodes), PhD (Wageningen)

Emeritus Professors

RCG Palmer, BA (Hons)(Durham), MA, DPhil (Sussex)

CJ De Wet, MA (Stellenbosch), Post-Graduate Diploma in Social Anthropology (Oxford), PhD (Rhodes)

Professor

S Aswani, BA (Univ. Miami), MA, PhD (Hawaii).

Senior Lecturers

PC Henderson, BA (Wits), BA Hons (Wits), MA (Wits). PhD (UCT)

D Santos, BA Hons, MRes, PhD (Goldsmiths, University of London)

Lecturers

JM Hayward, BSocSci (Rhodes), BSocSci Hons *cum laude* (WSU), PhD (Rhodes)

S Shaik, BSocSci (UKZN), BSocSci Hons *cum laude* (UKZN), MSocSc *cum laude* (UKZN)

Research Associate

PS Bernard, BSocSci (Natal), BSocSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Anthropology is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. One or two courses in anthropology are allowed as credits for degree curricula in the Faculty of Law.

Introduction to Anthropology: Introduction, Theory and Institutions A (ANT 101)

First-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: The semester provides an introduction to anthropological concepts, theory and social-institutions.

DP requirements: 80% attendance for tutorials and submission of 100% of coursework. Assessment: 40% exam, 60% coursework.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 45%

Supplementary exam: Will be given if final mark falls between 45-49%.

Introduction to Anthropology: Ethnographic Theory and Application B (ANT 102)

First-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: ANT 101.

Course description: Sex and Gender and Case Study and/or Race and Ethnicity

DP requirements: 80% attendance for tutorials and submission of 100% of coursework.

Assessment: 40% exam, 60% coursework

Supplementary exam: Will be given if final mark falls between 45-49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 45%

Anthropology 2 (ANT 2)

Second-year, full year course (30 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance requirements: ANT 1

Course description: During this year the concerns of anthropology are explained in greater analytical and methodological depth, with a focus on specialist ethnographic and thematic topics. The following courses are usually taught but the offered topics change depending on the availability of staff.

- Ethnographic Research Methods
- Theory before 1988
- Biological Anthropology
- Medical Anthropology
- Anthropology of youth and childhood

DP requirements: 80% Attendance Tutorials and Lectures, 100% submissions and 45% subminimum of overall class mark.

Assessment: Coursework counts 60%; June and November examinations count 40%.

Supplementary exam: June/November result 45 – 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 45%

Anthropology 3 (ANT 3)

Third-year, full year course (60 credits at NQF level 7).

Entrance requirements: Students would have had to complete ANT 101 & 102 and ANT 2

Course description: During this seminar-focused year students are introduced to additional ethnographic perspectives. Students will pursue the analysis of institutions in greater depth and more emphasis is placed on changing and contemporary societies as well as on the application of anthropology

and its career opportunities. The theoretical aspects of the discipline are also underscored more overtly. The following courses are usually taught but the offered topics change depending on the availability of staff.

- Anthropology of Play
- Anthropology in Action
- Music as Communication and Social Practice
- Ways of Knowing
- Ecological Anthropology
- Applied Anthropology
- Theory after 1980s
- Post Humanism Theories

DP requirements: 80% Attendance Tutorials and Lectures, 100% submissions and 45% subminimum of overall class mark.

Assessment: Coursework counts 60%; June and November examinations count 40%.

Supplementary exam: June/November result 45 – 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 45%

Anthropology Honours

Full-year (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with ANT 3 as a major. 60% and approval of preliminary research proposal

Course description: The Honours course is completed in the fourth year of study. The year consists of four course models. Subject to student preferences and the availability of staff, the topics for the papers are selected from the following:

- Bio-cultural Diversity and Heritage Studies
- Anthropology of Gender
- Families and Households
- Anthropology of Dreams and Dreaming
- Anthropology of Performance
- Maritime Anthropology
- Decolonising Anthropology

A research thesis of about 15 000 words, incorporating original fieldwork, is written during the year on a topic chosen by the candidate and approved by the Departmental Research Committee and the Rhodes University Ethnic Committee.

Joint Honours

Full-year (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with ANT 3 as a major. 60% and approval of preliminary research proposal

Course description: Combining Anthropology with another subject is encouraged to foster interdisciplinary interaction across faculties. Requirements from anthropology includes completing two course modules and research thesis, which can be interdisciplinary focused.

Master's Degree

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: A completed honours degree in Anthropology or equivalent. Minimum of 60% is required to enter our master's programme

Course description: A thesis (for which fieldwork will normally be required) on any approved topic within any of the fields of Anthropology: Environmental, Biological, Medical and Socio-Cultural. Periods of residence for consultation with the supervisor are required over the period (usually two years for the Master's).

Doctoral Degree

360 credits at NQF level 10

Entrance requirements: A completed Master's degree in Anthropology or equivalent.

Course description: A thesis (for which fieldwork will normally be required) on any approved topic within any of the fields of Anthropology: Environmental, Biological, Medical and Socio-Cultural. Periods of residence for consultation with the supervisor are required over the period (usually three years for the Doctorate).

BIOCHEMISTRY & MICROBIOLOGY

Senior Lecturer & Head of Department

BS Wilhelm, B.Tech:Ed (TWR), PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor & Head of Microbiology

C Knox, PhD (Wits)

Associate Professor, Biochemistry & Head of Biochemistry

H Hoppe, PhD (UP)

Associate Professor, Bioinformatics & Head of Bioinformatics

O Tastan Bishop, MSc (Bogazici University, Turkey), PhD (Max Planck Inst., Germany)

Associate Professor, Microbiology & Deputy Dean of Science

J Dames, PhD (Wits)

Professor, Microbiology & SARChI Chair in Marine Natural Products

RA Dorrington, BSc Agric (Stell), PhD (UCT)

Associate Professor, Biochemistry & SARChI Chair in Molecular and Cellular Biology of the Eukaryotic Stress Response

AL Edkins, MSc (Rhodes), MSc Forensic Sci (KCL), PhD (Glasgow)

Professor, Biochemistry

BI Pletschke, PhD (UPE)

Lecturer, Microbiology

GL Abrahams, PhD (UCT)

Lecturer, Biochemistry

J de la Mare, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer, Bioinformatics

V Moses, PhD (Rhodes)

Emeritus Professor

CG Whiteley, PhD (Natal), MRSC, CChem

Emeritus Associate Professor

DA Hendry, PhD (UCT)

Visiting Professor

GL Blatch, BSc (Hons)(Natal), PhD(UCT),

FRSSAf

K McPhail BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Rhodes)

D Lang MSc, PhD (University of Konstanz, Germany)

Research Associate

S Parker-Nance PhD (NMMU)

Professional Associate

D Kennedy MSc (Wits)

The Department offers courses in Biochemistry, Microbiology and Bioinformatics.

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/bm/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

Introductory Molecular Biology

Introductory Molecular Biology (IMB) is a two-semester subject offered at the second year level to students not majoring in either Biochemistry or Microbiology who require a basic understanding in biochemistry and molecular biology for application in other biological sciences, law, journalism, pharmacy, computer science and education. The subject is comprised of two semester courses offered in Biochemistry and Microbiology, namely IMB 201 (same as BCH 201) and IMB 202 (same as MIC 202). Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course IMB 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for IMB 2. A sub-minimum of 40% in IMB 201 is required for registration in IMB 202. Students unable to complete IMB 201 and IMB 202 in the same calendar year will be required to pass both courses to obtain a credit in IMB 2. Credit in IMB 2 will not enable registration for either BCH3 or MIC 3.

BIOCHEMISTRY

Biochemistry (BCH) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Biochemistry, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; BCH 2; BCH 3: See Rule S.23. In addition, students wishing to major in Biochemistry are encouraged to obtain credit for CEL 101; MIC 202.

Students who aim to major in Biochemistry and progress to postgraduate studies in computational biology, genomics, protein structure and function

and biotechnology are encouraged to register for advanced courses in one or more of Microbiology, Computer Science, Chemistry or Mathematics.

Second-year level courses in Biochemistry

There are two second-year courses in Biochemistry. BCH 201 is held in the first semester and BCH 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BCH 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for BCH 201 or BCH 202. A sub-minimum of 40% in BCH 201 is required before a student may register for BCH 202. In addition, a credit in MIC 202 is strongly encouraged for students wishing to major in Biochemistry.

BCH 201

(One theory paper and a practical examination)
Building Blocks: Aqueous biochemistry & buffers; building blocks in biochemistry; amino acids & proteins; nucleotides, DNA & RNA; carbohydrates; lipids & membranes; vitamins, coenzymes & enzymes. **Bioenergetics & Metabolism:** Enzyme kinetics, specificity & regulation; bioenergetics & thermodynamics; catabolism & catabolic pathways; substrate and oxidative phosphorylation.

BCH 202

(One theory paper and a practical examination)
Biochemical Techniques: This course is taught in the context of protein purification and analysis and includes: protein purification strategies; cell disruption and centrifugation; chromatography; spectroscopy; electrophoresis; immunological techniques and protein-protein interactions.

Third-year level courses in Biochemistry

There are two third-year courses in Biochemistry. BCH 301 is normally held in the first semester and BCH 302 in the second semester but the department reserves the right to offer them in either semester subject to timetable constraints. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50%

will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BCH 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Biochemistry (BCH 2) is required before a student may register for BCH 301 or BCH 302. A sub-minimum of 40% in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. In addition, a credit in MIC 202 is strongly encouraged for students wishing to major in Biochemistry.

BCH 301

(One theory paper and a practical examination)
Biochemistry of Information Flow: The structure of chromosomes and plasmids; DNA replication and repair; transcription and regulation of gene expression; protein synthesis, transport and degradation.

Medical biochemistry: Signal transduction in the context of hormones and neurotransmission; metabolism of biomolecules.

BCH 302

(One theory paper and a practical poster and presentation examination)

Enzyme Kinetics and Mechanisms: Enzyme mechanisms; advanced enzyme kinetics; advanced theory and application of computational methods and tools for the visualization and modeling of enzymes.

Protein trafficking and organelle formation: The formation of eukaryotic cell organelles and their protein compositions.

Bioinformatics: Introduction to bioinformatics with case studies.

Biochemistry Honours

The course consists of course-work modules and lectures on selected advanced topics such as drug metabolism, drug identification, forensic biochemistry, antibiotics, biomedical biochemistry, receptors, hormones, structure & function of biomacromolecules, protein folding, protein purification and biotechnology, protein engineering,

advanced enzymology, applied enzymology & immobilized enzymes; bioinformatics, proteomics, seminars, a literature review, essays and a research project.

This course is assessed through written tests, continual assessment of a research project, and examinations.

MICROBIOLOGY

Microbiology (MIC) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Microbiology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101 (or an aggregate pass in ZOO 1 or BOT 1); MIC 2; MIC 3. See Rule S.23. In addition, students wishing to major in Microbiology are strongly encouraged to obtain credit for BCH 201.

Students who aim to major in Microbiology and progress to postgraduate studies in computational biology or genomics are encouraged to register for advanced courses in one or more of Biochemistry, Computer Science, Chemistry or Mathematics.

Second-year level courses in Microbiology

There are two second-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 201 is held in the first semester and MIC 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course, MIC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, tutorials and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) and in Cell Biology (CEL 101) (or an aggregated credit in either Botany (BOT 1) or Zoology (ZOO 1) is required before a student may register for MIC 201. A sub-minimum of 40% in MIC 201 is required for registration in MIC 202. In addition, a credit in BCH 201 is strongly recommended for students wishing to major in Microbiology.

The courses comprise of the following modules, not necessarily in the given position, each module lasting about three weeks.

MIC 201

(One theory paper and a practical examination)

Microbes and their environment:

Introductory Microbiology (classification, growth, assay and control of microorganisms). Organization and replication of microbes (microbial structure; cellular organization and modes of replication of yeast, bacteria, fungi and viruses). Microbial pathogenicity and epidemiology. Microbial interactions and ecosystem services (nutrient cycling and metabolism). The course includes practical experience in the isolation and culture of microbes, their identification and interaction with each other and the environment and a field trip.

MIC 202

(One theory paper and a practical examination)

Molecular Biology and Genetics:

Introductory molecular biology (the structure of nucleic acids and proteins; the flow of genetic information; mutagenesis and DNA repair); Basic bacterial genetics (bacterial conjugation, transformation and transduction; plasmids; bacteriophages); Prokaryote gene regulation (plasmid replication and host range; transposable elements; regulation of gene expression); Recombinant DNA Technology. The course will include a practical introduction to basic molecular techniques (DNA isolation and characterization, bacterial transformation, gene regulation, recombinant DNA technology).

Third-year level courses in Microbiology

There are two third-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 301 is held in the first semester and MIC 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MIC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, tutorials and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Microbiology (MIC 2) is required before a student may register for MIC 301 or MIC 302. A sub-minimum of 40% in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. In addition, a credit in BCH 201

is strongly recommended for students wishing to major in Microbiology. The courses comprise of the following modules, not necessarily in the given position, each module lasting about three weeks:

MIC 301

(One theory paper and a practical examination)

Immunology, Eukaryotic Cell Biology and Infection Biology:

Concepts in Immunology. Eukaryote cell biology (structure and function of the cellular organelles; protein sorting and trafficking). Eukaryote molecular genetics (genome structure and organisation, the eukaryotic gene, the flow of information, transcriptional and translational regulation of gene expression; the cell cycle and apoptosis). Infection Biology (pathogen infection of hosts, immune recognition of pathogens and pathogen avoidance of host immune recognition and clearance). The practical component of this course focuses on recombinant DNA techniques (DNA cloning, genetic manipulation of bacterial cells) and yeast genetics.

MIC 302

(One theory paper and a practical examination)

Applied microbiology: Exploiting microorganisms for industrial and commercial purposes. Topics covered include microbial ecology; biological control; agriculturally important microbes; metabolic engineering; microbial growth kinetics; batch and continuous culture; primary and secondary metabolism; antibiotic production; amino acid production; beer brewing, biodegradation and biosensors; stem cell biology, vaccine design and development. The course includes practical experience in isolating and characterizing microorganisms, and the fermentation of alcoholic beverages. A field trip to local industries is included.

Microbiology Honours

(Coursework and Comprehension examinations)

The course consists of modules on mammalian cell culture techniques and microscopy; plant soil microbe interactions; analysis of host pathogen interactions; microbial ecology and marine biotechnology. The course is assessed through essays, tutorials, journal clubs and seminars with written tests. Each candidate is required to submit a report on practical work done on a specific project in the areas of molecular virology, mycology,

mycorrhizal fungi, pathogenic microbes or microbial genetics during the course, and this together with all assessment marks will be considered part of the final examination.

BIOINFORMATICS

Bioinformatics is offered at the postgraduate level. A joint Honours programme is offered between the Department and the Departments of Computer Science, Mathematics and Statistics. Candidates for this programme must have completed a BSc structured as follows:

CHE 1	CSC 1	MAT 1	STA 1	CEL 101
BCH 2	CSC 2	MAM 2 or MST 2		
BCH 3	CSC 3 or MAT 3 or MAM 3 or MST 3			

MSC IN BIOINFORMATICS AND COMPUTATIONAL MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

General background:

Bioinformatics and computational molecular biology is the systematic development and application of information technologies and data mining techniques for analysing biological data obtained by experiments, modelling, database searching and instrumentation to make novel observations and predictions about biological function. This course will be taught in an interdisciplinary manner and focusing on the interface between the computational sciences and the biological, physical and chemical sciences. Graduates who complete this course will be skilled in the assimilation of biological information through the use and development of computational tools for a range of applications including simple pattern recognition, molecular modelling for the prediction of structure and function, gene discovery and drug target discovery, the analysis of phylogenetic relationships, whole genome analysis and the comparison of genetic organization.

Eligibility:

Candidates who hold a BSc Honours degree with subjects from the life sciences (especially Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology), Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics and Statistics and who have basic computer literacy, may apply for admission.

Course structure:

The Master's programme will be offered over 12

months and incorporates a number of course work modules and a research project. The course work modules will involve an integration of formal lectures, self-learning computer-based tutorials and practicals. In addition, problem solving tutorials would be designed to guide the student through current information-based problems and involve the assimilation and reduction of biological information. A number of the tutorials and practical components will be assessed and contribute towards a course work year mark. The examination of the course work component would be through oral and open-book theory examinations. The course work component will be externally examined.

A number of research projects will be offered, depending on the interests of the academic staff associated with the program.

The projects will be assessed by seminar presentations of the proposed and final work, and as a written thesis that will be externally examined.

Course work modules:

The course work consists of modules and lectures on introductory and advanced topics including computer operating systems and programming (e.g. Linux, Python and MatLab), basic statistics,

databases, basic and advanced genomics, comparative genomics, metagenomics and structural bioinformatics (e.g. homology modelling, protein-ligand, protein-protein interactions, protein engineering).

Assessment:

The course work modules will be assessed by internal grading of tutorials and practicals, and by internal and external grading of work assignments, mini-projects and examinations. The project report and thesis will be graded internally and externally. The overall course work mark and the research component mark will each contribute equally to the final mark. Successful completion of the course will be subject to a final mark of at least 50%, provided that a candidate obtains at least 50% for the course work, with a sub-minimum of at least 40% from each module (with at least 40% in the examination) and at least 50% for the project report, project presentations and thesis.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

BIOTECHNOLOGY INNOVATION CENTRE

Professor: Biotechnology & Director. South African Research Chair in Biotechnology Innovation and Engagement

JL Limson, PhD, PGDHE (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer: Biotechnology/ Head of Department

E Prinsloo, PhD (NMMU), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer: Biotechnology

A Boshoff, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer: Biotechnology

R Fogel, PhD (Rhodes)

Research Associates

NS Gardiner, PhD (Rhodes)

B Zuma, PhD (Rhodes)

Emeritus Professor

PD Rose, BS c(Hons)(UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

Professional Associate

P Allison, BSc (Hons)(KZN)

Biotechnology is offered at the Honours, Masters and PhD level.

General Background

The Rhodes University Biotechnology Innovation Centre (RUBIC) is the academic home of the discipline of Biotechnology, providing a trans-disciplinary research and learning environment in the areas of Biomedical Biotechnology and in Environmental/Industrial Biotechnology. In addition to teaching and research, the Biotechnology Innovation Centre is engaged in technology transfer of Biotechnology research and the public engagement and communication of the field. See the Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/biotechnology> for further details.

Biotechnology Honours

This course is offered as a professional qualification for students interested in careers in the biotechnology sector. Biotechnology is a multi-disciplinary field of study at the intersection of the biological, chemical and physical sciences. As a prerequisite, candidates normally have either Microbiology or Biochemistry (or equivalent subjects) as one of their major BSc subjects. The course consists of lectures, seminars and

essays covering a series of topics in Biotechnology such as alternative energy, wastewater treatment, biosensor technology, stem cells, tissue and protein engineering, industrial bioprocess design and strategy and advanced topics in environmental biotechnology and management. The course also includes enrichment modules and seminars in bio-entrepreneurship, intellectual property management, biotechnology communication and current trend analysis. The coursework is followed by a research project of original investigation conducted in one of the research laboratories of the supervisor. All seminars, essays, practical reports and examinations will contribute to the final mark.

Biotechnology Masters and PhD

Degrees in Biotechnology at the Masters and Doctoral level are offered by research to suitably qualified graduates. MSc and PhD students conduct research under the supervision of one of the staff or in collaboration with affiliates in other departments at Rhodes as well as affiliates in the public and private research and industrial sector. Academic programmes including research seminars, conference presentations and advisory committees (constituted for masters and doctoral candidates) further support research activities. All postgraduates are offered voluntary short courses to enrich their learning and enhance their preparedness for the job market in areas including business plan development and biotechnology communication and public engagement. Finally, the Biotechnology Innovation Centre provides an Innovation space for graduates interested in the future technology transfer and commercialization of their postgraduate research.

MSc in Environmental Biotechnology

See Calendar entry for the Institute of Environmental Biotechnology, Rhodes University.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

BOTANY

Associate Professor & Head of Department

S Vetter, PhD (UCT)

Professor

BS Ripley, MSc (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professors

JA Coetzee, PhD (Wits)

CI Peter, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (UKZN)

Lecturer

TL Nowell BSc (Hons)(Reading), MSc (Birmingham), PhD (UCT)

Research Associates

Professor Emeritus CEJ Botha, PhD (Natal)

Associate Professor Emeritus RA Lubke, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), MIBiol, MSc (Science Education) (Keele), PhD (Western Ontario)

Dr R Prevec, PhD(Natal), PhD(Wits)

Herbarium Curator

AP Dold, MSc (Rhodes)

Botany (BOT) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA and BJourn. Botany is a recommended co-major with Environmental Science (ENV), Entomology (ENT) or Zoology (ZOO) full details of which are given in a separate entry.

To major in Botany, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1, CEL 101, BOT 102, ZOO 101, BOT 201, BOT 202, BOT 301, BOT 302. See Rule S.23.

Two, or in some cases four, Botany semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/ diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/botany/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Botany

There are two first-year courses in Botany. CEL 101 is held in the first semester and BOT 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BOT 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (45%) in each component. However, students wishing to

major in Botany must normally obtain credit in both components separately. Both theory and practical examinations are held. Supplementary examinations may be awarded in either course, provided that a candidate achieves 35% in semester 1 and 45% in semester 2. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. Adequate performance for CEL 101 (at least 35%) is required before a student may register for BOT 102. Each course is comprised of modules of two to four weeks, with 5 lectures and 1 practical per week.

CEL 101: Cell Biology

This course compares cell structure in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells and examines cellular processes including cell to cell communication, photosynthesis and cell respiration. Cell division and fundamental genetics, including the structure of genetic material and how it controls cellular processes, are also covered.

BOT 102: Plant Evolution and Ecology

This course examines the mechanisms of evolution through natural selection and the resultant plant diversity. Whole plant function and adaptations are then used to introduce plant ecology, which deals with the characteristics and processes found at different levels of organisation from the individual to ecosystems. The course ends with an introduction to the biomes of South Africa, highlighting the diversity in ecological processes that have shaped the vegetation in different parts of the country. A compulsory field trip to the coast provides an introduction to field ecology.

Second-year level courses in Botany

There are two second-year courses in Botany. BOT 201 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 202 in the second semester. An aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BOT 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum of 45 % in each semester. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. When the intention is to major in Botany, credit in Botany (CEL 101, BOT 102), Zoology (ZOO 102) and Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for BOT 201 or BOT 202. Permission may be granted to

repeat CHE 1 or ZOO 101 concurrently with BOT 2 or BOT 3. Adequate performance (at least 40%) in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. These courses each comprise several modules and weekly practicals. Students registered for BOT 201 will also be required to assemble a plant collection, and students will participate in field trips in BOT 201 and BOT 202.

BOT 201 begins with a module on the theory and applications of plant systematics. This introduces the basic principles of modern taxonomy and systematics and examines how these disciplines interact with, and inform, the study of plant evolutionary history as well as applied fields such as biodiversity conservation. The second half of the course is a module on invasion biology. Biological invasions are a key driver of global environmental change, and also provide unique opportunities for testing basic theories in ecology and evolution. The practical component and field trip train students in key skills important for botanists, ecologists and environmental scientists, such as collecting and identifying plants, using the herbarium, and collecting and analysing ecological data.

BOT 202 starts with a module on carbon and nitrogen metabolism in plants, which examines pathways of energy production and utilisation and the regulation of metabolism. This is followed by a module on herbivory, which covers aspects of plant-herbivore interactions, plant defences and rangeland ecology. The final module deals with plant reproduction and introduces some of the many modes of reproduction in Angiosperms before focusing on the interaction between plants and their pollinators. A joint ecology field trip with other life science departments introduces hypothesis testing, research design, data collection and analysis.

Third-year level courses in Botany

Credit in Botany 2 is required before a student may register for BOT 3. There are two independent third-year courses in Botany. BOT 301 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 302 in the second semester. An aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BOT 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each semester. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Students are also required to undertake a mini research project which runs throughout the year, culminating in a written project and research seminar.

BOT 301 commences with an intensive two week session on project development to enable students to commence their research projects with a firm footing of research planning, project design and data analyses. An ecology module covers plant life histories, competition and mechanisms of coexistence in plant communities. A module on climate change and ecophysiology includes aspects of plant physiology and the environment where these plants grow, in particular the physiological consequences of stress. Both modules are linked to climate change issues and highlight how an understanding of southern African ecological systems has contributed to these fields globally.

BOT 302 comprises three modules. A module on aquatic ecology module introduces the drivers of aquatic ecosystems from a physical, chemical and biological perspective. This course focuses on African, and particularly South African, issues in aquatic ecology, and the sustainable management of these heavily impacted systems. A module on evolutionary biology examines evolutionary theory, concentrating on the mechanisms that have driven the speciation of organisms to produce present-day biodiversity. A module on phylogenetics and phylogeography focuses on the study of evolutionary change in populations and species, through to higher levels of biological organization. The module explores current methods and ideas in the field, which are illustrated with many southern African case studies.

Botany Honours

The Botany Honours degree focuses on plant ecology and evolution in the context of global change. Plants form the basis for all life on earth, but the conditions for plant growth are rapidly changing due to climate change, elevated atmospheric CO₂ concentrations, biological invasions and land transformation. The last decades have seen widespread vegetation change, including woody encroachment of savannas and ecosystem shifts caused by invasive species. Climate change and increased atmospheric CO₂ also alter plant-animal interactions and their outcomes, including plant-pollinator relationships and the

susceptibility of invasive plants to biological control. The course includes a field trip, seminars, tutorials and a research project, and is intended to provide the student with the opportunity for in-depth study in particular aspects of the subject. Botany Honours may serve as relevant training for subsequent employment or as a step between an undergraduate degree and a research degree. Modules include: savanna ecology, pollination biology, invasion biology, molecular ecology and evolution, advanced systematics, climate change and stress physiology, and rehabilitation and disturbance ecology.

Joint Honours

Joint Honours courses may be followed subject to approval by both departments, where topics from the Botany Honours course may be taken in combination with courses in some other Departments (for example, Geography, Entomology, Environmental Science, Ichthyology or Zoology).

MSc and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department or associated Institutes. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

RHODES BUSINESS SCHOOL

Director and Associate Professor

FO Skae, MCom(Rhodes), MBA(Dunelm)

Professor

D Nel, BCom(Hons)(UPE), MCom(Pret),

DCom(Pret)

Associate Professor

NJ Pearse, MSocSci(UCT), PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

L Greyling, MSc(RAU), MSc(UCT),

MBA(Rhodes)

E Knoesen, BA(Hons)(UPE), MBA(NMMU)

T Mohapelo, BA(UPE), MBA(Mancosa),

DBA(TUT)

K Rafferty, BSc(Wits), MBA(Rhodes)

Visiting Professors

DK Flynn, BA(Stell), BEd(UCT), BCom (Hons) (Natal), MBA(UCT)

RJ Khoza, BA(Hons)(UNIN), MA(Lancaster), EngD(Warwick), LLD(hc)(Rhodes)

ME King SC, BA, LLB(Wits)(Cum Laude),

LLD(hc)(Wits), Hon LLD(Law)(Leeds)

G Sieff, BA(UCT), BSc(Hons)(UCT),

MA(Sydney), MBA(Sydney), PhD(UJ)

Visiting Fellow

CG Tyler, BCom(Rhodes)

Teaching Faculty

Besides the staff of the Business School presenting the various MBA modules, associate faculty are appointed mostly from other departments of Rhodes University and adjunct faculty from outside of the university with relevant academic and/or industry experience.

MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

The Rhodes MBA is a course-work degree comprising 18 courses (made up of core courses and electives) and either a research mini-thesis of 15 000 words or two case studies of 7 500 words each. The degree is offered on a part-time, modular basis over two years or on a full-time, modular basis over one and a half years. If part-time, candidates are required to attend three two-week teaching blocks in Grahamstown each year of the first two years and to complete work-based assignments in the periods between the teaching blocks. If full-time, the coursework is completed in six two-week teaching blocks in the first year. The final six months in both cases, is dedicated to the completion of the research mini-thesis or case studies.

Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least a NQF level 8 qualification (i.e. An Honour's Degree or Post Graduate Diploma) in any discipline, are fluent in English, and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMAC™ Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

Curriculum

Our MBA is offered with a focus on sustainability and leadership concepts and contexts infused within a range of management courses. The order of modules, following the part-time option, are as follows:

First Year

1. Academic Skills
2. Economics
3. Principles of Sustainability
4. Quantitative Decision-Making
5. Research Methods *or*
6. Case Writing
7. Sustainable Marketing
8. Financial Management
9. Operations Management

Second Year

10. Responsible Leadership
11. People Management
12. Management Accounting
13. Strategic Management
14. Ethical Organization and Governance

Elective Courses: (Choose Five, one in First Year and four in Second Year)

15. Business Development Consulting
16. Climate change and organisations
17. Entrepreneurship
18. Environmental Economics
19. Integrated Coastal Management
20. Knowledge Management
21. Project Management
22. Sustainable Business Modelling
23. Sustainable Fisheries
24. Sustainability Law

[Note: The school has discretion as to which electives are on offer and in what order they are taught].

or

25. International Option (In lieu of one teaching block).
26. Dissertation or
27. Case Study 1 and
28. Case Study 2
29. Financial and Quantitative Skills [Note: Only for candidates who do not have requisite accounting knowledge. This is taught after Block 1].

Sustainable Ocean Resources (SOR)

Those candidates who have a specific interest in sustainable ocean resources management, namely professionals in coastal, terrestrial and ocean resources, fisheries, aquaculture/mariculture practices, within an entrepreneurial and/or management context, are required to register for the sustainability themed electives. This option arises due to our partnership with Rhodes University's Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science (DIFS) a leading African academic institution supporting the sustainable utilisation and study of fish and fisheries. This partnership was established out of a need to contribute to the sustainability of the blue economy. Offering of this is subject to sufficient candidates being registered.

Course descriptions (alphabetical)

- **Academic Skills:** academic knowledge, academic writing, academic assessment, writing skills. (NQF9: four (4) credits, one assignment).
- **Business Development and Consulting:** consulting to the business in a way that adds value by presenting innovative ideas and projects that can help the organisation be sustainable. (NQF8: five (5) credits, one assignment).
- **Case Writing:** the process and required skills to undertake a case study analysis, development and write-up, requiring students to investigate a business problem, examine the alternative solutions and propose the most effective one with supporting evidence. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, two assignments).
- **Case Study 1 and 2:** Two case studies of 7 500 words each on a case topic of the candidate's choice but aligned with some aspect of sustainability and subject to suitable supervisory support. The first case study will be based on desk research and the second on applied research. (NQF9: thirty (30) credits each totalling sixty (60) credits).
- **Climate change and organisations:** impact, risk and opportunities of climate change on business, as it relates to the international and South African policy developments and best practices. (NQF9: six (6) credits, one assignment).
- **Dissertation:** A research mini-thesis of 15 000 words on a research topic of the candidate's choice but aligned with some aspect of resource based theory and/or stakeholder theory and subject to suitable supervisory support. (NQF9: sixty (60) credits).
- **Economics:** macro and microeconomics. Factors and policy that influence the firm and decision-making, monetary policy, nature and trends of the South African economy and challenges confronting it, indicators of economic activity. Managerial economics and its application to problem solving and decision-making, pricing, costs & profits, pricing for greater profits, decision-making in uncertainty, organizational design and firm decision-making (NQF8: ten (10) credits, one assignment, one examination).
- **Entrepreneurship:** characteristics of an entrepreneur, generating entrepreneurial ideas, feasibility studies, growth and turnaround strategies, business plans, social entrepreneurship, international business. (NQF9: six (6) credits, one assignment).
- **Environmental Economics:** the economy-environment interaction, techniques for the valuation of ecological goods and services, environmental policy intervention, environmental economic impact analysis. (NQF8: five (5) credits, one assignment).
- **Ethical Organization and Governance:** business ethics, corporate citizenship, corporate social investment, corporate governance. (NQF9: six (6) credits, one assignment).
- **Financial and Quantitative Skills:** this course is only required for those candidates who have not had any formal accounting qualification or prior accounting work experience. This course is also recommended for candidates wanting to review accounting principles (zero (0) credits).
- **Financial Management:** working capital decisions, capital investment appraisal, measuring and dealing with risk, sources of

- finance, cost of capital, ratio analysis, dividend decision. (NQF8: six (6) credits, one assignment).
- **Integrated Coastal Management:** responsible management of the coastal zone (terrestrial and aquatic), in an integrated manner and considering various development (e.g. port, marine protected areas, etc.), planning and management aspects. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment, one group project).
 - **International Option:** attend a two-week summer school at a business school outside of South Africa in lieu of the courses offered in one teaching block. There are certain conditions attached to this option and the timing thereof, covered in the School rules.
 - **Knowledge Management:** the creation and utilization of knowledge and intellectual capital in organizations, as well as information technology for knowledge management. (NQF8: six (6) credits, one assignment).
 - **Management Accounting:** cost-volume-profit analysis, measuring relevant costs and revenues for decision making, cost assignment, activity-based costing, the budgeting process, standard costing and variance analysis (NQF8: six (6) credits, one examination).
 - **Operations Management:** process types and process flows in manufacturing, performance measurement, benchmarking and re-engineering, production planning, quality management, lean thinking and world class manufacturing, sustainable supply chain management and procurement, risk assessment, life-cycle analysis and systems. (NQF8: six (6) credits, one assignment).
 - **People Management:** the human resource management function and its role, role of managers in managing people, strategic human resource management (HRM), labour legislation, organizational behaviour, sustainable organizations and implications for HRM, stakeholder engagement, researching critical people management issues, change management. (NQF9: six (6) credits, one assignment).
 - **Principles of Sustainability:** sustainability concepts and definitions, corporate social responsibility, triple/quadruple bottom line, triple top line, integrated reporting, climate change, trends in sustainability and its management. (NQF8: ten (10) credits, one assignment, one examination).
 - **Project Management:** key project management concepts and tools, project management methodology, implementation approaches, project management control, use of project management software, environmental impacts assessment. (NQF9: six (6) credits, one assignment).
 - **Quantitative Decision-Making:** summarizing data statistically, presenting and interpreting data, inferential statistics, significance testing, time series analysis and forecasting, marketing research practice (NQF8: six (6) credits, one test or assignment, one examination).
 - **Research Methods:** the research proposal, research paradigms, research methods, data collection methods, quantitative and qualitative data analysis. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, four assignments).
 - **Responsible Leadership:** Leadership theory and principles, Leadership styles, Systems theory and how it applies to Responsible Leadership, Stewardship and agency theory, Servant leadership, Philosophy of African leadership and Sustainable Leadership (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment, one examination).
 - **Stewardship & Governance:** an analysis of the rights, obligations, procedures and sanctions contained in the Companies Act., 2008 and the King IV Code of Corporate Governance and their interaction with other commercial statutes encountered in daily business life, an appreciation of integrated reporting, responsible and sustainable investment. (NQF8: six (6) credits, one assignment).
 - **Strategic Management:** strategic intent, strategy maps, the business environment, SWOT analysis, core competency analysis, strategic objectives and the Balanced Scorecard, corporate level strategies, business level strategies. (NQF9: six (6) credits, one assignment).
 - **Sustainable Business Modelling:** developing an in-depth understanding of business and the supply chain as an integrated model thereby providing critical insights into the value creation process. (NQF8: five (5) credits, one assignment).
 - **Sustainable Fisheries Management:** fish stock assessments, fisheries administration, fisheries management practices and approaches. (NQF8: five (5) credits, one assignment).
 - **Sustainability Law:** to enable the identification,

location and preliminary interpretation of key sustainability and relevant governance legislation, relevant to the environmental, social, infrastructure development and investment legal frameworks applicable to business and other organizations. (NQF9: six (6) credits, one assignment).

- **Sustainable Marketing:** the marketing concept, market segmentation, consumer behaviour, marketing research, distribution strategy, product strategy, pricing strategy, promotional strategy, services marketing, relationship marketing, social marketing, responsible consumption. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment).

Note: The School reserves the right not to offer a particular elective if there are too few candidates who choose that option.

Pre-MBA Course

For certain candidates, acceptance onto the MBA programme will be dependent on their attendance at a four-day *Financial and Quantitative Skills* course at the end of the first teaching block. This course is also open to anyone who wishes to refresh their knowledge of finance and accounting.

Accelerated Programme

In certain circumstances, candidates may be permitted to register on an accelerated programme, whereby the degree can be completed in a year and a half. Under the accelerated programme, all course work can be completed within the first year, with the research mini-thesis or case studies being completed in the first semester of the second year. Acceptance onto the accelerated programme must be suitably motivated and is subject to current work commitments and prior academic performance.

Extended Programme

In certain circumstances, candidates may be permitted to register on an extended programme, whereby the degree can be completed in four and a half years. Under the extended programme, all course work can be completed in the first four years, with the research mini-thesis or case studies being completed in the first semester of the fifth year. Acceptance onto the extended programme, is only permitted for candidates who have the necessary academic qualifications and are currently working towards the achievement of professional status (for example, a Chartered Accountant or an Advocate),

which requires that they fulfil obligations whilst undergoing the designated period of training, articles, pupillage, internships, houseman-ship or the like. Continued participation on the Extended Programme is subject to the ongoing fulfilment of the professional body requirements. If these requirements are fulfilled within the first or second year of registration for the extended programme, then registration in subsequent years will typically be against the requirements of the normal programme.

Final Mark

The final mark will be made up of a weighted average mark of two components in the ratio of 67% for the course-work and 33% for the research mini-thesis or two case studies. The course-work component will comprise the weighted average mark of all the modules making up the course-work, according to their credit load. A distinction will be awarded if the final mark is greater than or equal to 75%, provided that a subminimum of 70% is obtained for each component.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance. In so doing, the number and quality of working Business Analysts in Africa who are able to effectively communicate and apply their understanding of the theory, principles, purpose, role, methods and techniques of business analysis, business modelling and business process improvement to achieve sustainable business performance will be achieved.

The PGDip(Business Analysis) is a one year, full-time or one and a half year, part-time modular programme, comprising four modules, where students are required to attend four teaching blocks. Between teaching blocks, students are required to complete practical assignments. A practical 24 hour examination is undertaken at the commencement of the 4th teaching block, covering all four modules. A Project, with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE), is to be submitted by the end of the second

semester for full-time students or at the end of the first semester of the second year for part-time students.

Modules constituting the PGDip(Business Analysis) course and their respective aims are:

Module 1: Sustainable Business Models: Provide a strategic context to Business Analysis and develop capability to effectively engage with the entity's stakeholders to design and implement sustainable business models, processes and systems.

Module 2: Business Process Modelling: Undertake critical evaluation of business process methodologies and tools and develop capability in utilising them to achieve sustainable business performance.

Module 3: Business Process Analysis: Undertake critical evaluation of business process improvement approaches and develop capability to deploy and harness them to achieve sustainable business performance.

Module 4: Communicating and Consulting: Undertake critical evaluation of all the soft skills requirements, aptitude, and characteristics to be an effective Business Analyst.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT

The target candidates are graduate students, other than those who have majored in Management (or the equivalent), seeking a qualification to equip them to start their own business and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business. The Diploma is offered on a one-year full-time basis or an intensive one-year part-time basis. The part-time programme is offered to graduates who are currently employed in a full-time capacity but realise the value of in-depth management education to enhance their career prospects.

Course Structure: The Diploma comprises Seven papers (both on the full-time and the part-time basis) and a project. For the full-time option, the students take part in a group based Alpha Project. Students will be required to start and run a micro-enterprise that spans the duration of the course and in so doing will learn about entrepreneurship, through entrepreneurship and for entrepreneurship.

For the part-time option, the students take part in a group focused Case Based Learning Project.

Students will be required to analyse a business case and document an integrated review and response to the challenges and opportunities raised and in so doing will learn about solving contemporary business issues in a holistic fashion.

Full-time option: this course runs within the normal Rhodes University academic calendar with daily lectures through the university term calendar and exams during the university exam timetable.

Part-time option: This course runs over 4 one week teaching blocks through the year. Teaching blocks normally take place during the following months: Block 1 – January, Block 2 – May, Block 3 – August and Block 4 – spread evenly through the year in one-week slots. Teaching blocks 1-3 take place in attendance at Rhodes University. Normal class times are from 8am to 6pm. Teaching block 4 is a virtual classroom type where students are expected to link into the classroom from their own location via the Internet. Examinations and /or tests are written during the teaching blocks.

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must attain at least 50% for the Project, 50% or more for at least six of the remaining seven papers listed below and an overall aggregate of at least 50%. In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 45% applies to each paper. In the case of a candidate passing six papers and attaining an overall aggregate of 50% or more but failing to attain the subminimum in one paper, he or she shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that paper.

For the full-time course only: It is possible*, however, subject to a maximum of three papers, for a candidate to be exempted from writing the examination for a course, with a credit being awarded for the paper, if the candidate obtains at least 70% for all individual assignments and for all tests for the paper, with two internal moderators concurring regarding the marks awarded for both forms of assessment and a review of the written work by the external examiner.

**in the same way that a last outstanding credit would normally be treated.*

Papers constituting the one-year full-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) course are:

- Strategic Marketing
- Financial Management
- People Management
- Supply Chain and Project Management
- Entrepreneurial Law
- Computerised Accounting for Small Business
- Entrepreneurship

Papers constituting the one-year part-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) course are:

- Strategic Marketing
- Financial Management
- People Management
- Sustainable Business Modelling or Sustainable Operations Management
- Sustainability
- Business Development and Consulting
- Intrapreneurship

The Project and module descriptions are:

Alpha Project (Full-time option)

This is a group project, which requires that students run a micro-business for the duration of the academic year. The Alpha project is evaluated via a series of written reports, comprising a business plan, evidence of establishing the micro-business (e.g. minutes of meetings, social media campaigns, website) and a reflective report with a portfolio of evidence.

Case Based Learning Project (Part-time option)

This is a group project, which entails analysing a business case and providing an integrated review and response to the challenges and opportunities raised. The Case Based Learning project is evaluated via a group prepared 8 000 word report and online virtual presentation in addition to an individual self-reflection report.

Papers: (all papers are normally assessed via assignments and/or class tests, and 3 hour examinations)

- *Business Development and Consulting*: consulting to the business in a way that adds value by presenting innovative ideas and projects that can help the organisation be sustainable.
- *Computerised accounting of small businesses (One two-hour practical paper)*: to provide

aspirant entrepreneurs with a basic knowledge of computerised accounting systems to enable them to keep accurate records of financial transactions and manage their assets and liabilities on a sound basis. The course will also touch on the basics of tax in a small business.

- *Entrepreneurial Law*: forms of business ownership, dispute resolution, business structures, law of contract, labour law, special contracts, copyright, trademarks and insolvency.
- *Entrepreneurship*: history and origin, definitions, characteristics, social and economic impact, creativity and innovation, franchising, reasons for business failure, ethical and social responsibilities, growth and contemporary issues.
- *Financial Management*: analysis of financial statements including ratio analysis, financing the capital requirements of the business, break even analysis, budgets, working capital management, taxation and insurance.
- *Intrapreneurship*: the focus is on entrepreneurship within the organisation and includes the history and origin, definitions, characteristics, social and economic impact, creativity and innovation, franchising, ethical and social responsibilities, growth and contemporary issues.
- *People Management*: understanding behaviour and leadership, the human resource function and labour relations.
- *Strategic Marketing*: identifying environmental market opportunities, assessing the competitive environment and the resources necessary to exploit those opportunities, appraising the market and financial performance.
- *Supply Chain and Project Management*: introduction to supply chain management, supply strategies, organisation of the supply chain, managing inventories, quality management, total cost of ownership, integrated logistics management, distribution management and managing the global supply chain. Introduction to project management, project lifecycle phases, stakeholders' communication, cost, quality, time management, risk management, tools and techniques.
- *Sustainable Business Modelling*: developing an in-depth understanding of business and the supply chain as an integrated model thereby providing critical insights into the value creation process.

- *Sustainable Business Operations Management*: process types and process flows in manufacturing, performance measurement, benchmarking and re-engineering, production planning, quality management, lean thinking and world class manufacturing, sustainable supply chain management and procurement, risk assessment, life-cycle analysis and systems.
- *Sustainability*: consider the changes to the organizational “playing field” resulting from increased awareness and demands for sound corporate governance and social and environmental accountability and how an

understanding of these changes can assist in leveraging competitive advantage. Key themes that will be introduced are concepts of sustainable development within the South African, regional and international contexts, governance and corporate social responsibility, plus local and international drivers and considerations for business organisations.

The School reserves the right to teach the papers in any order.

CHEMISTRY

Head of Department and Professor of Organic Chemistry & Nanomaterials

RWM Krause, PhD (Wits)

DST/NRF Professor of Medicinal Chemistry and Nanotechnology, Director: Rhodes/DST Centre for Nanotechnology Innovation, Distinguished Professor, Rhodes University

T Nyokong, BSc (Lesotho), MSc (McMaster), PhD (Western Ontario), OMB, FRSSAf, FRSC, FSACI
Director, Centre for Chemico- and Biomedicinal Research CCBR

Professor Emeritus PT Kaye, BSc (Natal), BSc (Hons)(UNISA), MSc (Natal), DPhil (Oxon), FRSC, FRSSAf

Associate Professor, Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry

GM Watkins, PhD (UCT)

Senior Lecturer, Physical Chemistry

MS Khene, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), PGDHE (Rhodes), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer, Organic Chemistry

R Klein, BSc (Hons) (UCT), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Miami)

Senior Lecturer, Physical Organic Chemistry

KA Lobb, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer, Inorganic Chemistry

PN Mashazi, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer, Academic Development

JD Sewry, MSc (Rhodes), HDE (UNISA)

Lecturer, General & Inorganic Chemistry

vacant

Lecturer, Physical & Analytical Chemistry

VJ Smith, PhD (UCT)

Senior Instrument Scientist and NMR Specialist

P Kempgens, BSc, MSc, PhD (University Louis

Pasteur, Strasbourg France)

Rhodes/DST Centre for Nanotechnology

Innovation Associated Staff

Manager and Senior Researcher of the Rhodes/DST Centre for Nanotechnology Innovation

J Britton, BSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Nanotechnology Specialist and Senior Researcher of the Rhodes/DST Centre for Nanotechnology Innovation

J Mack, BSc (Hons)(Aberdeen University, Scotland), PhD (Western Ontario)

Research Associates

Professor Emeritus ME Brown, BSc (Hons)(Wits), DSc (Rhodes), FRSSAf

Professor N Torto, BSc (Hons)(Manchester), MSc (Botswana), PhD (Lund), FRSC

Associate Professor Z Tshentu, PhD (NMMU)

Chemistry (CHE) is a six-semester subject, which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn. To major in Chemistry a candidate is required to obtain credits in CHE 1; CHE 2; CHE 3; and two semester credits, normally comprised of one full first year course in Mathematics, or a semester each of Mathematics and Statistics. Students are advised to discuss their choice of the above courses with the Head of the Chemistry Department. Students are also referred to the relevant Departmental Calendar sections that limit entry into CSC 102, PHY 102 and STA 102 to those performing satisfactorily in the corresponding 101 courses. See also Rule S.23. Two, or in some cases four, Chemistry semester credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education. In particular, credits in CHE 101 and

CHE 102 separately, or an aggregated credit CHE 1, are required for admission to BPharm 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in the theory section of each course separately. Each undergraduate year is offered as a pair of semester-credit courses. Credit in any semester-course is subject to a sub-minimum in the theory paper/s. See the Departmental Web Page for further details, particularly the content of courses and their requirements.

<http://www.ru.ac.za/Chemistry>

First-year level courses in Chemistry

4 lectures, 1 tutorial and 3 hours of practical weekly.

Note: Students in Chemistry in 101 are expected to have a knowledge of chemistry at the standard of Physical Science in the National Senior Certificate.

There are two first-year semester courses in Chemistry: CHE 101 is offered in the first semester and CHE 102 in the second semester. Credit may be

obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CHE 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in the theory papers of each course separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Continuation Requirements

Candidates obtaining less than 20% in the theory paper of CHE 101 in June are not permitted to continue with any Chemistry course in that year. A mark of at least 40% in the theory paper of CHE 101 is required for entry into CHE 102. Candidates who achieve this standard, but fail to obtain at least 50% overall, may join the CHE 102 course in July, but must re-write the CHE 101 paper, in addition to the CHE 102 paper in November. The higher of the two marks for the CHE 101 papers will count (see Rule S.25.5). Candidates who obtain between 20% and 39% in the theory paper of CHE 101 in June cannot continue into CHE 102. They must transfer to the remedial course, Chemistry 1R1, to revise the topics from CHE 101 for re-examination in November, but will continue with the CHE 102 practical course. In the following year, candidates with a credit for CHE 101 or 1R1 (but not for CHE 102) must register for CHE 1R2 in the first semester and if they pass the course requirements satisfactorily in June, will obtain a credit for CHE 1R2, which is equivalent to a credit in CHE 102. Those students who fail the CHE 1R2 examination in June will proceed into the mainstream CHE 102 in the second semester, and rewrite the CHE 102 paper in November.

CHE 101 (first semester):

The course consists of an introduction to chemistry, including chemical symbols and numeracy, atomic structure and bonding, chemical and physical equilibrium and an introduction to organic chemistry.

CHE 102 (second semester):

This course builds on the foundations developed in the previous course, with emphasis on properties of inorganic systems, atmospheric and environmental chemistry, organic functional group chemistry, biological building blocks, reaction rates, chemical thermodynamics, and electrochemistry.

Second-year level courses in Chemistry

This comprises 5 lectures and 4.5 hours of practical work weekly with an additional 0.5 hours tutorial every week. There are two independent semester courses in Chemistry at second year. CHE 201 is offered in the first semester and CHE 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CHE 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in the theory paper of each course separately. No supplementary examinations will normally be offered for either course. Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for either CHE 201 or CHE 202.

CHE 201(first semester):

This course comprises Sampling and Sample Handling, Statistical and Classical Methods in Chemistry, Principles of spectroscopic methods: UV, IR, ^1H - and ^{13}C - NMR, MS, Atomic absorption/emission; Electroanalytical techniques; and Chromatography.

Practical Components are aligned with theory and deal mostly with Analytical Chemistry. As second-year Project is also undertaken as part of the practical component, usually as a group project throughout the semester.

CHE 202 (second semester):

This follows on from foundations in Chemistry 1, dealing with intermediate Organic Chemistry, particularly fossil fuels, feedstocks and Organic reactions, Reactions of unsaturated systems, cycloalkanes, and aromatic compounds, as well as an introduction to stereochemistry, and an introduction to polymer chemistry. In the latter half of the semester students study *Chemical Thermodynamics*, *Chemical kinetics* of complex reactions, and Intermediate-level *Inorganic Chemistry*.

Practical Components deal with techniques and skills in physical chemistry, organic and polymer chemistry.

Third-year level courses in Chemistry

This consists of 5 lectures and 5 hours of practical per week, and a practical-based internship requiring approximately 5 hours of work per week over 12

weeks. Tutorials of 0.5 to 1 hour are held weekly or every second week. The internship may usually be taken either in the first or second semester, but is recorded as part of the second semester class mark. There are two independent third-year courses in Chemistry. CHE 301 is held in the first semester and CHE 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CHE 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in the theory paper of each course separately. No supplementary examinations will normally be offered for either course.

Credits in Chemistry (CHE 2), and two semester credits, normally comprised of one full first year course in any of Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics and Statistics, are required before a student may register for CHE 301 or CHE 302. Students are referred to the relevant departmental Calendar sections that limit entry into CSC 102, PHY 102 and STA 102 to those performing satisfactorily in the corresponding 101 courses. Note also that the university timetable may prevent certain first year courses from being taken concurrently with Chemistry 3. See also Rule S.23.

CHE 301 (first semester):

Topics covered in third year build on the second year with Advanced Organic Chemistry, Synthesis and Retrosynthesis; Green Chemistry; Quantum Mechanics and Molecular Modelling; Linear Free Energy; Photochemistry; Nanotechnology. There is also a short component linked to one of our industry partners.

Practical: Physical and Organic chemistry.

CHE 302 (second semester):

Transition Metal Chemistry; Crystallography; Organometallic Chemistry; Bioinorganic Chemistry; Statistical Kinetics and Energetics.

Practical: Research internship and Inorganic chemistry.

Chemistry Honours

Students who achieve a satisfactory standard in Chemistry 3 (normally 60% or above) may be accepted for the Honours course (normally 70% is required for consideration in a Joint Honours with another department. The Honours course consists of lectures on advanced topics selected from around 15 modules offered each year as electives, together with four compulsory core modules: Symmetry and Group Theory, Advanced Synthetic Techniques, and Spectroscopy. a review essay is completed in the first semester and a research project (conducted over most of the year as a member of one of the Department's research groups) is presented at the end of the year. Further details are available on the website at <https://www.ru.ac.za/chemistry>

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

CENTRE FOR HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH, TEACHING AND LEARNING (CHERTL)

Associate Professor and Head of Department

J E Vorster, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor

SM McKenna, BA (Natal), HDE (Natal), MA
(Stellenbosch), PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

LE Quinn, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Rhodes),
HDE (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

AI Hlengwa, NDip, B (Tech)(Technikon Natal),
MEd (Melbourne), PhD (Rhodes)

M Skead, BA (Hons), HED, MA, PhD (NWU),
PGDip (HE)(Rhodes)

Lecturers

A Adams NDE (Belville College of Education), BA
(Hons), MA (Linguistics)(UWC), HDHET(CPUT)
N Tshuma, BBA (Andrews University), MSc
(NUST), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Extended Studies Unit

Senior Lecturer

K Ellery, BSc (Hons), MSc (Wits), MEd (Higher
Ed)(Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

IC de Vos, BCom (Rhodes), PGDip (HE) (Rhodes)

C Knowles, BA (UPE), HDE (UCT), MA
(Rhodes), PGDip (HE)(Rhodes)

N Madondo, B.Paed, BA (Hons)(UDW), MEd
(UKZN)

S Mawonga, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

J Reynolds, BA (Hons), MA, PGDHE (Rhodes),
DELTA (Cambridge)

The Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning specialises in the study of the field of higher education. The Centre offers programmes leading to a range of qualifications in higher education including the Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education, MEd and PhD. It also conducts research into higher education.

The Centre also functions as a resource to the University in support of the achievement of its mission and vision. To this end, it is involved in the promotion and assurance of quality in relation to teaching and learning and the development of academic staff as professional educators.

The Centre also incorporates an Extended Studies Unit which is responsible for the development, co-ordination and teaching of the foundation phase of Extended Programmes in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Science.

COMPUTER SCIENCE

Professor and Head of Department

A Terzoli, Laurea in Physics (Univ of Pavia)

Professor

GC Wells, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Bristol), MICS, MACM

Associate Professors

KL Bradshaw, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab), MACM

BVW Irwin, PhD (Rhodes), CISSP, MACM, MIEEE

P Machanick, BSc (Natal), MSc (Wits), PhD (UCT), MACM, MIEEE

Senior Lecturer

J Connan, MSc (Stell)

Lecturers

D.Brown, MSc (UWC), PhD (Rhodes)

A Herbert, MSc (Rhodes)

YM Motara, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Emeritus Professors

PD Terry, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab), FICS, MACM

EP Wentworth, PhD (UPE), FICS, MCSSA, MACM

Emeritus Associate Professor

RJ Foss, BSc (Natal), MSc (UNISA), PhD (Rhodes), MACM

Computer Science (CSC) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BSc(InfSys), BCom, BJourn, BA and BEcon.

To major in Computer Science, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses:

CSC 1; CSC 2; CSC 3; MAT 1C1 or MAT 1C. See Rule S.23.

Candidates who aim to major in Computer Science are advised to register for the ancillary course in Discrete Mathematics (MAT 1C1) in their first or second year of study; permission will not normally be granted to repeat MAT 1C1 concurrently with CSC 301 and CSC 302.

Two, or in some cases four, Computer Science semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Besides the major courses, the

Department offers a semester-credit course CSC 1L Introduction to ICT and CSC112 Business Problem Solving with Computers.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the field of Bioinformatics is drawn to the recommended curriculum that leads to postgraduate study in this area, in which Computer Science is a recommended co-major with Biochemistry, and for which two years of Computer Science and either Mathematics or Mathematical Statistics are prerequisites. Details of this curriculum can be found in the entry for the Department of Biochemistry & Microbiology.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the fields of Computing and Information Systems in general is drawn to the degree of BSc (Information Systems), in which Computer Science and Information Systems are the usual major subjects, supported by other appropriate courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

The courses offered in Computer Science concentrate on the technology, engineering, project management and professional topics of computing, such as programming and application development, algorithm and system design, software engineering, operating systems and real-time computing, graphics, multimedia, artificial intelligence, networks and distributed computing, telecommunications and the Internet, and formal computer science theory. Management and organisational aspects of computing are handled more specifically in courses offered by the Department of Information Systems, and aspects such as computer and digital electronics and hardware are complemented by courses offered in the Department of Physics and Electronics. In all courses students are required to perform practical work on the computer, the marks of which might count towards the final assessment. See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/computerscience> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Computer Science

There are four discrete first-year courses in Computer Science, each contributing a semester-credit towards a degree.

CSC 101 is offered in the first semester only, and leads on to CSC 102 in the second semester. This is the conventional first year combination, which prepares students for further study in the subject. Credit may be obtained in each of CSC 101 and CSC 102 separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Computer Science must obtain credit in both CSC 101 and CSC 102. Students admitted to the Science, Commerce or Humanities Extended Studies Programmes, or who have little or no experience of computers, are required at the discretion of the Dean and Head of Department to complete a Computer Skills course in the Extended Studies Unit before registering for CSC 101.

CSC 1L1 is offered in the first semester, and is intended as a terminal course.

CSC 112 is offered in the second semester and is the prerequisite for Information Systems 201. CSC 1S/1C/1H are single semester-credit courses, but offered over a whole year, under the auspices of the Science, Commerce and Humanities Extended Studies Programmes. Entry is normally restricted exclusively to first-year students accepted into those programmes; the course may be required as a prerequisite to CSC 101 for students who lack the necessary background to register directly for CSC 101. Students who have followed an Extended Studies Programme may obtain credit in both CSC 1S and CSC 101. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in each of these courses, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

A candidate is not allowed to obtain credit for both CSC 1L1, CSC112, CS1C, CS1M and CS1S.

CSC 1L1: Introduction to ICT

CSC 1L1 is intended as a non-continuing course for students who require computing principles and skills to support their activities in other disciplines.

Topics include an introduction to the fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, publishing and presentations, spreadsheets, other software packages, networks, the Internet, and

social issues. Practical submissions and class tests collectively contribute to the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

CSC 112: Business Problem Solving with Computers

CSC 112 is the first course for students who intend to continue to INF 201, and is offered in the second semester. The course introduces students to a modern computing environment, and teaches skills that enable the application of computers to typical business problems. These skills include internet-based skills for web page creation and knowledge discovery, as well as problem solving and knowledge retrieval skills using tools such as spreadsheets and databases. Business problem solving is supported by an introduction to logic and algorithm design, and is contextualised by an overview of the place of IT in a typical organization.

CSC101: Problem Solving and Introductory Programming

This course presents basic problem solving techniques with an emphasis on logical, algorithmic and computational processes, using the Python programming language. Students are introduced to programming concepts, including: output, input, variables, types, operators and operands, debugging, iteration, modules, functions, selection, strings, lists and files. One week of the course is devoted to describing and explaining the relevance and impact of information technology on society.

CSC102: Intermediate Programming

Candidates are required to obtain credit in CSC 101 before they may register for CSC 102. This course further develops programming skills, and deals with algorithms, object-oriented principles and practices, and more advanced language features. Larger applications such as simple 2D games will be developed, highlighting the use of graphical user interfaces, event-driven programming, and more powerful libraries.

Second-year level courses in Computer Science

There are two second-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 201 is held in the first semester and CSC 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 2, provided

that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical submissions and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Computer Science 1 (CSC 101 and CSC 102) is required before a student may register for second year courses. Adequate performance in CSC 201 is required before a student may register for CSC 202.

The second year of Computer Science is devoted to foundational computing and system design concepts.

CSC 201

Machine organization and low-level programming; advanced data structures and data abstraction; object oriented principles; advanced programming concepts. The practical work covers low and high-level imperative programming and design principles.

CSC 202

Theoretical foundations of computing; database theory and query languages; the theory and practice of operating systems. The practical work covers the use of software engineering techniques, operating systems, and database design and query.

Third-year level courses in Computer Science

There are three third-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 302 and CSC 303 (not offered in 2018) are normally held in the first semester and CSC 301 in the second semester, but the department reserves the right to offer them in either semester, according to timetable constraints. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% for CSC 301 and CSC 302 will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component.

A major in Computer Science requires credit for CSC 301 and CSC 302, or an aggregate credit for CSC 3. No supplementary examinations will be offered for any third-year course. Practical submissions and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Computer Science (CSC 2) and in Discrete Mathematics (MAT 1C1) or MAT 1C is required before a student may register for CSC 301 or CSC

302. Credit in CSC 201 is required before a student may register for CSC 303. The student should also be in his/her third year of study.

The third-year of Computer Science is devoted to systems programming and systems analysis and digital lifestyle technologies.

CSC 301

Web and internet technologies; theory and implementation of computer languages. Practical work reinforces these aspects of application development and systems programming.

CSC 302

Data communications and computer networks; functional programming; software design and practices.

CSC 303

This course will not be offered in 2019.

Data analytics, parallel patterns, and machine learning.

Computer Science Honours

The course consists of a selection of six topics and a large project. To this selection is added a compulsory module in project management and communications, and a portfolio of practical assignments.

The course work comprises the advanced treatment of an approved selection from the following list of topics (the list is not exhaustive and not all topics are offered in every calendar year): real time multimedia; Java enterprise programming; image processing; networks and data communications; distributed and parallel processing; security and cryptology; audio networking; computer-based education; artificial intelligence; human computer interfaces; advanced computer architecture; microcomputer hardware and interfacing; operating system design; systems analysis and design methodologies; functional programming; real-time programming; data abstraction; modelling; formal aspects of computer science; software and hardware engineering in low resource settings; general purpose parallel computing using GPUs; bioinformatics. At the discretion of the Head of Department, the course may include topics from Electronics, Information Systems, Pure and Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, or any other topics approved by the Head of Department.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Current areas of specialisation are software defined networks and cloud automation; real time distributed multimedia; graphics and virtual reality; audio networking;

computer security; distributed processing and ICT for development. A coursework MSc specialising in Information Security is also offered, specially structured for part-time students. More information on research can be found on the web site of the Centre of Excellence in Distributed Multimedia, housed within the Computer Science Department: [http:// www.coe.ru.ac.za](http://www.coe.ru.ac.za).

DRAMA

Lecturer and Head of Department

H Gehring, BA (Free State), HDE (Free State), MA (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professors

J Finestone Praeg MA (Rhodes)

A Krueger, PhD (Pretoria)

Senior Lecturer

To be appointed

Lecturer

L Mohoto BA (Hons)(UCT)

To be appointed

Drama is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Drama courses are designed to give wide experience in and appreciation of the creative and technical skills associated with theatre: acting, creative writing, dance, design, physical theatre, stage management, theatre-making, and voice. On a personal level, drama encourages growth, self-esteem and confidence by developing communication, interpersonal and collaborative skills. All courses have a theoretical component including literary, critical and performance studies. Professional theatre practitioners are periodically invited to contribute to the production and learning programme. As the department is relatively small, there are ample opportunities in theatre-making and choreography as well as in performance and stage management. Students are required to take part in the production, community and learning activities of the department.

The department also hosts two acclaimed theatre companies: the *First Physical Theatre Company* and the *Ubom! Eastern Cape Drama Company*. The department participates extensively in the National Arts Festival, Regional Schools' Festivals and the National Schools' Festival.

Drama 1 Theatre Studies:

A study of significant developments and current directions in the theatre using playtexts, contextual studies, oral traditions, theories of performance, and visual documentation.

Theatre Practice: Communication Skills, Theatre Making and Movement Studies.

Drama 2**Theatre Studies:**

A study of significant developments in theatre and performance, including historical and critical studies, playtexts, current theatre trends, theatre design and dance traditions.

Theatre Practice:

Communication Skills, Physical Theatre, The Acting Experience, Introduction to Applied Theatre, Theatre Design and Writing for the Theatre.

Drama 3**Theatre Studies:**

The thematic study of significant developments in twentieth century theatre including historical studies, developments in the related arts, playtexts, contemporary theories of theatre, theatre design, and dance theatre.

Theatre Practice:**Core Course: Communication and Vocal practice**

Students are required to undertake TWO of the following electives: Acting, Applied Theatre, Choreography on Site, Directing for the Theatre, Physical Theatre, Theatre Design, Theatre Technology & Writing for Performance. Any other practical approved by the Head of Department.

Not all electives are offered in any one academic year.

Drama Honours Course

Candidates are required to complete FIVE papers in consultation with the Head of Department. **Papers 1 & 2 are compulsory** and ensure that every student completes at least 50% theory. A student chooses a further **THREE** papers, in any combination, from those offered in any one year. All papers are of equal weighting (excluding directing which is weighted at 200 marks) with the final mark calculated out of 500.

Not all papers are offered in any one academic year.

GROUP A

Paper 1 Performance Studies (compulsory)

Final Assessment: One extended research essays and a course record mark

Paper 2 Dramatic Literature

Final Assessment: Two research essays and a course record mark.

Paper 3 Dance Studies

Final Assessment: Two research essays and a course record mark.

GROUP B

Paper 4 Applied Theatre

Paper 5 Directing

Paper 6 Choreography

Paper 7 Physical Performance

Final Assessment: A practical examination, three research essays and a course record mark.

GROUP C

Paper 8 Acting

Paper 9 Performance Design and Scenography

Paper 10 Creative Writing for the Theatre

Final Assessment: A major practical project; a research essay, and a course record mark.

Paper 11 Any other paper approved by the Head of Department.

Not all papers are offered in any one academic year. Master's Degree

There are three possible options by which the Master's degree may be taken;

1. combination of coursework, thesis project and half thesis, or
2. combination of coursework, practical thesis project, and research report or
3. by thesis only.

The options are determined in consultation with the Head of Department.

Master's by Coursework

Creative Practice Specialisations:

Candidates will select one specialisation from the following; Applied Theatre, Choreography, Contemporary Performance, Writing for Performance, Directing or another specialisation in consultation with HoD.

Note: Not all specialisations are offered in any one year.

Performance Research

This core course is required for all first year Masters students. Topics include areas relevant to research practice in the performing arts such as practice as research, reflective writing, performative writing, research methodologies, applied case studies, interdisciplinary theatre interventions, integrated and interactive collaborations, and research ethics.

Candidates are required to submit 2 research papers (8000 - 10000 words), in their first year of study.

Thesis Project:

The candidate can select one of the following options:

1. Thesis Project to be completed at the end of the first year followed by a half thesis (30,000 words) in the second year.
2. Thesis Project to be completed in June of the second year of study followed by a Research Report in support of the research practice (12 - 15000 words).

Doctoral Degree

The PhD in Drama is offered by thesis which may be practice based.

ECONOMICS AND ECONOMIC HISTORY

Professor and Head of Department

H Nel, BCom, HEd (UOFS), DCom (UPE, now NMU)

Professor

GCG Fraser MCom (Rhodes), PhD Agric (Stell)

JD Snowball, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor Emeritus

GG Antrobus, MSc (Agric) (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

AP Faure, MA (US), DPhil (US), PhD (Stell)

Associate Professors

F Botha, MCom (Applied Econometrics) (UFS),

PhD (University of Antwerp)

GR Keeton, BA (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

TE Mutambara, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

NS Cattaneo, MSc (Rhodes)

DCA Fryer, MSc (Natal)

J Marire, MA (Econ) (Malawi), PhD (Rhodes)

SA Khumalo, MCom (UFH), PhD (UFH)

Vacant

Lecturers

MJ Bata, BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

J Hoveni, MCom (Financial Markets) (Rhodes)

S Phakathi, MSc (UKZN – Pietermaritzburg)

DV Tarentaal, BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

TJ Friederichs, MCom(Rhodes)

STRUCTURE OF COURSES AND RULES

Economics is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Economics are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education and Law. Post graduate studies in Economics are available through Honours, Master's and Doctoral degrees.

Economics 1 consists of TWO one-credit courses (1 per semester):

<i>CODE</i>	<i>COURSE</i>	<i>SEMESTER OFFERED</i>
ECO 101	Microeconomics	1
ECO 102	Macroeconomics	2

Economics 2 consists of TWO one-credit courses (1 per semester):

<i>CODE</i>	<i>COURSE</i>	<i>SEMESTER OFFERED</i>
ECO 201	Microeconomics	2
ECO 202	Macroeconomics	1

Economics 3 consists of FOUR half-credit courses from the following list:

<i>*CODE</i>	<i>COURSE</i>	<i>SEMESTER OFFERED</i>
ECO 312	International Trade Theory & Policy	1
ECO 313	Public Finance	2
ECO 314	South African Economy	2
ECO 315	Econometrics	1
ECO 316	Money, Banking & International Finance	2
ECO 317	Environmental Economics	1
ECO 318	Mathematical Economics	1
ECO 319	Any other paper approved by the Department	

Economics 3B consists of TWO half-credit courses (normally one per semester) from the list under Economics 3. Students registered for both Economics 3 and Economics 3B would take 6 courses (three per semester) in total.

Econometrics is strongly recommended for students planning to do Honours. The department reserves the right to offer second and third year courses in either Semester 1 or Semester 2 and to withdraw any of the third-year courses.

Admission Prerequisites

<i>Course</i>	<i>Admission prerequisite</i>
ECO 201,202	Economics 1 or ECO 101 & ECO 102
ECO 311,312,313, 314, 315, 316, 318	Economics 2 or ECO 201 & ECO 202
ECO 317	ECO 101

In addition to the above admission prerequisites, students are normally only allowed to register for third-year courses after successful completion of a total of 14 semester credits.

ECONOMICS HONOURS consists of a research project plus SIX courses from the following:

Compulsory Courses

<i>CODE</i>	<i>COURSE</i>	<i>SEMESTER OFFERED</i>
ECO 401	Research project	1 & 2
ECO 418	Microeconomics	2
ECO 403	Macroeconomics	1

Elective Courses

FOUR courses are selected from the following list:

<i>*CODE</i>	<i>COURSE</i>	<i>SEMESTER OFFERED</i>
ECO 402	Mathematical Economics	1
ECO 404	Econometrics	1
ECO 405	Monetary Economics	1
ECO 406	Growth and Technology	**
ECO 407	Financial Economics and Derivatives	2
ECO 408	Political Economy and Labour	1
ECO 409	Development Economics	2
ECO 410	Environmental and Resource Economics	2
ECO 411	Development of Capitalism in South Africa: history, theory and policy	**
ECO 412	Trade and Industrial Policy	2
ECO 415	Public Finance	**
ECO 416	Industrial Organization	**
ECO 417	Any other paper approved by the Department	

*Internal departmental codes only

** Not offered in 2019

NB Not all the above courses will be offered in any one year.

Economics Honours can only be taken fulltime.

The TWO compulsory courses and ONE elective course in the first semester and THREE elective courses in the second semester will normally be taken. Examinations are written in June and November. The research project is completed over the whole year and should be handed in by 1 October in order to be examined in November. A student is permitted to take a paper from another department to the maximum weight of 0,2. Students who have not done Econometrics at the third-year level, are allowed to take ECO 315 in lieu of one of the elective Honours courses.

INTERDISCIPLINARY HONOURS DEGREE IN DEVELOPMENT STUDIES

The degree consists of FOUR papers and a long research essay from participating departments.

MASTER'S DEGREE IN ECONOMICS

Master's degree by research thesis

This option is available to students wishing to pursue a clearly defined field of research and where such students have the ability to work independently.

Master of Commerce (Financial Markets) by Coursework and Thesis

This degree is aimed specifically at a specialised career in the financial/banking sector. A minimum registration of 5 students is normally required for the degree to be offered.

The requirement for admission is an Honours degree or a four-year degree, with a strong background in Economics. A satisfactory pass in econometrics and/or mathematical economics at the Honours level is required. Professional experience will be taken into account.

The courses are structured with the above career in mind and are all compulsory. The degree consists of:

<i>*CODE</i>	<i>COURSE</i>	<i>SEMESTER OFFERED</i>
ECO 501	Thesis	1 & 2
ECO 507	Financial Institutions, Regulation and Monetary Policy	1
ECO 508	Paper 1: Quantitative Finance	2
ECO 508	Paper 2: Financial Econometrics	2
ECO 504	Debt & Foreign Exchange Markets	1
ECO 505	Equity & Derivative Markets	1
ECO 506	Portfolio Theory & Management	2
ECO 509	Financial Markets Industry Exams	1 & 2

*Internal departmental codes only

DOCTORAL DEGREE

A PhD degree may be taken by research thesis. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record, an acceptable research proposal

and the availability of expertise in the department to supervise the project.

COURSE CONTENTS

ECO 101 - Microeconomics

Fundamental economic concepts; comparative economic systems; demand, supply and market equilibrium; elasticities of demand and supply; consumer behaviour; production and costs; price and output determination under competitive and monopolistic conditions. The South African economy, structure and development.

ECO 102 - Macroeconomics

National income accounts; index numbers; determination of national output, income and employment; money and banking; quantity theory of money; money, prices and output; unemployment; inflation; introduction to international economics.

ECO 201 - Microeconomics

The economist's view of human nature; preferences, budgets, and consumer equilibrium; income and substitution effects; the Chicago school; production, technology and costs. Fundamentals of market structure; general equilibrium and second best; asymmetric information; the South African labour market; oligopoly and oil; product differentiation (automobiles and airlines); globalization.

ECO 202 - Macroeconomics

Measurement of macroeconomic variables; classical macroeconomics; the role of aggregate demand; money, interest and income; policy effects in the ISLM model; aggregate supply and aggregate demand; output, inflation and unemployment; the balance of payments and exchange rates; monetary and fiscal policy in the open economy; the Mundell-Fleming model; cases of imperfect and perfect capital mobility. Money and monetary policy; the role of the Central Bank; changing nature of monetary control; the budget and fiscal policy (functions of fiscal policy, expenditure issues, revenue issues, and debt and the deficit); internal balance (unemployment and inflation); external balance (the balance of payments); and the growth debate in South Africa.

ECO 312 - International Trade Theory and Policy

International trade theory: the classical (Ricardian) model and extensions; neoclassical trade theory and income distribution; technology theories of

trade; the Linder theory; new trade theory based on economies of scale and imperfect competition; economic growth and international trade. Trade policy: the instruments of trade policy and their effects; the arguments for protection; economic integration; trade and development; South Africa's trade policy and the World Trade Organization.

ECO 313 - Public Finance

Economic basis for investment activity; public versus private goods; externalities; government intervention in the market; financing of government expenditures; effect of taxation on the economy; the budget deficit; theory and structure of taxation; provincial expenditure and intergovernmental fiscal relations.

ECO 314 - South African Economy

South African economy in the 20th century; political economy of development; role of the state in industrialization; inward industrialization versus export led growth; changing labour relations; development in the financial sector; foreign direct investment; balance of payments and fiscal discipline; primary sector developments.

ECO 315 - Econometrics

The nature and scope of econometrics; basics of probability and statistics; the linear regression model: the two-variable model, estimation and hypothesis testing; multiple regression estimation, goodness of fit and hypothesis testing; functional forms of regression models: how to measure elasticity and the growth rate, reciprocal models; regression on dummy explanatory variables; regression analysis in practice: multicollinearity and heteroscedasticity; autocorrelation and spurious regression in economic time series data.

ECO 316 - Money, Banking and International Finance

Money and interest rates; the demand for money; interest rate behaviour; transmission mechanism; rational expectations theory (traditional, new classical and new Keynesian models); financial instruments and markets; central banking and depository institutions; foreign exchange markets and the balance of payments accounts (monetary, portfolio balance, price adjustments approaches to the external balance); national income and current account; the exchange rate systems and

international monetary system, and macroeconomic policy in the open economy; contemporary issues; macroeconomic policy in South Africa.

ECO 317 - Environmental Economics

Scope and development of environmental economics; a model of the economy and the environment; the economics of pollution; measuring economic impacts on the environment; resource economics; sustainable development; issues and applications.

ECO 318 and ECO 402 - Mathematical Economics

Analytic and mathematical models in economics; linear models; Leontief input-output analysis; optimisation - single and several variables with constraints; consumer theory; demand theory; expenditure minimisation; production theory; profit maximisation; equilibrium and its basic welfare properties; dynamical models of economic processes.

Honours level includes: constrained optimisation, integration and applications.

ECO 401 - Research Project

A research project of limited scope (in the form of a journal article) on an approved topic in economics to be selected by 28 February, handed in by 1 October, involving either a theoretical analysis or an application of economics. Empirical work is strongly recommended. A presentation of the results is to be made at the Departmental postgraduate conference. Candidates are encouraged to present a paper at an economics conference.

ECO 403 - Macroeconomics

Overview: uneven development and hegemony in the global economy since 1873; Keynes in the 1920s and 'the Marx in Keynes'; the Keynesian critique of Classical economics; The long run; The savings investment nexus and the East Asian model; The LM nexus and the global financial crisis; Dutch disease and premature deindustrialisation.

ECO 404 - Econometrics

Dynamic econometric modeling: distributed lag and autoregressive models, Granger causality; Time series econometrics: stationarity, unit root tests, cointegration, forecasting with ARIMA and VAR models; Simultaneous equation systems:

simultaneous equation bias, the identification problem, indirect and two-stage least squares; Qualitative response models: LPM, logit and probit models; Panel data modeling: fixed versus random effects approaches.

ECO 405 - Monetary Economics

The monetary sector; money and credit; monetary theory (classical, Keynesian, portfolio models and post Keynesian); the demand for money; the transmission mechanism; the money supply process; theory and application of the definition of money; monetary policy; monetary control in South Africa; monetary vs inflation targeting.

ECO 406 - Growth and Technology

Technology and macroeconomic growth models; technical change and the economic system; the sources of innovation; the new manufacturing technologies; international differences in growth and technology; national systems of innovation; foreign direct investment and multinational corporations in developing countries; technology and industrial policy: government intervention in the market; South Africa: a case study.

ECO 407 - Financial Economics & Derivatives

Financial markets and the economy; portfolio theory; interest rate theory; capital market theory and the valuation of assets (the capital asset pricing model and arbitrage pricing); pricing of bonds and equities; the cost of capital, corporate finance and investment; money, bond and equity markets. Types of futures contracts; pricing of futures and the futures market; options; pricing of options including the Black-Scholes model; the regulation of financial markets; banking supervision and financial market efficiency.

ECO 408 - Political Economy and Labour

A preliminary organising framework: US and South African segmentalism and Swedish solidarism; Economic determinism, class and social exclusion; Welfare regimes; Collective bargaining structures, class conflict, and macroeconomic considerations; Education and training systems and the ideological state apparatus; Workplace issues: voice, systems of pay, corruption; A revised organising framework: Smith and Marx.

ECO 409 - Development Economics

The meaning and measurement of development; theories of economic development: mainstream and

alternative perspectives on development; structural adjustment programmes; the post-Washington consensus; globalisation; role of the state in development; the role of institutions in development; sustainable development; development in the 21st Century; the developmental state; South African economic policy in relation to development.

ECO 410 - Environmental and Resource Economics

The application of economic principles to the valuation of environmental services and of degradation; the Environmental Kuznets Curve; Global Warming; natural resource valuation issues; economic sustainability; the development of Environmental Economics and of Ecological Economics.

ECO 411 - The development of capitalism in South Africa: history, theory and policy

History: Global, historical and comparative dimensions; sectoral trends and history; Theory: Liberal and early revisionist perspectives; other radical alternative perspectives; Policy: Evolution of economic policies; Social policy in historical context; Policy, power and politics - economic policy challenges of the post-apartheid period: Economic policy options; Politics, ideology and power relations.

ECO 412 - Trade and Industrial Policy

Historical background on the role of the state in development; Trade theory under imperfect competition and the case for a strategic trade and industrial policy; Industrial policy and the role of the manufacturing and services sectors in development; The articulation between macroeconomic and industrial policies; Economic concentration, competition policy and industrial development; Public procurement; Intellectual property rights; Technology, foreign direct investment and industrial policy; The WTO, the Doha Round and the shrinking of development policy space; Regional integration, industrial policy and South-South economic cooperation.

ECO 416 - Industrial Organization

Origins of industrial organisation: the principle of total costs, the active firm, transaction costs and the firm; Market entry barriers: product differentiation, absolute cost advantage, economies of scale,

imperfections in capital markets, other barriers; Market concentration: market share, concentration ratios, Herfindahl index; The theory of contestable markets; The market structure-conduct-performance (SCP) paradigm; Porter's five forces model; the Schumpeterian hypothesis; Behavioural theory of the firm; Evolutionary theory of the firm; Anti-trust laws/competition laws; Competition policy in South Africa; Alternative theories.

ECO 418 - Microeconomics

Introduction to game theory, oligopoly and bargaining; bounded rationality and private information; moral hazard and performance incentives; risk sharing and incentive contracts, rents and efficiency, ownership and property rights; production, information costs and economic organization; auction theory; intertemporal microeconomics; outlook on industrial organization and on recent developments in microeconomics.

ECO 504 - Debt and foreign exchange markets

Economics of the money market, its instruments, its functions and development; role of interest rates and monetary policy role of the central bank via the two interbank markets; risk-free rates and the relationship between money market rates and other interest rates; the microstructure of money market; international aspects. The bond market, its instruments, development, importance and international aspects; economics of the bond market; theory of pricing; term structure theories; emergence of the corporate sector in the bond market; role of the Bond Exchange of South Africa; microstructure of the bond market. The foreign exchange market; exchange rate theory and determinants; exchange rate systems; exchange rate policy in South Africa; participants, including importers, exporters, speculators, the foreign sector; microstructure of forex market; derivatives - hedging tools, such as the forex and currency swaps, forwards, futures.

ECO 505 - Equity and derivative markets

Equity market - primary and secondary markets; role of the regulator and the JSE as manager of the market; participants, mechanics of the market; microstructure of the equity market; theories of valuation of shares; efficiency of equity market; behaviour of prices; international aspects of the market. The financial derivatives market - forwards, futures, options, swaps, hybrids such as swaptions,

other such as weather and credit derivatives; valuation of derivatives; role of the exchange (Safex) and the regulator; use of markets – investors, hedgers, speculators, arbitrageurs; microstructure of the derivatives market.

ECO 506 - Portfolio theory and management

Macroeconomic analysis as it applies to financial markets; asset class analysis and strategic asset allocation as the first level of analysis; sector / industry analysis and security analysis; aspects of security analysis: financial statement analysis and ratio analysis; behavioural finance. Concepts, terminology and definitions in portfolio management; portfolio theory; modern approaches to portfolio management including resample efficiency; types of portfolio managers; asset classes; types of financial portfolios; life staging; portfolio monitoring including performance and risk attribution, statutory environment of the portfolio manager in South Africa.

ECO 507 - Financial institutions, financial regulations and monetary policy

This course is aimed at acquainting the student with the theories underlying the role of the financial system and institutions, financial regulation and monetary policy. The course is made up of three modules - financial institutions, financial regulation and monetary policy. The first module, financial institutions, covers asymmetric information and uncertainty, adverse selection and moral hazard, principal-agent theory, financial sector and macroeconomic performance, institutional aspects of financial sector development and private sector banking, operation and management of banks. The financial regulation module focuses on the theories and practice of financial regulation, drawing on South African experience. The third module focuses on the core theories underlying monetary policy formulation, analysis and implementation. The topics covered in this module are: central banking and monetary policy (goals, tools, targets, conflicts, independence and time consistency of policy); monetary aggregation; empirical models of money

demand and money supply; theories of the interest rate; the monetary transmission mechanism; the international monetary system; and the practice of monetary policy formulation and implementation in South Africa, other developed and emerging market economies.

ECO 508 - Quantitative techniques in financial markets

The overall aim of this course is to acquaint students with modern quantitative techniques used in solving financial problems in a dynamic and complex financial environment. The course is made up of two modules - financial mathematics and financial econometrics.

Paper 1: Quantitative Finance

This course contains an introduction to selected mathematical principles that can be applied to the valuation of plain vanilla and exotic contingent claims on assets traded in various markets. Topics covered include asset price dynamics in a deterministic and stochastic setting, the risk-neutral pricing technique and the application of the finite differencing method to contingent claim valuation.

Paper 2: Financial Econometrics

The financial econometrics component focuses on the application of statistical and econometric methods in financial analyses. The module covers: univariate linear time series models (AR, MA, and ARIMA, Box Jenkins approach, forecasting using ARIMA models); multivariate models (simultaneous equation models and vector autoregressive models); long-run relations models (unit root testing, cointegration, and the error correction model); volatility modelling and forecasting (ARCH, GARCH, EGARCH etc.); and simulation (Monte Carlo simulation, bootstrapping).

For more information, see the departmental website: <http://www.ru.ac.za/economics/>

EDUCATION

Associate Professor & Head of Department

EM Mgwashu, BPaed (Arts), BA Hons (UDW), MA (Natal), PhD (UKZN)

Professor & Dean of Education

PD Wilmot, BA, HDE (PG Sec), BEd, MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor & Deputy Dean

E Rosenberg, MMedSci (UOVS), MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

Professors

GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE (Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil (UNISA)

Professor & SARChI Chair in Mathematics Education

M Schäfer, BSc, HDipEd (Wits), BEd, MEd, (Rhodes), PhD (Curtin)

Distinguished Professor & SARChI Chair: Global Change and Social Learning Systems ‘Transformative Social Learning Skills’

H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd (JP) (UPE), BEd, DEd (Stell)

Professor & Chair of Environment and Sustainability Education

E Rosenberg, MMedSci (UOVS), MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

South African Numeracy Chair

M Graven, BSc (Ed), BSc (Hons) (Wits), MPhil (Cambridge), PhD (Wits)

Professor Emeritus

PR Irwin, BA (Hons), UED, MEd (Natal), DEd (UNISA)

RB O'Donoghue, BEd, CertEd (Zimbabwe), MEd (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

H van der Mescht, BA (Hons) (UPE), UED (UNISA), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professors

B Brown, BSc (Wits), BSc (Hons), MSc (UNISA), MEd (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

C Grant, HDE (Edgewood), BA (UNISA), BEd, MEd (UN), PhD (UKZN).

K Ngozo, JSTC (Cape College), BSc, BEd, MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

I Schudel, BSc (UCT), MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

SR Murray, BA (Hons) (Lancaster), PGCE (Leicester), MA (Reading), DipApp Ling (UFH)

L Olvitt, BA, HDE (Natal), MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

L Westaway, B.Prim.Ed, MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

Dr Clemence Chikiwa, Chartered Institute of Secretaries and Administrators Diploma (CIS), Dip in Ed, BEd Mathematics, MEd Mathematics (University of Zimbabwe), PhD (RU)

N Jack, PTD (Algoa College), BA (UPE), BEd., BEd (Hon) NMMU

K. Jawahar, BSc Hons (Natal), PGCE, MEd (UKZN)

F Kajee, BComm (UNISA), SPED (RAU), PGCE (UN), BEd (Hons), MEd (UKZN), PhD (RU)

Z Kuhlana STD, HDE (Dower), BEd Hons, MEd (Rhodes)

B Moore, HDE (UNISA), BEd (NWU), MEd (UFH)

Dr SA Nkomo, Dip in Ed (Zimbabwe), BA Honours (UWC), MEd, PhD (RU)

NS Nkosi, BEd (Hons), MEd (Wits)

C Simuja Bsc Computing (London Metropolitan University/ London Met), Msc Informatics (University of Malawi/UNIMA), PGDHE (RU).

Z Songqwaru, STD (Cape), ACE, BEd (Hons), MEd (RU)

AW Stevens, BA, BSc, HDE (PG Sec), BEd (UCT)

C van der Mescht, BA Hons (Wits), HDip Ed (Wits), MEd,), PhD (RU).

Research Associates

Dr L.Price, MSc (Zimbabwe), PhD (Rhodes),

Dr D Samson, MSc (UPE), PGCE, MEd PhD (Rhodes)

Dr C Chikunda, MEd (Zimbabwe), PhD (Rhodes)

Dr EK Botha, BA (UKZN), Diploma in Linguistics (UFH), MEd (UOM), PhD (UCT)

Dr A Westaway, BA, BA (Hons), MEd (Rhodes), PhD (Fort Hare)

Dr M Mukute Education Diploma (Zimbabwe), MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT CENTRE

Manager

F Gunzo, BSocSci (UFH), BSocSci (Hons) (UFH), MEd (ICT) (Rhodes)

SOUTH AFRICAN NUMERACY CHAIR

Project Manager

D Stott, DEJP, PGCE, MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

The Education Department offers a range of qualifications within and across four broad education sectors: higher education, formal schooling and early childhood education and development (ECE)

and Education, Development and Training (EDTP). The existing, ever expanding research culture in the Education Department, furthermore, extends beyond just schooling. Our research activities include studies within the broader Education and Development field, most of which involve personnel within and across organisations interested in the educational aspects of their work. These include professional bodies, non-governmental organisations, civil society, to name a few. Both areas of our research within schooling and in the Education and Development Field, signal a trajectory that continues to enable us as a Department to bridge the gap between research and teaching, teaching and research, schooling and higher education, and research in higher education and civil society. This trajectory further presents us with an opportunity to take sufficient advantage of existing expertise in the Department in the service of our province, country, continent, and the international community.

Initial teacher education programmes consist of the four year, full time Bachelor of Education (BEd) degree for foundation phase teaching and the one year, full time Postgraduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) in Foundation Phase, Intermediate Phase and Senior/FET phase. The department also offers a range of BEd degrees for in-service teachers.

The Education Department also offers a range of postgraduate research based programmes at an Honours, Masters and PhD level.

The central aim in the professional preparation of students in the Education Department is to develop critical, reflective practitioners who have the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context. The Department works in partnership with a number of NGOs and other Faculty affiliated Institutes. These include: Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project (RUMEP); The Centre for Social Development (CSD); the Institute for the Study of English in Africa (ISEA) and the Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning (CHERTL).

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Foundation Phase Teaching)

Our aim in the professional preparation of our students is to develop critically reflexive practitioners who have the capacity and the will to act as agents of

appropriate change in the southern African context. The course consists of five major components:

1. Educational Studies

This course offers an overview of many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding the field and includes:

1. Philosophy in Education
2. Sociology in Education
3. Psychology in Education
4. Curriculum
5. Research

2. Education Environment

This course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilized across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the Teaching Methods. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

3. Foundations of Learning

The Foundations of Learning course provides a framework for understanding education in the Foundation Phase, and consists of three modules that run concurrently throughout the year: Language, literacy and cognition; Understanding the whole child in context; and Managing and organizing learning.

4. Teaching Method Courses

These courses are aligned to the school curriculum. There are four subjects – two Languages plus Mathematics and Life Skills. Each course aims to prepare prospective students to be able to teach a subject competently, confidently and creatively. Students acquire a critical understanding of the curriculum and how to implement it in a practical and reflexive manner. Languages and Mathematics are viewed as core subjects.

5. Teaching Practice

Students spend the equivalent of a school term as fully integrated members of a school's staff. As such, they become involved in the academic, sporting and administrative activities of a particular institution, and so experience a full immersion into what it means to be a practicing professional.

6. Endorsements

Endorsements are obtainable in the following: Computer Literacy, Educational Technologies and Languages. Teacher education certificates must give an indication of the ability of the holder to use any of the official languages of South Africa as media of instruction. Opportunities are provided during the year for students to obtain such endorsements in English, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

7. Additional courses

Students that do not have a 30 credit Level 6 Mathematics and English course in their undergraduate degree will be required to register for these courses for Non-Degree Purposes concurrently with their PGCE (IP):

- English A (15 credits)
- English B (15 credits)
- IsiXhosa A (15 credits)
- IsiXhosa B (15 credits)
- Mathematics A (15 credits)
- Mathematics B (15 credits)

Students registering for any of these additional courses are required to pass them in order to meet the requirements for employment in public schools as set out by the employer, the DBE (2017).

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Intermediate Phase Teaching)

Our aim in the professional preparation of our students is to develop critically, reflective practitioners who have the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context. The course consists of four major components: Education Studies, Professional and Pedagogical Practice, Teaching Methods and Teaching Practice.

1. Educational Studies

This course offers an overview of many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding the field and includes:

1. Philosophy in Education
2. Sociology in Education
3. Psychology in Education
4. Curriculum
5. Research

2. Professional and Pedagogical Practices

This course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilized across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the Teaching Methods. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

3. Teaching Method Courses

These courses are aligned to the school curriculum. Each course aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach a subject competently. Students acquire a critical understanding of the curriculum and its philosophical underpinnings, and learn how to implement it in a practical and reflective manner. Students are encouraged to become innovative and inspirational teachers. Students register for Home Language English or Home Language isiXhosa; English First Additional Language; and two of Mathematics, Natural Science and Technology, Social Sciences and Life Skills

4. Teaching Practice

Students spend the equivalent of a school term as fully integrated members of a school's staff. As such, they become involved in the academic, cultural, sporting and administrative activities of a particular institution, and so experience a full immersion into what it means to be a practising professional.

5. Endorsements

Endorsements are obtainable in the following: Computer Literacy, Educational Technologies and Languages. Teacher education certificates must give some indication of the ability of the holder to use any of the official languages of South Africa as a medium of instruction. Opportunities are provided during the year for students to obtain such endorsements in English, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

6. Additional courses

Students that do not have a 30 credit Level 6 Mathematics and English course in their undergraduate degree will be required to register for these courses for Non-Degree Purposes concurrently with their PGCE (IP):

- English A (15 credits)
- English B (15 credits)
- IsiXhosa A (15 credits)

- IsiXhosa B (15 credits)
- Mathematics A (15 credits)
- Mathematics B (15 credits)

Students registering for any of these additional courses are required to pass them in order to meet the requirements for employment in public schools as set out by the employer, the DBE (2017).

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Further Education and Training Band and Senior Phase Teaching)

Our aim in the professional preparation of our students is to develop critically reflective practitioners who have the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context. The course consists of the following major components:

1. Educational Studies

This course offers an overview of many of the important issues in education. The aim is to provide students with a framework for understanding the field of education using sociological, philosophical and psychological lenses. The course explores aspects such as: classroom interaction and various classroom dynamics which includes micro-teaching in small peer groups; historical and contemporary aspects of South African education; environmental education and sustainability; human development, barriers to learning, mediating learning, curriculum processes, different pedagogical approaches, assessment, HIV/AIDS education, values, teachers' rights and responsibilities, organisational dimensions of schooling, educational technology, outdoor education, community engagement.

2. Teaching Method Courses

A broad range of teaching method courses is offered. These are aligned to national curriculum policy. Each course aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach a subject or learning area competently in a variety of situations. Students acquire a critical understanding of the curriculum and its philosophical underpinnings, and learn how to implement it in a practical and reflective manner. Students are encouraged to become innovative and inspirational teachers.

3. Teaching Practice

Students get a taste of a range of different schools, and finally spend the equivalent of a school term as

fully integrated members of a school's staff. As such, they become involved in the academic, cultural, sporting and administrative activities of a particular institution, and so experience a full immersion into what it means to be a practising professional.

4. Language Endorsement

Teacher education certificates must give some indication of the ability of the holder to use any of the official languages of South Africa as a medium of instruction. Opportunities are provided during the year for students to obtain such endorsements in English, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION

This degree serves two different functions.

BEd Foundation Phase Teaching – Full time

The BEd is a 480 credit qualification at NQF Level 7. The BEd (FPT) is for persons wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling at the Foundation phase level.

BEd – In-Service, Part Time

All BEd in-service degrees are 480 credit qualifications at NQF Level 7. Access may include RPL credits and no less than 180 new credits.

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (HONOURS)

The BEd Honours aims to consolidate and deepen the student's expertise and theoretical engagement in educational practice, and develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of educational research. The degree consists of a Foundation and an Elective programme.

Foundation Programme

The foundation programme comprises four "strand" courses: Philosophy in Education, Psychology in Education, Sociology of Education and Research in Education. Although each constitutes a course in its own right they are presented in an integrated format.

Philosophy in Education

The central focus of the course is on theory informing practice in education. Philosophy helps educators to think more deeply about questions such as 'What is knowledge?', 'What is a good life?', and 'What is the role of education in achieving that good life?'. This course stimulates BEd Honours students to think about how their own approach to teaching is affected by their answers to these and

other philosophical questions. The discipline of philosophical thinking and its consequences for education are ancient and the course cannot cover this vast and complex terrain. It therefore highlights key philosophical principles, approaches and concepts that are considered most relevant and stimulating in the context of post-independence education systems in southern Africa.

Psychology in Education

The goal of this course is to provide academic, professional and personal insights which will contribute to a deepened understanding of practice. With this in mind, both coursework and assignments are designed to help you use various theoretical lenses of psychology, to examine and critically reflect on your own thinking and practice in education. The Psychology in Education course will focus on enhancing students' insights in three key areas: i. issues relating to lifespan development, with some emphasis on childhood and adolescence; ii. views of thinking and learning and how these influence classroom practice and assessment; and iii. values, both personal and professional, and their relationship to education.

Sociology of Education

The course is centered on critiquing the educational structures, processes and practices with the growing body of theory and methodology common to sociology. The course engages with a range of texts from sociological and educational literature, introducing students to major debates in the sociology of education moving from a macro focus on education and society to micro studies of education and society. The course problematizes the role of education in South Africa, Africa and the globe. We pay attention to the issue of differential educational attainment, aided by a sociological imagination that demonstrates the apparent complexity. This will highlight the challenge of differing interpretations of social realities. These various theoretical perspectives are potentially useful tools of analysis. They may be used to enhance our analyses of our own southern African educational context in relation both to universal issues, and to the particular dilemmas we share with other developing countries.

Research in Education

The national Higher Education Qualification

Framework (HEQF) describes all Honours-level degrees as "postgraduate specialisation qualifications" that prepare students to undertake "research based postgraduate study". Hence, this BEd Honours places a strong emphasis on supporting students to become users and producers of educational research. This course has two major aims: an introduction to what research in education is theoretically about; and an introduction to the practical skills and ideas which are needed to be an effective practitioner, user and interpreter of educational research. Theoretical and practical aspects are closely integrated, focusing on the nature of research, research traditions and methods, data collection and analysis, critical evaluation, and presentation of research findings. This course is offered in two stages ('A' and 'B') in the first and second years of the part-time programme.

Elective Programme

These options may not all be offered in any given year and are dependent on staff availability, timetabling and viable class sizes. Further options may be offered.

Educational Leadership and Management

The course is designed as a service learning initiative, i.e. teaching and learning strategy which links the academic learning of the Honours' students with a community service experience (CHE, 2006; Hart, 2006). As a credit-bearing educational experience, it requires students to participate in an organised service activity in their institution over a ten month period and reflect on it in such a way as "to gain further understanding of course content, a broader appreciation of the discipline, and an enhanced sense of civic responsibility" (Bringle and Hatcher, 1996, p. 222). The activity may well be the implementation of an extra-curricular learner leadership club or a teacher professional learning community, the purpose being one of leadership development which requires "a multifaceted approach, which includes techniques that range from formal academic processes to experiential development, or what is described as leadership development within the context of work" (Whitehead, 2009, p. 856).

Education, Training and Development Practices (ETDP)

Many educational processes occur outside of the formal school classroom in the form of training programmes, professional development courses or

community-based learning projects. This course is designed for educators planning or offering such learning programmes in colleges, youth groups, municipalities, community groups or other professional development settings. The course focuses on concepts and strategies relevant to adult education and training in such settings. It considers issues such as: lifelong learning, workplace learning, applied competence and reflexive practice, and ways of creating enabling learning environments including teaching strategies and methods in adult learning. It will also review the national structures that guide qualifications and career path development, and the role of networks and partnerships.

English Language Teaching (ELT)

This course is concerned with providing students with a comprehensive understanding of the theory and practice informing English language teaching, research in language education, language pedagogy, and scholarship in literary studies, visual literacy and literacy development. Furthermore, it is concerned with how these knowledge areas are developed, taught, assessed and evaluated in schools. It is within this context that the program is trans-disciplinary and seeks to present a contextual and holistic understanding. It is within this context that the program is trans-disciplinary and seeks to present a contextual and holistic understanding of English studies and language education in a post-apartheid and developing South Africa and Namibia. Students registered in this program gain valuable insight into how English language teaching and Language education programs are structured, whilst developing a critical eye in terms of how schools and institutions of higher learning run these programs and the type of knowledge that they promote. The course is aimed at language educators at school or university contexts, subject advisors, and curriculum developers who wish to develop intellectually and extend the boundaries in the field of English Studies. It also provides a foundation for research in ELT and Language Education at Master's level.

Environmental Education

The elective aims to support you to engage with environmental and sustainability knowledge and skills in your work place, particularly in formal education, so that you may contribute to building an environmentally sustainable and healthy society that is envisaged in South Africa's Constitution

and National Development Plan. It aims to help you engage with Sustainable Development Goals in the work that you do in an education context. This course aims to provide an introduction to the praxis of environment and sustainability education as the concept is understood internationally and in southern Africa in the 21st century. The course draws on theoretical ideas to explore environmental challenges, environment and sustainability education and education policy.

Geography Education (not on offer in 2019)

This course is designed to enable professionals working in schools, and district and provincial offices to reflect upon their experiences in the teaching of geography, and to engage in current international and national debates in the field of geography curriculum development and design; theories of teaching and learning in the field of geography; assessment of and for learning in geography; the design, implementation and evaluation of enquiry-based pedagogical approaches, and issues of sustainability. The course will serve as a platform upon which more advanced work at the Master's level, can be built. Candidates wishing to register for this course will be expected to have taught geography at any level of the formal school system for at least two years.

Information Communication Technology Education (not on offer in Namibia)

The main focus of this course is to advance technology skills in using information and communication technologies for pedagogical, administrative and professional practices among in-service teachers. It presents ICT as a cognitive and instructional tool in teaching and learning, as a tool to enhance administrative functioning and as a tool for professional development. This course provides an opportunity to understand the effects that any use of emerging technologies has on the practice of learning, and how pedagogies need to be aligned to ensure positive learning outcomes. Thus, the content intends to respond to the challenges and opportunities of 21st century education in developing nations through the lens of global trends.

Mathematics Education

This course is designed to enable teachers and educational managers and planners to reflect upon their experience in the teaching of mathematics, and to engage in current national and international

debates in the field of mathematics curriculum design; theories of teaching and learning in the field of mathematics; technology and mathematics education; and socio-political and cultural aspects of mathematics education. The course incorporates an introduction to, and some initial practice in, mathematics education research. The course will serve as a platform upon which more advanced work, at the Master's level, can be built. Candidates wishing to register for this course will be expected to have taught mathematics at any level of the formal educational system for at least two years.

Primary Education

The aim of the elective is to orientate students to contemporary debates and issues related to teaching and learning in primary schools. Students will critically engage with the complex interrelationship between discourses on quality education, and the issues that mediate and impact quality teaching and learning. The four components of the elective will require learners to engage with theory, reflect critically on the implications of theory for classroom practice, and evaluate and critique current research in the field. Our intention is to prepare you for a MEd in Primary Education.

Science Education

This course content covers a range of diverse topics of relevance to science education, and which contribute to the goal of professional development of practising science educators or subject advisors. Since pedagogic content knowledge is a central feature, the course is not intended to cover basic science content directly. It is thus a requirement that those choosing the elective have completed science content modules in their previous science or science education qualifications. Some major foci of the course include the following issues as well as theories around them: learners' prior knowledge, indigenous knowledge, practical activities, science discourse and multiliteracies of science, and science curriculum. As such, the course will lay a foundation for work towards a Master's degree.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (Coursework and Research)

The degree consists of coursework and examination, and a thesis, or coursework, examination and research projects. It is also expected that a paper will be prepared for publication. All candidates for the

degree are required to attend a course in research methodology aimed at preparing them to conduct a research programme and analyse and report the results. Exemptions may be considered if candidates have previously completed a similar course. The degree runs over a two-year cycle. However, some courses allow candidates to complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study. The normal pattern, however, is for candidates to study part-time, completing the coursework in the first year of the two-year cycle and the thesis or research projects in the second year. Specialist coursework directions in which the Master of Education by coursework and thesis can be taken are detailed below.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (EDUCATIONAL LEADERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT)

This degree is offered by full thesis or by coursework and research, either full or part time. Only the full thesis degree will be offered on a part time basis. It will be of interest and benefit to all educators, regardless of whether they hold formal management positions in their institutions or not. The ELM degree will be organised around a research programme with a focus on leadership development and particularly the leadership development of learners. Students will be supported through a community of research learning approach adopted and through the structured support offered during a series of face-to-face contact sessions.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING)

This degree is concerned with providing students with a comprehensive understanding of the theory and practice informing English language teaching, research in language education, language pedagogy, and scholarship in literary studies, visual literacy and literacy development. Furthermore, it is concerned with how these knowledge areas are developed, taught, assessed and evaluated in schools. It is within this context that the degree is trans-disciplinary and seeks to present a contextual and holistic understanding of English studies and language education in a post-apartheid and developing South Africa. Students registered in this degree gain valuable insight into how English language teaching and Language education programs are structured, whilst developing a critical

eye in terms of how schools and institutions of higher learning run these programs and the type of knowledge that they promote. The intention for this degree is to produce educators who are not only confident in their knowledge base, but are also critical thinkers and language education (applied language studies, literary studies, visual literacy and literacy development) program developers. Students are also prepared to theorise their teaching practice and to also conduct cutting edge research, focusing on language pedagogy improvement. This is especially important given the state of our current education system. Students are encouraged to link the past with the present, while seeking ways to improve the future. Given the many literacy challenges faced by South Africa in terms of language development, the English Teaching degree affords South Africa an opportunity to produce competent language educators.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION)

The course is designed to lead practicing educators in a range of fields towards an informed opinion and critical awareness of environmental education and its application. It includes relevant theory from education and the environmental sciences; national and international perspectives on environmental education; local and global environmental concerns; an evaluative dimension and a strong research component.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (INFORMATION COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY)

The course is designed to provide practitioners in the fields of education, training and development with a theoretical background to and practical application of the use of information technology for educational purposes. The course will be of particular relevance to practising teachers, subject advisors, lecturers in higher education institutions and FET colleges, human resources practitioners and adult basic education practitioners. The course explores the use of information technology for enhancing and will cover aspects such as:

- determining which computer and telecommunication technologies can be used to support learning;
- current and influential learning theories underpinning the use of technology for enhanced learning;
- analysing, designing, developing, implementing

and evaluating technology enhanced programs;

- researching how information technology can support learning.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (GENERAL EDUCATIONAL THEORY AND PRACTICE)

This course is designed to provide educators in formal, non-formal and informal education the opportunity to extend their understanding of the theoretical perspectives that shape educational practice. The structure of the course will emphasise education as an interrelated and integrated open system in line with the thinking that underpins both the South African educational transformation process as well as educational reform in the SADC region. The course will provide redress for educators who have not had the opportunity in and with the theoretical dimensions that are identified as foundational issues in education.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (GEOGRAPHY EDUCATION)

This course is designed to provide those interested in geography education - lecturers, subject advisors and practising teachers - with the opportunity to investigate current trends and developments in a variety of areas. The course will be based within the principles of critical thinking, sustainability and empowerment and will focus on areas such as curriculum development and implementation, the implementation of environment education and professional development of teachers.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (MATHEMATICS EDUCATION)

This course is designed for Mathematics education professionals who have a strong commitment to their field and see themselves as agents of change within the context of transformation in South Africa. The course seeks to provide the opportunity to research, explore and investigate areas of current interest and development in mathematics education within a national and international context. The course could include a study of aspects of philosophy of mathematics, developments in the understanding of learning and teaching mathematics, curriculum and assessment, mathematics as a social construct, ethno mathematics, multi-culturalism and multilingualism, problem-solving, development of learning support materials and other topics of interest.

This course has a strong research component.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (SCIENCE EDUCATION)

Professionals in the field of science education, such as teachers, will be given the opportunity to critically rethink and analyse their work environment by following a course in which theory and practice are strongly linked. The participants will be exposed to a variety of current theoretical frameworks - in particular those of relevance to science education - in the areas of philosophy of education, teaching strategies, learning theories, curriculum issues (including assessment) and research. The course aims to provide a basis from which research enterprise in science education can be developed. The research, ideally, will focus on issues in the participants' daily professional work, aiming at developing a richer understanding of it and identifying possible ways of stimulating developments and implementing changes. Candidates can focus on the following areas: physics, chemistry, biology, technology education or science education in a more general sense.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (PRIMARY EDUCATION)

Recent concerns about the quality of teaching and learning, nationally and internationally, has given rise to a new research interest in primary education. This research interest focuses specifically, but not exclusively, on Early Childhood Development. The significance of this niche area is to examine current practices in the field, and ascertain the knowledge required of parents, teachers, government officials, pre-service teachers and teacher educators in order to promote quality primary education. Research in this field will contribute to national and international research on quality pedagogy, curriculum, and national policy. Research in this field can be conducted as either a full thesis or a coursework/half thesis option.

OTHER OPTIONS

Other coursework/thesis options for the Master's degree which the Department of Education has offered and can offer from time to time, depending on demand and the availability of staff, are in the following subject areas: Afrikaans; English First Language; History.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (Full research)

This degree may be undertaken in any approved field of educational research, depending on availability of supervisory staff.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

The degree of Doctor of Philosophy is offered by full research only. An academic support programme for PhD scholars is provided by regular PhD weeks. These provide opportunities for participants to present their work for peer review as it is developing. Areas of research supervision in which the Faculty can offer support include the following:

Academic Development
Academic Literacy
Psychology in Education
Environmental Education
Education Leadership and Management
Language Teaching
Mathematics Education
Primary Education
Science Education
Geography Education
Information Communication Technology in Education
Indigenous Knowledge Systems
Higher Education

Prospective applicants need to be in possession of a suitable Master's degree (or equivalent).

The PhD can take either a traditional form or it can be presented in the form of peer-reviewed articles and papers in partial fulfilment of the degree (*Rhodes University, Higher Degrees Guide, p.3*).

DEPARTMENT OF LITERARY STUDIES IN ENGLISH

Head of Department

SJ Marais, MA (UPE), PhD (Rhodes)

Professors

DC Klopper, MA, DLitt et Phil (UNISA)

MJ Marais, MA (UPE), DLitt et Phil (RAU)

Associate Professor

S Naidu, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

DA Seddon, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab)

L Spencer, MA (Wits), PhD (Stell)

Lecturers

J McGregor, MA (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

K Naicker MA (Leeds), PhD (UCT)

A Phiri, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Edinburgh)

English is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Courses in English are also allowed as credits for degree curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

English 1

ENG 101

First-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Students take the following two papers:

Paper 1 Introduction to Genre

Paper 2 South African Literature

DP requirements: 90% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 draft and 2 final essays; submission of weekly yellow tutorial worksheets; writing two three-hour June examinations

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; June examinations count 60%

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

ENG 102

First-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: 40% or more for ENG 101

Course description: Students take the following two papers:

Paper 3 Postcolonial Literature

Paper 4 The Sense of an Ending

DP requirements: 90% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 draft and 2 final essays; submission of weekly yellow tutorial worksheets; writing two three-hour November examinations

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; November examinations count 60%

Supplementary exam: None

English 2

ENG 201

Second-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: English I

Course description: Students take the following two papers:

Paper 1 Transnational Literature

Paper 2 Romanticism and Revolution

DP requirements: 90% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 essays; writing two three-hour June examinations

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; June examinations count 60%

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

ENG 202

Second-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: 40% or more for ENG 201

Course description: Students take the following two papers:

Paper 3 Regionalism in English and SA Fiction

Paper 4 The Modernist Revolt

DP requirements: 90% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 essays; writing two three-hour November examinations

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; November examinations count 60%

Supplementary exam: None

Combined English Studies 2 (AES 2A)

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: ENG 101 and ENG 102, and ELN 1

Candidates who have passed English 1 and Linguistics 1 may take a combined second-year course (ENG 2 and ENL 2) leading to a combined third-year course. The English component will consist of two of the papers offered in English 2. Candidates who follow this programme may not, in addition, take English 2 or English Language and Linguistics 2 as separate subjects.

English 3

ENG 301

Third-year, first-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: English 2. Candidates may proceed to English 3 from English 2, or, provided they have a credit for English 1 and with the permission of the Head of Department, from Combined English Studies 2 or Modern Fiction.

Course description: Students take two papers in all, one of which is termed a *core paper* and is taught by means of lectures, and the other of which is termed an *elective paper* and is taught by means of seminars.

Students choose one of the following two core papers:

Paper 1 Early Modern Literature

Paper 2 Encountering African Literature

In addition, they select one elective paper. The range of elective papers on offer varies from year to year.

DP requirements: Submission of all essays, including elective assignments; 100% attendance of elective seminars; writing the June examination for the core paper.

Assessment: Core paper counts 60% (essays 24% and exam 36%) and the elective paper 40%

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

ENG 302

Third-year, second-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: 40% or more for ENG 301.

Course description: Students take two papers in all, one of which is termed a *core paper* and is taught by means of lectures, and the other of which is termed an *elective paper* and is taught by means of seminars.

Students choose one of the following two core

papers:

Paper 3 Realism to Postmodernism

Paper 4 South African Post-Apartheid Writing

In addition, they select one elective paper. The range of elective papers on offer varies from year to year.

DP requirements: Submission of all essays, including elective assignments; 100% attendance of elective seminars; writing the November examination for the core paper.

Assessment: Core paper counts 60% (essays 24% and exam 36%) and the elective paper 40%

Supplementary exam: None

Combined English Studies 3 (AES 3A)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: Candidates who have passed English 2 and English Language and Linguistics 2, or Combined English Studies 2, may take a combined major in English and Linguistics. They will take two papers from the Linguistics programme (ENL 3) and two core papers from the Literature programme (ENG 3), and will also write an extended essay on linguistics (an English Language and Linguistics 3 requirement). Students will, in addition, register for another major. Candidates who take Combined English Studies 3 may not, in addition, take English 3 or English Language and Linguistics 3 as separate subjects. Students registered for the Combined English Studies 3 programme will take one paper from each department in each semester.

English Honours

(120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: 65% for English 3.

Subject to the approval of both Heads of Department and the Dean, Honours courses may be offered in (a) English or (b) English in combination with Honours courses offered by other departments (see Rule H.26). The latter option will be termed "joint Honours" if the candidate takes two or more papers from another department. Full English Honours candidates may nevertheless include in their curriculum one paper chosen from another Honours course in the Humanities Faculty. The attention of prospective candidates is also drawn to the separate entry on Interdisciplinary Honours degrees (see Interdepartmental Studies) for information on other options involving input from the Department of English.

Course description: Candidates for Honours in English choose five papers from the following:

Paper 1 Literary Theory

Paper 3 American Literature

Paper 4 Global Modernisms

Paper 5 Africa in the World

Paper 6 Imaginings of Place in SA Literature

Subject to the approval of the Head of the Department, a candidate may choose to submit a research essay of not more than 10 000 words in place of one of the above papers.

DP requirements: Submission of all essays; 100% attendance of seminars; writing the June and November examinations

Assessment: Coursework counts 60% and June and November examinations 40%.

Master's Degree

Candidates for this degree are required to complete a research thesis.

Doctoral Degree

Candidates for this degree are required to complete a research thesis.

Modern Fiction

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

ENGLISH LANGUAGE & LINGUISTICS

Professor & Head of Department

SR Simango, BA (Malawi), DipTESOL
(Manchester), MSc (Edinburgh), PhD (SCarolina)

Professor

RD Adendorff, BA (Hons), HDE (Rhodes), MA
(Indiana), PhD (Natal)

Associate Professors

MA de Vos, BJourn (Rhodes), MPhil (Tromsø),
PhD (Leiden)
SA Hunt, BJourn, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

To be appointed

Lecturers

I Siebörger, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)
TN Probert, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

Teaching Assistants

to be appointed

The object of courses in English Language and Linguistics is to develop students' understanding of language systems and behaviour in the context of human communication and society. The focus is on language within the South African context, though there are modules involving foreign languages as well. Linguistics is an important component in the study of people and their culture, and is of potential interest to students planning Humanities, Social Science or Law degrees, as well as being of practical value to those specifically intending to qualify as journalists and language teachers. Students are also encouraged to combine English Language and Linguistics with a major in another language. English Language and Linguistics is a three-year major subject. Entrance to the course is open to students in all faculties.

Module Themes

Module 1: Sound systems: Sounds of the World (NQF 5), Phonetics and Phonology (NQF 6+7)

Module 2: Sociolinguistics: Language in South Africa and Society (NQF6), Sociolinguistics (NQF 6+7)

Module 3: Semantics: Language and Meaning (NQF 5), Semantics (NQF 6+7)

Module 4: African Linguistics (NQF 5), African Linguistics (NQF 6+7)

Module 5: Psycholinguistics: Language in Childhood and Education (NQF 5) Second Language Learning and Linguistics of Literacy (NQF 6+7)

Module 6: Syntax: Language structures (NQF 5), Syntax (NQF 6+7)

Module 7: Discourse: Language in Context (NQF 5); Conversation Analysis and Critical Discourse Analysis (NQF 6+7)

Module 8: Comparative Linguistics: Introduction to Japanese Linguistics (NQF 5), Introduction to comparative linguistics of specific languages (NQF 6+7), e.g. South African Sign Language and Russian.

Module 9: Systemic Functional Linguistics: Language in the Media (NQF 5), Systemic Functional Linguistics (NQF 6+7)

Module 10: Special Topic in Linguistics (NQF 5); Special Topics in Linguistics (NQF 6+7)

English Language and Linguistics 1 (ELN 1)

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: This course provides an introduction to eight of the modules listed above at NQF Level 5, maintaining a balance between the study of language systems and language in use. Students registered for ELN 1 must take eight modules assessed at NQF Level 5. One three-hour examination paper is written in June and another in November.

DP requirements: students must attend 80% of all class meetings and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two 3-hour examinations in June and November count 50%.

Supplementary exam: none

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

Students in their second and third years of study continue with these broad strands, completing four semester-long modules at NQF Levels 6 and 7 respectively from the list above for each credit. The modules to be offered in any given year are chosen to provide a coherent linguistic programme, maintaining a balance between formal and applied linguistics, and according to staff availability.

English Language and Linguistics 2 (ELN 2)

Second-year, full-year course comprising four modules (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: ELN 1

Course description: The focus of the course is divided between description of linguistic systems and studies on language in use.

DP requirements: students must attend 80% of all class meetings and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date. Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two 3-hour examinations in June and two in November count 50%.

Supplementary exam: none

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

Combined English Studies 2

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: ELN 1 and ENG 1

Course description: This course enables students to take half their modules for the year in Linguistics and the other half in English Literature. The Linguistics component consists of any two modules offered at NQF Level 6. Students who follow this option may not, in addition, take English Language and Linguistics 2 and/or English Literature 2 as separate subjects.

DP requirements: In the Linguistics component, students must attend 80% of all class meetings and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

Assessment: In the Linguistics component, coursework counts 50%; two 3-hour examinations in June and two in November count 50%. These marks are aggregated with the marks from English Literature.

Supplementary exam: none

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

English Language and Linguistics 3 (ELN 3)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: ELN 2 or Combined English Studies 2

Course description: The focus of the course is divided between the description of linguistic systems and studies on language in use. Students registered for ELN 3 take four modules at NQF Level 6+7. In addition students produce a research report on a linguistic topic assessed at NQF Level 7.

DP requirements: students must attend 80% of all class meetings, including 100% of all Research Group meetings, and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

Assessment: June Exam 21.25%; November Exam 21.25%; Class record: 42.50%; Research Report: 15.00%

Supplementary exam: none

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

Combined English Studies 3

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: ELN 2 and ENG 2, or Combined English Studies 2

Course description: This course enables students to take half their modules for the year in Linguistics and the other half in English Literature. The Linguistics component consists of any two modules offered at NQF Level 7 and a research report in Linguistics assessed at NQF Level 7. Students who follow this option may not, in addition, take English Language and Linguistics 3 and/or English Literature 3 as separate subjects.

DP requirements: In the Linguistics component, students must attend 80% of all class meetings and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

Assessment: In the Linguistics component, coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June and one in November count 50%. These marks are aggregated with the marks from English Literature.

Supplementary exam: none

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

Professional Communication

Second-year, one-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: The course is intended for Commerce students who are in at least their second academic year, apart from those registered for BCom (Accounting). Students from other Faculties are only admitted to the course if they are majoring in a subject from the Commerce Faculty.

Course description: The Professional Communication course aims to improve the spoken, written and small-group communication skills of students, and focuses on communication in the commercial and professional world. Some

theoretical background is given, but the bulk of the course is experiential and practical, and students are expected to participate in all activities. It is a compulsory course required for the completion of a Commerce undergraduate degree in all curricula apart from a BCom (Accounting). Students attend three classes every week (two tutorials and one lecture). Additional online resources and compulsory exercises are also offered every week.

DP requirements: Students must submit all written tests and assignments by the due date, and must complete all spoken presentation assessments. Students must attend 80% of tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination counts 60%.

Supplementary exam: None

Professional Communication for Accountants

Second-year, one-term course (7.5 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: The course is intended for Commerce students in their second academic year, registered for BCom (Accounting).

Course description: Professional Communication for Accountants aims to improve the spoken, written and small-group communication skills of students, and focuses on communication in the commercial and professional world with a special emphasis on the communicative needs of accountants. Some theoretical background is given, but the bulk of the course is experiential and practical, and students are expected to participate in all activities. It is a compulsory course required for the completion of a BCom (Accounting). Students attend three classes every week (two tutorials and one lecture). Additional online resources and compulsory exercises are also offered every week. The course content is partly assessed through an assignment in the Principles of Professional Accountancy course, which is jointly assessed by both the English Language and Linguistics and Accounting departments.

DP requirements: Students must submit all written tests and assignments by the due date, and must complete all spoken presentation assessments. Students must attend 80% of tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 100%; there is no examination for the course.

Supplementary exam: None

Postgraduate Degrees in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

There are a number of options for postgraduate studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, including Honours, Master's and PhD degrees. Some of these options can be taken on either a full-time or part-time basis, and at Master's level the options include degrees by thesis only or by coursework and half thesis.

The following coursework modules may be offered at Honours and Master's degree levels:

- Module 1: Introduction to Linguistics at Rhodes
- Module 2: Phonetics and Phonology
- Module 3: Language, Mind and Bilingualism: Introduction to Minimalist Syntax
- Module 4: Debates in Language Change
- Module 5: The Acquisition of Grammar
- Module 6: Ethnographic Investigation of Literacy Practices
- Module 7: Language and Gender
- Module 8: Language Contact: Bilingualism and Related Phenomena
- Module 9: Topics in Psycholinguistics: Literacy and Reading
- Module 10: The Investigation of Interpersonal Meaning
- Module 11: Research Project
- Module 12: Corpus Linguistics
- Module 13: Sign Language Linguistics
- Module 14: Psycho- and Neurolinguistics
- Module 15: External language credit
- Module 16: Language and Knowledge
- Module 17: Introduction to Critical Discourse Analysis
- Module 18: Special Topics in Linguistics

Please consult the Department's Postgraduate Handbook (available on the Department website) for more information on the structuring and content of these modules. Modules passed at the Honours degree level may not be repeated at Master's degree level (see below). In terms of assessment, all modules carry equal weight, and are assessed by assignments and examinations. Examinations are written at the end of the semester in which modules are taught. The department may offer take-home, open-book, pre-allocated questions or standard exams.

A. Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching

120 credits at NQF level 8

Entrance requirements: This course is offered subject to student numbers and is intended for students without a major in English Language and Linguistics. The entry requirement for the course is any Bachelor's degree, subject to the approval of the Head of Department (BA, BCom, BFA, BJourn, BMus, BSocSc or BSc). Students who have credits in Linguistics will be admitted at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Course description: The Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching is a one-year full-time course, or (in special circumstances) it may be taken part-time over two years. The course aims to provide graduates with the theoretical knowledge and awareness of the skills, methods and techniques necessary to be effective English teachers in English Second Language and multilingual classrooms in South Africa. The curriculum combines components from the undergraduate programme in English Language and Linguistics with postgraduate modules.

B. Honours

The aim of the Honours course is to provide students with a balance between the social and formal aspects of the central disciplines of Linguistics. All modules include a strong commitment to methodological and analytical aspects, drawing on relevant theory and consolidated by a supervised research report. The Honours degree can be completed full-time in one year (minimum) or over two years on a part-time basis.

B.1. Honours in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

120 credits at NQF level 8

Entrance requirements: Entry to the Honours programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies requires a first degree in English Language and Linguistics or a cognate discipline.

Course description: Students must complete four coursework modules (see above). In addition, students will complete a research report on a topic to be mutually negotiated, taking into account the research and/ or teaching interests of the department, e.g. further developing English Language and Linguistics 3 research reports, Honours modules or departmental research projects. At the discretion of

the Head of Department, students may take a non-mother-tongue language credit from the Rhodes University School of Languages in place of one of the four modules. Additional coursework will be required.

B.2. Honours in English Language Teaching

120 credits at NQF level 8

Entrance requirements: Entry to the course requires a first degree in Linguistics or a cognate discipline or a Postgraduate Certificate in Education or its equivalent.

Course description: This course is offered subject to student numbers and current staff expertise and aims to give teachers with professional qualifications, or graduates planning a career in language teaching, a specialised and professional training in English Language Teaching (ELT) as an applied discipline. Students will be required to take modules with an ELT focus which may not be available in any particular year.

C. Master's Degrees

Two structures are possible in the Master's degree:

C.1 Master of Arts by full thesis

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: Entry into the Master's programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is open to students with any of the following qualifications: (a) an Honours degree in Linguistics or English Language Teaching, or (b) an Honours degree in a cognate discipline, subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

Course description: This is a research degree, which is governed by the general regulations for Master's degrees in the University. Full-time candidates can complete the requirements for the award of the degree in a minimum of one year but usually take at least two years to complete the degree. Part-time candidates can complete the requirements in a minimum of two years.

C.2. Master of Arts by coursework and half thesis

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: Entry into the Master's programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is open to students with any of the following qualifications: (a) an Honours degree in Linguistics or English Language Teaching, or (b) an Honours

degree in a cognate discipline, subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

Course description: This degree can be completed on a full-time basis over one year, or part-time over two years, and consists of both coursework and a half thesis. Coursework includes four modules. The half thesis is guided research, supervised by a member of the department. Part-time candidates can complete the coursework in the first year of study and the half thesis in the second year. Full-time candidates can complete both coursework and the half thesis in one year.

D. Doctoral Degrees

360 credits at NQF level 10

Entrance requirements: Students with a Master's degree in linguistics can register for the Doctoral degree.

Course description: The Doctoral degree in Linguistics can only be done by thesis, and only under the supervision of a member of staff. Students who have not studied Linguistics at Rhodes previously will be required to take four modules as part of their preparation for the thesis.

ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

Associate Professor & Head of Department

J Gambiza, BSc Hons (Zimbabwe), MSc (Zimbabwe), PGDHE (Rhodes), MEd (Rhodes), PhD (Zimbabwe)

Professor and SARCHI Chair in

Interdisciplinary Science in Land & Natural Resource Use for Sustainable Livelihoods

CM Shackleton, PhD (Wits)

Senior Lecturer

G Thondhlana, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

Sheunesu Ruwanza (BSc Hons (Zimbabwe), MSc Env Policy & Planning (Zimbabwe), MSc (Stellenbosch), PhD (Stellenbosch)

Lecturers

A de Vos, PhD (UCT)

K. Coetzer-Hanack, PhD (Wits)

Research Associates

M Powell, MSc (Rhodes)

A Palmer, PhD (Rhodes)

G Cundill, PhD (Rhodes)

SE Shackleton, PhD (Rhodes) (Honorary Professor)

R. Biggs, PhD (Univ of Pretoria)

J. Nelson, PhD (University of California)

Visiting Fellow

AM Avis, PhD (Rhodes)

Environmental Science (ENV) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BEcon, BJourn and BA, subject to the conditions specified below.

The Department takes an inter/transdisciplinary approach to sustainable environmental management and aims to attract students from a variety of academic disciplines. Candidates who wish to major in Environmental Science should, however, structure their degrees around a specific sub-discipline of Environmental Science, for example biological resources, earth resources, water resources, environmental policy, environmental economics, or people and the environment. Their choice of additional subjects at the second and third level should thus reflect a specific focus.

To major in Environmental Science a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following first year level courses: EAR 101 and GOG 102, and one of ANT 1, BOT 1, ECO 1, GLG 1 or ZOO 1; followed

by ENV 201 and ENV 202 at second year level, and then ENV 301 and ENV 302 at the third year level. An exception is made for Law students who, due to a timetable clash between Legal Theory 1 and EAR 101 and GOG 102, are permitted to enter ENV 201 and ENV 202 without having completed EAR 101 and GOG 102. Such students shall register for EAR 101 and GOG 102 concurrently with ENV201 and ENV 201. They must pass EAR 101, GOG 102, and ENV 2 in order to be eligible to register for ENV 3. See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/environmentalscience/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

Recommended curricula

The following are examples only. Not all the options and possible subject combinations are covered, and curricula are subject to timetable constraints. Students with particular interests are encouraged to discuss other possible course combinations with the Head of Department.

Where both semesters of a year course are recommended, the subject is indicated by its year number only, e.g. ENV 2 instead of ENV 201 and 202. GOG 1 is used instead of EAR 101 and GOG 102.

Curricula could, for example, be structured around one of the following sub-disciplines:

1. Biological resources

Year 1: CHE 1; CEL 101; BOT 102; ZOO 102; EAR 101; GOG 102; STA 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; two of BOT 2, ENT 2, ICH 2, MIC 2 or ZOO 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; and one of BOT 3, ENT 3, ICH 3, MIC 3 or ZOO 3 depending on the choice of second year subjects.

2. Earth resources

Year 1: CHE 1; CEL 101; BOT 102; EAR 101; GOG 102; GLG 102; MAN 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; GLG 2; GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; GOG 3 or GLG 3.

3. Water resources

Year 1: CHE 1; CEL 101; ZOO 101 or BOT 102; EAR 101; GOG 102; GLG 102; MAN 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; one of GLG 2 or GOG 2; and one of BOT 2, ZOO 2 or ENT 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; GLG 3 or GOG 3.

4. People and the environment

Year 1: ANT 1; CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 102; EAR 101; GOG 102; STA 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; ANT 2; ECO 1; GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; ANT 3 or ECO 3.

5. Environmental Economics

See the BEcon calendar entry under the Faculty of Commerce.

6. Environmental Law

Year 1: Legal Theory 1; ECO 1; ANT 1; BOT 1 or ZOO1

Year 2: Legal Theory 2; ENV 2; GOG 2

Year 3: Legal Theory 3; ENV 3

Note: These are illustrative curricula only and students must ensure that they have the correct number of semester credits to meet their respective faculty needs.

Second-year level courses in Environmental Science

There are two second-year level courses in Environmental Science. ENV 201 is normally taught in the first semester and ENV 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ENV 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required 35% sub-minimum in each component (i.e. the class mark and each exam). However, students who wish to major in Environmental Science must obtain credit in both ENV 201 and ENV 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Geography (EAR 101 and GOG 102) and either Anthropology (ANT 1), Botany (CEL 101 and BOT 102), Economics (ECO 1), Geology (GLG 1) or Zoology (CEL 101 and ZOO 102) is required before a student may register for ENV 201 or ENV 202, other than for Law students. These students shall register for EAR 101 and GOG 102

concurrently with ENV201 and ENV 202. Adequate performance in ENV 201 is required before a student may register for ENV 202.

ENV 201 (Foundations of Environmental Science)

ENV 201 provides the conceptual foundation for all other courses in Environmental Science, and covers the following topics: integrated perspectives on environmental issues; introduction to inter/transdisciplinarity and local ecological knowledge; ecosystem services and human well-being; complexity; social-ecological systems; planetary boundaries and sustainability; social systems; economic valuation of natural resources; ecological systems. Practicals: interaction between social, economic and ecological components of the environment. Students will be required to undertake compulsory field site visits during a limited number of weekends as part of their practicals.

ENV 202 (Global Environmental Challenges and Policies)

The ENV 202 course is designed to cover a selection of current major global issues and challenges in environmental science. The purpose of the course is to apply interdisciplinary skills, systems approaches and perspectives to analyse and understand environmental issues and policies of global and local concern. Critical analysis and consideration of counter-viewpoints, from a systems perspective, is central. This will be done at different spatial and temporal scales. The skills covered in Environmental Science 201 are particularly relevant, especially those relating to systems analysis, team work, and interdisciplinarity as well as rigorous and in-depth critical analysis and thinking. Practicals: a variety of different classroom and field exercises pertaining to the issues covered in lectures.

Third-year level courses in Environmental Science

There are two third-year level courses in Environmental Science. ENV 301 is normally taught in the first semester and ENV 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ENV 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required 35% sub-minimum in each component (i.e. the class mark and each exam).

No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course, unless ENV 301 or ENV 302 is the student's last outstanding credit, wherein a special exam may be written. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. Students will be required to plan, execute and write up a mini-research project starting in the first term and spanning the whole academic year. There is one compulsory weekend field trip during the first semester. Credit in Environmental Science 2 (ENV 201 and ENV 202) is required before a student may register for ENV 301 or ENV 302. Concurrent registration is not allowed for second-year and third-year courses in Environmental Science. In addition, candidates must have satisfied the prerequisites for ENV 201 and ENV 202.

ENV 301

(Integrated environmental management for sustainability)

This course focuses on sustainable natural resource management in practice. The aim is to develop applied professional skills, coupled with rigorous analysis, to promote more effective environmental thinking and management. The emphasis is on conceptual and planning frameworks to pre-empt or minimise environmental impacts (such as sustainability assessment, strategic environmental assessment, environmental management programme reports, ISO 14000, environmental impact assessment, landscapes and integrated landscape management, adaptive management, participatory natural resource management, adaptive co-management, etc.) as well as to evaluate, understand and mitigate environmental impacts and land and resource use patterns. Each topic is illustrated by up to date examples. Practicals: the practical application of the course will be incorporated into the year-long mini-research project. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends.

ENV 302

(Environmental monitoring and monitoring systems)

This course builds on the foundations laid in ENV 2 in terms of systems thinking, interdisciplinarity and the scientific analysis of environmental challenges and on the integrated management approaches covered in ENV 301. The focus is on the design and implementation of environmental monitoring

systems appropriate at different spatial and temporal scales integrating across the biological, social and economic components of an environmental system. Examples will include industrial, terrestrial and aquatic systems and different types of monitoring approaches. A key component deals with collection and analysis of environmental data, which is the core of any environmental monitoring system. Practicals: the practical application of the course will be incorporated into the year-long mini-research project. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends.

Environmental Science Honours

The Honours course in Environmental Science is designed as an interdisciplinary programme. It consists of four modules selected from a list of available options along with a short course in Statistics. Additionally candidates undertake an independent research project. The course may be done full-time over one academic year, or, rarely, part-time over two academic years with the agreement of the Head of Environmental Science. Tuition emphasis is on self-learning guided through lectures, tutorials, seminars and practical work. Students are encouraged to work in interdisciplinary teams and to address practical, "real life" issues in their projects and seminars. A limited number of students are selected annually on the basis of academic excellence, previous experience, and qualifications in environment-related fields, group diversity and staff availability. Candidates must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelors degree, majoring in at least one of the following: Anthropology, Botany, Economics, Environmental Science, Entomology, Geography, Geology, Ichthyology, Microbiology or Zoology. Preference will be given to applicants with undergraduate Environmental Science qualifications and/or with applicable practical experience. For internal (RU) applicants, adequate performance and participation in ENV 3 is necessary.

Students may be required to attend blocks of lectures and practicals before the official commencement of the first term (typically the last week of January or first week of February) and during vacations. This usually takes the form of a compulsory field trip of 5-10 days. Candidates should consult the Head of Department in this regard before registering for the course.

Students may consider registering for a joint course with other relevant Departments

Modules

The short course in Statistics must be taken by all students, and those who are considering careers that might involve environmental impact assessment procedures are strongly encouraged to register for the environmental impact assessment module. For the optional modules, candidates must select four from the list of available modules, with at least two Environmental Science modules. The list changes from year to year, and not all are available to part-time candidates. Some modules are offered by Departments collaborating with Environmental Science and candidates should discuss their options with the Head of Department and, where applicable, with the Head of the Department offering that module. The list includes the following modules. Modules offered by Environmental Science: community-based natural resource management; biodiversity, non-timber forest products and rural livelihoods; ecological modelling; environmental impact assessment; urban forestry; people and protected areas, and climate change adaptation. Modules offered by the Geography Department: wetland ecology and management, and GIS for students who have completed GOG 3. Modules offered by the Anthropology Department: marine anthropology. Modules offered by the Institute for Water Research: environmental water quality. Modules offered by Economics Department: environmental and resource economics Additional suitable environmental related modules may be available in other departments at the time of registration, and prospective candidates should consult with the Head of Department and Honours Coordinator regarding the availability and choice of such modules. Students will also undertake a research project related to their selected courses.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc, MA and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. An Environmental Science Masters degree is by dissertation. It has four distinguishing characteristics:

- the research and dissertation deals with integrative ecological, social and economic systems;

- it incorporates the concept of sustainability, e.g. sustainable use and management of the environment and sustainable living;
- it addresses issues affecting people's quality of life and their livelihoods;
- it is interdisciplinary, i.e. it is not confined to a single academic discipline, and is often linked to a broader programme with several related projects.

The following candidates are eligible to register:

- applicants in possession of an Honours degree in Environmental Science; if Rhodes University Honours graduates, adequate performance and participation in the Honours year is necessary;
- applicants with a good Honours degree in any other discipline which has covered either biological, physical, human or economic aspects of the environment;
- environmental practitioners with an appropriate Bachelors degree in an environmental discipline, plus a minimum of two years relevant practical experience, at the discretion of the Head of Department and Senate;
- environmental practitioners without a Bachelors degree, but with 5-10 years in-depth experience and proven achievements and skills in an environmental field, may be admitted as *Ad Eundem Gradum* students at the discretion of the Head of Department and Senate.

Students also have the option of attending appropriate undergraduate and Honours modules during their period of registration. Part-time students should aim to spend two to four months on campus at the early stage of registration and another two to four months during the final writing-up stage.

Master's in Business Administration - Environmental Electives

The Rhodes MBA is designed to enable practising and potential managers to succeed in creating, developing and directing successful organizations in a competitive business environment. The Rhodes MBA is now able to offer business the opportunity to engage with the challenges of sustainable development and environmental management through its new electives programme. Details of the six environmental electives can be found under the Faculty of Commerce.

FINE ART

Associate Professor & Head of Department

M de Jager, BFA, MFA (Wits)

Professors

D Thorburn, BFA, MFA (Rhodes), TPP (New Mexico)

R Simbao, BFA (Stellenbosch), MWS, MPhil (Toronto), AM, PhD (Harvard)

Senior Lecturers

C Dixie, BFA (Wits), MFA (UCT)

S Khan, BA (FA), MA(FA) (Durban-Westville), MA(FA) (WITS), PhD (ARTS) (London)

N Western, BFA, MFA (Wits)

Lecturers

M Khoza, BFA, MA (Wits)

H Sincuba, MFA (Arts)(London)

Junior Lecturer

S Madikida, BFA (Wits)

The Department of Fine Art, which is part of the Faculty of Humanities, provides comprehensive tuition in the practical, theoretical and historical aspects of the visual arts. Our courses ensure a solid grounding for those wanting to pursue careers as professional artists, but are equally valuable to those with an interest in arts education and a wide variety of creative industries - including arts administration, community arts, design, and curation. Most undergraduate students enrol for a BFA, a professional 4 year honours-equivalent degree. But our courses are also open to BA students, and students from other Faculties, who may benefit from the creative problem-solving, visual literacy, and/or practice-based research methodologies foregrounded in our course offerings.

Fine Art Practice courses are those in which students engage with art making, and the professional practice aspects of art making. Art History & Visual Culture courses do not involve the making of art but are studies in the theory and history of visual representations.

Bachelor of Fine Art students must major in both Fine Art Practice and Art History & Visual Culture, and should thus enrol for Fine Art Practice and Art History & Visual Culture concurrently.

Non-BFA students may study Fine Art Practice without Art History & Visual Culture, but can only

take Fine Art Practice as a minor in this case (at a first-year level or to a second-year level). To major in Fine Art Practice, students must have a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture.

Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture independently without also studying Fine Art Practice - either as a major or for only one or two years.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES OFFERED BY THE DEPARTMENT FINE ART PRACTICE

FINE ART PRACTICE 1A (FAP1A)

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: Art portfolio approved by HoD. Bachelor of Fine Art students must take both FAP1A and FAP1B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 1 (AHV1) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP1A as a standalone credit, with or without FAP1B, and with or without AHV1.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 1A serves as an introduction to practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. The course comprises a series of directed projects, covering both 'traditional' and 'new' media.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Two assessments, one in mid-year and one at the end of the year. Mid-year assessment counts 25% towards final mark.

Supplementary exam: No

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

FINE ART PRACTICE 1B (FAP1B)

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: Art portfolio approved by HoD. Bachelor of Fine Art students must take both FAP1A and FAP1B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 1 (AHV1) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP1A as a standalone credit, with or without FAP1B, and with or without AHV1.

However, FAP1B cannot be taken as a standalone credit – it can only be taken concurrently with FAP1A.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 1B is an introduction to the professional practice aspects of art-making, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. It introduces students to a range of professional practice skills, including drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Two assessments, one in mid-year and one at the end of the year. Mid-year assessment counts 25% towards final mark.

Supplementary exam: No

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

FINE ART PRACTICE 2A (FAP2A)

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: At least FAP1A. Bachelor of Fine Art students must take *both* FAP2A and FAP2B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 2 (AHV2) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP2A as a minor credit, with or without FAP2B, and with or without AHV2.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 2A extends and develops students' practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. For the most part, the course follows an elective-based structure: students choose between two projects offered concurrently, thus testing and honing their preferences for working in particular media.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Two assessments, one in mid-year and one at the end of the year. Mid-year assessment counts 25% towards final mark.

Supplementary exam: No

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

FINE ART PRACTICE 2B (FAP2B)

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: At least FAP1A; preferably FAP1A and FAP1B. Bachelor of Fine Art students must take both FAP2A and FAP2B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 2 (AHV2) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP2A as a minor credit, with or without FAP2B, and with or without AHV2. However, FAP2B cannot be taken as a standalone credit – it can only be taken concurrently with FAP2A.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 2B extends and develops students' professional practice skills, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. Projects enable students to hone their expertise in areas such as drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Two assessments, one in mid-year and one at the end of the year. Mid-year assessment counts 25% towards final mark.

Supplementary exam: No

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

FINE ART PRACTICE 3 (FAP3)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: At least FAP2A; preferably FAP2A and FAP2B.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 3 enables students to work more concertedly in particular media, in the broadly defined media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. Students are also encouraged to work across media as this suits their purposes. The course aims to develop students' technical skills alongside their professional practice, and self-reflexivity as creative practitioners.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Two assessments, one in mid-year and one at the end of the year. Mid-year assessment counts 25% towards final mark.

Supplementary exam: No

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

FINE ART PRACTICE 4 (FAP4)

Fourth-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: FAP3.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Art History & Visual Culture 4 (AHV4). The course is largely self-directed, and lecturers facilitate and support students' development of a cohesive body of work, culminating in a solo exhibition.

DP requirements: 80% attendance of compulsory timetable periods.

Assessment: A work-in-progress assessment in mid-year, and summative assessment at the end of the year.

Supplementary exam: No

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE

ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE 101 (AHV101)

First-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 101 introduces the subject of 'art history and visual culture', developing practical skills in reading and looking as well as the politics of visuality and representation within a South African context.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 100%

Supplementary assessment: June result 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE 102 (AHV102)

First-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 102 engages with the colonial realities of Western Art History and the politics of representation while developing critical skills in the visual analysis of arts and visual culture.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 100%

Supplementary assessment: Nov result 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE 2 (AHV2)

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: At least one of AHV101 and AHV102.

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 2 examines the concept of authorship in artistic practice.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 100%

Supplementary assessment: June result 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE 3 (AHV3)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: AHV2

Course description: The course focuses on the overall theme of "Art, Power and Society", deconstructing various politics of display, discourse and visual languages at work in the field of visual arts and culture.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 100%

Supplementary assessment: June result 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE 4 (AHV4)

Fourth-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: AHV3.

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Fine Art Practice 4. It comprises two research seminars and an independently researched long essay. The course aims to consolidate students' critical, writing and researching skills through a sustained research enquiry.

DP requirements: Submission of all course

assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 100%

Supplementary assessment: June result 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

POST-GRADUATE STUDIES OFFERED BY THE DEPARTMENT

HONOURS IN ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE

120 credits at NQF level 8

Entrance requirements: A completed degree, normally with Art History & Visual Culture (or similar) as a major.

Course description: This course comprises a series of papers, as well as an independently researched long essay (of approximately 10 000-15 000 words).

MASTER OF ARTS IN ART HISTORY

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: A completed honours degree, or honours-equivalent degree, normally in Art History, Fine Art or similar.

Course description: Students write a thesis of up to 50 000 words on an approved topic within the broadly-defined field of Art History.

MASTER OF FINE ART

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: A completed honours degree, or honours-equivalent degree, normally in Fine Art or similar.

Option 1: Practice as Research

Course description: The degree is by Practice as Research and the candidate produces an exhibition or installation of original work as well as a mini thesis of 12 000 – 15 000 words positioning this artwork in relation to an existent body of work or theory.

Option 2: Curatorial Practice

Course description: The degree is in Curatorial Practice which caters specifically for candidates looking to develop their capacities and understanding of professional curatorial practices. A candidate is required to curate an exhibition (rather than producing an exhibition of own work) in an established art museum or gallery and to develop a thesis of between 25 000 and 30 000 words exploring the curatorial theme, logistic approach, and exhibition strategy.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY IN ART HISTORY

360 credits at NQF level 10

Entrance requirements: A completed master's degree, normally in Art History or similar. Students who have completed a MFA rather than a MA may qualify for entrance into the degree if they have strong abilities in history and theory.

Course description: Students write a thesis on an approved topic within the broadly-defined field of Art History.

Additional Faculty rules will be amended as follows:

FINE ART

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ART

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Department of Fine Art only. Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

FIRST YEAR

Fine Art Practice 1A

Fine Art Practice 1A serves as an introduction to practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. The course comprises a series of directed projects, covering both 'traditional' and 'new' media.

Fine Art Practice 1B

Fine Art Practice 1B is an introduction to the professional practice aspects of art-making, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. It introduces students to a range of professional practice skills, including drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

Art History & Visual Culture 101

Art History & Visual Culture 101 introduces the subject of 'art history and visual culture', developing practical skills in reading and looking as well as the politics of visibility and representation within a South African context.

Art History & Visual Culture 102

Art History & Visual Culture 102 engages with the colonial realities of Western Art History and the

politics of representation while developing critical skills in the visual analysis of arts and visual culture.

SECOND YEAR

Fine Art Practice 2A

Fine Art Practice 2A extends and develops students' practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. For the most part, the course follows an elective-based structure: students choose between two projects offered concurrently, thus testing and honing their preferences for working in particular media.

Fine Art Practice 2B

Fine Art Practice 2B extends and develops students' professional practice skills, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. Projects enable students to hone their expertise in areas such as drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

Art History & Visual Culture 2

Art History & Visual Culture 2 examines the concept of authorship in artistic practice.

THIRD YEAR

Fine Art Practice 3

Fine Art Practice 3 enables students to work more concertedly in particular media, in the broadly defined media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. Students are also encouraged to work across media as this suits their purposes. The course aims to develop students' technical skills alongside their professional practice, and self-reflexivity as creative practitioners.

Art History & Visual Culture 3

The course focuses on the overall theme of "Art, Power and Society", deconstructing various politics of display, discourse and visual languages at work in the field of visual arts and culture.

FOURTH YEAR

Fine Art Practice 4

Fine Art Practice 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Art History & Visual Culture 4 (AHV4). The course is largely self-directed, and lecturers facilitate and support students' development of a cohesive body of work, culminating in a solo exhibition.

Art History & Visual Culture 4

Art History & Visual Culture 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Fine Art Practice 4. It comprises two research seminars and an independently researched long essay. The course aims to consolidate students' critical, writing and researching skills through a sustained research enquiry.

FINE ART OPTIONS FOR DEGREES OTHER THAN BFA

***NOTE:** Non-BFA students may study Fine Art Practice without Art History & Visual Culture, but can only take Fine Art Practice as a minor in this case (at a first-year level or to a second-year level). To major in Fine Art Practice, students must have a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture. Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture independently without also studying Fine Art Practice - either as a major or for only one or two years.*

* Non-BFA students may take Fine Art Practice 1A, with or without Fine Art Practice 1B, and with or without Art History & Visual Culture. Non-BFA students may continue to Fine Art Practice 2A, with or without Fine Art Practice 2B, and with or without Art History & Visual Culture, but would not be able to proceed to Fine Art Practice 3 without a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture.

* Non-BFA students may only major in Fine Art Practice if they also major in Art History & Visual Culture.

* Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture without studying Fine Art Practice, either as a major or for one or two years.

DIPLOMA IN FINE ART

A candidate for the diploma shall attend the University for not less than four years after being admitted to the course, and must obtain credit in all the following courses:

First Year: Fine Art Practice 1A, Art History & Visual Culture 1

Second Year: Fine Art Practice 2A, Art History & Visual Culture 2

Third Year: Fine Art Practice 3, Art History & Visual Culture 3

Fourth Year: Fine Art Practice 4, Art History & Visual Culture 4

Examination for Fine Art Practice will be assessed as follows:

In the first, second and third year, work will be examined via two assessments, one in midyear and one at the end of the year. Midyear assessment counts 25% towards final mark. In fourth year, work will be examined via work-in-progress assessment in midyear, and summative assessment at the end of the year.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ART

Two options are offered for this degree, Option A and Option B.

Option A: The degree is by Practice as Research and the candidate produces an exhibition or installation of original work as well as a mini thesis of 12 000 – 15 000 words positioning this artwork in relation to an existent body of work or theory. The two components form an integrated submission and are assessed as such. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Supervisor and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The completed mini thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least three days before the exhibition is submitted for examination. *A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and mini thesis is given to each candidate.*

Option B: The degree is in Curatorial Practice which caters specifically for candidates looking to develop their capacities and understanding of professional curatorial practices. A candidate is required to curate

an exhibition (rather than producing an exhibition of own work) in an established art museum or gallery and to develop a thesis of between 25 000 and 30 000 words exploring the curatorial theme, logistic approach, and exhibition strategy. The final mark for the degree comprises 50% for the exhibition and 50% for the thesis. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The completed thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least two weeks before the exhibition is submitted for examination. *A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and thesis is given to each candidate.*

MASTER OF ARTS (Thesis)

A thesis must be submitted for examination on any approved topic within the broadly defined field of Art History & Visual Culture. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's rules governing Master's degrees by thesis apply.

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's rules governing Doctoral Degrees apply. No candidate may be admitted who is not already in possession of a Master's Degree in Fine Art or History of Art or any other qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent for the purpose of entrance to this degree.

GEOGRAPHY

Professor & Head of Department

I Meiklejohn, PhD (Natal), HDE (Natal)

Professor

W Ellery, PhD (Wits)

Lecturers

P Irvine, MA (Rhodes)

G McGregor, MA (Rhodes)

S Memela, MA (UKZN)

Professors Emeritus

R Fox, PhD (Strathclyde), PGDHE (Rhodes)

C Lewis, BA (Wales), PhD (Ireland)

K Rowntree, MSc (Bristol), PhD (Strathclyde)

Visiting Professors

P Assmo, PhD (Göteborg)

J Boelhouwers, BSc (Utrecht), MSc (Natal), PhD (Western Cape)

I Foster, BScHons (London), PhD (Exeter)

K Hall, BScHons (Swansea), MPhil (Reading), PhD (Free State), DSc (UKZN)

J Hooke, BScHons (Bristol), PhD (Exeter)

T Kepe, B.Agric (Fort Hare), MSc (Guelph), PhD (Western Cape)

E Nel, BAHons (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes), MA (Wits), PhD (Rhodes)

Research Associates

B Cobbing, MSc (Rhodes)

D Pyle, PhD (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes)

B van der Waal, BSc (North West), BSc (Hons) (Rhodes), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Geography (GOG) is a six-semester subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn and BSocSc.

To major in Geography, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: EAR 101; GOG 102; GOG 201; GOG 202; GOG 301; and GOG 302. See Rule S.23. At the discretion of the Head of Department students may replace one third level course with an acceptable alternative course deemed to be its equivalent.

EAR 101 and GOG 102 are pre-requisites for students majoring in Environmental Science (ENV), details of which are given in a separate entry.

Students are expected to participate in Departmental excursions. Costs are kept as low as possible. Honours students are encouraged to attend the South

African Student Geographical Conference, which is held at a different university each year. See the Departmental Web Page (<http://www.ru.ac.za/geography>) for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Geography

Geography 1 consists of two first-year courses, namely Earth Science 101 (jointly taught by the Geography and Geology departments) and Geography 102 (Exploring Global Human Geographies), which are normally taught in the first and second semesters respectively. Students who take both Geography 1 and Geology 1 will have to take an additional semester course in an appropriate subject during the first semester to ensure that they have enough credits for their degree. Credit may be obtained in each semester course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GOG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. However, students wishing to major in Geography must normally obtain credit in both components separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

These courses provide a sound foundation for the student majoring in Geography as well as foundations for the student studying Geography for one year. Practical work, including field work, tutorials are integral parts of both courses that reinforce themes covered in lectures and ensure that academic and geographic literacy are developed within the curriculum.

A rating of at least 4 for Geography in the National Senior Certificate (or equivalent) is recommended for entry into Earth Science. Students may not register for Geography 102 unless they have met the subminimum requirements in both the theory and practical papers (35%) for EAR 101, or a rating of at least 4 in Geography in the National Senior Certificate (or equivalent).

EAR 101

Introduction to Earth Systems. This course introduces the processes that have shaped the Earth

and its environment over both geological and recent time scales. The interrelationships between the Earth, the atmosphere, and living organisms form key themes through the course.

GOG 102

Exploring Global Human Geographies. This course examines key concepts and understanding within Human Geography that serve as an introduction to the sub-discipline. Space and place are considered fundamental to an understanding of human societies and structures. Key themes include: modes of production and consumption; demography and migration; inequalities and development; globalisation; and exploration of urban and rural spaces within historical, political, economic, social and spatial contexts.

Second-year level courses in Geography

There are two independent second-year courses in Geography. GOG 201 is normally held in the first semester and GOG 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GOG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical work is an integral part of both courses and is related to the relevant lecture courses and to the development of research techniques.

Credit in GOG 102 and EAR 101 is required before a student may register for GOG 201 or GOG 202. At the discretion of the Head of Department, students who have an aggregate pass of at least 60% for GOG 1 may be allowed to register for GOG 201 and GOG 202.

GOG 201

Space and place in Southern Africa 1. This course examines the key processes that determine the physical and human geography of southern Africa. Concepts, theories and examples from other regions will be used where appropriate to help us understand the southern African experience. Contemporary issues such as environmental change and associated problems of human development will be examined. Selected human and physical geographical perspectives are used to understand the rural and urban landscapes. The complementary course is GOG 202.

GOG 202

Space and place in Southern Africa 2. This course examines the key processes that determine the physical and human geography of southern Africa. Concepts, theories and examples from other regions will be used where appropriate to help us understand the southern African experience. Contemporary issues such as environmental change and associated problems of human development will be examined. Selected human and physical geographical perspectives are used to understand the rural and urban landscapes. The complementary course is GOG 201.

Third-year level courses in Geography

There are two independent third year courses in Geography. GOG 301 is normally held in the first semester and GOG 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GOG 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Normally, credit in both GOG 201 and GOG 202 is required before a student may register for either or both of the third year credits GOG 301 and GOG 302. At the discretion of the Head of Department a student with only an aggregate credit for GOG 2 may be allowed to register for either or both of the credits GOG 301 and GOG 302.

GOG 301

African Geographical Studies. In this course students will develop a critical understanding of Africa from a Geographical perspective through topics that relate to the Continent's complex social, built and physical environments, environmental processes, resources, as well as social, cultural, economic, and political systems. The specific content of the course will depend on the research and teaching interests of the academic staff who are available at the time and will vary from year to year. A compulsory field weekend may be a component of the course.

GOG 302

Geography in Theory and Practice. The aim of this course is to provide students with the theoretical background and related practical competencies in one or more sub-disciplines within Geography, including Geographic Information Systems and Remote Sensing. A compulsory field weekend may be a component of the course.

Honours Degrees

The Department of Geography offers separate Honours degrees in Geography and Environmental Water Management (the latter in collaboration with the Institute for Water Resources). In all cases students are required to read four modules, submit a research project proposal, a research project, and present at least two seminars during the year. At the start of the academic year all students will have to attend an induction programme and may include a compulsory field trip. Other field trips, which may be scheduled during a vacation, are also compulsory for several individual Honours modules and students will normally be expected to attend the annual Geography Students Conference. For all programmes, the modules offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints. Other appropriate modules may be taken if approved by the Head of Department. Entry into any module will be dependent on being able to provide evidence of appropriate prior knowledge to the Head of Department.

Part of the Geography degree may be taken in conjunction with modules in other departments. Where approximately 50% of a student's courses are examined in another department, a joint degree is awarded (for example, Honours in Geography/Environmental Science). Any combined degree must be agreed to by both Heads of Department concerned.

Geography and Environmental Water Management Honours students may read for a BScHons, BAHons or a BSocScHons degree, depending on their undergraduate degree and curriculum. Humanities students are reminded of the alternative route to Honours. See Rules H.25(3) and H.25(4).

Honours in Geography

Students are required to take a core, integrative, module (Research Philosophy and Methodology), and select three other courses from those offered by the staff of the Department, Visiting Professors, Visiting Lecturers and Research Associates. Our modules reflect the interests of the staff members and normally include a selection from the following: African Futures; Extended GIS (Geographical Information Systems); GIS Internship; Catchment Systems; Climate Change and Extreme Events; Geography of Small Towns; Political Ecology; and

Earth Observation in a Changing World. Please Note: Entry into the GIS and Earth Observation modules requires a pass of 65% for GOG 302 (or an equivalent).

Honours in Environmental Water Management

Environmental Water Management Honours is offered together with the Institute for Water Research at Rhodes University. Candidates must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelor's degree, normally majoring in at least one of Geography, Environmental Science or Hydrology. Other candidates with appropriate professional experience in water resource management may be considered. This degree aims to equip students with the conceptual understanding and practical knowledge that are needed to make an effective contribution to the sustainable management of catchment systems and their associated water resources. Students are required to take a core, integrative, module, and must also select three other courses. Recommended courses include: Adaptive Integrated Water Resource Management and Water Governance; Catchment Systems; Climate Change and Extreme Events; Environmental Water Quality; Hydrology Freshwater Ecology; Extended GIS (Geographical Information Systems); Earth Observation in a Changing World; or other appropriate courses approved by the Course Coordinator. Please Note: Entry into the GIS and Earth Observation modules requires a pass of 65% for GOG 302 (or an equivalent). The research project must be related to Environmental Water Management and approved by the Course Coordinator.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees

The Geography Department offers courses as components of various interdisciplinary honours programmes (see Interdepartmental Studies in this Calendar) including Development Studies and Industrial Society. Students should consult the Head of Department concerning available courses.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA, MSocSc and PhD, under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

GEOLOGY

Professor & Head of Department

I Meiklejohn, PhD (Natal), HDE (Natal)

Professor of Exploration Geology

RE Harmer, PhD (UCT)

Associate Professors

SH Büttner, PhD (Frankfurt)

SA Prevec, PhD (Alberta)

H Tsikos, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers/Senior Lecturers

E Grosch, PhD (UCT)

A. Kazerouni, PhD (Aarhus)

Senior Instrument Scientist

D van Niekerk

Professors Emeritus

JS Marsh, PhD (UCT)

RE Jacob PhD (UCT)

Research Associates

AE Moore, PhD (UCT)

R Gess, PhD (Wits)

N McLoughlin, PhD (Oxford)

RN Scoon, PhD (Rhodes)

EMW Skinner, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes)

B Zhao, BSc (Chengdu), PhD (Wits)

Geology (GLG) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BEcon (Mineral Economics).

Geology is a recommended co-major with other Science majors such as Chemistry, Physics, one of the Mathematical Sciences, Life Sciences, Geography, and Environmental Science. A BSc in Geology and Economics is also offered.

To major in Geology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: GLG 1 (comprising EAR 101 and GLG 102); GLG 2; GLG 3. Credit is also required in CHE 101 and at least one other appropriate first year semester course chosen from amongst those offered in the departments of Chemistry, Mathematics or Physics. Students are strongly advised to include additional courses in these subjects in their curriculum.

Two, or in some cases four, semester-credits in Geology are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Field-work is a necessary part of Geology courses and a field course fee is payable annually, or per semester in EAR 101 and GLG 102.

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/geology/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Geology

Geology 1 consists of two first-year courses, namely Earth Science 101 (jointly taught by the Geology and Geography departments) and Geology 102 which are taught normally in the first and second semesters respectively. Students who take both Geography 1 and Geology 1 will have to take an additional semester course in an appropriate subject during the first semester to ensure that they have enough credits for their degree. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two credit course GLG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Earth Science 101 (EAR 101) is taught jointly by the Departments of Geology and Geography, and focuses on the topic: "Introduction to Earth Systems". This course introduces the processes that have shaped the Earth and its environment over both geological and recent time scales. The interrelationships between the earth, the atmosphere and living organisms forms a key theme through the course. No prior background in geology or geography is required.

EAR101 is a suitable semester-credit for non-science majors. Students may not register for GLG 102 unless they have obtained at least 35% or greater and met the subminimum requirements in both the theory and practical papers for EAR 101. Credit in GLG 1 is required before a student can proceed to any second year course in Geology.

GLG 102, in the second semester, includes a more detailed introduction to the basic principles of geology and to the geology of South Africa. Practical work focuses on the recognition and interpretation

of geological maps. Short (one-day) local field excursions are also conducted.

Second-year level courses in Geology

There are two second-year courses in Geology: GLG 201 held in the first semester and GLG 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GLG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in GLG 1 is required before a student may register for GLG 201 and attendance in GLG201 is required before a student may register for GLG202. Credit is also required in CHE 101 and at least one other appropriate first year semester course chosen from amongst those offered in the departments of Chemistry, Mathematics and Physics. Permission may be granted to repeat these courses concurrently with GLG 201 and GLG 202.

GLG 201 and 202

These courses consist of lectures and associated practical work through introductory courses in mineralogy, geochemistry and petrology (igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic), as well as in structural geology, palaeontology, geophysical methods, and hydrogeology. The course includes a compulsory field course in appropriate mapping and stratigraphic techniques which is normally held in the September term break.

Third-year level courses in Geology

There are two third-year courses in Geology. GLG 301 is held in the first semester and GLG 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GLG 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports, collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

A student may not register for GLG 301 before (a) first obtaining credit in at least one second-year Geology course and having adequately performed in the other; (b) first obtaining credit in the compulsory ancillary courses in chemistry or physics or mathematics. Attendance in GLG 301 is required before a student may register for GLG 302.

GLG 301 and 302

These courses include “advanced” modules in igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic petrology, in addition to structural geology and palaeontology, which follow on from the introductory courses in GLG2. GLG 3, along with courses in economic geology and isotope geochemistry. It comprises lectures, practical work and essays and/or oral presentations, and includes a field course normally held in the September term break.

Geology Honours

The Honours course comprises a theoretical component (lectures, tutorials, seminars, essays) with related practical work, a field school and a research project. Depending on staff availability the topics covered in the course may be drawn from a selection of the following: research and analytical techniques, geochemistry, mineralogy, igneous petrology, metamorphic petrology, sedimentology, basin analysis, structural geology, palaeontology, Earth history, geotectonics, ore-forming processes, geohydrology, and exploration techniques. Honours students should consult with appropriate members of staff for guidance regarding the research project and are encouraged to formulate their own projects. The results of the research project are submitted in the form of a comprehensive report.

MSc and PhD Degrees

The Department pursues an active programme of research into a wide range of problems in Earth Science, leading to the award of the MSc or PhD degree. Students with Honours degrees are encouraged to participate in these research programmes and prepare theses on their research work.

In addition the department offers a professionally-oriented postgraduate programme leading to the award of Master’s degrees in Exploration Geology or Economic Geology, through part time coursework and thesis.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Prospective candidates may write for further details on any of these courses. A detailed booklet on postgraduate courses is available on request.

MSc in Exploration Geology

This advanced course is open to candidates holding the BSc (Hons) degree, or equivalent four year degree. Two to three years' relevant professional experience is an additional requirement. In exceptional cases only, applications may be considered from candidates who hold a good BSc degree and have at least five years' relevant work experience.

The course is designed to cover the most important theoretical and practical aspects of the exploration for, and evaluation of, mineral resources. Instruction is through the medium of lectures, seminars, directed reading, assignments and practical work led by the staff of the Department supported by inputs from experts drawn from industry and other universities.

Field-work visits to areas of economic mineralization, and report writing, form integral parts of the course. The evaluation of candidates is based on their written and verbal presentations throughout the course.

Requirements for the award of the degree include the completion of four coursework modules, and the submission of a dissertation on a topic selected in

consultation with the Programme Director. Award of the degree requires an aggregate mark of at least 50% on all assessed components. The Programme will be offered on a part-time basis only, wherein candidates will take 2 modules per year over two years. Each module requires 4-6 weeks of full-time attendance, plus additional time to complete written assignments prescribed during the coursework.

Coursework is divided into 4 modules presented over 2 years: 2 devoted to the characteristics, origin and distribution of the major ore deposit types and the appropriate exploration methods for discovery and development; the remaining 2 are devoted to exploration techniques, resource assessment, mineral economics and project evaluation. The ore deposit modules have an associated field exercise of two weeks. The ore deposit module is offered in the early part of the year (usually February-April); the techniques module in the third quarter (usually August).

MSc in Economic Geology

This course is designed for graduates holding the qualification of BSc (Hons) or equivalent, and lays greater emphasis upon a research thesis than the degree in Exploration Geology. Previous professional experience is preferred but not a prerequisite for admission. The requirements for the degree are the completion of two of the modules offered for the MSc Exploration Geology, and the submission of a thesis based on original field or laboratory work on economic geology.

HISTORY

Associate Professor and Head of Department

A Kirkaldy, BSocSci (Rhodes), BA (Hons)
(Rhodes), MA (UCT), PhD (UCT)

Professor

GF Baines, BA (UCT), HED (UCT), BA (Hons)
(UNISA), MA (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

Associate Professors

E Msindo, BA (UZ), MPhil (Cambridge), PhD
(Cambridge)
H Pohland-McCormick MA (Ludwig Maximilians
Universität), MA (Michigan), PhD (Minnesota)

Senior Lecturer

N Ulrich BA (Hons)(Wits), MA (Wits) PhD (Wits)

Lecturer

J Thumbran BEd (Hons)(UP), MA (Tilburg), PhD
(Minnesota)

History is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. The department offers a set of semester courses. A student majoring in History is normally expected to obtain 30 credits in History courses for the first and second year level of study and 60 in the third year, but in some instances that requirement can be waived (see below for specific rules).

Course codes: The digit indicates the year or level of study.

General rules:

- (i) At every level marks for semester courses are aggregated. Students achieving an aggregate of 50% will be deemed to have passed every course at that level except that at third-year level students who either fail more than one course or obtain a mark of less than 40% in a course will not be granted an overall pass.
- (ii) All final examinations are written at the end of the semester in which the course is offered (i.e. June or November).
- (iii) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for second-level courses in History, without having taken either of the first-level courses, or they may register for third-level courses without having taken any first or second-level courses.
- (iv) In some instances, with the permission of the two heads of department concerned, a student majoring in History may be allowed to take a course

in another department as part of the History major. This course must be in a history-related field.

First-level Courses

History 101: Africa and the making of the World 1:
From the earliest times to c. 1900

First-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

History 102: Africa and the making of the Modern World 2: From Colonisation to Independence - First-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: A university entrance pass or equivalent.

Course description: Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

DP requirements: See course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework for each semester counts either 40% or 50% depending on the assessment strategy for that year; one 3-hour examination in June and one in November counts either 60% or 50% for the semester - see our course handbook.

Supplementary exam: June result 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

- (a) Students who fail either History 101 or History 102, but achieve an overall aggregate of 50% or more in both courses, will be deemed to have passed both courses.
- (b) Students who fail the History 101 June write-off paper may rewrite the paper in November.
- (c) Students may register for History 102 at the beginning of the second semester, without having taken History 101. At the discretion of the head of department such a student may be exempted from History 101 or be required to take History 101 the following year concurrently with History 201.
- (d) Students who pass History 101 but fail History 102 and do not achieve an overall aggregate pass may, at the discretion of the head of department, proceed to History 201, but would be required to repeat History 102 concurrently with History 202 in the second semester. Similarly, students who fail History 101 but pass History 102 without achieving an overall aggregate pass may be permitted to

proceed to History 201, but would be required to repeat History 101 concurrently with History 201.

Second-level Courses

History 201: Twentieth Century World History - Second-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6)

History 202: Themes in Southern African History

Second-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6)

Course description: Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

DP requirements: See course handbook. **Assessment:** Coursework for each semester counts either 40% or 50%; one 3-hour examination in June and one in November counts either 60% or 50% for the semester - see course handbook.

(a) Students intending to major in History should normally have passed History 101 and 102 (individually or on aggregate) in order to enter History 201. At the discretion of the head of department such students may proceed to History 201 having passed History 102 but without having taken History 101, but they may be required to take History 101 concurrently with History 201.

(b) Students who fail History 201 with a mark of 40-49% can proceed to History 202, but such students who are majoring in History will be required to repeat History 201 concurrently with their third-level courses if they do not achieve an aggregate second level pass. Similarly, majoring students who pass History 201 but fail History 202, and do not achieve an aggregate pass, will be required to repeat History 202 concurrently with third-level courses.

(c) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for History 201 and/or History 202 without having previously taken either first-level courses in History.

Third-level Courses

Students shall normally read for two term courses in each semester, giving a total of 30 credits at NQF level 7 for each semester, or 60 for the year.

The Department cannot guarantee that all these options will be available in a particular academic year.

History 301: The Making of Modern South Africa – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 302: Gender in southern African history – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 304: Popular Culture, Politics and Protest – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 305: History of modern South Asia – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 306: Africa in crisis – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 307: US imperialism in the modern world – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 309: History of African intellectuality – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 310: Introduction to Public History – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 311: South African Environmental History – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 312: Themes in Zimbabwean History – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 313: Contested Pasts: History and Memory – Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 318: A specialised course which may be offered in any field depending on student demand and/or the interests of staff members or visiting lecturers. Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 319: The University in South Africa: Past and Present–Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 320: The History of the Corporation in South Africa–Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 321-3 Africa and its Maritime Worlds–Third year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

(a) Majoring students who have failed either History 201 or History 202 and have not achieved an aggregate pass may, at the discretion of the head

of department, register for third-level courses and repeat the failed second level course concurrently.

(b) *Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for one or more third-level courses without any History prerequisites.*

Course description: Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

DP requirements: See course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework for each term course counts either 40% or 50%; one 3-hour examination in June for each term course completed in the first semester and one in November for each course completed in the second semester counts either 60% or 50% (giving a total of two examinations in June and two in November) - see course handbook.

HONOUR'S COURSE

120 credits at NQF level 8

Entrance requirements: Students may read for Honours in either History or as part of a combined Honours degree in History and one other subject (see Rule H.24) or under one other programme. The course is normally entered in the fourth year of study, unless the student opts, with the permission of the Head of Department, to begin the course in the third year in terms of the alternative route (see Rule H.25.3).

Course description: Students will normally write three papers and a research essay. The three (or four) papers will be written on topics chosen from a range of courses offered by the department. These courses may vary from year to year according to the particular interests of staff and students. The research essay should be a maximum of 15 000 words in length (excluding end matter). Master's Degree

MASTERS

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: A recognised Honours qualification in History or in a field which the Department feels will enable the student to cope with the demands of a Masters degree in History. Under special circumstances, *ad eundem gradum* applications may be considered.

Course description: Either a written thesis or an examination. Masters by examination will only be offered at the discretion of the Department. Students who wish to write a thesis should note that their research topics must be approved in advance by the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. Students will work under the supervision of a member of the staff of the Department of History. A student may select a co-supervisor from another department or faculty at the discretion of the head of department. The choice of subject or research is not restricted to those based on archival research.

Students who wish to take the Master's degree by examination will offer the following:

(a) *Three topics for advanced individual study to be selected from fields not previously studied for the Honours degree. These will be selected by the candidate in consultation with the Head of the Department.*

(b) *A research essay in a cognate field. Candidates must complete and present the research essay within six months of the completion of the written papers.*

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

360 credits at NQF level 10

Entrance requirements: A recognised MA in History or in a field which the Department feels will enable the student to successfully undertake the writing of a PhD thesis in History. Under special circumstances, *ad eundem gradum* applications may be considered.

Course description: A written thesis under the supervision of a member of the staff of the Department of History. A student may select a co-supervisor from another department or faculty at the discretion of the head of department.

HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS (HKE)

Head of Department and Senior Lecturer

S Zschemack, MSc (Dipl.-Ing.)(Berlin), PhD (Dr.-Ing.)(Berlin)

Associate Professor

CJ Christie, BA (HMS)(UPE), BSc (Med)(Hons) (UCT), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

AI Todd, MSc (Rhodes)

Lecturers

MC Mattison, MSc (Rhodes)

JP Davy, PhD (Rhodes)

Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BA. HKE as a major is designed to provide students with an interdisciplinary academic approach to the analysis of performance and human health, in sport, at work and any other domains of life.

Each year (HKE 1, HKE 2, and HKE 3) comprises of modules from the bio-physical domain, the physiological domain, and the cognitive domain; as well as a module that focuses on the integration and application of the three domains. The course aims at equipping students to understand human responses to the environment they are interacting with. The professional aspects of the programme prepare students for careers or further education in diverse fields including Ergonomics, Sports Science, general health and rehabilitation.

To major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, a candidate is required to obtain credits in the following courses: HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3. See Rule S.23.

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/humankineticsandergonomics/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

First-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics

HKE 1 is comprised of two first-year courses: HKE 101 is held in the first semester, and HKE 102 in the second semester. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is required to progress from HKE 101 to HKE 102. An aggregate mark for the two semesters of at least 50%

allows the candidate to receive the two semester credits for HKE 1, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Both credits in HKE 1 are required before a student may register for HKE 2. A wide variety of tutorials and laboratory practicals, during which human responses to varying environmental demands are evaluated, complement the theoretical basis of all these courses. Supplementary examinations are offered in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

HKE 101

Introduction and application: introduction to Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, the departmental philosophy and how it applies to the study of humans in the context of sport, work and activities of daily living, biophysical domain: basic introduction to the biophysical domain, physiological domain: cardiovascular and respiratory physiology

HKE 102

Biophysical domain: functional anatomy of the upper extremities, cognitive domain: sensory perception, integration and application

Second-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics

HKE 2 is comprised of two second-year courses: HKE 201 is held in the first semester, and HKE 202 in the second semester. Both credits for HKE 1 are required before registering for HKE 2. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is required to progress from HKE 201 to HKE 202. An aggregate mark for the two semesters of at least 50% allows the candidate to receive the two semester credits for HKE 2, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Both credits in HKE 2 are required before a student may register for HKE 3. Participation in a wide variety of laboratory experiences, as well as tutorials form part of all modules of both HKE 2 courses. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

HKE 201

Integration and application; cognitive domain: human information processing; biophysical domain: functional anatomy of the lower extremities, linear

kinetics and kinematics of human movement.

HKE 202

Physiological domain: neuromuscular physiology, cognitive domain: human reliability and error; integration and application

This course includes neuromuscular physiology and human information processing with respect to human performance under various conditions.

Third-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics

HKE 3 is comprised of two third-year courses: HKE 301 is held in the first semester, and HKE 302 in the second semester. Both credits for HKE 2 are required before registering for HKE 3. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is required to progress from HKE 301 to HKE 302. An aggregate mark for the two semesters of at least 50% allows the candidate to receive the two semester credits for HKE 3, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Both credits in HKE 3 are required before a student may register for postgraduate (honours) studies in HKE. Participation in a wide variety of laboratory experiences forms part of all modules of both HKE 3 courses. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

HKE 301

This course includes motor learning, exercise physiology, human decision making, work organisation, and human reliability and error.

HKE 302

The HKE 302 course focuses on the functional anatomy of the lower extremities, biomechanics of gait and the lower back, human fatigue and shiftwork, as well as ergonomic tool design.

Human Kinetics and Ergonomics Honours

This one-year postgraduate course comprises a seminar block and a research project, complemented by field trips, research seminars and exposition to advanced research. The seminar modules cover the whole range of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics subjects with consideration of theoretical and applied aspects. Modules offered include: Research Methods, Work and Exercise Physiology, Ergonomics Assessment and Systems, advanced biomechanics and chronobiology.. The research project is undertaken by the student in consultation with a supervising staff member, to add depth in an area of particular interest. These areas may include physical and mental performance, human responses and human behaviour to different types of tasks (incl. sport activities and lifestyle), as well as environmental influences. Scientific rigour, linked with application skills, is emphasized throughout the course.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to pursue research degrees at the MSc and PhD level. These involve preparation of a thesis under the supervision of a member of staff of the Department.

Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

ICHTHYOLOGY AND FISHERIES SCIENCE

Professor and Head of Department

WHH Sauer, PhD (UPE)

Professors

AJ Booth, PhD (Rhodes)

PJ Britz, PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professors

H Kaiser, Dr.agr. (Bonn)

WM Potts, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

CLW Jones, PhD (Rhodes)

WT Kadye, PhD (Rhodes)

A-R Childs, PhD (Rhodes)

Emeritus Professor

T Hecht, PhD (UPE)

Visiting Professor

K Cochrane, PhD (Wits)

Honorary Professors

S Aswani, PhD (Hawaii)

P Cowley, PhD (Rhodes)

MR Lipinski DSc(Lodz)

M Roberts, PhD(UCT)

P Shaw, PhD(Swansea)

D Vousden, PhD(Bangor)

O Weyl, PhD (Rhodes)

A Whitfield, DSc(Rhodes)

Visiting Fellows

A Arkhipkin, PhD (Moscow)

J Augustyn, PhD (UPE)

Senior Research Associates

A Götz, PhD (Rhodes)

P Heemstra, PhD (Miami)

G Hofmeyr, PhD (UP)

S Petersen, PhD (UCT)

Research Associates

T Andrew, PhD (Rhodes)

A Cockroft, PhD (UPE)

E Gennari, PhD (Rhodes)

D Huchzermeyer, PhD (UP)

T Shipton, PhD (Rhodes)

M Smale, PhD (Rhodes)

N Vine, PhD (Rhodes)

The Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science is a leading African academic institution supporting the sustainable utilisation and study of fish and fisheries through teaching and training of students, and conducting research.

At the undergraduate level the Department offers

a four-semester major in Ichthyology, which may be taken as a major subject for the BSc and BJourn degrees.

At the postgraduate level the following degrees are offered: BSc Honours in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Master of Science and Doctor of Philosophy in either Ichthyology or Fisheries Science. Masters and Doctoral degrees are by research only through the preparation of a thesis.

Detailed information on course work and curricula may be obtained from the Head of Department.

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/ichthyology> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

Ichthyology (ICH) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

To major in Ichthyology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 102; ICH 201; ICH 202; ICH 301; ICH 302; CHE 1; one first year semester-credit in Mathematics or TOF1 AND a second first-year semester-credit in either Mathematics, Theory of Finance, Statistics or Computer Science (with the exception of the literacy course CSC 1L1). See Rule S.23. Credit in ICH 201 and ICH 202 is required before a student may register for ICH 301.

Second-year level courses in Ichthyology

There are two second-year courses in Ichthyology. ICH 201 is offered in the first semester and ICH 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ICH 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Ichthyology must obtain credit in both ICH 201 and ICH 202. Adequate performance in ICH 201 is required before a student may register for ICH 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. An ecological fieldtrip is held jointly with the Departments of

Entomology and of Botany, and all students are required to attend.

Credit in Cell Biology (CEL 101), Zoology (ZOO 101) and Botany (BOT 102) is required before a student may register for ICH 201 or ICH 202.

ICH 201

The course is structured around the theme “fish form” and is comprised of lectures, tutorials and practicals in fish diversity and habitats, anatomy, larval fishes, sensory systems and communication, genetics and fish behaviour. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

ICH 202

The course is structured around the theme “fish function” and is comprised of lectures, tutorials and practicals on fish life history styles, ecology, reproduction, feeding biology, nutrition, age and growth, physiology and aquaculture. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

In addition to these theme-centered topics, the ICH 2 course include theme-independent topics that include ecology, oceanography and evolution and systematics.

Third-year level courses in Ichthyology

The ICH 301 and 302 semester courses cover the modules aquaculture, fisheries science, conservation, limnology, biodiversity of freshwater, estuarine and marine fishes, population ecology, experimental design and scientific writing. An aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ICH 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Adequate performance in ICH 301 is required before a student may register for ICH 302. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

ICH 301

The course consists of modules of different durations, offered by way of lectures, tutorials, practicals, and field trips. There are modules on aquaculture, and conservation of the aquatic environment, on fish biodiversity in the estuarine, freshwater, and marine environment. The writing of essays and presentation of seminars form an integral part of the course.

ICH 302

A module on experimental biology includes a third-year project, project-related data analysis, and scientific writing. The second part of ICH 302 covers fisheries management and stock assessment and population ecology. The preparation of essays, writing of scientific papers, and the presentation of seminars are important components of the course.

Ichthyology and Fisheries Science Honours

The aim of the Ichthyology Honours degree is to produce free-thinking and critical young scientists capable of performing independent research and equipped with practical skills to work in fisheries, aquaculture, ichthyology, environmental and aquatic science related fields. Applicants for Honours in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science are required to have completed a BSc before the start of the honours year, with a major in the life sciences and with at least a one year credit in Chemistry and at least one first-year semester-credit in a Mathematics-related subject and second first-year semester-credit in either a Mathematics-related subject, Statistics or Computer Science (with the exception of the literacy course (CSC 1L1)). See Rule S.23.

The Honours course is comprised of advanced studies in data analysis, evolution and systematics, speciation, biodiversity, fish biology and ecology, conservation, population dynamics and fisheries resource management, fisheries oceanography, aquaculture and an advanced course in scientific writing. There are two field excursions, the first to gain insight and practical experience in field sampling techniques and the second to obtain insight into operational aquaculture ventures. Students are required to design an aquaculture production facility, prepare a business plan for a hypothetical aquaculture venture and manage the DIFS hatchery during the trout spawning season. A major research project is undertaken through the year, and a report submitted for the final examination, in a form suitable for publication in a peer-reviewed journal. The course is run on the basis of lectures, tutorials, seminars and extended essays. The examination consists of three theory papers, two practical examinations, an oral examination, and research project report. Practical and theoretical work done during the year counts towards the final mark.

Applications for the Honours course must be submitted to the Rhodes University administration (academicadmin@ru.ac.za) by the 30th of September of the preceding year. Besides this application, all applicants are also encouraged to forward a letter of motivation and a curriculum vitae directly to the department administration (difs@ru.ac.za) by the same date. The application and selection process will start 1st July and will be completed by mid-October each year and students will be notified during this period or soon thereafter.

Master's and Doctoral degrees in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science

Candidates who wish to register for the MSc degree in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a four-year BSc degree or BSc Honours degree in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture, Zoology or equivalent (as approved by both the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

Candidates for the PhD degree in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a Master's degree or equivalent in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture or Zoology or equivalent (as approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

The degree of MSc or PhD in Ichthyology is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on fishes (freshwater, estuarine or marine), especially in the classical fields of systematics, morphology, distribution, ecology, behaviour or biology. The degree of MSc or PhD in Fisheries Science is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on aspects of fisheries management, fisheries modelling, aquaculture or fisheries economics. Candidates for MSc or PhD degrees may additionally be required to complete such examinable coursework as may be prescribed by the Head of Department.

The PhD degree must make a substantial contribution towards the advancement of knowledge in the chosen field.

All postgraduate students in attendance are required, if called upon, to assist as demonstrators in practical classes.

Applications for PhD and MSc in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must follow the department's application procedure that is available on the department's website:

<https://www.ru.ac.za/ichthyology/studying/prospectivestudents/onprocessformscphdcandidates/>

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Professor and Head of Department

SV Flowerday, MBA (Oxford Brookes), DTech (NMU)

Professor

DA Sewry, MSc, PhD (Rhodes), FICSIT, MIITPSA, MAIS (presently Dean of Commerce)

Associate Professors

GG Foster, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)
CJ Khene, MCom, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

E de la Rey, BEco, MSc (Rhodes)
JB McNeill, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), MS(SE) (Monmouth), MIITPSA
I Siebörger, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)
CT Upfold, MBA (Rhodes)

Lecturers

G Baduza, BCom (Hons), MCom (Rhodes)
S Dayisi, BCom (Hons)(Rhodes)
K van der Schyff, BSc (UNISA), MSc (Rhodes)

Visiting Professors

S Conger, MBA (Rutgers), PhD (New York)
M Herselman, PhD (UP), M BIS (PE Technikon)
K Krauss, MCom (UKZN), PhD (UP), MAIS
AJ Maeder, BSc (Hons)(Wits), MSc (Natal), PhD (Monash), GCEd(QUT)
M Sainsbury, BSc (UNISA), MSc (Bath), MIITPSA
H Thinyane, BSc (Adelaide), PhD (South Australia), MACM
G Wright, MBA (Lancashire Business School), DN (London), CertEd(Leeds), FIAHSI, FBSC, CITP
Research Associate
BJ Mallinson, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), MAACE, MIITPSA, MIEEE, MACM

Information Systems (INF) is a two-year major subject which is primarily studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. The subject is also studied for the specialist BSc (Information Systems) degree in the Faculty of Science.

The courses offered in the Department concentrate on aspects of the development, application and management of Information Systems in organizations and the technologies used in these processes. Other topics in the courses include corporate communications, project management, information systems theory, and the audit and control of information systems. There is an emphasis on computer-based information systems, and practical

courses include the use of spreadsheets, financial modelling, database design, decision support systems, IT project management tools, high-level application development tools and computer programming. In addition, various guest lecturers present seminars during the year on a variety of topics relevant to all areas of Information Systems. The management and strategy aspects are well complemented by courses in the Department of Management, while technical and computer-specific aspects are handled in more depth by courses in the Department of Computer Science.

See the Departmental web page (<http://www.ru.ac.za/informationssystemsf/>) for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

Second-year level courses in Information Systems

The Department offers three second-year level courses: INF 201, INF 202 and INF 203. Information Systems 2 consists of the two one-credit courses INF 201 and INF 202; or INF 201 and INF 203. Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course INF 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Adequate performance in INF 201 is required before a student may register for INF 202 or INF 203. No supplementary examinations will be offered in any of the courses.

INF 202 is normally taken by students following a general or Information Systems professional route, whilst INF 203 is normally taken by students following an Accounting professional route as set out in the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum or who intend to register later for the Post-Graduate Diploma in Accountancy or the Honours programme in Financial Management. Students are also permitted to take both INF 202 and INF 203, in which case any one of the general or Information Systems professional or Accounting professional routes is available to them.

Students must normally gain credit in INF 201 and INF 202, or INF 2 with INF 201 and INF 202 aggregated, before being permitted to register for INF 301.

INF 201

Information Systems Theory; Business Systems; Business Decision Support; Development Methodologies.

The examination for the INF 201 course consists of not more than one practical examination of two hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

INF 202

Information Systems Analysis; Information Systems Design.

The examination for the INF 202 course consists of not more than one practical examination of two hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

INF 203

Accounting Information Systems (Practical and Theory); Accounting Information Systems Security and Control; IT Governance; Managing Projects.

The examination for the INF 203 course consists of not more than one practical examination of two hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

Third-year level courses in Information Systems

Information Systems 3 consists of the two one-credit courses INF 301 and INF 302. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course INF 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Adequate performance in INF 301 is required before a student may register for INF 302. No supplementary examinations will be offered in either course.

INF 301

Project Communications; Project Management; Databases; Structured Query Language; Web Development.

The examination for the INF 301 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of three hours, and two theory examinations of three hours. Students may also be required to research and submit a written assignment on a specific topic. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

INF 302

Advanced Web Development; Application Development; Advanced Information Systems Theory; IT Security in the Enterprise.

The examination for the INF 302 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of three hours, and two theory examinations of three hours. Every student is also expected to participate in and complete a group systems development project. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

Admission Prerequisites

INF 201 **CSC 112**

Candidates deemed to be in their first year of study are not permitted to register for INF 201

INF 202 sub-minimum in **INF 201**

INF 203 sub-minimum in **INF 201**

INF 301 **INF 201 and INF 202**, or **INF 2** with **INF 201 and INF 202** aggregated

INF 302 sub-minimum in **INF 301**

INFORMATION SYSTEMS HONOURS

The Honours course is a one-year, full-time programme and consists of a coursework component and a project component. Students may also register for joint Honours in which the honours programmes of two departments, for example Information Systems and Computer Science, are taken 60%:40% with some coursework and some project components selected from each department.

Coursework component

Students must take all the core and supporting modules, and an agreed selection of the elective modules. In the case of electives, a student may take any one equivalently weighted Honours level module from another department, provided that it is approved by the Head of Department, in consultation with the Head of the other department.

Modules offered by the Department include:

- Core modules: Information Systems Management; Enterprise Architecture.
- Elective modules (a selection of the following modules will be offered in any one year, subject to a minimum number of students per module and staff availability):
- Business Consulting; User Experience; IS Security; e-Governance.
- Supporting modules: Corporate Communications; Research Methodology.

In addition to the modules listed above, students are required to attend any other activities as may be deemed appropriate by the Head of Department.

Project component

All students are required to undertake a Research Project in a given area and to produce a written report.

Additionally, students are required to undertake a major Systems Development Project in which a prototype information system is developed for a client.

INFORMATION SYSTEMS MASTERS and DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MCom and PhD under the supervision of staff in the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Regulations.

INTERDEPARTMENTAL STUDIES

SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES – INTERDISCIPLINARY COURSES

CULTURES AND LANGUAGES IN AFRICA (CLIA) 101 AND 102

These two courses are open to all undergraduates, can be taken independently of one another and will, if passed, result in a semester credit each.

PURPOSE OF CLIA 101 AND 102

To familiarise students with the relationships between societies, cultures, identities and languages in Africa; to give students the tools to think holistically and critically about a multicultural, intercultural and multilingual world.

OUTCOMES OF CLIA 101 AND 102:

An understanding of the relationships between cultures, languages, societies and identities in Africa; an understanding of inter-, intra- and cross-cultural communication; an understanding of what it means to be a socially engaged African and global citizen.

CULTURES AND LANGUAGES IN AFRICA 101

Students will engage critically with the relationships between cultures and languages in Africa. In *CLIA 101* the focus will be on the functioning of African languages, in particular isiXhosa, in pre-colonial social contexts, on reciprocal influences in languages in Africa since the 18th century, on the introduction of Dutch, French, German and the classical languages (Latin and Ancient Greek) during the colonial period, and on the relationships between these languages, the indigenous languages, and the societies in which they are embedded, i.e. the process of creolization.

CULTURES AND LANGUAGES IN AFRICA 102

In *CLIA 102* the focus will be on language as a site of struggle and identity formation in Africa, with particular focus on works of isiXhosa scholarship, and other African intellectuals, on the rise of Négritude in Francophone Africa, on German-speaking communities in Africa during the two World Wars, the German language and its role in the shaping of some South African identities during World War II, and on the appropriation of the

classical languages (and translations thereof) in the shaping of some South African cultural identities. A study of selected South African texts will explore the cross-cultural tensions of pre- and post-1994 in South Africa. In addition, an analysis of visual media (e.g. soap operas, film and cartoons) will be used to explore language and multi-cultural communication (and miscommunication) in Africa.

MODERN FICTION

This is a one-year non-initial course, presented by members of various language departments, for students who have already obtained two credits. See also Regulation H.13.1. This course is designed primarily to give students of literature a greater appreciation of modern fiction.

Major works of film and fiction written between 1850 and the present are studied in English translation. The course also introduces students to the intellectual and cultural currents within which these works were produced. Lists of prescribed texts and recommended reading for the course are available from members of the Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies in the School of Languages.

AFRICAN STUDIES PROGRAMME

In the belief that knowledge of events in Africa is of vital importance to this country, the University offers postgraduate courses in African Studies at Honours, Master's and PhD levels for students wishing to make comparative studies of social, political and economic development in Africa. The approach is essentially interdisciplinary.

The Honours Degree

1. Honours curricula proposals must be submitted to the Dean of Humanities for approval.

The Honours Degree is a one-year course, the aim of which is to enable students to pursue interrelated or complementary topics from various disciplines in African Studies. The examination normally consists of four papers and a research essay on a topic approved by the Head of the Department within which the essay is to be supervised.

The candidate may be permitted to write a fifth examination paper in place of the research essay. Faculty of Humanities regulations governing

research essays (see the note to Regulation H.35 will apply to a research essay in the African Studies Honours degree.

2. Students must write at least two papers (counting the research essay as a paper) in one of the following academic disciplines: African Languages, Anthropology, Economic History, Economics, English, History, Industrial Sociology, Journalism and Media Studies, Psychology, Political and International Studies or Sociology. Both papers must be specifically related to Africa.

Students will not normally be admitted to the Programme unless they satisfy the criteria for admission to the honours programme in which the above two papers are written.

The remaining three papers (or two papers and a research essay) may be chosen from honours courses offered by the participating disciplines noted above, or from any other discipline, provided that:

(a) two papers must be specifically related to Africa, and

(b) the third paper must be sufficiently related to the other four papers to contribute to the overall aim of the Honours Degree in African studies.

(c) The Head of the Department in which the paper is being offered is satisfied that the student has a training adequate to the demands of the paper being offered.

3. The degree will be an honours degree in the principal subject with the words “(African Studies)” added.

African Studies components in other curricula

African Studies components are included in the normal curricula in a number of departments, including the Division of African Languages in the School of Languages, Anthropology, Economics and Economic History, Geography, History, Political and International Studies. See the relevant department entries for undergraduate and/or postgraduate courses including African Studies components.

The Master's degree is offered by coursework and thesis and by thesis only, and PhD in African Studies is offered by thesis only. However, the African Studies Co-ordinators, with the approval of the Dean, may require Master's or Doctoral candidates to pass relevant courses offered by the University at Honours or Master's level. Master's and PhD candidates in African Studies will be registered in a disciplinary Department.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees

The University offers a number of interdisciplinary honours degrees which are designed to enable students who have majored in a variety of disciplines to concentrate their studies in relatively new areas of research in which the traditional divide between disciplines is no longer appropriate and in which a multi-disciplinary approach offers a richer understanding of some important topics of intellectual interests. The current programmes are: Development Studies; Gender Studies; Industrial Relations; Southern African Cultural Studies.

The participating departments and divisions are African Languages (AL); Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies (A&N); Anthropology (A); English (Eng); Economics and Economic History (Econ); Fine Art (FA); Geography (G); History (H); Information Systems (IS); Journalism and Media Studies (J); Law (LW); Linguistics and English Language (L); Management (M); Philosophy (PH); Political and International Studies (PO); Psychology (P); and Sociology (S).

The following papers may be offered by participating departments and divisions in each of the above areas, although it should be noted that not every paper may be on offer every year. (The brackets indicate in which department or division the paper is offered.)

Development Studies (administered by the Faculty of Humanities)

Child in Context (P); Development Economics (Econ); Development Studies (S); Economic Geography (G); Global Commons (PO); Human-Computer Inter-action (IS); International Economics (Econ); Literacy: Theory and Development (L); Media and Development (J); Method (H); Methodology (H); Population, Resources and Development (G); Post coloniality and Post-Colonial discourse (Eng and A&N); Psychology and Community (P); Resettlement and Land Issues (A); Tourism (A); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

Gender Studies (administered by the Department of Anthropology)

Cultural Studies (J); Feminist Literary Theory (A&N); Interdisciplinary Gender Studies (PH); Language and Gender (L); Literature and Gender (A&N); Methodology (H); Social and Political Theory or Freedom and Domination (PO); Women

and Art (FA); Women and the Law (LW); Women in History (H); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

Industrial Relations (administered by the Department of Sociology)

Critical Human Resource Management (S); Cross-Cultural Communication (L); Economic Geography (G); Geographic Information Systems (G); Industrial Anthropology (A); Industrial Relations (S); International Relations of Regions (PO); Methodology (H); Organizational Behaviour (M); South African Urban History (H); Trade Unions (S); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

Southern African Cultural Studies (administered by the Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies) African Literature (Eng); African Music (A and ILAM); Afrikaans Literature in English Translation (A&N); Contemporary South African Ethnography (A); Cultural Studies (J) or (E); Language in Society and Education (L); Literacy (L); Methodology (H); Post-Colonialism (A&N and Eng); Religion in South Africa (A); Social Theory (S); South African Literature (A&N and Eng); Urban African Culture (H); Xhosa Literary Studies (AL); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

1. Students will be subject to the Regulations for Honours Degrees in the Faculty of Humanities (H.23 to H.37) except that the “alternate route to Honours”, provided in H.24.3 shall not be permitted.
2. Students will be required to write five papers, one of which will be a long essay.
3. Although the programmes are administered by different departments, students would register in a department in which they majored and would be required to take two papers (which may include a long essay) in that department.
4. The Dean of the Faculty in consultation with the head of the Department which administers the degree is responsible for approving the structure of papers for the degree and all other matters relating to the regulation of the degree.
5. No student will be admitted to a particular paper without the consent of the head of the Department in which the paper is being offered.
6. Assessment of individual papers will follow the rules of the department in which they are offered.
7. The degree will be the BA (Hons) degree or the BSocSc (Hons) degree in Development Studies (or in Gender Studies, or Industrial Society, or in Southern African Cultural Studies) in the Department.

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

Professor and Head of School

LN Strelitz, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Lond), PhD (Rhodes)

Deputy Head of School and Professor

AC Garman, BA (Wits), BA Hons (UKZN), MA (UKZN), PhD (Wits)

Deputy Head of School

C Kabwato, BA (University of Zimbabwe), MA (Rhodes)

Professor

J Prinsloo, BA (Hons)(Durban), STDip (UCT), MA (Lond), PhD (Wits)

Associate Professors

L Dalvit, Laurea (University of Trento, Italy), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

H Dugmore, BA (Wits), BA (Hons)(Wits), PG Dip Education (Wits) PhD (Wits)

LN Steenveld, BA (Hons)(Anglia Ruskin University), HDipJourn (Rhodes), PG Cert in Education (Brighton), MA (Rhodes), MA (University of North Carolina-Chapel Hill), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

P Boshoff, BA (Hons), PGDJMS (Rhodes), MA (Rhodes) PhD (Rhodes)

JE du Toit, BA (Hons), MA, Teaching Dip (UCT), PhD (Stellenbosch)

BD Garman, BSc (Hons)(Natal), MA (Rhodes)

Lecturers

R Amner, BJourn (Rhodes), MA (Rhodes)

H Gess, BA (Hons), HDipJourn (Rhodes), PGDHE (Rhodes)

J Gordon, Diploma in Fine Art (UCT)

S Kyazze, BA (Hons)(Makerere), MA (NYU)

S Mati MeD (UWC), MPhil (Stellenbosch)

S Pamphilon, BJourn (Rhodes), PGDip HE (Rhodes)

K Roux, BJourn (Rhodes), MA (Rhodes)

G Rennie, BA (UN), NDip Journ (Technikon Natal), MPhil (Stellenbosch)

A Schoon, BSc (UP), Dip in Film & Video (Technikon Pretoria), BA (Hons)(Wits), MA (Rhodes)

David Rabkin Project for Experiential Journalism

Editor: Grocott's Mail S MacLennan BMus (UKZN)

Highway Africa Centre

Director: C Kabwato BA (University of Zimbabwe), MA (Rhodes)

Public Service Accountability Monitor

Director: J Kruuse BA LLB (Rhodes)

Sol Plaatje Media Leadership Institute

Director: F Mdlongwa, Global MBA (Durham)

South African Reserve Bank Centre for Economics Journalism

Director: RL Hancocks, BCom (Hons)(Rhodes), PGDJMS (Rhodes), MCom Financial Markets (Rhodes)

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE MEDIA

DP requirements

- 100% attendance of all course meetings and events, including lectures, tutorials, practicals, tests and examinations.
- Submission of all practical and essay assignments by the due date and time.
- If unable to do any of the above, a student must apply for a Leave of Absence (LOA) and/or extension from the School Administration Manager.
- A student will not be permitted to continue with a course if they miss more than 20% of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment

Coursework: 62.5%. Introduction to Journalism = 37.5%, Introduction to Digital Media = 12.5%, Introduction to the Study of the Media = 12.5%
Exams: 37.5%. June exam = 12.5% and November exam = 25%

Supplementary exam: June result 40-49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES 1 (JMS1)

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: An introduction to Journalism and Media Studies comprising of the following modules: Introduction to the Theory and Practice of Journalism, Introduction to Digital Journalism

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES 2 (JMS2)

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: JMS1. There are 120 places in JMS2 – entry into JMS2 is not guaranteed. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance; a portfolio of journalistic work completed by students during their first year; tutors' reports and students' progress; an evaluative and biographical questionnaire and a critical reflection of media work undertaken in the course of the year. Furthermore, students wishing to apply for entry to JMS2 must complete a programme of journalistic work in order to meet the application criteria. NB: You will not qualify to enter JMS2 unless you have passed at least two other first year credits in addition to JMS1.

Course description: This course is divided equally into two streams, which are taught concurrently:

Media Production: A semester-long module in Broadcast Production and another semester-long module in Publication Production.

IsiXhosa for Journalism is a one-year course offered by the School of Languages. This course is compulsory for all students majoring in Journalism and Media Studies and must be taken during the second year of their degree.

DP requirements: Same as above. In addition it is a DP requirement that all JMS2 students complete 40 hours of observation work at an approved media organization in their second year (work done in JMS1 will not count).

Assessment

Media Studies: 50%

Introduction to Cultural Studies = 12.5%

Semiotics = 12.5%

Media Histories = 7.5%

Media Institutions = 7.5%

November exam = 10%

Media Production: 50%

No exam is written

Broadcast Production = 25%

Publication Production = 25%

Supplementary exam: June/November result 40-49% (or "None")

Sub-minimum for June: 50%

A candidate who fails to obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass and may not repeat Journalism and Media Studies 2. It is therefore strongly recommended that students who register for Journalism and Media Studies 2 also register for two other second year credits in order to ensure

that they still have two major options should they fail Journalism and Media Studies 2 or pass the year with a non-continuing pass.

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES 3 (JMS3)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: JMS2 + entry to Journalism and Media Studies 3 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Media Practice components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. Entry into the student's first-choice media specialisation is based on individual performance at Journalism and Media Studies 2 level as well as on written motivations and additional media experience.

Course description: Specialisation studies options: Design, Photojournalism, Radio, Television, Writing and Editing

Media Studies: Media Law and Ethics, Media and Society and Radical Discourses Online

DP requirements: Same as JMS1 and JMS2

Assessment:

Media Specialisation = 62.5% of year mark (50% for production and 12.5% for Theory of Practice)

Media Law and Ethics = 12.5%

Media and Society = 12.5%

Radical Discourses Online = 12.5%

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES 4 (JMS4)

Fourth-year, full-year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: JMS3 (students wishing to enter fourth year must have completed two third-year majors). Acceptance into a fourth-year media specialisation will be decided on the basis of performance, portfolio and written motivation and/or interview. Students who achieve below 60% for either their final JMS3 practical or Media Studies mark will jeopardise their chances of advancing into JMS4.

Course description: JMS4 consists of three courses, all of which are compulsory:

A Media Practice Specialisation (Design, Digital Media, Multimedia Storytelling, Television and Writing and Editing.

A Media Studies paper: Representation, Identity and Social Change.

A Media Intensive course in which students select

from a range of options related to media production or relevant media topics. This is offered in the fourth term.

DP requirements: Same as JMS1

Assessment: In order to complete Journalism and Media Studies 4, students must pass the Media Practice Specialisation and the Media Studies course and obtain a sub-minimum of 45% in the remaining Media Intensive course.

Media Practice Specialisation = 60%

Representation, Identity and Social Change = 20%

Media Intensive = 20%

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES (PGDIP JMS)

Fourth-year, full-year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in in any discipline. A rigorous selection process results in a maximum of 12 students being permitted entry to the Diploma programme for any one academic year.

Course description: The Diploma programme consists of praxis courses which aim to prepare students for careers as critical and skilled journalists in a digital era. Course content, which combines experiential and theoretical learning, is structured around extensive reading and writing in both journalistic and academic genres. The course is underpinned by the core values of media ethics, personal curiosity, professional initiative, collaborative learning and community engagement. A vacation internship is a requirement of the Diploma.

Assessment: Assessment is by portfolio

Introduction to Digital Journalism and Media Studies = 50%

The Digital Journalist at work in the World = 25%

Media Practice Specialisation = 25%

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MEDIA MANAGEMENT (PGDIP DMM)

Fourth-year, full-year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in in any discipline.

Course description: This course provides graduate students with specialised skills in the management of media. There are eight modules in specialised areas of media management; an experiential learning component involving a media management research

project and a further project relating to active participation in a media initiative.

Assessment

Media management contexts, policy and institutions = 10%

Media management and leadership = 10%

New technology and convergence = 10%

Media economics and financial planning = 10%

Human resource management = 10%

Markets, audiences and advertising = 10%

Managing media content = 10%

Circulation, distribution and transmission = 10%

Portfolio assignment = 20%

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ECONOMICS JOURNALISM (PGDIP EJ)

Fourth-year, full-year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in in any discipline.

Course description: This course, which is run part-time over two years, builds on the journalistic skills of participants by giving them the intellectual tools to report on issues and events in the economic arena in a way that improves their career prospects and deepens their understanding of business journalism. The programme consists of five modules. Four of the modules are subject-specific and each revolves around a week of lectures/seminars at Rhodes. The fifth module is a self-driven assignment.

Assessment:

Economics for Journalists (macro and micro) = 20%

Companies and Markets = 20%

Globalisation, International Trade and Development = 20%

Media and Society and Ethics = 20%

Self-driven assignment = 20%

All assignments must be completed in order for the candidate to pass.

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES HONOURS

Fourth-year, full-year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in humanities or social sciences.

Course description: Honours students will complete three compulsory papers, three elective papers and a research essay of 10-15 000 words.

Assessment:

Critical Social Theory (compulsory) = 15%

Critical Media Studies (compulsory) = 15%
 Critical Research Methods (compulsory) = 15%
 Three electives are to be chosen from the list of those offered in a year = 3 x 10%
 Research paper = 25%

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

MASTERS

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: The student has:

- obtained a good Honours degree or fourth-year in Journalism and Media Studies or related discipline;
- provided that a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours degree,
- provided that candidates satisfy the general regulations governing Master's degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.

Course description: An MA degree can be obtained by a 100% thesis or there are three routes for the MA Degree by course work and thesis:

Option A: First year coursework consists of three compulsory papers and two options. Second year thesis (30 – 50 000 words).

Compulsory courses (assessed by assignment and examination):

Critical Media Studies = 10%

Critical Social Theory = 10%

Critical Media Research Methods = 10%

Two options must be chosen from a list of courses each of which is worth 10%

Students then complete a thesis which counts 50% of the degree.

Thesis = 50%

Option B (course work which includes a Media Practice Project)

Compulsory courses (assessed by assignment and examination):

Critical Media Studies = 8%

Critical Social Theory = 8%

Critical Media research methods = 8%

Media Practice Project = 26%

Thesis = 50%

Option C (specialising in digital journalism)

This option is offered on a part-time basis subject to availability of resources)

Compulsory courses (assessed by assignment)

Digital Journalism Studies = 15%

Digital Media Economics = 15%

Audience and Narrative in Digital Times = 10%

Digital Media Research Methods = 10%

Thesis = 50%.

DOCTORATE IN JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

360 credits at NQF level 10

Entrance requirements: A Master's Degree in Humanities or Social Sciences

Course description: Doctoral studies are undertaken by full thesis and under the guidance of supervisors

LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES (SCHOOL OF)

Associate Professor of French Studies & Head of School

PK Mwepu, MA (Lubumbashi), PhD (UCT)

INTERDEPARTMENTAL COURSES

1. CULTURES AND LANGUAGES IN AFRICA (CLIA) 101 AND 102

These two courses are open to all undergraduates, can be taken independently of one another and will, if passed, result in a semester credit each.

PURPOSE OF CLIA 101 AND 102: To familiarise students with the relationships between societies, cultures, identities and languages in Africa; to give students the tools to think holistically and critically about a multicultural, intercultural and multilingual world.

OUTCOMES OF CLIA 101 AND 102: An understanding of the relationships between cultures, languages, societies and identities in Africa; an understanding of inter-, intra- and cross-cultural communication; an understanding of what it means to be a socially engaged African and global citizen.

CULTURES AND LANGUAGES IN AFRICA 101

Students will engage critically with the relationships between cultures and languages in Africa. In *CLIA 101* the focus will be on the functioning of African languages, in particular isiXhosa, in pre-colonial social contexts, on reciprocal influences in languages in Africa since the 18th century, on the introduction of Dutch, French, German and the classical languages (Latin and Ancient Greek) during the colonial period, and on the relationships between these languages, the indigenous languages, and the societies in which they are embedded, i.e. the process of creolization.

CULTURES AND LANGUAGES IN AFRICA 102

In *CLIA 102* the focus will be on language as a site of struggle and identity formation in Africa, with particular focus on works of isiXhosa scholarship, and other African intellectuals, on the rise of

Négritude in Francophone Africa, on German-speaking communities in Africa during the two World Wars, the German language and its role in the shaping of some South African identities during World War II, and on the appropriation of the classical languages (and translations thereof) in the shaping of some South African cultural identities. A study of selected South African texts will explore the cross-cultural tensions of pre-and post-1994 in South Africa. In addition, an analysis of visual media (e.g. soap operas, film and cartoons) will be used to explore language and multi-cultural communication (and miscommunication) in Africa.

2. MODERN FICTION

This is a one year non-initial course, presented by members of various language departments, for students who have already obtained two credits. See also Regulation H.13.1. As the course is designed primarily to give students of literature a greater appreciation of modern fiction, it is strongly recommended that students taking this course should also enrol for at least one course in a European language other than English or Afrikaans & Nederlands.

Major works of prose fiction written between 1850 and the present are studied in English translation. The course also introduces students to the intellectual and cultural currents within which these works were produced, and to relevant aspects of the structure of fiction. Lists of prescribed texts and recommended reading for the course are available from members of the Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies in the School of Languages. Paper 1 is written off in June.

Paper 1 (June)

Narrative theory

Text Study

Paper 2 (November)

The rise of contemporary fictional forms

Text study

The order of the two papers (Paper 1 and Paper 2) for Modern Fiction may vary from year to year.

SECTIONS IN THE SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES & LITERATURES

AFRICAN LANGUAGE STUDIES

Professor and NRF SARCHI Chair in the Intellectualisation of African Languages, Multilingualism and Education

RH Kaschula, BA(Hons), LLB, HDE, PhD(Rhodes)

Lecturer and Subject Head

BB Nosilela, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Stell), PGCE(UNISA)

Associate Professor

P Maseko, BA(Hons)(UWC), MA, PhD(Rhodes), PGDHE(Rhodes)

D Nkomo, BA(Hons)(UZ), MPhil, PhD(Stell), PGDHE(Rhodes)

Lecturers

NR Mazwi, BA(UNISA), BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Stell), PhD(Rhodes)

M Sam, BSc(Hons)(Fort Hare), MA(Rhodes)

isiXhosa at Rhodes is offered as both an additional language (second language) and first language (mother tongue). Both are three-year major courses which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases, more than one course is allowed as a credit for a degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Law, Education and Science.

isiXhosa 1, 2 and 3 mother tongue is offered to isiNguni (isiXhosa, isiNdebele, isiZulu, Siswati) language speakers. The isiXhosa mother tongue course takes a multi-disciplinary approach and should attract students from a variety of disciplines. It is also market driven and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. An isiXhosa for Journalism course forms part of Journalism and Media Studies at Rhodes and it equips students with discipline related mother tongue language skills. Students whose mother tongue is isiNguni but have not done any of these languages as a subject at school level are permitted to enrol for this course.

Presently the modules on offer are Human Language Technology, isiXhosa Orthography and Writing Skills, Translation Studies, Language

and Society, Cultural Studies, Literary Studies, Lexicography, as well as isiNguni Comparative Language Studies.

isiXhosa 1, 2 and 3 additional language courses aim to equip students with both linguistic and cultural competence so that they are able to cope in a multilingual and culturally diverse society. Students enrolled in these courses are exposed to themes that are appropriate to foster speaking, and understanding of the structure of the language. Furthermore, the students are introduced to various literary discourses, as well as to issues of inter- and cross-cultural communication. These are full year courses which are open to those students who have no prior knowledge of isiXhosa as well as those who have limited knowledge of the language provided that they have not matriculated in isiXhosa. Only in exceptional circumstances will students whose first language is isiXhosa be permitted to register for the course. Students who have passed isiXhosa as an additional language in the National Senior Certificate may be permitted to register for isiXhosa (additional language) 2 in their second year of study. Students who wish to do this are advised to consult with the Subject Head during their first year of study.

The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literary and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year:

Introduction to the sociolinguistics of the isiXhosa language, introduction to language planning with special reference to Africa, introduction to the various genres of literature, and study of selected isiXhosa literary works (abridged versions of isiXhosa novels are used for better understanding of the isiXhosa culture and use of language.)

Students will work on practical proficiency in speaking, listening, reading and writing the language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language. In addition isiXhosa 3 (additional language) students will do a research project which forms part of their oral exam.

Vocation specific isiXhosa courses can also be taken if you are studying Journalism, Pharmacy, Law or Education.

IsiXhosa for Journalism is a one-year course. This course is compulsory for all students majoring in Journalism and Media Studies and must be taken during the second year of their degree. If students fail the course at the end of this year, they will be allowed to repeat the course during their third year of study. The course must be completed before a student can graduate. Students who intend to graduate with a BJourn degree should note that the full course must be completed by the end of the third year of their Journalism and Media Studies major. Once the course has been passed, students can also proceed to isiXhosa 2. Such students will be allocated either to the Mother Tongue or Second Language stream, depending on their level of proficiency in isiXhosa. Students who plan to proceed to isiXhosa 2 in this way may apply to complete the isiXhosa for Journalism course during their first year.

The purpose of the IsiXhosa for Journalism course is to enable students to work confidently and sensitively as journalists in multilingual and multicultural environments. It achieves this goal by focusing on what it means to work as a journalist in the environment in which Rhodes University is based. Because isiXhosa is the primary language of communication for the majority of people in this context, the course focuses on strengthening students' ability to communicate in this language. This aspect of the course is designed to accommodate students with widely different proficiency levels in isiXhosa, from those who are fluent to those who have no experience in speaking the language. The course also assists students in strengthening their ability to reflect in an informed way on how journalism is produced and circulated in multicultural contexts. They do so by exploring cultural and linguistic questions and debates of relevance to the South African context, with particular reference to issues of relevance to environments in which isiXhosa is spoken. The knowledge students acquire in this way is, however, more widely applicable, strengthening their ability to engage with the languages and cultures that are of relevance to any work environment.

IsiXhosa for Pharmacy is a semester course that can be taken in either semester. It is taken during the fourth year of the pharmacy degree where students are required to interact, during their Community Experience Programme, with speakers of isiXhosa in Grahamstown and in other communities where isiXhosa is spoken. The purpose of the course is to give students language skills, specific to their vocation, to be able to cope during "patient-client" interviews in contexts where isiXhosa has to be spoken. This is a beginner course and other than basic literacy skills in English, there is no prior knowledge expected of isiXhosa from the students. During lectures the focus is in all four language learning skills (i.e. speaking, listening, reading and writing). Students are also provided with knowledge and skills which will be necessary for them to understand and interpret cultural issues embedded in isiXhosa communication, especially those specific in the context of medicine. Assessment is both formative and summative and in the form of orals that simulate contexts where language is used (or "On-site clinical examinations" – OSCEs) and reflective essays. Students are assessed throughout the duration of the course to evaluate whether they have accomplished the specific outcomes as given in the course.

Honours Degree in African Language Studies

Candidates with a three year major in an African Language or an equivalent will be permitted in this degree. This course is meant for both mother tongue and second language speakers. It is offered for the duration of a year for full time students and two years for part time students.

The course consists of seminars and essays covering a series of topics that include isiXhosa literature, Second Language Teaching and Curriculum Design, African Sociolinguistics, African Languages and Education, Language Planning, Intercultural Communication, Globalisation, African Languages and Language Planning, Translation Studies, Human Language Technology, Linguistic Theory, Research Methodology, Lexicography and Terminology Development, as well as Media Studies. Candidates will be required to do four papers and a research essay or five papers. They may choose to do joint Honours in African Language Studies and one/ two other courses or under the regulations of the

African Studies Programme (see Interdepartmental Studies) as may be deemed appropriate by the Head of Department.

Master's and Doctoral Degree in African Language Studies

This degree is offered by a thesis on any approved topic to full or part time students. It caters for candidates who hold a Post Graduate degree in any language related discipline. For more information please refer to (General Rules G.18 to G. 25).

AFRIKAANS AND NETHERLANDIC STUDIES

Lecturer and Subject Head

AF Vorster, BA (UPE), MA (Rhodes)

Lecturer

D Vermeulen, MA (Stellenbosch), PGCE (UNISA)

Afrikaans en Nederlands can be studied as a major subject in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases two, courses in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands are allowed as credits for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

**Please note: there will be no first-year intake for Afrikaans 1 as from 2019 until further notice.*

AFRIKAANS 1(P)

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: Usually a matric pass in Afrikaans First Additional Language. Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Subject Head.

Course description: Afrikaans 1(Professional) is a one-year course with the emphasis on the development of written and oral proficiency in Afrikaans as used in a professional environment. Afrikaans 1(P) will not necessarily be offered in any particular calendar year.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 50%; Exams 50%. Paper 1 (3 hours) is written off in June; Paper 2 (3 hours) is written off in November.

Supplementary exam: June/November result 35-49%
Sub-minimum for June: 35%

AFRIKAANS 1

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: Usually a matric pass in Afrikaans Home or First Additional Language. Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Subject Head.

Course description: This course introduces students to the academic study of prose, poetry and drama (including media texts). Specific focus areas such as gender, engaged literature, texts for film and television, popular fiction, the history of Afrikaans, ecology and postcolonialism are covered. Basic narratology is a fundamental part of the course.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 50%; Exams 50%. Paper 1 (3 hours) is written off in June; Paper 2 (3 hours) is written off in November.

Supplementary exam: June/November result 35-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS 2

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: Afrikaans 1

Course description: Afrikaans en Nederlands 2 builds on the knowledge and skills acquired in Afrikaans 1 and provides a historical overview of the development of Afrikaans literature. Additional focus areas such as those listed under Afrikaans 1 are explored. Students are introduced to Dutch language and literature as an invaluable and easily accessible entry point to the exploration of international culture and intellectual currents. Important developments in theoretical approaches to literature are also explored.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 50%; Exams 50%. Paper 1 (3 hours) is written off in June; Paper 2 (3 hours) is written off in November.

Supplementary exam: June/November result 35-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 35%

AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS 3

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: Afrikaans en Nederlands 2

Course description: In Afrikaans en Nederlands 3, the historical perspective is extended to include the most recent developments in Afrikaans literature. As in the previous two years, a number of focus areas are studied, thereby highlighting Afrikaans and Dutch literature's rich and varied engagement with all facets of human existence and contemporary reality.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 50%; Exams 50%. paper 1 (3 hours) and Paper 2 (3 hours) are written off in June; Paper 3 (3 hours) and Paper 4 (3 hours) are written off in November. Supplementary exam: June/November result 35-49% Sub-minimum for June: 35%

MODERN FICTION

For a description of this course, see the entry on Interdepartmental Studies.

HONOURS

Full-year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: 60% in Afrikaans en Nederlands 3

Course description: An Honours course in either Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands can be taken by students who satisfy the entrance requirements. Candidates usually take five papers chosen in consultation with the relevant lecturers from a range of topics provided by the Section. With the permission of the Subject Head, an independent research essay written in the course of the year may be substituted for one of the papers. The length of the research essay and the date by which it is to be submitted are laid down in the Faculty of Humanities rules.

Assessment: Coursework 50%; Exams 50%. All papers are written in November.

MASTER'S DEGREE BY EXAMINATION

2-year course (180 credits at NQF level 9)

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands is usually required. Candidates from other disciplines may be admitted on the discretion of the Subject Head and with the approval of the Dean of Humanities.

Course description: Candidates may work towards a Master's degree either by examination or by thesis, as recommended by the Subject Head. In consultation with the staff of the Section, candidates for the degree by examination are usually required to choose three areas for intensive research in Afrikaans and/or Dutch literature, language or literary theory. Although seminars are offered on the chosen topics, a large degree of independent research is required. A three-hour examination is written on each of the three topics. In addition, a short dissertation on an approved topic has to be handed in by the end of the second year of study.

Assessment: Exams 60%; dissertation 40%

MASTER'S DEGREE BY THESIS

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands is usually required. Candidates from other disciplines may be admitted on the discretion of the Subject Head and with the approval of the Dean of Humanities.

Course description: Candidates are required to submit a thesis comprising independent research on a topic which has been approved by the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Humanities.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY IN AFRIKAANS OR AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS

360 credits at NQF level 10

Candidates for this degree are required to submit a research dissertation on a topic approved by the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Humanities. Further information may be obtained from the Subject Head.

2. MODERN FICTION

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: at least 60 credits, i.e. a pass in at least two first-year subjects. (See Regulation H.3.1)

Course description: This course is designed primarily to give students a greater appreciation of modern world literature through the study of narrative fiction in English translation. While the emphasis is on prose works (novels and short stories), drama and film texts may also form part of the course, depending on the availability of staff to teach in these areas. By the end of the course, students will have been exposed to major works of

fiction from across the globe and have a knowledge of the most important influences on the literary traditions and currents of the past century, right up to the present.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; Exams count 60%: Paper 1 (3 hours) is written off in June; Paper 2 (3 hours) is written off in November.

Supplementary exam: None, unless last outstanding credit.

CHINESE STUDIES

Professor and Subject Head

Zhang Jun, BA and MA (Peking University),
PhD (Hong Kong University of Science and Technology).

Chinese Studies 1

Chinese Studies 1 is an introductory course that covers the study of the Chinese language and culture.

Chinese Studies 2

Chinese Studies 2 expands and refines the skills and content of CHI 1. CHI 1 is a prerequisite for CHI 2.

Chinese Studies 3

Chinese Studies 3 offers, in addition to an intensive focus on the Chinese language, an introduction to Chinese civilization and history. CHI 2 is a prerequisite for CHI 3.

Understanding China

Understanding China is a fifteen credit HEQSF level 6 course (i.e. formally called a semester long course at second year level) offered during the first semester. Understanding China combines an introduction to elementary Chinese language for practical purposes with an exploration of the key concepts, historical events and social processes for understanding China in the 21st century. This is a non-major course with no prerequisite requirements. Understanding China may be taken in the second or subsequent academic years (but not the first) provided that it may not be taken in a curriculum which includes any courses in Chinese Studies.

BA (Honours) in Chinese Studies

Students who choose to register for Honours in Chinese Studies have the following modules:

Compulsory core modules:

Paper 1: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese (Written)

Paper 2: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese (Spoken)

Paper 3: Research essay (10 000 words) on a topic relevant to Chinese Studies

Elective modules:

Paper 4: Chinese Philosophy

Paper 5: Chinese History

Paper 6: Classical Chinese

Paper 7: Business Mandarin Chinese

Paper 8: A module at Honours level in another discipline (at the discretion of the Head of the Chinese Studies Section)

CLASSICAL STUDIES

Lecturer and Subject Head

DSC Malamis, MA (Rhodes)

Lecturer

DJ van Schoor, MA (UCT)

The Classical Studies Division offers courses in three interrelated subjects: Classics, Classical Latin and Ancient Greek.

Classics is a two-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. The entry requirement for Classics 2 is a credit in either Classics 1 'Introduction to the Ancient World' or a full year credit in any other subject.

Introduction to the Ancient World (Classics 101/102)

This is a semesterised, one-year, self-contained course designed as a foundational and general introduction to the study of history, culture and some formative moments in human civilization. It may be included in degree/diploma curricula in most undergraduate programmes in the university. It is a useful, but not compulsory, prerequisite course for Classics 2. It offers an introduction to the Ancient World from the Neolithic Revolution to the rise of Civilization in Egypt and Mesopotamia through the Classical periods of Greece and Rome and up to

the rise of Christianity and Islam in Late Antiquity. Students are required to attend weekly tutorials, submit one essay per term and sit one exam per semester (exams counting 60% of final year mark).

IAW: Classics 101

This course takes up the origins of urbanization in Egypt and Mesopotamia and entails a study of Greek mythology, focussing on the Trojan War and the adventures of the wandering hero Odysseus, the world of the Early Eastern Mediterranean, the colonization of the West by the Greeks and their war with the Persians.

IAW: Classics 102

This course examines the daily life and great events of the Classical period at Athens, Alexander the Great and his campaigns, the war with Hannibal and the Rise and Fall of Rome as a world power, daily life and art at Pompeii, Gladiators and Spectacles of Death in the Early Empire and the rise of Christianity and Islam.

Classics 2 (CLA 201/202)

No previous study in Classics is required for entrance to this course. Classics 2, i.e. Classics 201/202, consists of a closer study of the history and great works of the Ancient World. It ranges in its specific content from close readings in Greek and Roman epic, tragedy, comedy and love poetry, to ancient philosophy, myth and religion, social and political history and Classical receptions. Modules on Bronze Age, African, Indian and Chinese civilisations may be included in the year's syllabus. Students are required to attend weekly tutorials, submit one essay per term and sit one exam per semester (exams counting 50% of final year mark).

Classics 3 (CLA 301/302)

Classics 2 or Latin 2 or Greek 2 is the requirement for this course. The syllabus for Classics 2 & 3 is on a revolving 2 year cycle so that Classics 2 & 3 students sit classes together. Classics 3 students, while studying the same content, are assessed differently and are set different assignments: one exam per semester (exams at 33.3% of final year mark), 4 essay assignments or two and a long essay or research project of 4000-5000 words. Weekly tutorials with the course lecturer account for 50% of the class mark.

Classics Honours

Five papers, by coursework and/or by research essay, tailored to the interests of the student, are written. Taught papers may cover individual Classical authors, literary genres, ancient history, religion, art and society, and are selected each year at the discretion of the staff in consultation with students. Students are encouraged to prepare at least one of their papers for publication. Classics Honours students have a lecturer designated as a personal tutor with whom they regularly meet.

MA in Classics

A student may take a Master's degree in Classics by full thesis.

Latin and Greek are three-year major subjects, which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. No previous knowledge of Latin is required to enter Latin 101 or of Greek to enter Greek 101.

Latin 1

This is a semesterised course, consisting of Latin 101 and Latin 102. Candidates who have passed Latin 101 and achieved at least 60% in Latin 102, or a rating of at least 5 in Latin in the National Senior Certificate may proceed to Latin 2.

Latin 101

This is a beginner's course, which offers mainly an introduction to Latin, including the reading of selected passages, translation from Latin to English and from English to Latin, and the study of various aspects of the Graeco-Roman world. It will also focus on developing students' general competence in language, especially through a study of the origins of English words and the acquisition of vocabulary.

Latin 102

A pass in Latin 101 will be required for entry to Latin 102. In terms of language the focus will be entirely on Latin, with continued reading of texts, translation both ways and study of aspects of Roman culture.

Latin 2

The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English, and English into Latin. A genre of Latin Literature and/or a period of Roman history.

Latin 3

The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English, and English into Latin. A genre of Latin literature and/or a period of Roman history. Texts for self-study.

Greek 1

This is a semesterised course in Ancient (i.e. Classical and/or Biblical) Greek, consisting of Greek 101 and Greek 102. Candidates who have passed Greek 101 and achieved at least 60% in Greek 102 may proceed to Greek 2.

Greek 101

This is a beginner's course, which offers an introduction to Greek, including the reading of selected passages, translation from Greek to English and from English to Greek, and the study of various aspects of the Greek world.

Greek 102

A pass in Greek 101 will be required for entry to Greek 102. There will be continued reading of texts, translation both ways and study of aspects of Greek culture, particularly in Classical Athens.

Greek 2

A 60% pass in Greek 102 will be required for entry to Greek 2. The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and English into Greek. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history.

Greek 3

The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and English into Greek. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history. Texts for self-study.

Greek and Latin Honours Courses

A paper in unseen translation.

A research essay of 8000-10,000 words.

Any three further papers selected from the following: Translation and exegesis of Greek and/or Latin texts. Greek and/or Roman History and culture.

MA in Greek and/or Latin

We accept candidates for the Master's degree in Greek and Latin literature, language or history. This can be examined by full thesis.

FRENCH STUDIES**Associate Professor and Head of the School of Languages & Literatures**

PK Mwepu MA (Lubumbashi), PhD (UCT)

Associate Professor

AN Mukenge MA (UCT), PhD (UKZN)

Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

French is a three-year major subject which can be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

French Preliminary (FRE 1P)

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: No prior knowledge of the language is required. (Students with 'O'-level French or a pass in French in the National Senior Certificate examination may not take this course. Mother-tongue speakers of French may not take this course.)

Course description: This is a beginner's course designed to enable students who have not taken French as a National Senior Certificate subject to acquire the essential elements of the language and culture.

Students who obtain 70% or more in French 1P may proceed to French 1.

DP requirements: 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 30%; Paper 1 (June) + Oral exam (June) count 20%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 30%.

Supplementary exam: None, unless last outstanding credit.

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

French 1 (FRE 1)

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements:

Prerequisites: A pass in French in the National Senior Certificate examination or a pass in an equivalent examination, or a final mark of 70% or more at French 1P level. Students with 'O'-level and 'A'-level French may take this course. At the discretion of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course.

Course description: This is an intermediate course for students who have studied French at school. This course aims to reinforce and develop oral and written language skills, and to provide an introduction to the study of literary texts, as well as translation.

DP requirements: 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; Paper 1 (June) + Oral exam (June) count 20%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 40%.

Supplementary exam: None, unless last outstanding credit.

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

French 2 (FRE 2)

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: FRE 1 or an equivalent qualification

Course description: This course further develops language skills by means of translation and other linguistic activities. Course modules include: French for tourism; French for commerce; Francophone culture; Francophone cinema. French-language novels, poetry and plays mainly from the 20th and 21st centuries are studied. At the discretion of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course.

DP requirements: 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; Paper 1 (June) counts 20%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 40%.

Supplementary exam: None, unless last outstanding credit.

Sub-minimum for June: None

French 3 (FRE 3)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: FRE 2 or an equivalent qualification

Course description: This course offers advanced translation and further develops spoken and written language skills. Course modules include: French for tourism; French for commerce Francophone cinema. French literature from the 17th to the 21st century is studied. At the discretion of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course.

DP requirements: 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; Paper 1 (June) counts 12%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Paper 4 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 48%.

Supplementary exam: None, unless last outstanding credit.

Sub-minimum for June: None

FRENCH HONOURS

Fourth-year, full-year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: at least 60% for FRE 3 or equivalent qualification

JOINT FRENCH HONOURS

Fourth-year, full-year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: at least 60% for FRE 3 or equivalent qualification. Students may combine either two (or three) taught papers in French Studies with three (or two) papers from another subject at Honours level.

Course description: For full Honours, the examination consists of four written papers and one oral examination;

Paper 1 (compulsory) Translation into and from French.

Papers 2 to 4 Candidates may choose three study periods or authors. These authors or genres may be chosen from the Medieval period to the present day, depending on staff availability and interests. Alternatively, candidates may replace up to two literary study periods or authors with papers which focus on contemporary Francophone culture as mediated through film and/or French for Commerce and Tourism and/or French for Pedagogical purposes. Study areas will be chosen in consultation with French Studies staff and need to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.

Paper 5 – Oral examination Detailed analysis of a literary text chosen from one of the periods studied, or in the case of the Contemporary France / French for Commerce and Tourism / French for Pedagogical purposes modules, a presentation on a related topic. In addition, candidates doing a full French Honours will be required to write a research essay of no more than 10 000 words. The subject will be chosen in

consultation with French Studies staff and needs to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.

Assessment for Full Honours: Coursework counts 50%; Research essay + Paper 1 (Translation) + Paper 2 (Chosen Topic) + Paper 3 (Chosen Topic) + Paper 4 (Chosen Topic) + Oral exam count 50%. All exams take place in November.

Assessment for Joint Honours: Coursework counts 50%; Paper 1 (Translation) + Paper 2 (Chosen Topic [+ Paper 3 (Chosen Topic) if the candidate is taking 3 papers in French and 2 in the other subject] + Oral exam count 50%. All exams take place in November. One of the Chosen Topics may be replaced by a research essay of no more than 10 000 words. The subject will be chosen in consultation with French Studies staff and needs to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum for June: None

Masters (French)

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: at least 60% for the Honours research essay and at least 60% for French Honours overall. For further information, please consult French Studies staff.

Course description: The course will consist of a thesis, the subject of which must be approved by the Head of French Studies and by the Faculty of Humanities.

Doctorate (French)

360 credits at NQF level 10

Entrance requirements: at least 60% for Masters (French)

Course description: The course will consist of a thesis, the subject of which must be approved by the Head of French Studies and by the Faculty of Humanities.

Modern Fiction and Cultures & Languages in Africa (CLIA 101 and CLIA 102)

For a description of these courses, please refer to the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

GERMAN STUDIES

Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

U Weber, Staatsexamen I (Bonn), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer

N Engelbrecht, MA (Stell), MA (Leipzig)

German Studies is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. In the literature and cultural studies sections the medium of instruction and examining is primarily English, though texts have to be read and studied in German. Cultural studies at second and third-year as well as Honours level can be taught concurrently; assessment will be appropriate to the year of study. One, or in some cases two courses in German Studies are allowed as credits for degree and diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Science and Law. As both staff members of the German Studies Section are Goethe Institute accredited examiners, students who have proven proficiency in German as a foreign language will be given the option to sit additional examinations set by the Goethe Institute in Germany at B1, B2 or C1 level.

German Studies 1

This is an introductory language and cultural studies (Landeskunde) course for students who have no prior knowledge of German. Students who have obtained a matric pass (or equivalent thereof) may proceed directly to German 2 after consultation with a member of staff.

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Text analysis, cultural studies (Landeskunde)

German Studies 2

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Cultural studies (Landeskunde)

Paper 3 Literature

German Studies 3

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Cultural studies (Landeskunde)

Paper 3 Translation

Paper 4 Literature

German Studies Honours

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Cultural Studies (Landeskunde; incl. diachronic and/ or synchronic aspects of German)

Paper 3 Literature

Paper 4 –Translation theory, practice and methodology

Paper 5 In consultation with members of staff, a candidate may choose to submit a typewritten research essay of not more than 10 000 words.

Master's Degree or Doctoral Degree: By thesis only.

Details are available from members of staff.

Modern Fiction

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

LAW FACULTY

(COURSE DESCRIPTIONS)

Associate Professor & Dean

R Krüger, BA (Hons), LLB (Potch), PGDHE, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor & Deputy Dean

LO Juma, LLB (Nairobi), Dip.Law (Kenya), LLM (Pennsylvania), MA (Notre Dame), LLD (Fort Hare)

Associate Professor

J Campbell, BA, LLB (UCT), LLM (Rhodes)

GB Glover, BA, LLB, PhD (Rhodes)

EH van Coller, LLB, LLM (UFS), LLM (Utrecht), PGDHE (Rhodes), LLD (UJ)

Senior Lecturers

GE Davies, BA, LLB (Rhodes)

SEH Driver, BA, LLB (Rhodes), LLM (UNISA), PGDHE (Rhodes)

HJ Kruuse, BA, LLB, LLM, PGDHE (Rhodes)

B Padayachi, BA (UNISA), LLB (Natal)

S Rahim, B.Juris, LLB (UPE), LLM (UNISA)

CA Renaud, BA (Hons), LLB (Rhodes), LLM (Stell)

Lecturers

P Jabavu, NDIP (WSU), BTech: Journalism (TUT), LLB (WITS)

TN Mashinini, LLB, LLM (UP)

N Mzolo, BA, LLB, LLM (UKZN)

Professor Emeritus

JR Midgley, BCom, LLB (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

RB Mqoke, BJuris, LLB (Fort Hare), LLM (Rhodes), LLD (Fort Hare)

ID Schäfer, BA, LLB (Rhodes), PhD (Natal)

Research Associate

CJC McConnachie, BA, LLB (Rhodes), BCL, MPhil, DPhil (Oxon)

C Vidal, LLB (De Lleida), LLM (Georgetown), MILE (Bern)

Visiting Professors

N Dambuza, Justice, B.Proc, LLM (Natal), LLM (Tulane)

CM Plasket, BA, LLB, LLM (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

WH Trengove, SC, BCom, LLB (Pret)

Visiting Fellow

M Boqwana, BA, LLB (Rhodes)

Manager: Administration

A Comley

Faculty Librarian

S Gule BTech LIS (UNISA)

Librarian

Vacant

BACHELOR OF LAWS

The Faculty of Law offers all the courses required for the LLB degree, and in addition offers courses for degree curricula in other faculties.

Legal Theory is a three-year major subject in the BA, BCom, BSc, BBUSci and BSocSc curricula. It involves study of key fields of South African public and private law, and forms an important stepping-stone towards the LLB degree.

Legal Theory is allowed as a credit for degrees in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. Credits in Legal Theory courses exempt a candidate from the equivalent papers in the LLB curriculum.

Legal Theory 1

(two semester courses, two degree credits)

Paper 1: Foundations of Law.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Introduction to Law.

See the course structure set out below.

Legal Theory 2

(four semester courses, two degree credits)

Paper 1: Legal Interpretation.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Constitutional Law A.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Constitutional Law B.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Law of Persons.

See the course structure set out below.

Legal Theory 3

(six semester courses, two degree credits)

Paper 1: Law of Contract A.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Law of Life Partnerships

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Law of Property A.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Law of Contract B.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 5: Law of Property B.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 6: Legal Pluralism.

See the course structure set out below.

Administrative Law

(one year-course; one three-hour paper (50%), class work (50%), November examination)

Background and introduction to administrative law; the sources of administrative law, the constitutional right to just administrative action; introduction and overview of the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (PAJA); administrative action in terms of PAJA; judicial review of administrative action and the requirements of lawfulness, reasonableness and procedural fairness, the right to written reasons; procedural issues and remedies.

Alternative Dispute Resolution

(one semester course; one two-hour paper (50%), practical examination (20%), journal (20%), coursework (10%), November examination)

Negotiation and mediation theory and the development of practical skills; arbitration legislation, and rules and enforcement.

Civil Procedure A

(one semester course; one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Courts with civil jurisdiction; Locus Standi; Action Proceedings from letter of demand to trial in both the High Court and the Magistrates' Court including commonly utilized interlocutory applications such as Summary Judgment, Exceptions and Applications to Strike Out.

Civil Procedure B

(one semester course; one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Applications in both the High Court and the Magistrates' Court; Applications relating to Insolvency and related matters for example Sequestration, Voluntary Surrender, Rehabilitation and Liquidation of Companies; Other Specific Applications, for example, Interdicts, Anton Piller Orders, Matrimonial Matters (Rule 43) and Curatorship;; Provisional Sentence; Appeals, Reviews and Rescission of Judgment; Costs; and Enforcement of Judgments and Administration Orders.

Commercial Law 1

**(two semester courses: COL 101 and COL 102)
COL101 (One three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)**

Introduction to the nature of law; general principles of the law of contract, including special contracts; the administration of deceased estates; the law of insolvency.

COL102 (One three-hour paper (70%), class work(30%), November examination)

Introduction to business entities; company law and corporate governance; financial markets and black economic empowerment. A credit in or a valid DP certificate for COL101 is required for entry into COL102.

Commercial Law 2

(two semester courses: COL 201 and COL202)

COL201 (two two-hour papers (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Paper 1: Labour Law; real and personal security; banking law and payment instruments.

Paper 2: Intellectual property and franchising; credit agreements and consumer protection; commercial crimes.

COL 202 (two two-hour papers (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Paper 1: Special contracts: sale, lease and carriage.

Paper 2: Insurance; competition law; business ethics; alternative dispute resolution.

Company Law A

(one semester course; one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The nature, formation, dissolution and functional aspects of Companies and Close Corporations from a legislative, case law and practical perspective.

Company Law B

(one semester course; one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The winding-up of companies; the law relating to mergers and acquisitions of companies; securities regulations, initial public offerings and private placements; legislation and rules governing black economic empowerment; and an introduction to corporate governance.

Competition Law

(one semester course; one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The objects of, and rationale for, competition law; a brief history of the regulation of competition; restrictive horizontal practices: legislation and

cases; restrictive vertical practices: legislation and cases; the abuse of dominance: legislation and cases; institutions, procedures and remedies.

Constitutional Law A

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Sources of constitutional law, key constitutional concepts in context of major constitutional models and a detailed analysis of the structures of government created by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

Constitutional Law B

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The protection of human rights in a constitutional state, judicially and extra-judicially, with an emphasis on the former; application and interpretation of the Bill of Rights; consideration of selected rights protected in the Bill of Rights (chapter 2 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996).

Constitutional Litigation

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)

Litigating under the Constitution, the rules of the Constitutional Court; constitutional remedies; consideration of selected constitutional law topics at advanced level.

Criminal Law A

(one semester course: one two hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Introductory concepts and definitions; fundamental values, functions and objectives underlying criminal justice; general principles of criminal liability including: conduct, unlawfulness, causation, capacity and fault; defences; forms of participation in criminal activities; liability for inchoate crimes.

Criminal Law B

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Selected common-law and statutory crimes.

Criminal Procedure A

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Structure of the courts; jurisdiction; search procedure; arrest; summonses; written notice; bail; indictments and charge sheets; essentials of a valid charge; defects etc. cured by evidence; amendments of charges; pleas of guilty and not guilty; conduct of criminal trials; verdict and sentence; automatic review and right of appeal.

Criminal Procedure B

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Who prosecutes; private prosecutions; stopping and withdrawal of prosecutions; prosecutions to be brought within reasonable time; search and seizure; legal representation; disclosure by prosecution; indictments in High Court; exemptions, exceptions, provisos; duplication of convictions; further particulars; autrefois convict and autrefois acquit; plea and sentence agreements; prosecution of corporations; appeals; taking of evidence under s205 of Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977; inquests; extradition; asset forfeiture.

Environmental Law

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Scope and definition of environmental law; legal norms and standards underpinning environmental management; sources and history; overview of international environmental law; the Constitution and environmental legislation; administration and enforcement; environmental management tools; selected topics: natural resources and conservation management.

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)

The study of different approaches to ethical decision-making in the legal context; the purpose and function of ethics in the legal profession; the sources and content of legal ethical rules, including regulation of the profession; the kinds of ethical dilemmas which lawyers and judges face, and issues relating to professional negligence.

Foundations of Law

(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Part A: Roman law; sources of law (common law,

legislation, judicial precedent, custom, indigenous law, and the Constitution)

Part B: The structure of the courts; dispute resolution methods; the legal profession; elementary outline of criminal procedure; elementary outline of civil procedure.

International Human Rights and Humanitarian Law

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%) class work (40%), June examination)

History and nature of international human rights law; selected human rights in international law; enforcement of international human rights law standards; international humanitarian law.

International Trade Law

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The origin and evolution of international trade; general concepts and principles; the United Nations Convention on the International Sale of Goods; the law of the World Trade Organization.

Introduction to Conveyancing

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

An introduction to the practice and procedure of the Deeds Registries Office.

Introduction to Law

(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Part A: Nature of law; law and justice; rights and duties; introduction to the legal systems of the world. Part B: Divisions of law: criminal law; contract; delict.

IsiXhosa

(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%, second semester) (Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations.)

A discipline-specific introduction to isiXhosa language and culture. Communication skills developed and cultural knowledge imparted essential in lawyer-client interactions.

Jurisprudence

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%)

class work (40%), November examination)

An introduction to the major schools of legal philosophy (with reference to South African legal philosophers who align themselves with these schools) and an overview of the core jurisprudential debates that have preoccupied legal philosophers from ancient to modern times.

Labour Law

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The legal framework for the regulation of labour relations in South Africa in context; basic conditions of employment; individual labour law – contracts, transfer, dismissal and unfair labour practices and dispute resolution; employment equity, collective labour law – freedom of association, organisational rights, collective bargaining and its regulation, industrial action.

Law of Agency, Insurance and Credit Agreements

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Agency: Agency power and authority; the rights and duties of principals and agents; the relationships between principals and agents and third parties. Insurance: sources; essential elements; insurable interest; duty of disclosure; warranties; risk; loss; subrogation; over-insurance; under-insurance. Credit Agreements: a review of the National Credit Act.

Law of Banking and Payments

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The law of negotiable instruments and cheques; the law relating to credit cards and electronic financial transactions; the law of documentary credits; exchange control regulations; an introduction to the Financial Intelligence Centre Act of 2001; measures for the detection and prevention of money laundering; an overview of banking regulation and the role of the Reserve Bank.

Law of Contract A

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The historical antecedents of South African contract law; theories of contracts; the essentials of a valid

contract, including capacity, consensus (offer, acceptance, mistake, misrepresentation, duress, undue influence), legality (statutory, common law, the influence of the Constitution), possibility of performance and formalities.

Law of Contract B

(one semester course: one two hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Types of contractual terms, interpretation of contracts; rectification; alteration of contractual obligations; cession; suretyship; performance; breach; remedies.

Law of Copyright and Trade Marks

(one semester course: one two-hour paper, (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Registration of trade marks; transactions involving trade marks; infringement of trade marks; domain names and the internet; requirements for the subsistence of copyright; transactions involving copyright; infringement of copyright; copyright and the internet; and counterfeit goods.

The Law of Delict

(one year-course; one three-hour paper (50%); class work (50%) November examination)

General Principles and elements of delictual liability in terms of the *actio legis Aquiliae*, the action for pain and suffering and the *actio iniuriarum*; forms of strict liability in terms of common law; liability imposed by statute (Road Accident Fund Act, Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, Consumer Protection Act); prescription of claims; delictual remedies and quantification of damages.

Law of Evidence A

(one semester course: one two hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Introductory terminology; the course of the trial; burden and standard of proof; judicial notice; opinion evidence; documentary; real and machine-generated evidence.

Law of Evidence B

(one semester course: one two hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Informal admissions; confessions; formal admissions; private privilege; state privilege; hearsay; previous consistent statements; similar fact evidence; entrapment; unconstitutionally obtained evidence.

Law of Life Partnerships

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Evolution of the traditional concept of family and marriage; influence of the Constitution and international law; legal status of religious marriages; development of the law with respect to same-sex life partnerships and domestic partnerships; engagement; legal requirements for a valid marriage; void and voidable marriages; consequences of marriage in and out of community of property; antenuptial contracts; calculation of accrual; divorce and maintenance; changing trends in family law evident in recent Constitutional Court decisions.

Law of Partnerships and Trusts

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The nature, formation, dissolution and functional aspects of sole proprietorships, co-operatives, partnerships and trusts from a legislative, case law and practical perspective.

Law of Patents, Designs and Geographical Indications

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Nature and contents of patents; patentable subject matter and exclusions; patent ownership and exploitation; patent application procedure; infringement of patents; scope of design monopoly; design ownership; exploitation and procedure; infringements of designs; protection of geographical indications; legal regulation of geographical indications; geographical indications and dispute settlement.

Law of Persons

(one semester course: one two hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

General concept of legal personality: how it begins and ends and the rights and duties associated with it. Legal principles that affect legal status: domicile, age, mental illness, prodigality, change of sex. Protection of children in terms of the Children's Act 38 of 2005.

Law of Property A

(one semester course: one two-hour paper

(70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Meaning, function and scope of property law; definition, characteristics and classification of things; distinction between real and personal rights; general principles, limitation, and acquisition and protection of ownership.

Law of Property B

(one semester course: one two hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Possession; servitudes (definition and classification; creation, termination and enforcement); and real security (mortgage, pledge, notarial bonds, tacit hypothecs, lien).

Law of Sale and Lease

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Sale: the essential elements; passing of ownership; risk and benefit; conditional sales; residual obligations of the seller and remedies of the buyer; residual obligations of the buyer; sales affected by statute.

Lease: essential elements; types of leases; the rights and duties of lessors and lessees; the impact of the Constitution and various statutory enactments on leases; renewal; termination; lessee's rights in regard to improvements.

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The scope of succession; intestate succession; executing wills; the contents of wills; collation; succession by contract; and administration of deceased estates including deceased insolvent estates.

Law of Tax and Estate Planning

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Selected material provisions of the Income Tax Act No. 58 of 1962, including the "gross income definition"; allowable trade deductions, and certain special deductions; general and specific anti-avoidance provisions; use of trusts in estate planning; introductory fundamental principles of capital gains tax; introductory fundamental provisions of the Value-Added Tax Act No. 89 of 1991; donations tax.

Legal Accounting

(one semester course: one two- hour paper, (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The general principles of accounting with special emphasis on Trust Accounts.

Legal Interpretation

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Statutory Interpretation: Nature and classification of enacted law in South Africa; overview of theories of statutory interpretation; interpretive methods; impact of the Constitution on statutory interpretation. Precedent and Adjudication: Legal method and legal reasoning; analysis of court judgments (with emphasis on ratio decidendi and obiter dictum).

Legal Pluralism

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), classwork (30%), November examination)

Meaning and challenges of legal pluralism; origins and evolution of legal pluralism in South Africa; history and application of customary law in the legal system; the bill of rights and customary/religious normative systems; marriage laws in comparative perspective (African customary, Hindu, Muslim and Jewish normative systems); settlement of disputes in plural legal settings; and selected topics on legal pluralism.

Legal Practice

(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%), first or second semester) (Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations.)

File and case management, consultation, interviewing, communication, and drafting skills. The emphasis is on the practical application of the law through prescribed work at the Law Clinic, practical exercises and assignments, the aim of which is to draw together and apply the legal knowledge acquired in academic studies.

Legal Skills

(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%), first semester, carrying over into beginning of second semester) (Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations.)

Research skills, including electronic resources;

regulation of the legal environment; writing skills; numeracy skills; applied logic and critical reasoning; and structure and delivery of legal argument, including heads of argument and mooting.

Public International Law

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Sources; international and municipal law; international personality; territory; jurisdiction; law of the sea; state responsibility; human rights; treaties; use of force; international institutions.

The Law of Obligations in a Global Context

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Introduction to comparative private law; contract law in a global and comparative context; the rise of consumer protection; the law of unjustified enrichment; and alternative perspectives on the law of obligations.

Research Paper

(two semester courses: assessed at the end of the year)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations)

LLB candidates are permitted to complete a research essay in a topic of their choice, subject to the

availability of a suitable supervisor and the approval of the Dean. The paper will count for two elective credits. Students will be asked to indicate their intention to undertake this elective in the fourth term of their penultimate year of study. The detailed essay on the approved topic must be submitted by the end of the third week of the fourth term of the final year.

International Moot Competition (one semester course; assessed at the end of the year)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations)

Students who have participated in the African Human Rights Moot Court Competition, or any other international mooting competition, are permitted with the approval of the Dean to present the work done for this competition, as well as an analysis of their experiences of being involved in such a competition, in coherent written form for examination in accordance with the requirements laid down by the Faculty. A candidate may obtain only one elective credit for participation in a moot competition, irrespective of the number of times a candidate participates.

MANAGEMENT

Head of Department

TL Amos, BSocSc (Hons)(Economics), BSocSc (Hons)(Psychology), MSocSc (Rhodes)

Professor

L Louw, BCom (Hons), MCom, DCom(UPE)

Raymond Ackerman Chair of Business

Administration, Deputy Dean and Professor

Senior Lecturers

A L Antoni PhD (NMU)

MJ Louw, BA (UPE), B&A (Hons), MBA (Stell)

Lecturers

M Maritz, BCom (Hons), PGDHE (Rhodes), IIBA

S Sha, BCom (Hons), MCom (Rhodes)

Visiting Professor

T Jackson, BSc Econ (Wales), MA (Keele), PhD (Henley Management College, Brunel), PGCert (Keele)

Senior Research Associate

C-H Mayer, MA, Doctorate (Göttingen), PhD (Rhodes)

Management is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. It is also possible to take Management as a major subject in the BSc, BSocSc and BJourn degrees. In addition, one, or in some cases, two, courses in Management are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Science. The BBusSc degree in the Department of Management is designed to equip students to pursue a career in Management. Normally a candidate will only be admitted to Management 2 if a credit has been obtained in Accounting 1. A candidate will normally be admitted to Management 3 only if credit has been obtained in Accounting 1, Economics 1, and either one of Mathematics 1, or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D.

Students will normally be refused admission to any course offered by the Department after the second week of the start of the course.

Management 1 consists of two half-credit modules:

MAN 101 and MAN 102. MAN 101 and MAN 102 constitute the first-year course for candidates who wish to major in Management.

The Man 1 (Man 101 and 102) course is seen as an undergraduate introductory course in business

management. The purpose of the course is to equip students with knowledge of management in the South African business environment.

MAN 101 (One two-hour paper)

This Module focuses on the world of business management, the role of an entrepreneur and manager in the South African business environment, and managerial competencies. Further the module focuses on the general management tasks of planning, organising, leading and controlling.

MAN 102 (One two-hour paper)

This Module continues to focus on the business organisation and management, and explores managing in various contexts which includes marketing management, financial management, operations management, human resource management and purchasing and supply chain management.

Management 2 consists of the following four papers:

MAN 211 (One two-hour paper)

Human Resource Management A:

The human resource management function with emphasis on human resource planning, staffing, compensation, labour relations, training and development, performance management, human resource information technology and international human resource management maintenance.

MAN 212 (One two-hour paper)

Supply Chain Management:

An overview of operations and supply chain management with an emphasis on the concepts of supply chain strategy, integrated logistics, inventory, quality and quality tools, forecasting and supply chain management challenges and future trends.

MAN 213 (One two-hour paper)

Principles of Marketing A:

The principles of Marketing which includes – the marketing concept, the marketing mix with specific emphasis on product, price, place and promotion decisions; an introduction to marketing research; an introduction to consumer behaviour; and segmentation, targeting and positioning.

MAN 214 (One two-hour paper)

Financial Management A:

The goal of Financial Management, financial statements, ratio analysis and working capital management.

MANAGEMENT 3 consists of the following four papers:

MAN 311 (One three-hour paper)

Human Resource Management B:

Organisational behaviour, with the emphasis on understanding the behaviour and leadership of people in the organisation; labour relations, with the emphasis on South African labour relations systems and management.

MAN 312 (One three-hour paper)

Strategic Management:

A study of the principles of strategic management, in accordance with the constraints and opportunities imposed by both internal and external environmental factors.

MAN 313 (One three-hour paper)

Principles of Marketing B:

Building on the Principles of Marketing A, this course focuses on the following topics – marketing research, consumer behaviour, brand management, international marketing, marketing communications, services marketing, social and digital marketing.

MAN 314 (One three-hour paper)

Financial Management B:

Building on Financial Management A, this course focuses on the investment and finance decisions;

The Department reserves the right to teach Papers 1 - 4, which constitute MAN 2, in any combination in each of the two semesters; similarly, to teach Papers 1 - 4, which constitute MAN 3, in any combination in each of the two semesters.

Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) in the Department of Management

Students can register for one of two options:

1. B.Com (Hons) Management/Management 4 (BBS4)
2. B.Com (Hons) Management: Financial Management

1. B.Com (Hons) Management/Management 4 (BBS4)

This honours degree option consists of the following 3 compulsory papers:

Paper 1: Strategic Management

Paper 2: Financial Management

Paper 8: Research

And any 2 papers out of the following:

Paper 3: Human Resource Management

Paper 4: Strategic Marketing

Paper 7: Project Management

Admission requirements

A degree with a major in Management or equivalent.

A credit should be obtained for all relevant Management courses with an aggregate of 60%.

Admission however remains at the discretion of the Department of Management.

2. B.Com (Hons) Management: Financial Management

This option consists of the following 5 compulsory papers:

Paper 1: Strategic Management

Paper 2: Financial Management

Paper 5: Investment Management 1

Paper 6: Investment Management 2

Paper 8: Research

Admission requirements

A degree with a major in Financial Management (equivalent to Management 314). A credit should be obtained for all relevant Management courses with an aggregate of 60% as well as a minimum of 60% for Financial Management. Admission however remains at the discretion of the Department of Management.

3. Paper Content

Paper 1: Strategic Management

The aim of this course is to enable students to think strategically and be aware of the importance of ethical principles, values and responsible corporate citizenship. Topics include:

- Strategy, stakeholders and strategic direction
- Strategic analysis
- Strategy development and formulation
- Strategy implementation control

Paper 2: Financial Management

The aim of the course is to enable students to

ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS - MANAGEMENT

understand and implement financial management strategies to enhance organisational performance. Topics include:

- Capital structure and the cost of capital
- Sources of finance
- Capital budgeting
- The dividend decision
- Valuation of organisations
- Working capital management
- Mergers and Acquisitions

Paper 3: Human Resource Management

The aim of this course is to enable students to initiate and manage organisational change and development. Topics include:

- The skills, task and role of an organisational consultant
- Organisational development (OD)
- Organisational diagnosis
- Organisational development interventions
- Learning Organisations
- Knowledge and intellectual capital

Paper 4: Strategic Marketing

The aim of this course is to enable students to solve contemporary topical marketing problems.

Topics include:

- International Marketing
- Consumer Behaviour
- Brand Management
- Marketing Research
- Customer Relationship Management (CRM)
- B2B Marketing
- Services Marketing
- E-Marketing
- Integrated Marketing Communications (IMC)

Paper 5 & 6: Investment Management 1 & 2

The aim of this course is to enable students to understand the investment environment, the risks involved in managing investments and enable students to compile and manage an investment portfolio taking into account the relevant risk management techniques.

Topics include:

- Value, return and risk
- Equity fundamental analysis and investment alternatives
- Investment in fixed-income securities
- Introduction to risk and financial risk
- Risk assessment techniques

- Specific types of risk
- The use of financial instruments in risk management
- Portfolio risk management

Paper 7: Project Management

Project management is the discipline of leading, planning, organising, and managing resources to bring about the successful completion of specific project goals and objectives.

The aim of this course is to familiarise and empower students to lead project teams, and to manage projects in the workplace, using a clearly defined and powerful set of knowledge resources, tools and techniques, while adding value to the overall organisational objectives.

Topics include:

- Introduction to Project Management, Knowledge Areas and Process Groups
- Project, Program and Portfolio Selection
- Project Leadership, Management and Team Selection
- Project Scope, Time, Cost and Quality Management
- Project Stakeholder, Procurement, Communication, Human Resource and Risk Management
- Project Management Tools and Techniques

Paper 8: Research

The aim of the course is to enable students to conduct research independently within a team.

Topics include:

- Identify a research project
- Write a research proposal
- Conduct a literature review
- Analyse and explain research results in a meaningful manner
- Write up the research in the form of a 5000 word research paper

Note 1

The Department of Management reserves the right to offer the papers in no particular order from academic year to year.

Note 2

The Department also permits students to register for either 40% or 60% Management Honours. 60% Honours candidates are required to read any two of the listed papers in addition to Paper 7 (Research), the Research Paper. 40% Honours candidates are required to read any two of the listed papers,

ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS - MANAGEMENT

excluding Paper 7 (Research). The 60% or 40% option is only available to those registering for the BCom (Hons) Management, and BCom (Hons) Management: Financial stream.

Degree credit requirements

50 % or more is required for each of the papers for which candidates are registered in order to satisfy the requirements for the honours degree.

Course Admission Prerequisites

Management 102	Management 101 (see comment below)
Management 2	Management 101 and 102; Accounting 1
Management 3	Economics 1, Management 2, Mathematics 1C or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D
Management 3 (Marketing)	Management 213 (Marketing)
Management 3 (Finance)	Management 214 (Financial Management) and Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D
Management 3 (Human Resource Management)	Management 211 (Human Resource Management)
Honours/ Management 4 (BBS4)	Management 3, with a minimum aggregate of 60% for all courses and a credit for each course
Honours (Financial Stream)	Major in Financial Management (equivalent to MAN 314), with a credit for all relevant majors, a minimum aggregate of 60% for all courses and minimum of 65% for financial management.

A candidate who fails MAN 101 with a subminimum of 35% shall be permitted to proceed to MAN 102, as the case may be, if the courses are read in the same year. A pass in MAN 102 shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass the relevant

101 course. A candidate who obtains a mark of between 35-49% in MAN 101 will be awarded a rewrite examination in November of the relevant academic year. Candidates may not read MAN 102 without having read MAN 101, subject to the above prerequisites.

Aggregation of modular papers shall be permitted for Management 2 and 3, provided that the papers constituting the semester courses for each year are read in the same year and that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained for at least two papers, with credits being obtained in the remaining two papers; or that a sub-minimum of 40 % is obtained for one paper, with credits being obtained for the remaining papers. Aggregation of semester courses for Management 1 shall be permitted, provided that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained for each and that the courses are read in the same year. Aggregation may be permitted in respect of Management 1 November rewrite examinations, subject to the above conditions. However, where supplementary examinations are awarded in Management 102, as well as second and third-year courses, the marks obtained may be aggregated with other relevant courses, in that a credit obtained for such a supplementary examination is reflected as "P", with the course as a whole being awarded an aggregate credit, if the courses were read in the same year.

Where four papers are read as in Management 2 and 3 courses, supplementary examination credits obtained in one or more papers may be aggregated with the other papers also, where one of the papers is not written as a supplementary examination but qualifies by virtue of a sub-minimum mark, as indicated above. In addition, class marks may be included in supplementary examination marks. Supplementary examinations may be awarded at second-year level and at third-year level subject to a sub-minimum of 45%. Other supplementary examinations may be awarded at the discretion of Faculty as a last outstanding credit. Where aggregations are permitted, credits obtained on the basis of such aggregations permit candidates to proceed to any course at the next level of Management, but not to fourth-year (Honours and Management 4) level. Aggregation is not permitted at Honours and Management 4 level. Candidates are required to obtain a credit in each of the papers constituting Honours and Management 4.

MATHEMATICS

Associate Professor and Head of Department

D Pollney, BMath (Waterloo), MSc (Queen's), PhD (Southampton)

Emeritus Professors

NT Bishop, MA (Cambridge), PhD (Southampton), FRAS

V Murali MSc (Madras), MSc (Wales), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

EOD Andriantiana, PhD (Stellenbosch)

AL Pinchuck, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Wits)

CC Remsing, MSc (Timisoara), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

A John, MSc (UKZN), PhD (UKZN)

C Stevens, MSc (Otago), PhD (Otago)

Mathematics (MAT) and Applied Mathematics (MAP) may be taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn, BCom, BBusSci, BEcon and BSocSc, and for the diploma HDE(SEC).

To major in Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT1C; MAM2; MAT3.

To major in Applied Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT1C, MAM2; MAP3. See Rule S.23.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the field of Bioinformatics is drawn to the recommended curriculum that leads to postgraduate study in this area, in which Mathematics is a recommended co-major with Biochemistry, and for which two years of Computer Science and either Mathematics or Mathematical Statistics are prerequisites. Details of this curriculum can be found in the entry for the Department of Biochemistry and Microbiology.

See the departmental web page for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

Foundation year courses

The Mathematics Department offers two courses as part of the extended studies programme, providing an opportunity for students without the required school-level math credits to gain the background required to enter the mainstream program.

Mathematics 1F (MAT1F): A full year course for students who do not qualify for entry into any of the first year courses mentioned above. This is particularly suitable for students in the Social Sciences and Biological Sciences who need to become numerate or achieve a 1 basic level in mathematics. A successful pass in this course gives admission to MAT1S, and a 60% pass gives admission to MAT1C.

Theory of Finance 1F (TOF1F): A full year course for students planning to enter the degree program in the Faculty of Commerce. The course material is identical to that of the TOF course (listed below), but covered at a slower pace over the course of two semesters.

Overview of first-year level courses

Mathematics 1 (MAT1C): This is a year-long semesterised two-credit course. Credit in MAT1C must be obtained by students who wish to major in certain subjects (such as Applied Mathematics, Physics and Mathematical Statistics) and by students registered for the BBusSci degree.

Introductory Mathematics (MAT1S): A semester-long course recommended for Pharmacy students and for Science students who do not need MAT1C or MAT1C1.

Theory of Finance (TOF1): A single semester course taken for degree curricula in the faculty of commerce. Simple interest and discount, compound interest and discounting, simple and complex annuities, loans, depreciation, securities, linear programming, elementary differentiation and integration.

FIRST YEAR

Mathematics 1 (MAT1C)

There are two first-year courses in Mathematics for candidates planning to major in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics. MAT1C1 is held in the first semester and MAT1C2 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the two-credit course MAT1C, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended

in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the department. Candidates must obtain at least 40% for MAT1C1 in order to be permitted to continue with MAT1C2.

Syllabus:

MAT1C1 (First semester): Basic concepts (number systems, functions), calculus (limits, continuity, differentiation, curve sketching, introduction to integration), propositional calculus, proof techniques, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem, vectors, lines and planes, matrices and systems of linear equations.

MAT1C2 (Second semester): Calculus (integration, applications of integration, improper integrals, ordinary differential equations), complex numbers, sequences and series including Taylor series.

MAT 1S (Introductory Mathematics)

MAT1S is offered in the first semester. A supplementary examination may be recommended provided that the candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the department.

Syllabus: Estimation, ratios, scales (log scales), change of units, measurements; vectors, systems of equations, matrices, in 2-dimensions; Functions: Review of coordinate geometry, absolute values (including graphs); Inequalities; Power functions, trig functions, exponential functions, the number e (including graphs); Inverse functions: roots, logs, \ln (including graphs); Graphs and working with graphs; Interpretation of graphs, modeling; Descriptive statistics (mean, standard deviation, variance) with examples including normally distributed data; Introduction to differentiation and basic derivatives; Differentiation techniques (product, quotient and chain rules); Introduction to integration and basic integrals; modeling, translation of real-world problems into mathematics.

MAT 1F (Foundation Mathematics)

This full-year course helps students develop appropriate mathematical tools necessary to represent and interpret information quantitatively. It also develops skills and meaningful ways of thinking, reasoning and arguing with quantitative ideas in order to solve problems in any given context.

Syllabus: Arithmetic: Units of scientific measurement, scales, dimensions; Error and uncertainty in measure values. Fractions and

percentages - usages in basic science and commerce; use of calculators and spreadsheets.

Algebra: Polynomial, exponential, logarithmic and trigonometric functions and their graphs; modelling with functions; fitting curves to data; setting up and solving equations. Sequences and series, presentation of statistical data.

Differential Calculus: Limits and continuity; Rules of differentiation; Applications of Calculus in curve sketching and optimisation.

Second Year

Mathematics 2 comprises two semesterised courses, MAM201 and MAM202. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. An aggregate mark of 50% will grant the two-credit course MAM2, provided a sub-minimum of 40% is achieved in both semesters.

MAM201:

MAM201 is comprised of three modules which run concurrently throughout the semester:

Advanced Calculus: Partial differentiation: directional derivatives and the gradient vector; maxima and minima of surfaces; Lagrange multipliers. Multiple integrals: surface and volume integrals in general coordinate systems. Vector calculus: vector fields, line integrals, fundamental theorem of line integrals, Green's theorem, curl and divergence, parametric curves and surfaces.

Ordinary Differential Equations: First order ordinary differential equations, linear differential equations of second order, Laplace transforms, systems of equations, series solutions.

Mathematical Modeling and Programming 1:

Introduction to the python programming language, basic syntax, tools, programming principles. Applications taken from MAM2 modules. This course continues over both semesters.

MAM202:

MAM202 is comprised of four modules which run concurrently throughout the semester:

Linear Algebra: Linear spaces, inner products, norms. Vector spaces, spans, linear independence, basis and dimension. Linear transformations, change of basis, eigenvalues, diagonalization and its applications.

Introduction to Algebra (First term): Set theory; mappings; binary operations; equivalence relations

and order; groups.

Introduction to Analysis (Second term): Real numbers; open and closed intervals; sequences and series (convergence); functions of a real variable (continuity, limit); series of functions; Taylor series.

Mathematical Modeling and Programming 2: Introduction to the python programming language, basic syntax, tools, programming principles. Applications taken from MAM2 modules. This course continues over both semesters.

THIRD-YEAR

Mathematics (MAT) and Applied Mathematics (MAP) are offered at the third year level. Credit for MAM 2 is required before admission to the third year courses.

The two majors are organized into the modules listed below:

Code	Topic	Major
MAM311	Complex Analysis	MAP and MAT
MAP311	Numerical Analysis	MAP
MAP312	Dynamical Systems	MAP
MAP314	Partial Differential Equations	MAP
MAT311	Algebra	MAT
MAT313	Real Analysis	MAT
MAT315	Topics in Mathematics	MAT

A major in MAP requires an average mark of at least 50% over the four modules MAP311, MAP312, MAP314 and MAM311, with at least 50% in two of the modules and a subminimum of 40% in each course.

A major in MAT requires an average mark of at least 50% over the four modules MAT311, MAT313, MAT315 and MAM311, with at least 50% in two of the modules and a subminimum of 40% in each course.

Students who obtain an average of at least 50% over all seven courses will be granted credit for both MAP3 and MAT3, provided that the average of the MAP modules is at least 50% and the average of the MAT modules is at least 50%, two of the MAT and

two of the MAP modules are passed with at least 50%, and a minimum of 40% is achieved in each module.

Individual module credits may be carried forward from year to year.

Changes to the topics offered may be made from time-to-time depending on the interests of the academic staff.

MAM311 - Complex Analysis: (This is a common course required by both MAP and MAT majors.) Revision of complex numbers, Cauchy- Riemann equations, analytic and harmonic functions, elementary functions and their properties, branches of logarithmic functions, complex differentiation, integration in the complex plane, Cauchy's Theorem and integral formula, Taylor and Laurent series, Residue theory and applications. Fourier Integrals.

MAP311 - Numerical Analysis: Systems of non-linear equations, polynomial interpolation, cubic splines, numerical linear algebra, numerical computation of eigenvalues, numerical differentiation and integration, numerical solution of ordinary and partial differential equations, finite differences,, approximation theory, discrete Fourier transform.

MAP312 - Dynamical Systems: Differential equations and iterated maps as dynamical systems. Geometric representation of trajectories. Limiting behaviour of trajectories in linear and nonlinear systems. Equilibria of linear systems and linearisation of hyperbolic equilibria of nonlinear systems. Invariant sets and attractors. Bifurcation and chaos in nonlinear maps. Notions of stability. Some applications of dynamical systems in modeling.

MAP314 - Partial Differential Equations: First-order partial differential equations, classification of second-order equations, construction and behaviour of solutions, the method of characteristics, shocks and nonlinear phenomena, maximum principles, energy integrals, Fourier transform methods.

MAT311 - Algebra: Sets, equivalence relations, groups, rings, fields, integral domains, homomorphisms, isomorphisms, and their elementary properties.

MAT313 - Real Analysis: Topology of the real line, continuity and uniform continuity, Heine-Borel, Bolzano-Weierstrass, uniform convergence, introduction to metric spaces.

MAT315 - Topics in Mathematics: This course will cover one of the following two areas. Please consult the department to determine which is offered in a given year:

Differential Geometry: Curves (in the plane and in the space), curvature, global properties of curves, surfaces, the first fundamental form, isometries, the second fundamental form, the normal and principal curvatures, the Gaussian and mean curvatures, the Gauss map, geodesics. Discrete Mathematics: Permutations, combinations, generating functions, recursions, inclusion-exclusion, congruences, residue classes, graphs, Pythagorean triples, sums of 2 and 4 squares, Diophantine equations, continued fractions.

Mathematics and Applied Mathematics Honours

Each of the two courses (Mathematics and Applied Mathematics) consists of six topics and one project. A Mathematics Honours degree usually requires the candidate to have majored in Mathematics (MAT 3). An Applied Mathematics Honours degree usually requires the candidate to have majored in Applied Mathematics (MAP 3).

The topics are selected from the following general areas covering a wide spectrum of contemporary mathematics: Algebra; Algebraic Graph Theory; Combinatorics; Functional Analysis; General Relativity; Geometry; Information Theory; Manifolds, Measure Theory; Number Theory; Numerical Modelling; Statistical mechanics; Continuum Mechanics; Topology.

Joint Honours in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics

For Joint Honours programmes, an approved selection of topics may be taken from the options listed above. These modules must contribute to between 40% and 60% of the final grade.

It is also possible to substitute individual modules from other departments into a Mathematics or Applied Mathematics honours programme, with the approval of the Heads of the departments concerned. Alternatively, honours modules from the Department of Mathematics may be considered by other departments as components of their postgraduate courses, again with the approval of the departments concerned.

Master's and Doctoral degrees in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to these degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

A Master's degree in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics may be taken by thesis only, or by a combination of course work and a thesis. If course work is offered, normally four examination papers and/or essays are required in addition to the thesis. The course of study must be approved by the Head of Department.

MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY

(See also Faculty of Humanities Rules)

Head of Department and Associate Professor

C Foxcroft, BMus (UCT), UPLM (UNISA), MMus, Diplomsolistin (HMTMH, Germany), DMus (UP)

Associate Professor

J Brukman, BMus, BMus (Hons), MMus, DMus (UNISA), ATCL, LTCL, UTLM, UPLM, UALM (UNISA)

Senior Lecturer and Director: ILAM

L Watkins, BA (Hons), *cum laude*, MA *cum laude*, (UKZN), Ph D (University of Hong Kong), HDE (UWC)

Senior Lecturer

D Heunis, BAMus (Stell), MMus(Rhodes), HED (Stell), UTLM, UPLM(UNISA)

Lecturers

N Ramanna, BMus (UN), PhD(UKZN)

B McConnachie, BMus, MMus (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes), PGCE, RULS (Rhodes)

Junior Lecturers

C Cooper, BMus (Rhodes), RULS (Rhodes), BSocSci (Hons) (Rhodes)

J Lekay, BA, PLM (US), PGCE (UCT).

Librarian

I Kretzmann BMus (Rhodes)

Sound Engineer: ILAM

E Madiba, BMusEd (UPE)

The Bachelor of Music Degree (BMus)

The four-year BMus degree is intended for students who wish to pursue music as a profession. In order to be recognised as a teaching qualification it must be combined with the Post-Graduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) offered by the Faculty of Education. Except as provided in Rules 14 and 15 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years. Students who wish to take more than the minimum number of BMus courses in any one year may do so, subject to the approval of the Dean of Humanities.

Music as a subject in other Degree courses (Humanities and Science Faculties)

Music, Culture and History (MCH), Music Theory and Analysis (MTA) or Instrumental Music Studies (IMS) may be taken as a three-year major subject for

the BA and BSc degrees. Sound Technology may be taken up to second year level, in those Faculties for which it is approved.

Instrumental Music Studies (IMS) is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science. It comprises three musical genres: Western Art, Jazz, African Music.

Instrumental Music Studies 1 (IMS 1)

First-year, full year course (30 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance requirements: Western Art and Jazz: Matric music or equivalent (ABRSM/UNISA/TRINITY Gr 6) plus an audition at RU. Students who lack the literacy skills and knowledge necessary for IMS 1 are required to register for MTA 101 and 102. African Ensemble: no prior musical experience required.

Course description:

Western Art and Jazz: This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training aural training and a paper on Music Literature. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music. The “instrument” includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

African Ensemble: The year will focus on skills which include learning songs and dances from South Africa, the marimba, various drumming styles, the mbira and other African instruments.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: Year mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Instrumental Music Studies 2 (IMS 2)

Second-year, full year course (30 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance requirements: Western Art and Jazz: IMS 2 or equivalent (ABRSM/UNISA/TRINITY Gr 7) plus an audition at RU. African Ensemble: IMS 1

Course description:

Western Art and Jazz: This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training, aural

training and a paper on Music Literature. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music. The “instrument” includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

African Ensemble: The year refines and builds upon skills learnt in IMS 1 and includes a module on instrument making. Aural training and Western notation are introduced.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: Year mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Instrumental Music Studies 3 (IMS 3)

Third-year, full year course (60 credits at NQF level 7).

Entrance requirements: Western Art and Jazz: IMS 2 or equivalent (ABRSM/UNISA/TRINITY Gr 8) plus an audition at RU Music. African Ensemble: IMS 2

Course description:

Western Art and Jazz: This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training aural training and a paper on Music Literature. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music. The “instrument” includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

African Ensemble: The year refines and builds upon skills learnt in IMS 1 and 2.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: Year mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

NB All IMS students are required to take part in at least one approved ensemble: RU Chamber Choir; Opera / Vocal Ensemble, Jazz Ensemble, Wind band, RU Orchestra; African Ensemble for the duration of their course of study. Please note that tuition in and examination of the ensemble component (or second instrument) of Instrumental Music Studies is in addition to these requirements. Attendance of a minimum of 75% of the rehearsal schedule is obligatory.

Music, Theory and Analysis is a three-year major

subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science.

Music, Theory and Analysis 101 (MTA 101)

First-year, semesterised course (15 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: MTA 101 is a one semester course introducing students to the core elements of music literacy including basic keyboard skills.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: Semester mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

Supplementary exam: November exam 45% - 49 %

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Music, Theory and Analysis 102 (MTA 102)

First-year, semesterised course (15 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance requirements: MTA 101.

Course description: MTA 102 focuses on more advanced aspects of music literacy including an introduction to four-part harmony. Students who pass the Music Theory entrance test with a mark of 65% or more may register for IMS 1 without registering for MTA 101/102. For those registering for IMS 2 and/or 3 successful completion of MTA 101 and 102 is required.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: Semester mark counts 30%; June and November examinations count 70%.

Supplementary exam: 45% - 49 %

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Music, Theory and Analysis 2 (MTA 2)

Second-year, year course (30 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance requirements: MTA 1. Students who can demonstrate significant proficiency in theory as determined by an entrance examination may be permitted to register for MTA 2 at the discretion of the HOD

Course description: Music Theory and Analysis 2 introduces students to compositional practices from the Western Baroque and Classical music periods mainly through analysis of representative works and a study of four-part harmony.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: Year mark counts 50%; June and November examinations count 50%.

Supplementary exam: November exam 45% -49%

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Music, Theory and Analysis 3 (MTA 3)

Third-year, year course (60 credits at NQF level 7).

Entrance requirements: MTA 2

Course description: Music Theory and Analysis 3 introduces students to compositional practices in Western Romantic music through a study of chromatic harmony and four-part harmony, Twentieth & Twenty-First Century musics, and African art music studied through analysis of representative works.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: Year mark counts 50%; June and November examinations count 50%.

Supplementary exam: 45% – 49 %

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Music, Culture and History (MCH) is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science. There are four semester modules offered in Music Culture and History: Western Art Music; World Music; Music Health and the Brain; Jazz and African American Music. Depending on timetable constraints, students may elect to take any two of these to obtain a full first year level credit MCH 1. A student who wishes to major in Music Culture and History must then take the remaining two modules to obtain a full second year level credit MCH 2. The first and second courses are taken together, but examined separately.

MCH First semester options:**Western Art Music 1 (MCH 1WE and MCH 2WE)**

First-year/second-year, semesterised course (15 credits at NQF level 5/6).

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: An introduction to the elements of music and a survey of Western Art music traditions

DP requirements: 75% attendance

Assessment: Semester mark counts 30%; November examinations count 70%.

Supplementary exam: 45 % – 49 %

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

World Music 1 (MCH 1WO and MCH 2WO)

First-year/second-year, semesterised course (15 credits at NQF level 5/6).

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This course does not require any prior musical knowledge and explores topics relating to World Music, African Music and music from the African Diaspora and World Music. It introduces students to the cross cultural study of music and culture. It explores music in human life in a variety of cultural contexts, from indigenous to modern hybrids, and in various locations around the world.

DP requirements: 80% attendance.

Assessment: Semester mark counts 50%; November examinations count 50%.

Supplementary exam: 45% - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

MCH Second semester options:**Music Health and the Brain (MCH 1MH and MCH 2MH)**

First-year/second-year, semesterised course (15 credits at NQF level 5/6).

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Music, Health and the Brain is an interdisciplinary study of some elements of human engagement with music, focusing on musical cognition, emotion, identity and music's therapeutic potential.

DP requirements: 75% lecture attendance

Assessment: Semester mark counts 50%; November examinations count 50%.

Supplementary exam: 45% - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Jazz and African American Music (MCH 1JZ and MCH 2JZ)

First-year/second-year, semesterised course (15 credits at NQF level 5/6).

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: An introduction to the aesthetics, history and politics of Jazz.

DP requirements: 75% attendance

Assessment: Semester mark counts 50%; November examinations counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: 45% - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Music, Culture and History 3

Third year, year course (60 credits at NQF level 7).

Entrance requirements: MCH 2

Course description: Music Culture and History 3 includes specialist topics in World Music, Western

Art music, Jazz, Music Psychology & Music Education. Students are introduced to research methods in the various musical sub-disciplines.

DP requirements: None

Assessment: Year mark counts 50%; November examinations counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: 45% - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Sound Technology may be taken up to second year level, in those Faculties for which it is approved.

Sound Technology 1

First-year, year course (30 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Fundamentals of studio recording techniques, utilising both the analogue and digital protocols, and the installation and operation of public address equipment.

DP requirements: 75% lecture attendance

Assessment: Year mark counts 50%; June and November examinations count 50%.

Supplementary exam: 45% - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Sound Technology 2

Second-year, year course (30 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance requirements: Sound Technology 1

Course description: The course builds on the theory introduced in Sound Technology 1 and provides exposure to additional and more in-depth practical applications. The course also includes additional modules on room acoustics, synthesis and the MIDI protocol.

DP requirements: 75% lecture attendance

Assessment: Year mark counts 50%; June and November examinations count 50%.

Supplementary exam: 45% - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Music 4 (MUS 4)

Full-year (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: BMus 3

Course description: The Honours course is completed in the fourth year of study. Students must complete five papers or their equivalent in credit points (5). Subject to student preferences and the availability of staff, the topics for the papers are selected from the following:

Compulsory: At least one of the following:

Paper 1: Extended essay (2) or

Paper 2: Full Recital (2) or

Paper 3: Full Composition Portfolio (2)

Options: Remaining credit points are acquired from the following courses. If Paper 1 has not been chosen, the options must include Musicology 4, or Analysis 4, or Ethnomusicology 4. All options are not necessarily offered every year.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)

Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)

Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)

Paper 7: Sound Technology (1)

Paper 8: Short composition portfolio (1)

Paper 9: Short public performance (1)

*Paper 10: Instrumental Music Studies 4 (1)

Paper 11: Conducting (1)

Paper 12: Chamber Music Recital (1)

Paper 13: Concerto Performance (1)

Paper 14: Music Education (1)

Paper 15: Arts Management (1)

**Paper 10 may not be taken in conjunction with Papers 2 and / or 9.*

Joint Honours

Full-year (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with one music major.

Course description: See BMus 4

Interdisciplinary Honours Degree

Full-year (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with one music major.

Course description: See BMus 4

Masters Degree (MMus)

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirements: BMus or a completed BA or BSc degree.

Course description: A Master's Degree may be awarded by submission of a thesis, a portfolio of compositions*, two public recitals*(60%) and mini-thesis (40%), two public recitals (60%) and short composition portfolio (40%).

**Any culture or style may be included.*

a) Thesis

The research proposal and title of the thesis must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within four months of registration for the degree.

b) Composition

The nature and scope of the compositions must receive the prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, before submission. Candidates must also submit an explanatory commentary on important structural, textural and stylistic aspects of the work submitted, including its contextualisation within contemporary South Africa. A candidate who submits a set of compositions shall be required to submit 3 copies of the compositions together with suitable recordings.

c) Performance and Mini-Thesis and/or Short Composition Portfolio

The nature and scope of public recitals (60%) and mini-thesis (40%) and/or Short Composition Portfolio (40%) must receive prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, and a departmental subcommittee. The research proposal and title of the mini-thesis must also be approved by the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee within four months of registration for the degree.

Options available for the recitals are as follows:

- (a) performance in two separate public solo recitals or
- (b) one public solo recital and one full chamber recital or
- (c) one public solo recital, one short chamber recital and one concerto, where the genres are applicable to the culture or style of the chosen instrument.

*Any culture or style may be included.

Doctoral Degree**360 credits at NQF level 10**

Entrance requirements: A completed Masters degree in Music or equivalent.

Course description: a PhD may be awarded by the submission of:

1. a thesis (90 000 words)
2. a set of compositions consisting of at least three substantial original compositions (not less than 70 minutes in duration. The candidate must also submit an explanatory statement (not less than 25 000 words) referring to important aspects of the scores, including in particular a description of the form or forms employed and of any contrapuntal, harmonic and orchestration devices used. This document should detail the portfolio's theme or contextualising thread. Recordings of Compositions are required.
3. a special treatise may be offered as a thesis on a

subject previously approved by the Senate.

4. three performances (60 – 70 min duration) and a mini thesis (50 000 words)

Degree of Doctor of Music (Senior Doctorate)**360 credits at NQF level 10**

Entrance requirements: A completed Masters degree in Music or equivalent.

Course description: A candidate for the degree of DMus is required to submit for the approval of Senate a published work or a set of compositions.

The published work must be of historical or theoretical or analytical research in music, and must open new aspects of the subject discussed.

A set of compositions must consist of three original compositions, the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee.

CURRICULUM FOR BMUS DEGREE**FIRST YEAR**

IMS 1 Music Culture and History 1

Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102 Sound Technology 1 OR one Bachelor of Arts or Science course

SECOND YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 2

Music Culture and History

Music Theory and Analysis 2

Sound Technology 1 or 2 OR one Bachelor of Arts or Science course

THIRD YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 3

Students choose two of the following courses: IMS 3, MCH 3 and MTA 3

FOURTH YEAR

Students must do FIVE papers or their equivalent in credit points (5). All choices are subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

Paper 1: Extended essay (2)

The candidate is required to submit an appropriately researched extended essay of not more than 10 000 words on a subject approved by the Head of Department. Three copies of the extended essay must be presented, suitably bound.

Paper 2: Full Recital (2)

A public recital of not less than 70 minutes. Repertoire subject to the approval of the Head of Department after consultation with the full-time staff.

Paper 3: Full Composition portfolio (2)

The portfolio must consist of a minimum of 20 minutes of music, representing at least two of the following categories:

1. Solo Instrument.
2. Chamber Ensemble including Choir (up to 10 instruments or Double Choir of 8 voices).
3. Voice or solo instrument with accompaniment.
4. Orchestra (Chamber or Symphony) /Large Jazz Ensemble.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)

Advanced analytical projects in Western art music and/or jazz and/or African music.

Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)

Musicological theories and their application, which may be linked to the topic chosen in Paper 1.

Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)

Semester 1 is a readings seminar with a focus on contemporary theory in Ethnomusicology and Cultural Studies. Students begin work on a chosen research project which culminates in preparation of an extended essay based on the research project in Semester 2.

Paper 7: Sound Technology (1)

Studio recording and mixing down using both analogue and digital protocols. A portfolio of 4 mixed down works must be submitted as 50 % of the course requirement.

Paper 8: Short Composition Portfolio (1)

Individual project(s) in composition leading to the submission of a short, varied portfolio of completed work. Minimum composition time of 10 minutes.

Paper 9: Short public performance (1)

A public recital of not less than 35 minutes with works approved by the Head of Department after consultation with the full-time staff.

Paper 10: Instrumental Music Studies 4 (1)

The study of a major instrument and ensemble

training. No public recital is attached to this course. Repertoire subject to the approval of the Head of Department after consultation with the full-time staff.

Paper 11: Conducting (1)

The introduction to orchestral and choral conducting.

Paper 12: Chamber Music Recital (1)

A chamber music performance of not less than 30 minutes with works and ensembles approved by the Head of Department after consultation with the fulltime staff.

Paper 13: Concerto Performance (1)

Public performance of a concerto or movements thereof as approved by the Head of Department after consultation with the full-time staff.

Paper 14: Music Education (1)

Music education research topics as approved by the Head of Department.

Paper 15: Arts Management (1)

This course provides an overview of arts management using dialogue, research and practical illustration through informal and interactive sessions. The objectives are to equip the student with vital skills required in the arts environment, both nationally and internationally.

NB. Not all fourth year/honours papers are necessarily available every year.

BA, BSocSci AND BSc DEGREES WITH MUSIC AS A MAJOR

Normally not more than FIVE music subjects may be taken in the BA or FOUR in a BSc degree (see the relevant Faculty Rules).

FIRST YEAR COURSES

Students may choose from the following courses:

Instrumental Music Studies 1
Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102
Music Culture and History 1 (one or more of MCH 1WAM, MCH 1WM, MCH 1MHB, MCH 1JZ);
Sound Technology 1

SECOND YEAR COURSES

Students may choose from the following courses:
Instrumental Music Studies 2

Music Culture and History 2
Music Theory and Analysis 2 (one or more of MCH
2WAM, MCH 2WM, MCH 2MHB, MCH 2JZ not
already taken at 1st year level)
Sound Technology 2

THIRD YEAR COURSES

Students may choose one of the following:

Instrumental Music Studies 3
Music Culture and History 3
Music Theory and Analysis 3

MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)

Curriculum and syllabi are identical to BMus Fourth
Year

INTERNATIONAL LIBRARY OF AFRICAN MUSIC

The International Library of African Music (ILAM)
an independent research institute and archive..
Internationally recognised as a leading centre for
the study of African music, it offers opportunities for
undergraduate studies and postgraduate research in
Ethnomusicology. ILAM occupies a purpose-built
building with an archive, library, sound digitizing
lab, recording studio, outdoor performance area ,
and is a prominent resource centre for research in
various sub-Saharan African musical traditions.

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

Dean of the Faculty and Head of Pharmacy

Vacant

PHARMACEUTICS

Professor of Pharmaceutics

RB Walker, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), MPS(SA)

Senior Lecturer and Head of Division

SMM Khamanga, BSc (Swaziland), BPharm, MSc (Pharm), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

N Patterson, BPharm, MSc (Pharm)(Rhodes),

MHealth Econ and Pharmecon (UPF)

To be appointed

PHARMACEUTICAL CHEMISTRY

Associate Professor and Head of Division

R Tandlich, MS (SUT), PhD (NDSU)

Senior Lecturers

ED Goosen, BSc (Hons)(UOFS), MSc (Weizmann Institute), PhD (UFS), HDE (UPE)

NP Ngqwala, BSc (Hons)(UFH), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer

Dr SD Khanye, BSc (Hons)(Wits), MSc (Wits), PhD (UCT)

PHARMACY PRACTICE

Professor

To be appointed

Senior Lecturer and Head of Division

YL Irwin, BPharm, MSc (Rhodes), MPS(SA)

Senior Lecturer

C Oltmann, BSc (Med)(Hons)(Wits), MSc, BPharm (Rhodes), PGDHET, PhD (Rhodes), MPS(SA)

Lecturers

Y van Deventer, MSc (NWU), MPS(SA)

C Magadza, BPharm (Rhodes), MPharm (Rhodes)

PHARMACOLOGY

Professor of Pharmacology

Vacant

Associate Professor of Clinical Pharmacy

J Bodenstein, PhD (NWU), MPS(SA)

Senior Lecturer and Head of Division

MJ Naidoo, BSc (Hons)(UDW), MSc, BPharm (Rhodes)

Lecturer

H Walsh, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer, Anatomy & Physiology

N Sibiyi, BMed Sci (Hons)(UKZN), PhD (UKZN)

INSTRUMENT SCIENTIST

S Abboo (PhD)(Rhodes)

Honorary Appointments

Visiting Professors

MP Ducharme, BA, BPharm, RPEBC, DPH

(Montreal), PharmD (Wayne State), FCCP, FCP

RK Verbeeck, BSc (Pharmacy), PhD (KULeuven)

BD Glass, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), BSc (Chem)

(Hons), BTech (Hons)(UPE), MPS(Aus)

SC Srinivas, BPharm, MPharm (Bangalore),

PGDHE (Rhodes), PhD (RGUHS)

Visiting Fellow

PW Hill, DipPharm (Wits), PhD (Rhodes), CMW

A Gray, BPharm, MSc (Pharm) (Rhodes), FPS,

FFIP

S Patnala, PhD (Rhodes)

C Veale, BPharm (Rhodes), PhD(Rhodes)

Research Associates

BD Patterson, BS(Pharmacy)(NDSU), MS(Hospital Pharmacy), PhD(Iowa)

Emeritus Professors

I Kanfer, BSc (Pharm), BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes),

MRPharmS, FPS(SA)

JM Haigh, BSc (Pharm), BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), PhD

(UCT), MRPharmS, MPS(SA)

Emeritus Associate Professors

BJ Wilson, MSc (Sask), PhD (Purdue)

WT Futter, BCom, MCom (Rhodes), ACIS

R Dowse, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), MPS(SA)

Clinical Associates

GPG Boon, MBChB (UCT), FCP(SA)(Paed)

S Meintjes, BPharm (UWC), BTech, MBA (PE Tech)

AG Parrish, MBChB, MMed (UCT), MMedSc

(Newcastle), FCP (SA)

The Faculty of Pharmacy aims to accomplish its specific objectives as outlined in its Mission and Vision of the Faculty (see Faculty of Pharmacy entry section of this calendar) in the following manner:

Provision of formal training in both undergraduate and postgraduate programmes

Undertaking research and involvement in Community and Professional service

The BPharm degree has been registered as an NQF Level 8 qualification. The following information is a summary of the documentation submitted to the NQF to register the qualification and includes information pertaining to the revised BPharm curriculum. The BPharm curriculum is accredited by the South African Pharmacy Council.

Purpose of the BPharm degree (Competence)

Learners who have completed this programme have the education and training to enter the pharmacy profession as interns and gain the experience and confidence needed to render a professional service as pharmacists to the community. As a pharmacist registered with the South African Pharmacy Council, the learner will be able to practise the profession of Pharmacy and serve as a:

- Custodian of medicines;
- Formulator, manufacturer, distributor and controller of safe, effective and quality medicine;
- Advisor on the safe, rational and appropriate use of medicine;
- Provider of essential clinical services including screening and referral services;
- Provider of health care education and information;

Exit Level Outcomes (Capabilities)

The exit level outcomes for the BPharm curriculum indicate that on completion of the degree, the candidate will be able to:

1. Integrate and apply foundational scientific principles and knowledge to pharmaceutical sciences. Range of scientific principles and knowledge includes, but is not limited to: Chemistry, microbiology, biochemistry, mathematics, physics, physiology, pathophysiology, anatomy, social and behavioural sciences, including biomedical ethics.
2. Apply integrated knowledge of product development and formulation in the compounding, manufacturing, distribution and dispensing of pharmaceutical products
3. Compound, manipulate and prepare medication in compliance with Good Pharmacy Practice (GPP) rules, Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP) and/or Good Clinical Practice (GCP) guidelines.
4. Manage the manufacture, packaging and

registration of pharmaceutical products in compliance with GMP and GCP.

5. The range of pharmaceutical products includes, but is not limited to: medicines, veterinary products, biological products.)
6. Manage the logistics of the selection, procurement, storage, distribution and disposal of pharmaceutical products.
7. Dispense medication and ensure optimal pharmaceutical care for the patient in compliance with GPP and, where applicable, GCP.
8. The range of dispensing process includes, but not limited to: interpretation and evaluation, preparation and labelling, provision of information and instructions, therapeutic intervention and supply of medicines to the patient and monitoring of compliance.
9. Apply a pharmaceutical care management approach to ensure rational medicine use.
10. Initiate and/or modify therapy, where appropriate, within the scope of practice of a pharmacist and in accordance with GPP and GCP, where applicable
11. Promote public health.
12. Integrate and apply management principles in the practice of pharmacy.
13. Participate in research

Critical cross-field outcomes of the BPharm curriculum indicate that on completion of the degree, the candidate will be able to:

1. Identify, analyse and solve problems related to the provision of pharmaceutical care using creative approaches
2. Work effectively with others as a member of a team of health care professionals in applying pharmaceutical care management principles.
3. Organise and manage activities responsibly and effectively in contributing to the institution and broader community
4. Collect, analyse, organise and critically evaluate information in using evidence-based approaches in provision of services and information to develop a pharmaceutical product or enhance pharmaceutical care programmes and services
5. Communicate effectively using visual, mathematical and/or language skills in the modes of oral, written and/or practical presentation in a sustained discourse.
6. Use science and technology, including

informatics, in pharmacy effectively and critically, showing responsibility towards the environmental and health of others by promoting ethical conduct in all contexts

7. Demonstrate an understanding of the world as a set of related systems by recognising that problem-solving contexts do not exist in isolation

Specific exit level outcomes (Abilities)

The primary aim of pharmacy education is to develop life-long learners who can provide a professional service to the community using their knowledge, skills, professional thinking, behaviour and attitudes in all avenues of pharmacy practice, as caring health care providers and managers of health care resources. On completion of the undergraduate programme, the learner must demonstrate the following knowledge, skills, professional thinking, behaviour and attitudes.

Knowledge outcomes

The use of science and technology to formulate, manufacture, distribute and use drugs and medicines

- Identification and management of diseases, their processes, environmental and social determinants
- The principles of disease prevention and health promotion, with emphasis on primary health care as an integral part of the health care team
- The principles of pharmacotherapy, the effect of drugs and medicines in the body, the appropriateness of different drug delivery systems and the ability to assess the effect of the drug in the body
- Appropriate and cost-effective use of screening and monitoring procedures
- How to solve problems that arise with the use of medicines and how to predict, identify, prevent and/or treat such problems
- Human behaviour, relationships and communication, individually and in the context of the community
- Ethical and legal issues relevant to the practice of pharmacy
- Managerial aspects of the provision of health care at national, community and individual practice level
- The promotion and delivery of cost effective health care
- Principles and procedures governing research, with particular emphasis on evidence-based medicine

Skills

- Laboratory skills
- Clinical skills and procedures, including patient history taking, assessing patient data, formulating a treatment plan and a follow-up plan
- Practice management skills
- Computer skills
- Communication skills and language proficiency
- The ability to work in a multi-disciplinary team

Attitudinal and behavioural outcomes

- Respect for patients and colleagues, without judgement or prejudice with regard to race, culture, or gender amongst others
- Recognition of human and patients' rights
- A positive approach to self-directed life- long learning
- A positive approach towards primary health care
- An awareness of moral and ethical responsibilities
- A desire to practice legally
- A desire to ensure patient care of the highest possible quality
- An awareness of personal limitations and a willingness to seek help when necessary
- A positive attitude towards change and functioning within the uncertainties of our times
- A positive attitude towards the advancement of medical and health related knowledge

Assessment

Assessment will take place using tests, assignments, practicals, presentations, written and/or oral examinations. Continuous assessment is emphasized, especially during the first two years of study.

Quality Assurance

The Quality Assurance system for this qualification relies on:

- External examiners
- Internal moderation
- Inspection and accreditation by the South African Pharmacy Council
- South African Qualifications Authority
- Internal reviews by the University in terms of its quality assurance criteria
- Higher Education Quality Committee

Articulation

The possession of a BPharm degree permits both vertical and horizontal articulation. Graduates

may gain access to postgraduate studies at the Master, PhD and/or PharmD levels. The degree is a fundamental requirement to gain entry into a PharmD programme.

Candidates may receive exemption for some first year credits obtained at other tertiary level learning institutions.

COURSES FOR THE BACHELOR OF PHARMACY DEGREE

Chemistry 1: Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) is offered in the first semester and Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) in the second semester. CHE 101 includes learning about chemical symbols and numeracy, nuclear chemistry, atomic structure and bonding, chemical and physical equilibrium, introduction to organic chemistry. CHE 102 includes learning about properties of inorganic systems, chemistry and the environment, organic functional group chemistry, biological building blocks, reaction rates, chemical thermodynamics and electrochemistry.

Cell Biology (CEL101): is offered in the first semester. This course compares cell structure in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells and examines cellular processes including cell to cell communication, photosynthesis and cell respiration. Cell division and fundamental genetics, including the structure of genetic material and how it controls cellular processes are also included.

Mathematics for Life Sciences (MAT 1S): A study of mathematical concepts and applications relevant for the study and practice of Pharmacy.

Introduction to ICT (Information and Communication Technology) (CSC 1L): Fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, spreadsheets, databases, other software packages, networks, the Internet, social issues, and the logic of problem solving.

Anatomy and Physiology 1: A study of the functional anatomy and physiology of humans.

Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1: A study of the important molecules found in living organisms.

Foundations of Pharmacy: An introductory course in Pharmacy, where learners will be introduced to the fundamentals of Pharmacy Practice, Pharmaceutics, Law and Ethics.

Anatomy, Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathology: A study of the functional anatomy and physiology of humans and of diseases and pathological conditions in different body systems, how diseases develop, their characteristics, features of common diseases and conditions as they occur in humans and the effects of diseases on human functioning.

Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology: A study of the important molecules found in living organisms and of the role of Pharmaceutical Microbiologists and the application of microbiology in the practice of pharmacy, the health and economic implications of microbial contamination of pharmaceutical and hospital environments, the basic characteristics, pathogenesis, diagnosis, disease, epidemiology, prevention and treatment of microorganisms found in pharmaceutical and hospital environments, water and sewage systems.

Pharmaceutics: A 2½-year course covering basic pharmaceutical principles and their application to the formulation, production and assessment of medicinal products, microbiology and sterility.

Pharmaceutical Chemistry: A two-year course covering the study of the purity and chemical properties of various materials and formulations used in the practice of pharmacy.

Pharmacy Practice: A 2½-year course, which examines Pharmaceutical Care and the role of the pharmacist; various aspects of management including performance management, organizational management, managing pharmaceutical supply; understanding and influencing behaviour; Primary Health Care; Ethics; legal and psychosocial principles and their application in providing safe and effective medicine use by pharmacists and patients.

Pharmacology: A 1½-year study of the interaction between medicaments and the human body, disease states and medicinal therapy used to relieve these conditions, the toxic effects of household agents, medicines and street drugs.

Biostatistics: A one semester course offered in the third year. A study of statistics that is used in pharmaceutical and biomedical research, so as to use and understand different statistical methods used in research.

Pharmacotherapy: A study of the relevant pathophysiology of diseases and conditions, how mechanisms of action of medicines are used to treat these diseases and/or disorders to counteract their pathophysiological origins, synthesizing and integrating information to make an informed and rational pharmacotherapeutic decisions justifying the selection of appropriate dosage forms.

Research Methodology: A one-semester course offered in the final year covering fundamental aspects relating to the conduct of research

Research Project: An individual project on an approved topic in any pharmaceutical field.

Electives: These may include the topics listed below, or candidates may select elective courses offered in other Faculties provided they are relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the timetable for that academic year.

ELECTIVES AND RESEARCH PROJECT

All candidates must take either two elective courses offered within the Faculty of Pharmacy or a full year course offered by any department in another Faculty that are relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the BPharm 4 timetable.

The elective courses entail study at an advanced level of aspects of the BPharm curriculum and will depend on staff availability and interest.

Research Project

An individual report on an approved topic in any pharmaceutical field, based on a literature survey, or a practical project.

SAPC REGISTRATION

Pharmacy students will be required to register with the SAPC in their first year of study. Registration requires the payment of a registration fee and annual fees in order to remain registered whilst completing the BPharm degree. In addition, students are reminded that as professionals, registered with the SAPC, that professional indemnity insurance is required.

MASTER'S DEGREES

Students who have completed the BPharm degree at a sufficiently high academic standard or students who have completed a bachelor's degree in another Faculty and have attained in their degree a standard suitable for continuation to a Master's degree in that Faculty, and who have an interest in the application of elements of other subjects to pharmaceutical disciplines, may be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Science or Master of Pharmacy.

The Master of Science degree is taken by thesis. The Master of Pharmacy degree is taken either by examination, or by thesis, or a combination of the two. Registration for the Master of Science or Master of Pharmacy degree will depend upon the field of study of the candidate.

Registration with the South African Pharmacy Council may be a pre-requisite for registration for the Master of Pharmacy programme.

DOCTOR OF PHARMACY (PharmD)

Suitably qualified Pharmacy professionals who wish to specialise in research in clinical services, the design and implementation of professional and clinical health-related systems may be considered for registration for study toward this degree. The programme focuses on applied, operational and fundamental research which is supported by supplemental course work. It provides research based practical experience and is designed to prepare candidates to:

- develop, evaluate and improve pharmaceutical systems which ensure that the appropriate drugs are available and that they are used rationally in such a way as to improve the quality of life
- develop, evaluate and improve systems to provide clinical services which include the design, delivery, monitoring and evaluation of pharmaco-therapeutic guidelines and patient-specific pharmaco-therapy
- provide specialised, advanced, drug information and pharmaco- therapeutic education to other health professionals
- develop, evaluate and improve drug use policies, formularies and rational treatment protocols, to rationalise and control drug use.

Programme participants are required to perform applied, operational and fundamental research in a number of areas. Each area of research is supported

by distance learning modules and takes place in an on-site experiential programme at an approved clinical site. Each rotation is evaluated independently in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Pharmacy and together they constitute a thesis for this degree. The minimum duration of the course is three years.

**DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND
DOCTOR OF SCIENCE**

See General Regulations.

PHILOSOPHY

Head of Department and Lecturer

FX Williamson, BA(RAU), MA(UCT)

Professor and Director of the Allan Gray

Centre for Leadership Ethics

P Tabensky, Lic.(PUCC), BA(ANU),

PhD(Murdoch)

Associate Professors

WE Jones, BA(Berkeley), BPhil DPhil(Oxon)

U Okeja, BPhil (PUU), Dipl. (Fulda), MA(Fulda),

PhD (Frankfurt)

Senior Lecturer

L Kelland, PhD (RU)

Lecturers

LJ Bloom, BA (UGA), PhD (UGA)

S Alloggio, PhD(Bari)

Philosophy is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Philosophy 1 and Philosophy 2 but not Philosophy 3 are semesterised. One, or in some cases two, courses in Philosophy are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Law and Science.

Philosophy 101 (PHI 101)

First-year, first semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance Requirements: None

Course description: The course introduces students to philosophical ideas, issues and methods drawing on topics in metaphysics, epistemology and ethics from a range of philosophical traditions. PHI 101 typically focuses on issues in Epistemology and Metaphysics.

Assessment: Coursework 40%; June exam 60%.

Supplementary exam: June result 45 – 49%

No aggregation.

Philosophy 102 (PHI 102)

First-year, second semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance Requirements: None

Course description: The course introduces students to philosophical ideas, issues and methods not dealt with in PHI 101, with the focus typically being on issues in Ethics.

Assessment: Coursework 40%; June exam 60%.

Supplementary exam: November result 45 – 49%

No aggregation.

Philosophy 201 (PHI 201)

Second-year, first semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance Requirements: any of the following configurations — PHI 101 AND PHI 102; PHI 101 (OR PHI 102) AND BOM 101 (OR BOM 102); a 70% pass in BOM 101 OR BOM 102.

Course description: The course deepens the examination of historical and contemporary debates in metaphysics, epistemology and ethics and might include specialised topics in Philosophy of Mind, or Religion, or Moral Philosophy or Ancient Philosophy.

Assessment: Coursework 40%; June exam 60%.

Supplementary exam: November result 45 – 49%

No aggregation.

Philosophy 202 (PHI 202)

Second-year, second semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance Requirements: any of the following configurations — PHI 201; PHI 101 AND PHI 102; PHI 101 (OR PHI 102) AND BOM 101 (OR BOM 102); a 70% pass in BOM 101 OR BOM 102.

Course description: The course continues the examination of historical and contemporary debates in metaphysics, epistemology and ethics of PHI 201.

Assessment: Coursework 40%; June exam 60%.

Supplementary exam: November result 45 – 49%

No aggregation.

Philosophy 3 (PHI 3)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: PHI 201 and PHI 202.

Course description: The course covers an advanced examination of some particular historical and contemporary debates. PHI 3 consists of four Papers, one of which is an Options Paper which is taught in small groups and focuses on developing philosophical writing skills.

Assessment: Continuous 50%; Summative 50%.

Supplementary exam: June/November result 45 – 49%

Philosophy Honours

Year course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance Requirements: 60% in PHI 3

Course Description: Honours students normally

take four Papers, chosen from a range of topics, and in addition submit an independent research essay. With the permission of the Head of the Department, an Honours student may substitute a research essay written during the year for one of the Papers. The length of the research essay and the date on which it is to be submitted are laid down in the Faculty of Humanities rules.

Assessment: continuous and/or summative assessment as per requirements of individual lecturers.

Master's Degree

2-year course (180 credits at NQF level 9)

Candidates may take the Master's degree in Philosophy either by examination or by thesis, as recommended by the Head of the Department. Candidates for the degree by examination are normally required to write a number of examinations on topics within their main field of interest, to submit an independent research essay in their first year, and to submit a short dissertation by the end of their second year.

Doctoral Degree

360 credits at NQF level 10

Candidates for this degree are required to complete a research dissertation.

Accounting Ethics

Accounting Ethics is a compulsory module in Accounting. The aim of this course is to alert students to the ways in which our standard decision-making practices can lead us astray when we reason morally and to help them develop some of the skills that will help them avoid similar pitfalls in their professional capacity.

liNtetho zoBomi: Conversations About Ethics, Meaning and Community

This student-led service-learning course (the first of its kind at Rhodes University and in South Africa) deals with some of the pressing questions that define the discipline of philosophy as well as our age; but, most importantly, it focuses on giving students the opportunity to become more effective ethical agents through, among other things, philosophical reflection and critical engagement with others. It is of interest to students who want to live in ways that are informed by deep reflection about self, others and their context, and which reflect their

own endorsed values and beliefs, as opposed to those they have pre-reflectively learnt from (our highly problematic) society. This course has no prerequisites and can be taken by anyone who is registered at Rhodes University. It can be taken either as a one-year course, starting in the first or second semester of any given year, or as a semester course (either in the first or the second semester of any given year). It is an offering of the Allan Gray Centre for Leadership Ethics, which is part of the Department of Philosophy. It complements but is not a replacement of courses offered as part of the philosophy major. A 70% pass in BOM 101 and BOM 102 may be used for entrance to PHI 2.

liNtetho zoBomi 1 consists of liNtetho zoBomi 101 and liNtetho zoBomi 102

liNtetho zoBomi 101

First-year, first semester (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance Requirements: None

Course description: liNtetho zoBomi 101 introduces students to some of the pressing philosophical questions in relation to free will and ethics, as well as the central concepts of agency, awareness, lucidity, and responsibility through exploring some of the basic cognitive biases and behavioural forces that get in the way of our acting according to the values that we ourselves endorse—e.g. confirmation bias, selective attention, conformity, and obedience to authority.

Assessment: Coursework 100%

DP requirement: 80% attendance at tutorials and service learning

liNtetho zoBomi 102

First-year, second semester (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance Requirements: None

Course description: liNtetho zoBomi 102 focuses more specifically on social, phenomenological, and epistemological questions by exploring the constitutive role that others, and the Other, play in constituting our personhood, identity and subjectivity, as well as how structural forces present obstacles to effective ethical agency.

Assessment: Coursework 100%

DP requirement: 80% attendance at tutorials and service learning

PHYSICS AND ELECTRONICS

Professor and Head of Department

ML Chithambo, BSc (Malawi), MPhil (Sussex),
PhD (Edinburgh)

Associate Professors

DG Roux, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

AJM Medved, BSc, MSc, PhD (Manitoba)

Senior Lecturer

S Nsengiyumva, BSc (Rwanda), MSc
(Stellenbosch), PhD (UCT)

Lecturers

AJ Sullivan, MSc (Rhodes)

JA Williams, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes),
PhD (Cantab)

ADJ Giovannoni, BSc (Eng), GDE (Wits), BSc
(Hons), MSc (UCT)

Professor of Physics and Electronics & Director: Centre for Radio Astronomy Techniques and Technologies

JL Jonas, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor & SARChI SKA Chair in Radio

Astronomy Techniques and Technologies

O M Smirnov, PhD (Russian. Acad. Sci.)

Visiting Professors

RS Booth, PhD (Manchester)

L-A McKinnell, PhD (Rhodes)

FB Abdalla, DPhil (Oxford), MPhys (Oxford)

A Karastergiou, PhD (Max-Planck)

A Kembal, PhD (Rhodes)

Research Associates

R Haggard, PhD (Rhodes)

LMG Poole, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Sheffield)

G Bernardi, PhD (Bologna)

JB Habarulema, PhD (Rhodes)

ZT Katamzi, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Bath)

I Theron, PhD (Stellenbosch)

C Tasse, PhD (Paris)

SK Sirothia, PhD (Tata Inst.)

GIG Jozsa, PhD (Bonn)

Senior Research Associate

I Heywood, PhD (Manchester)

J Noordam, D-Ing (TUD)

Professor Emeritus

AWV Poole, PhD (Rhodes)

Physics with Electronics (PHY) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Physics with Electronics a candidate is

required to obtain credit in the following courses: PHY 1; PHY 2; PHY 3; MAT 1 or MAT 1 C, MAT 2 or MAM 2.

Up to two, or in some cases four, Physics with Electronics semester-credits may be allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Education and Pharmacy.

Besides the major course, the department offers two terminal semester courses in Physics and Electronics, namely PHY 1E1 (non-calculus Elementary Physics) and PHY 1E2 (Electronics Literacy).

Physics 1E1 is a service course designed to meet the needs of students in the Department of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics but is also well suited to students majoring in the biological sciences. Any student accepted into the university may register for PHY 1E2, which affords students in a wide range of disciplines an opportunity to gain an understanding of basic electronics and modern electronic devices such as computers. Aggregating Physics 1E1 and Physics 1E2 is not permitted.

PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1 and PHY 1E2 are highly recommended choices of prerequisites for students who wish to major in Chemistry. (Refer to the Department of Chemistry Calendar entry.)

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/physics/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Physics with Electronics

There are two first-year courses in Physics with Electronics for candidates planning to major in physical, computational, mathematical or earth science subjects. PHY 101 is held in the first semester and PHY 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests and reports collectively comprise the

class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Candidates wishing to register for PHY 101 must have obtained a rating of 4 in Mathematics in the National Senior Certificate examination, or the equivalent thereof. If the equivalent is a better pass at Standard Grade (in the old Matric) the symbol must be an A or B.

Adequate performance in PHY 101 is required before a student may register for PHY 102. Alternatively, candidates who attain a sufficiently high standard in PHY 1E1 may be allowed to register for PHY 102, obtain credit in PHY 1 and then proceed to PHY 2.

PHY 101

Theory Course: Introduction to Mechanics, Elasticity and Properties of Matter.

Experimental course: Measurement and data analysis.

PHY 102

Theory Course: Waves, Fields, Modern Physics and Kinetic Theory.

Experimental course: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics.

The Department offers two other first-level courses in Physics and Electronics. PHY 1E1 is held in the first semester and PHY 1E2 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 1E, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course. Entry into PHY 1E2 does not require that a student have attended or passed PHY 1E1. The course is open to all university students. Credit may be obtained in all three of the courses PHY 101, PHY 102 and PHY 1E2.

PHY 1E1: Elementary Physics for Non-physics Majors

Theory course: Mechanics; thermal physics; vibrations and waves; Applications to the life sciences are emphasised.

Experimental course: Measurement practice and data analysis.

PHY 1E2: Electronics Literacy

Theory course: Basic electricity and electronics necessary to connect up and commission modern, popular commercial instrumentation, in particular microprocessor based devices.

Experimental course: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics; elementary interfacing and communication between computers and peripheral devices.

Second-year level courses in Physics with Electronics

There are two independent second-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 201 is held in the first semester and PHY 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Credit in Physics with Electronics (PHY 1), and in Mathematics (MAT 1C) is normally required before a student may register for PHY 201 or PHY 202. Students are strongly encouraged to register for MAM2 and Phy2 concurrently

PHY 201

Theory course: AC Theory, Vibrations, Waves and Optics, Properties of Matter. Experimental course: AC circuits; analogue and digital electronics.

PHY 202

Theory course: Electrostatics, Classical Mechanics, Special Relativity, and Quantum Mechanics I.

Experimental course: Physics laboratory techniques.

Third-year level courses in Physics with Electronics

There are two third-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 301 is held in the first semester and PHY 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class

tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Credits in Physics with Electronics (PHY 2), and in Mathematics 2 (MAM 2 with the modules in Advanced Calculus and Linear Algebra) are normally required before a student may register for PHY 301 or PHY 302. Adequate performance in PHY 301 is required before a candidate may register for PHY 302.

PHY 301

Theory course: Electromagnetism, Quantum Mechanics II, Thermodynamics, Signals and Systems. Experimental course: Analogue electronics; advanced digital electronics.

PHY 302

Theory course: Spectra, Solid State Physics, Nuclear Physics, Statistical Physics. Experimental course: Physics laboratory techniques.

Honours courses

Candidates may choose to read for Honours degrees in Physics, Electronics, Telecommunications, Joint Physics and Electronics or in approved combinations with subjects offered by other departments. A BSc with a major in Physics with Electronics, and credit in second year mathematics (MAT 2 or MAM 2) or MAP 2 is the normal entrance requirement for these courses.

Practical work, essays, tests and a project done during the year form part of the final mark, and a full course typically includes an approved selection of five topics from those listed below, depending on the availability of lecturing staff.

Honours in Physics

Classical Mechanics; Computer Interfacing I; Computational Physics; Electrodynamics; General Relativity; Nuclear Physics; Optics; Quantum Physics; Radio Astronomy; Particle Physics; Space Science; Solid State Physics; Statistical Mechanics, Signal Processing. Appropriate topics from the list of the Electronics Honours course may be chosen.

Honours in Electronics

Computer Interfacing 1; Computer Interfacing 2; Computational Physics; Control Theory; Electronic Design; FPGA, Optics; Telecommunications;

Signal Processing; Waveguides, Antennas and Transmission Lines. Appropriate topics from the list of the Physics Honours course may be chosen.

Honours in Telecommunications

Aeronomy; Computer Interfacing 1; Control Theory; Electronic Design; Optics; Radio Propagation; Signal Processing; Telecommunications; Waveguides, Antennas and Transmission Lines.

Joint Honours in Physics and Electronics, and other combinations

For Joint Honours programmes, an approved selection of topics may be taken from the lists given for the Physics and Electronics Honours courses, so that the final proportion in each is between 40% and 60%. Similarly, Physics or Electronics may be combined with another approved Honours course (e.g. in Computer Science, Geology, Chemistry, Mathematics) to form a joint Honours course. A candidate may substitute approved topics from other Honours courses in the Faculty of Science for topics in any of the Honours courses in this Department.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

The Master's degree may be taken in Physics, or Electronics, and will be examined by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects. Current areas of specialisation include experimental solid state physics, nuclear physics, radio astronomy, upper atmosphere physics, physics education and theoretical high energy physics. The current areas of specialisation in Electronics are transducers, instrumentation and digital signal processing.

A PhD degree may be taken by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects, and is at the discretion of the Head of Department. Current areas of specialisation are as for the MSc degree.

POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES

Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

S Matthews, BA, MA (Pretoria), PhD
(Birmingham)

Professors

P-H Bischoff, BA (Wits), MA (Lancaster), PhD
(Manchester)

L Vincent, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), M. Phil (Oxon),
DPhil (Oxon)

Associate Professor

A Amtaika, BA (Hons)(Natal), MA (Natal), PhD
(Wits)

Senior Lecturers

E Jordaan, BA (Stellenbosch), MA (Stellenbosch),
PhD (Stellenbosch)

AP Fluxman, BA (Wits), MA (Wits), PhD (Cornell)

S Magadla, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Ohio), PhD
(Rhodes)

Lecturers

Y Phyllis, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Rhodes)

T Tselapedi, BA (Hons (Rhodes), MA (Rhodes)

Nelson Mandela Visiting Professor

A Ashforth, BA (Western Australia), MPhil (Oxon),
DPhil (Oxon)

Senior Research Associate

I Souaré, BA (Hons)(Medina), MA (London
Metropolitan), PhD (Québec)

Research Associate

F Diaz, BSc (Los Andes), MSc (Los Andes), MA
(ISS)

Political and International Studies is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. Courses offered in the Department are studied from a global, regional and local perspective with particular attention paid to the South African and African contexts.

POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES 101

First-year, first-semester course, 15 credits at NQF level 5.

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: This course introduces students to the basic components of the discipline of Political and International Studies.

DP requirements: Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work.

Assessment: The course assessment consists both of

course work and a final assessment during the exam period.

Supplementary exam: June result 40-49%

POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES 102

First-year, second-semester course, 15 credits at NQF level 5

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: This course builds on Political and International Studies 101 in order to introduce students to the basic components of the discipline of Political and International Studies.

DP requirements: Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work.

Assessment: The course assessment consists both of course work and a final assessment during the exam period.

Supplementary exam: November result 40-49%

POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES 2

Second-year, full-year course, 30 credits at NQF level 6.

Entrance requirements: Political and International Studies 101 and Political and International Studies 102.

Course description: This course consists of a selection of courses in Political Theory, Comparative Politics, Political Studies, Political Philosophy and/or International Relations.

DP requirements: Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work.

Assessment: The course assessment consists both of course work and a final assessment during the exam period.

Supplementary exam: None.

POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES 3

Third-year, full-year course, 60 credits at NQF level 7.

Entrance requirements: Political and International Studies 2.

Course description: This course consists of a selection of courses in Political Theory, Comparative Politics, Political Studies, Political Philosophy and/or International Relations.

DP requirements: Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work.

Assessment: The course assessment consists both of course work and a final assessment during the exam period.

Supplementary exam: None.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN INTERNATIONAL STUDIES (PDIS)

120 credits at NQF level 8.

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in any field with a good pass.

Course description: The Diploma consists of five courses in the field of International Studies with a focus on Africa. To be awarded the diploma students must pass at least four out of the five courses taken and achieve an overall aggregated pass of at least 50%.

HONOURS IN POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES

120 credits at NQF level 8.

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in Political and International Studies with a good second class pass. Students with a good second class pass degree in a cognate discipline may also be considered for admission.

Course description: The Honours degree consists of either five courses or four courses and a research essay of 10 000 words. The latter option may be exercised only on recommendation of the Head of Department. Students may choose from a range of postgraduate courses offered in the Department and, with the permission of the Head of Department, may also take one course from another discipline. The courses on offer vary from year to year. Prospective students should inquire as to which courses are on offer in the year that they will be registered. To be awarded the degree students must pass at least four out of the five courses taken and achieve an overall aggregated pass of at least 50%.

MASTER'S IN POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES

180 credits at NQF level 9.

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree with at least a good second class pass in Political and International Studies or, with the approval of

the Head of Department, in a cognate discipline. Students with a mark of 70% or above for the Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies may also be considered for admission.

Course description: Students may register for either a combined coursework and thesis Master's degree or a Master's degree by thesis only, as recommended by the Head of Department. The Master's by coursework and thesis consists of three approved postgraduate courses and a thesis of 15 000 to 25 000 words. The required thesis length for the Master's by thesis only is 30 000 to 50 000 words. Master's students are required to have a thesis proposal passed by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee by the 30th of November in the year in which the degree is begun. Those who do not succeed in doing so may not be permitted to continue with the Master's degree. Thesis proposals must conform to the requirements set out in the Rhodes University Higher Degrees Guide and must be submitted to the Higher Degrees Committee with the approval of the supervisor and Head of Department. To be awarded the degree, coursework Master's students need to pass all three courses as well as the thesis. They may not repeat courses already passed at Honours level.

DOCTORAL STUDIES (PhD)

360 credits at NQF level 10.

Entrance requirements: A Master's degree with at least a good second class pass in Political and International Studies or, with the approval of the Head of Department, in a cognate discipline. Admission is also subject to the availability of suitable supervision expertise in the chosen field of study of any prospective student.

Course description: The PhD consists of a dissertation which must conform to the requirements set out in the Rhodes University Higher Degrees Guide. Doctoral students are required to have a thesis proposal passed by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee by the 30th of November of the year in which the degree is begun. Those who do not succeed in doing so may not be permitted to continue with the doctorate.

PSYCHOLOGY

Associate Professor and Head of Department

CS Young, MA (Counselling Psychology)(Natal),
DCounsPsych (Essex), DipCounsPsych (BPS),
CPsychol.

Distinguished Professor and SARChI Chair

CI Macleod, BSc (Natal), HDE, BSocSci (Hons),
MEd (Psychology)(UCT), PhD (Natal)

Professors

J Akhurst, NTSD (Natal), BA, BA (Hons)(UNISA),
MA (Counselling Psychology)(Natal), PhD
(Psychotherapy)(Rhodes), CPsychol, AFBPsS,
SFHEA

LA Wilbraham, BA, BSocSci (Hons), MA (Research
Psychology), PhD (UCT)

Associate Professor

L Saville Young, MA Clinical Psychology)(Natal),
MPhil (Cantab), PhD (London)

Senior Lecturers

A Fourie, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Clinical
Psychology)(UPE), PgDip (Applied Ethics)(Stell),
IAAP(SAAJA)

G Freedman, BCom, BCom (Hons), MCom, DCom
(Industrial Psychology)(UNISA)

L Jacobs, BA (UWC), BA Hons Psychology(UWC),
MA Research Psychology(UWC), PhD (Stell)

J Knoetze, BA, HDE(Stell), BA(Hons)(UPE),
MEd(Psychology)(Stell)

G Steele, BA (NMU), BA (Hons)(UPE), MA
(Research Psychology), PGDHE (Rhodes), PhD
(UNISA)

Lecturers

S Bazana, Badmin (HRM), BCom Honours (UFH),
MCom (Industrial Psychology)(UFH)

W Bohmke, BA (Hons), MA (Research
Psychology)(Rhodes)

DD Booysen, BPsych, MA (Psych)(NMMU), MA
(Clinical Psychology)(Stell)

D Diale, BCom, BCom (Hons)(UNISA), MCom
(Industrial Psychology)(UP)

ES Fouten, MA (Psychology)(UWC)

T Kabangaidze, MCom (Industrial Psychology),
PhD (UFH)

H van Zyl, BA (Hons)(Rhodes) MA (Psychology)
(Rhodes)

S Zondo, MA (Neuropsychology)(UCT)

Emeritus Professors

AB Edwards, BA (Rhodes), MSc (UCT), PhD
(Rhodes)

DJA Edwards, MA (Oxon), PhD (Rhodes),

CPsychol

Research Associates

D Botha, BCom (Rhodes), BProc (Unisa), MSocSc
(Counselling Psychology)(Uni South Australia),
DCom (UPE)

MT Chiweshe, MA (ClinPsych), PhD (Rhodes)

AJ Collins, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Univ California,
Santa Cruz)

N Donaldson, MSocSci, PGDHE (Rhodes)

I Lynch, PhD (UP)

J Marx, PhD (Rhodes)

T Meehan, PhD (Psychology), DCLinPsych (Trinity
College, Dublin)

PE Mnyaka, PhD (UFH)

D Moodley, PhD (Rhodes)

T Morison, PhD (Rhodes)

M Toerien, PhD (York)

S Truter, PhD (RAU)

V Whitefield-Alexander, PhD (Rhodes)

Clinical Associates

S M Hawkrigde, FCPsych(SA)

M Nagdee, FCPsych(SA)

I Reid, MA (Clinical Psychology)(Rhodes)

A three-year major in Psychology or a two-year major in Organisational Psychology may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science.

All undergraduate courses in Psychology and Organisational Psychology are semester courses; for all three undergraduate levels, the first semester should normally be taken before the second semester course. Psychology 101 and 102 are common first-year credit for students majoring in Psychology or Organisational Psychology. In the second year students elect to continue either to Psychology 201 and 202 or Organisational Psychology 201 and 202. A major in Psychology (Psychology 301 and 302) is recommended for students planning to enter a career in psychological and/or social research, or in the helping professions with an emphasis on counselling or clinical work. It is also recommended for students wanting to work in a range of settings that require interactions with individuals and groups. A major in Organisational Psychology (Organisational Psychology 301 and 302) is a good preparation for work in human resources, management or organisational development.

Students who wish to switch from Psychology to Organisational Psychology or vice versa require permission from the Head of Department. This will not be automatic and in cases where permission is given assignments may be set to enable students to cover the work they have missed. Currently, it is not permitted to major in Psychology and Organisational Psychology.

Concurrent registration first and second year courses, or second and third year courses in Psychology or Organisational Psychology requires permission from the Head of Department and is only allowed in exceptional circumstances.

The Critical Studies in Sexualities and Reproductions Research Programme (CSSR) is a unit within the Psychology Department that conducts multidisciplinary research. Masters and doctoral supervision is open to postgraduate students located in psychology or other humanities departments who have a background in any of the relevant social sciences.

Psychology 101 (PSY 101)

First-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: This is first semester course, in which the following three modules are usually taught: Developmental Psychology; Biological and Neuro-psychology; and Learning and Cognition.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 2-hour examination in June counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Psychology 102 (PSY 102)

First-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5).

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: This is the second semester course, in which the following three modules are usually taught: Personality Psychology; Social Psychology; and Organisational Psychology.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 2-hour examination in November counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Psychology 201 (PSY 201)

Second-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance requirements: PSY 101 and 102.

Course description: This is a first semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Performance Psychology and Social Psychology.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Psychology 202 (PSY 202)

Second-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance requirements: PSY 101 and 102.

Course description: This is a second semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Developmental Psychology, and Mental Health and Distress.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Organisational Psychology 201 (ORG 201)

Second-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance requirements: PSY 101 and 102.

Course description: This is a first semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Organisational Behaviour, and Health and Wellbeing.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Organisational Psychology 202 (ORG 202)

Second-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 6).

Entrance requirements: PSY 101 and 102.

Course description: This is a second semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Workplace Relations and HR Psychology.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%.
Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Psychology 301 (PSY 301)

Third-year, first-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7).

Entrance requirements: PSY 201 and 202.

Course description: This is a first semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Psychological Assessment and Psychological Interventions.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Psychology 302 (PSY 302)

Third-year, second-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7).

Entrance requirements: PSY 201 and 202.

Course description: This is a second semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Generating Knowledge (Research Methods) and Critical Health psychology.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: June result 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Organisational Psychology 301 (ORG 301)

Third-year, first-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7).

Entrance requirements: ORG 201 and 202.

Course description: This is a first semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Career Psychology and Psychological Assessment.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

Supplementary exam Overall mark of 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Organisational Psychology 302 (ORG 302)

Third-year, second-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7).

Entrance requirements: ORG 201 and 202.

Course description: This is a second semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Research in Organisations and

Organisational Effectiveness.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 50%.

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%.

Psychology Honours

Full year degree course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject.

Course description: The full-year course provides in-depth study for students interested in careers in Clinical, Counselling and Research Psychology. Entrance into the Honours programme will normally be restricted to students who have a good result in their final year of undergraduate study. Students write one compulsory paper (Research methodology – quantitative and qualitative) of 30 credits and three elective papers (3 x 20 credits), and complete a research project (30 credits). Electives usually cover a variety of topics in Psychology that may change from year to year, depending on staff availability.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: One written examination for each paper. Examinations are written in June and November.

Supplementary exam: A result of 40 – 49%, usually for no more than two papers with the permission of the Head of Department. In such cases, the overall mark for the paper will be capped at a maximum of 50%.

Organisational Psychology Honours

Full year degree course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Organisational Psychology as a major subject.

Course description: The full-year course provides in-depth study for students interested in careers in Organisational Psychology or research. Entrance into the Honours programme will normally be restricted to students who have a good result in their final year of undergraduate study. Students write one compulsory paper (Research methodology – quantitative and qualitative) of 30 credits and four electives (4 x 15 credits), and complete a research project (30 credits). Electives usually cover a variety of topics in Organisational Psychology that may change from year to year, depending on staff availability.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: One written examination for each paper.

Examinations are written in June and November.

Supplementary exam: A result of 40 – 49%, usually for no more than two papers with the permission of the Head of Department. In such cases, the overall mark for the paper will be capped at a maximum of 50%.

Master's Degree in Clinical Psychology

A two-year degree course (180 credits at NQF level 9; the first year is a coursework year and the second year is the internship)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject and an Honours degree in Psychology

Course description: The Master of Arts in Clinical Psychology is a professional training course that provides the foundations leading to graduates being able to apply for registration as a Clinical Psychologist with the Professional Board for Psychology of the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA). The Masters course consists of academic and practical training, and may only be taken on a full-time basis following careful selection processes. Modules in psychopathology, psychological assessment, psychological intervention, community psychology and contextual, professional and ethical issues relevant to the practice and profession of Clinical Psychology are offered. Students work in a range of cultural settings with adults, young people and children. Practical training includes supervised work with cases within individual, group and community contexts. Students must complete a research half-thesis on a topic relevant to the practice of Clinical Psychology. The internship is served at an accredited internship site and is a requirement for registration as a Clinical Psychologist. The coursework, thesis and internship together constitute the academic requirements for the award of the degree. All coursework must be completed before the commencement of the internship. An HPCSA requirement for registration as a Clinical Psychologist in Independent Practice is the completion of a national board examination. Clinical psychologists are also required to complete a year of community service.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: See the course handbook.

Supplementary exam: A supplementary exam, usually for no more than one of the three written papers, may be awarded in special cases with the permission of the Head of Department. In such

cases, the overall mark for the paper will be capped at a maximum of 50%.

Master's Degree in Counselling Psychology

A two-year degree course (180 credits at NQF level 9; the first year is a coursework year and the second year is the internship)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject and an Honours degree in Psychology

Course description: The Master of Arts in Counselling Psychology is a professional training course that provides the foundation leading to graduates being able to apply for registration as a Counselling Psychologist with the Professional Board for Psychology of the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA). The Master's course consists of academic and practical training, and may only be taken on a full-time basis following careful selection processes. Modules in psychopathology, psychological assessment, psychological intervention, community psychology and contextual, professional and ethical issues relevant to the practice and profession of Counselling Psychology are offered. Students work in a range of cultural settings with adults, young people and children. Practical training includes supervised work with cases within individual, group and community contexts. Students must complete a research half-thesis on a topic relevant to the practice of Counselling Psychology. The internship is served at an accredited internship site and is a requirement for registration as a Counselling Psychologist. The coursework, thesis and internship together constitute the academic requirements for the award of the degree. All coursework must be completed before the commencement of the internship. An HPCSA requirement for registration as a Counselling Psychologist in Independent Practice is the completion of a national board examination. Counselling psychologists are not presently required to complete a year of community service.

DP requirements: See the course handbook.

Assessment: See the course handbook.

Supplementary exam: A supplementary exam, usually for no more than one of the three written papers, may be awarded in special cases with the permission of the Head of Department. In such cases, the overall mark for the paper will be capped at a maximum of 50%.

Master's Degree by Thesis

A minimum of a one year degree course (180 credits at NQF level 9)

Entrance requirements: Usually an Honours degree in Psychology

Course description: A Master's degree by thesis may be undertaken on a full-time or part-time basis. Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. Under the supervision of a staff member, students produce a research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor. Supportive workshops on research skills are offered.

PhD in Psychology

A minimum of a three year degree course (360 credits at NQF level 10)

A PhD must be taken by thesis (see the General Rules). Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. Under the supervision of a staff member, students produce a doctoral thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor. Supportive workshops on research skills are offered.

SOCIOLOGY

Associate Professor and Head of Department

GG Klerck, BA (Hons), LLB, MA (UKZN), PhD (Rhodes)

Professor

LJW van der Walt, BA (Hons), PhD (Wits)

Associate Professor (Research)

KD Helliker, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (Newfoundland), PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professors

MD Drewett, BA (Hons), MSocSc, PhD (Rhodes)

JJ Roodt, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (Wits), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

T Alexander, BSocSc (Hons) (US), MSocSc (Rhodes)

JKC Chisaka, BSocSc (Hons), MSocSc (Rhodes)

C Martínez Mullen, LicSocSc (Buenos Aires), MSocSc (UKZN)

KL Ntinkin, BSocSc (Hons), MSocSc (Rhodes)

L Penxa, BSocSc (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (NMU)

TA Sipungu, BA, LLB, MA (Rhodes)

HB Sishuta, BA (Hons) (UFH), MA, MSocSc (Rhodes)

Research Associates

L Alferts

CT Allan

L Makonese

CA Nardi

Visiting Professor

AL Bialakowsky

P GunnigleJP Holloway

PK Jha

Professors Emeritus

JK Coetzee

FT Hendricks

* Sociology is a three-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce

* Industrial and Economic Sociology is a two-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce

* Sociology and Industrial and Economic Sociology may not be taken together

* A non-continuing pass in Sociology I will not meet the entrance requirements for Sociology II or for Industrial and Economic Sociology II

* First semester courses are examined in June and second semester courses are examined in November

* Any student, who fails an examination paper by no less than 40%, may be granted the option of writing a supplementary examination for that paper

SOCIOLOGY 1 (SOC1)

First-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: None

This course introduces students to the concepts (i.e. language) used by sociologists as well as the theoretical perspectives they employ when analysing society. Social inequality, institutions (such as the state, the family, education, and the economy), and social change are discussed. Also included in Sociology I are topical themes such as deviance, social change, work and leisure, population, urbanisation, environment, sexuality, poverty, sub-cultures, the media in society, religion, and other relevant issues. The papers in this course have a strong South African focus.

Assessment: Coursework counts 30% and examinations in June and November count 70%
Supplementary exams: June/November result of 40 – 49%

SOCIOLOGY 2 (SOC2)

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirement: SOC1

This course consists of the following core papers:

Theory and Society: This course begins by introducing students to the theorising process in sociology. The central concerns and ideas of the major classical theorists are discussed. The focus is on ideas and theories developed to understand and explain significant social changes brought about by earlier economic, social and political transformations up to and including events of the early 20th century. The relevance of these theories for contemporary societies is addressed.

Introduction to Social Research: This is an introductory course to research methods, which are indispensable to the work of sociologists as they construct scientific explanations of human society through empirical investigations. The basic

dimensions of the research process, including research design and research techniques, are covered.

Two specialised areas of study that will be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Sociology of Development, Crime and Deviance, Political Sociology, Family Sociology, Sociology of Language, Race and Class, Environment and Society, Mass Communication, Migrant Studies, Sociology of Education, Sociology of Health and Illness, and Popular Culture.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%
Supplementary exams: June/November result of 40 – 49%

SOCIOLOGY 3 (SOC3)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirement: SOC2

This course consists of the following core papers:

Contemporary Social Theory: This course includes contemporary theories and covers modern debates on the theorising process as well as the contours of the different systems of thought in the discipline.

Social Research: This is an intermediate research methods course that builds on the second-year social research course. It provides a deeper and more nuanced understanding of the research process as well as the many complexities and challenges faced in undertaking social research.

Two specialised areas of study that will be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Development Studies, Sociology of Education, Race and Ethnicity, Gender Studies, Sociology of Religion, State and Society, Political Sociology, Sociology of Law, Environment and Society, and Popular Culture.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%
Supplementary exams: June/November result of 40 – 49%

INDUSTRIAL AND ECONOMIC SOCIOLOGY 2 (IES2)

Second-year, full-year course (30 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirement: SOC1

This course consists of the following papers:

Industry, Economy, and Society: This course provides a conceptual and theoretical foundation for Industrial and Economic Sociology and thus lays the basis for all other courses that follow. It examines the historical rise of capitalist societies and developments in the economy and industry during the 20th and 21st centuries. Both classical and contemporary thinkers are covered in the course.

Trade Unions and Comparative Labour History: In this course, classical and contemporary theories of trade unions are reviewed. This is followed by a comparative and historical study of trade union movements in selected countries. A primary focus is on the nature and functions of trade unions, their relationship to political parties and the state, their organisation and politics, and their structures and tactics. In addition, we consider issues such as the historical shifts in trade union tactics, the role of the trade union movement in democratic change, and the strategic challenges faced by the trade union movement.

Introduction to Social Research: This is an introductory course to research methods, which are indispensable to the work of sociologists as they construct scientific explanations of human society through empirical investigations. The basic dimensions of the research process, including research design and research techniques, are explored.

Sociology of Labour Markets: This course offers a distinctively sociological understanding of labour markets in capitalist societies. It examines the power structures and inequalities that underpin labour markets. In addition, it traces the important changes in the standard employment contract that have taken place under neoliberal restructuring.

Other specialised areas of study that may be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Gender and Work, Industrial and Occupational Health, Organisational Studies,

Labour in the World Economy, and Conflict in the Workplace.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%
Supplementary exams: June/November result of 40 – 49%

INDUSTRIAL AND ECONOMIC SOCIOLOGY 3 (IES3)

Third-year, full-year course (60 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirement: IES2

This course consists of the following papers:

Political Economy of Contemporary Capitalism: This course explores contemporary capitalism, with specific reference to neo-liberal restructuring, locating South African developments within larger global and historical processes. It introduces economic sociology and political economy, an examination of the theory underlying, and the causes and effects, of neo-liberal models; it also considers the impact of competing state policies and state capacity – and class struggles – on those policies. The course also examines alternative models, and considers the question of whether there are alternatives to neo-liberalism.

Industrial Relations: This course introduces the dynamics and institutions of industrial relations. The role in collective bargaining of trade unions, employers' organisations, and the government are explored in some detail. Aspects of labour law, such as discipline, retrenchment and dismissal, are also covered. The final part of the course deals with the nature of industrial conflict as well as the various models of and mechanisms for dispute resolution.

Social Research: This is an intermediate research methods course that builds on the second-year social research course. It provides a deeper and more nuanced understanding of the research process as well as the many complexities and challenges faced in undertaking social research.

Sociology of Work: This course explores in detail the question of work in industrial society, and considers the related areas of technological development and managerial strategies. It examines both classical and contemporary theoretical views on work. Included

the course is a discussion of the debates on the changing labour process. Contemporary forms of industrial restructuring and the future of work are also covered.

Other specialised areas of study that may be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Development and Industrialisation, State and Labour, Contemporary Capitalism and Globalisation, Economic and Industrial Policy, Economic Sociology, and Labour and Workplace Restructuring.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%
Supplementary exams: June/November result of 40 – 49%

HONOURS DEGREE

120 credits at NQF level 8

Entrance requirement: 65% for SOC3, IES3, or cognate discipline

An Honours degree may be taken in Sociology, Development Studies, or Industrial and Economic Sociology. Candidates will be registered in the faculty in which their undergraduate degree was completed.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40% and examinations in June and November count 60%
Supplementary exams: June/November result of 40 – 49%

Honours in Sociology (SOC4-GEN)

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include four of the following:

Advanced Research Methodology

Advanced Social Theory

Environmental Sociology

Gender Studies

Land and Agrarian Studies

Sociology of Health

Sociology of Identities

Sociology of Race

State and Society

Any other specialised area of study

Honours in Development Studies (SOC4-DEV)

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include four of the following:

Advanced Research Methodology
Development Theory
Gender and Development
Land and Agrarian Studies
Models of Industrial Development
Social Policy and Development
State and Social Accountability
Value and Commodity Chains
Any other specialised area of study

Honours in Industrial and Economic Sociology (SOC4-IES)

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department, and would include four of the following:

Advanced Labour Market Studies
Advanced Research Methodology
Advanced Sociology of Work
Comparative Labour Law
Economic and Industrial Policy
Human Resource Development and Management
Industrial and Employment Relations
Globalisation, Flexible Labour, and the Informal Economy
Trade Unions and Comparative Labour Studies
Any other specialised area of study

In the case of all three honours programmes listed above, a candidate may, with the approval of the Head of Department, register for no more than one paper in a cognate department.

Interdisciplinary Honours (SOC4-IDS)

See Interdepartmental Studies.

The Department participates in the Interdisciplinary Honours degree offerings in Industrial Relations, Development Studies, Gender Studies, and South African Cultural Studies.

MASTERS DEGREE

180 credits at NQF level 9

Entrance requirement: 68% for honours in sociology, industrial and economic sociology, or cognate discipline

A Master's degree may be taken in Sociology, Development Studies, Industrial and Economic Sociology, and Industrial Relations by thesis or by coursework/dissertation. Students will only be accepted for a Master's degree by thesis if they have completed a dissertation in their honours programme or submitted a satisfactory long essay with their Master's application. Candidates may be registered in Humanities or Commerce, depending on the faculty in which their Honours degree was completed. See the General Rules.

Masters by Thesis (SOC5-THS)

This degree involves research only, and the production, within two years of full-time study, of a thesis of 50,000 words. Proposals should be submitted to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within nine months of registration.

Masters by Coursework and Dissertation (SOC5-CWD)

This degree takes place over 12 months, and consists of three papers as well as a dissertation of 30,000 words. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department, and include three of the following:

Advanced Social Research
Advanced Social Theory
Development Studies
Industry, Economy, and Society
Land and Agrarian Studies
Any other specialised area of study

The coursework will commence one week before the first term of the academic year. Proposals for the dissertation must be reported to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee, at a date announced by the Department, and the dissertation must be submitted for examination within 12 months of registration. Students must pass at least two papers and get at least a 50% aggregate for the three papers in order to pass the degree. Passing at least two papers with at least a 50% aggregate for the three papers is also a precondition for proceeding to the dissertation. Passing the dissertation is a precondition for passing the degree.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and examinations count 50%

DOCTORAL DEGREE (SOC-PHD)

360 credits at NQF level 10

Entrance requirements: 68% for Master's degree in sociology, industrial and economic sociology, or cognate discipline as well as a strong concept note

A Doctoral degree (PhD) in Sociology is taken by thesis. The faculties in which the degree may be registered are Humanities or Commerce. Proposals should be submitted to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within nine months of registration. See the General Rules.

RESEARCH UNITS

Governance and Development Unit (GDU)

The GDU seeks to strengthen the governance of public resources and to improve public service delivery and development outcomes in South Africa, particularly at municipal level. The GDU's Municipal Governance programme undertakes research into municipal services (like water, sanitation, refuse removal, and electricity) and provides tailored short certificate course training to municipal councillors, officials, and members of civil society. The GDU also provides opportunities

to postgraduate students to gain work experience as paid interns in South African municipalities. Selected students undertake research and provide support to municipal management and oversight structures (by, for instance, acting as Municipal Public Accounts Committee researchers). They subsequently integrate their findings and experiences into their Master's degree theses and are assisted to publish their research.

Unit of Zimbabwean Studies (UZS)

The UZS has two main components. First, Master's and doctoral students, who undertake research on a range of topics pertaining to Zimbabwean history and society, including land and land reform, livelihoods, civil society, social movements and political parties. Second, research is undertaken by the UZS in conjunction with colleagues at universities in Zimbabwe, with the current research programme focusing on the land-occupation movement and fast-track land reform. In addition and when possible, Zimbabwean studies are covered at third-year and honours levels.

STATISTICS

Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

JS Baxter, MSc, PGDHE (Rhodes)

Emeritus Professor

SE Radloff, PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

I Szyzskowski, PhD (Maria Curie-Skłodowska)

Senior Lecturer

I Garisch, PhD (UFS)

Lecturers

A Chinomona, PhD (UKZN)

T Maqubela, MSc (West Virginia University)

S Izally, MSc (Rhodes)

Mathematical Statistics (MST) and **Applied Statistics** (AST) are five semester subjects which may be taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BSc(InfSys), BA, BSocSc, BCom, BBusSc and BEcon.

To major in Mathematical Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT 1; STA 102; MST 2; MST 3. See Rule S.23.

To major in Applied Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT 1C; STA 102; MST 2; AST 3.

The availability of both MST 3 and AST 3 in any year is subject to adequate staffing.

A pass in Mathematics (level 4 or greater) on the NSC is a prerequisite for admission to all first-year courses in the Department.

If a candidate obtains a pass in a semester-course offered by the Department, but fails to gain an aggregate pass for the full course in the following ordinary or supplementary examination, then that candidate is required to pass the semester-course failed in order to gain the full-credit.

Besides the major courses, the department offers various other courses in Statistics.

Statistics 101 (STA 101) is a one-semester first-year course which may be taken for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science.

Statistics 102 (STA 102) is a one-semester first-year course.

Biostatistics (PC301) is a one-semester course taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Pharmacy.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/statistics/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

First-year level courses in Statistics

There are two first-year courses in Statistics. STA 101 is held in the first semester and STA 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. STA 102 is one of the prerequisites for MST 2.

STA 101 (One paper of 3 hours)

Numerical descriptive statistics; simple classical probability theory; basic discrete and continuous distributions; expected values and moments; correlation and linear regression; point and interval estimation; modern univariate statistical inference; ANOVA; design and analysis of questionnaires; categorical data analysis; survival analysis.

STA 102 (One paper of 3 hours)

Probability: introduction; sample spaces; probability measures; calculating probabilities; conditional probability; independence. Discrete random variables: Bernoulli; binomial; geometric; negative binomial; hypergeometric and Poisson distributions. Continuous random variables: exponential; gamma; normal and beta density functions; Functions of random variables.

PC301 Biostatistics (One paper of 3 hours)

Numerical descriptive statistics; simple classical probability theory; basic discrete and continuous distributions; expected values and moments; correlation and linear regression; point and interval estimation; modern univariate statistical inference; ANOVA; design and analysis of questionnaires; categorical data analysis; survival analysis.

Other first-year courses offered in the Department are as follows:

STA 1D Statistics 1D (One paper of 3 hours)

Collection and tabulation of statistical data; graphs and diagrams; frequency distributions; measures of central tendency and dispersion; shapes and parameters of classical distributions (normal, binomial, Poisson); simple classical probability theory; conditional probability; analysis of time series; index numbers; correlation and simple linear regression; sampling distributions; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing.

Second-year level courses in Mathematical Statistics

There are two second-year courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 201 is held in the first semester and MST 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MST 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Mathematics (MAT 1C) and Statistics 102 (STA 102) is required before a student may register for MST 201 or MST 202. Adequate performance in MST 201 is required before a student may register for MST 202.

MST 201 (One paper of 3 hours)

Jointly distributed random variables: discrete; continuous; independent; conditional distributions; functions; order statistics. Expected values: expectation; variance and standard deviation; covariance and correlation; moment-generating functions. Limit theorems: law of large numbers; central limit theorem. Chi-square; student-t; F distributions. Sampling: population parameters; simple and stratified random sampling.

MST 202 (One paper of 3 hours)

Estimation of parameters: Goodness-of-fit and Poisson distribution; method of moments; method of maximum likelihood; confidence intervals; efficiency; sufficiency. Hypothesis testing: types of errors; power; Neyman-Pearson lemma; generalised likelihood ratio tests; measures of location and dispersion; comparison of two independent samples; paired samples; categorical data analysis; simple linear regression.

Third-year level courses in Mathematical Statistics

There are two third-year courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 301 is held in the first semester and MST 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MST 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Mathematical Statistics (MST 2), Statistics 102 (STA 102) and in Mathematics (MAT 1C) is required before a student may register for MST 301 or MST 302. An aggregated mark of at least 60% for MST 2 is required for entry into MST 3. Adequate performance in MST 301 is required before a student may register for MST 302.

MST 301 / AST 301 (Two papers of 3 hours each)
Distribution theory; normal sampling theory, multivariate normal distribution; the general linear model, analysis of variance; non-linear regression.

MST 302 (Two papers of 3 hours each)
A selection of topics from: limit theorems; stochastic processes; multivariate statistical procedures; nonparametric procedures; sampling techniques; quality control; Bayesian inference; financial statistics.

Third-year level courses in Applied Statistics

Applied Statistics 3 is comprised of the two third year courses MST 301 and AST 302.

MST 301 is held in the first semester and AST 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course AST 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Mathematical Statistics (MST 2), Statistics 102 (STA 102) and in Mathematics (MAT 1C) is required before a student may register for MST 301 or AST 302. Adequate performance in MST 301 / AST 301 is required before a student may register for AST 302.

AST 302 (Two papers of 3 hours each)

Due to staffing constraints AST 302 will not be offered in 2019.

Mathematical Statistics Honours

The course consists of four modules and a research project. The modules may be selected from the following topics: Bayesian statistics; econometrics; generalized linear models; multivariate analysis; probability theory; stochastic processes; time series analysis; survey methods and sampling techniques; stochastic calculus in finance; queueing theory and simulation; applied data analysis; pattern recognition.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to research degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. The Master's degree is by thesis. A candidate may also be required to take an oral examination.

ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY

Head of Department

PW Froneman, PhD (Rhodes), FRSSAf

Distinguished Professor of Zoology and NRF

Research Chair

CD McQuaid, PhD (UCT), FRSSAf

Distinguished Professor & Head of Entomology

MP Hill, PhD (Rhodes), FRSSAf

Professor (Entomology)

MH Villet, PhD (Wits), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Lecturer (Entomology & Zoology)

S Edwards, PhD (Stellenbosch)

Associate Professor (Zoology)

NB Richoux, PhD (Memorial)

Lecturer (Entomology)

S Motitsoe, MSc (Rhodes)

Lecturer (Zoology)

B Smit, PhD (Pretoria)

N Mgqatsa, PhD (NMMU)

Emeritus Professors

AJFK Craig, MSc (UCT), PhD (Natal)

AN Hodgson, BSc (Liverpool), PhD (Manchester),

DSc (Manchester), FRSSAf

RTF Bernard, PhD (Natal)

Emeritus Associate Professor

PE Hulley, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (London)

Honorary Professors

RM Brigham, PhD (Canada)

RSK Barnes, PhD (London)

Honorary Fellow

BR Allanson, DSc (Natal), PhD (UCT), DSc

(Rhodes), FRSSAf

Senior Research Associates

S Moore, PhD (Rhodes)

DM Parker, PhD (Rhodes)

Research Associates

FC De Moor, PhD (Wits)

HM James, PhD (Rhodes)

UPL Heshula, PhD (Rhodes)

JM Midgley, PhD (Rhodes)

NAF Miranda, PhD (NMU)

B Bonnevie, MSc (Rhodes)

Zoology (ZOO) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

Entomology (ENT) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

To major in Zoology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 102; ZOO 201; ZOO 202; ZOO 301, ZOO 302.

To major in Entomology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101; ZOO 101; BOT 102; ENT 201; ENT 202; ENT 301; ENT 302.

Two, or in some cases four, semester-credits in Zoology are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

Detailed information on course structures and the types of curricula involving Zoology or Entomology is available from the Head of Department.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/zoologyandentomology> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

Students are required to attend all official field trips which form part of any semester-course for which they are registered.

First-year level courses in Zoology

There are two first-year courses in Zoology. CEL 101 is normally held in the first semester and ZOO 101 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ZOO 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (45%) in each component. However, students wishing to major in Zoology and/or Entomology must normally obtain credit in both components separately. Supplementary examinations may be awarded in either course, provided that a candidate achieves 35% in semester 1 and 45% in semester 2.

Adequate performance (at least 35%) for CEL 101 is required before a student may register for ZOO 101.

CEL 101: Cell Biology

This course compares cell structure in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, and examines cellular processes including cell to cell communication, photosynthesis

and cell respiration. Cell division, fundamental genetics, including the structure of genetic material and how it controls cellular processes are also covered.

ZOO 101: Animal Diversity, Structure and Function

This course provides an introduction to the evolution, systematics, structure and functional biology of the animal kingdom, both vertebrate and invertebrate.

Second-year level courses in Zoology

There are two independent second-year courses in Zoology, ZOO 201 and ZOO 202. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ZOO 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

When the intention is to major in Zoology, credit in Zoology (CEL 101, ZOO 101) Botany (BOT 102), and Chemistry (CHE 1) is normally required before a student may register for ZOO 201 or ZOO 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 or BOT 102 concurrently with ZOO 201 and ZOO 202. Adequate performance (at least 45%) in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester.

ZOO 201: Principles of Ecology and Evolution

This course concerns the general principles of ecology, micro- and macro-evolution. Ecological topics covered fall under the levels of organism, population, community, and ecosystem. Short field trips may be held. Evolution topics include evolutionary genetics and species diversification.

ZOO 202: Environmental and Behavioural Physiology

This course examines the effects of environmental variables such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, ions, water, temperature, and other external stimuli on how animals function and how different groups of animals respond to different environmental conditions and stimuli.

Second-year level courses in Entomology

There are two independent second-year courses in Entomology, ENT 201 and ENT 202. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ENT 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

When the intention is to major in Entomology, credit in Zoology (CEL 101, ZOO 101), Botany (BOT 102), and in Chemistry (CHE 1) is normally required before a student may register for ENT 201 or ENT 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 or BOT 102 concurrently with ENT 201 and ENT 202. Adequate performance (at least 45%) in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester.

ENT 201: Professional Entomology: Insects and Man

This course provides an overview of the biology of the major insect orders and their impact on humans, particularly in the context of major entomology career pathways such as agricultural entomology, medical and veterinary entomology, pesticides and biological control, aquatic entomology and biomonitoring. Practicals will be both field- and laboratory-based, and students must submit an insect collection.

ENT 202: General Insect Biology

This course provides an introduction to the anatomy, physiology, genetics, population biology, diversity, phylogeny, and conservation of insects. Practicals will be both field- and laboratory-based and students must submit an insect collection and attend short weekend field trips.

Third-year level courses in Zoology

There are two independent third year courses in Zoology. A student wishing to major in Zoology must obtain credit in ZOO 301 and ZOO 302. Credit may be obtained in each of these courses separately. Aggregation will be deemed equivalent to a two credit course ZOO 3, provided the candidate obtains the required subminimum in each semester.

No supplementary examinations are offered in third year courses. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final course mark. A research project, which is carried out during the year, forms a component of each semester in Zoology. The project mark for the first semester will be based on a midyear report. Students who register for one semester only either undertake a shorter project or write an extended essay. The examination may include an oral examination at the discretion of the examiners. When the intention is to major in Zoology, credit in ZOO 201 and ZOO 202 is required before a student may register for a third-year semester. Adequate performance (at least 45%) in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester.

ZOO 301: African Zoology: land animals and life histories

This course uses the African vertebrate fauna to illustrate the principles of behavioural and physiological adaptation to terrestrial habitats. Normally, an introductory section on African biogeography is followed by an examination of the problems and solutions associated with life in particular environments. These include arid habitats, montane and forest habitats and grasslands/savanna. A short field trip may be held.

ZOO 302: Marine Biology

The oceans have a profound effect on life on earth, providing food for man and influencing both weather and climate. This course emphasises the physical properties of the marine environment and how these shape species' interactions and food webs. Topics covered include ocean circulation, primary production, ecology of the deep sea, rocky shores, sandy beaches and estuaries, planktonic food webs and pelagic/demersal fisheries, and the behavioural and physiological ecology of intertidal invertebrates. Short field trips may also be held.

Third-year level courses in Entomology

There are two independent third year courses in Entomology. A student wishing to major in Entomology must obtain credit in ENT 301 and ENT 302. Credit may be obtained in each of these courses separately. Aggregation will be deemed equivalent to a two credit course ENT 3 provided the candidate obtains the required subminimum in each semester.

No supplementary examinations are offered in third year courses. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final course mark. A research project, which is carried out during the year, forms a component of each semester in Entomology. The project mark for the first semester will be based on a mid-year report. Students who register for one semester only either undertake a shorter project or write an extended essay. The examination may include an oral examination at the discretion of the examiners.

When the intention is to major in Entomology, credit in ENT 201 and ENT 202 is required before a student may register for a third-year semester. Adequate performance (at least 45%) in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester.

ENT 301: Applied Insect Ecology

This course illustrates the application of ecological theory to applied problems in, for example, agricultural entomology, apiculture, weed biocontrol and forensic entomology.

ENT 302: Environmental Entomology

This course investigates the role of insects in the environment and covers aspects of conservation entomology, biological monitoring and aquatic entomology.

Honours in Zoology and Entomology

The Department offers separate Honours courses in Zoology, Entomology, Marine Biology, and African Vertebrate Biodiversity. The aim of these courses is to produce graduates who think in an analytical and critical way and who are capable of independent research, from project planning and experimental design to scientific writing. Students participate in core courses of statistics, scientific writing and philosophy of science, global ecology and evolution, and undertake a series of seminars, two major projects and a number of content-based courses. Whenever possible, students undertake a major field trip and attend a local scientific conference. Details of each Honours course are presented below. Joint honours with cognate disciplines may be permitted at the discretion of the heads of departments concerned.

Zoology Honours

The content-based courses may include special topics in animal reproduction and life histories, animal behaviour, disturbance ecology, evolutionary biology, invasion biology, trophic ecology, and applied zoology. Candidates undertake two research projects in any field of Zoology.

Entomology Honours

The course consists of advanced studies in Entomology, with special emphasis on insect ecology, economic entomology, biological control, biological invasions. Candidates undertake two entomological research projects.

Marine Biology Honours

Candidates should have either Botany, Zoology or Ichthyology as major BSc subjects (exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Head of Department). The course consists of advanced studies in Marine Biology, with special emphasis on physical/chemical oceanography, planktonic food webs, benthic food webs, trophic ecology, fringing communities, and life history strategies. Candidates undertake two marine biological research projects. This course may involve a short oceanic research cruise.

African Vertebrate Biodiversity Honours

This course will focus on the principles that underpin sustaining vertebrate biodiversity in Africa. The course consists of advanced studies in vertebrate biology with emphasis on biogeography and biodiversity, population processes and life history patterns, physiological adaptations, and conservation and management. There is a strong practical component, in which students get field experience in ornithology and mammalogy. Candidates undertake two vertebrate research projects. There will normally be at least two week-long field trips in a local game reserve.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

RESEARCH INSTITUTES AND UNITS

THE ALBANY MUSEUM

Director

M Vabaza

Assistant Director

Vacant

Department of Entomology and Arachnology

Curator: T Bellingan, PhD (Rhodes)

Curator Emeritus: S Gess, BSc, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Curator Emeritus: E Pringle, LLB

Department of Freshwater Invertebrates

Curator: HM Barber-James, PhD (Rhodes)

Assistant Curator: MC Mlambo

Postdoctoral Fellow: AJ Holland, PhD (Rhodes)

Curator Emeritus: FC de Moor, PhD (Wits)

Department of Earth Sciences

Curator: R Prevec, PhD (Natal), PhD (Wits)

Postdoctoral Fellow: R Gess, PhD (Wits)

Postdoctoral Fellow: S Moyo, PhD (Rhodes)

Curator Emeritus: WJ de Klerk, PhD (Rhodes)

Herbarium: (staffed jointly by Rhodes University and the Albany Museum)

Curator: AP Dold

Botanist: PV Cimi

Department of Archaeology

Curator: C Booth

Emeritus Curator: JNF Binneman, PhD (Wits)

Anthropology

Curator: P Mntonintshi

Department of History

Curator: G Zomelele

Assistant Curator: B September

Curator Emeritus: WF Way-Jones

Curator: Observatory Museum Z Gxotelwa

Communications and Marketing Officer: L Dyani

Conservator: A Chiazzari

Education: K Mhasele

Exhibitions Officer: P Janse

Mobile Museum: N Madinda

Technical Services: H Köhl

Visitor Services: N Mtyobo

The Albany Museum falls under the Department of Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture in the Eastern Cape government, although the building and collections are owned by a Board of Trustees. The Museum, as an Affiliated Institution, has enjoyed

a long and productive relationship with Rhodes University. Several staff members are Science Faculty Board Members, have supervised numerous student project over the years, and have run courses within the academic programmes of departments such as Entomology, Botany and Geology. Museum staff engage extensively with the public, in the form of tours and talks to local school groups (contact the Museum for a copy of our Education Booklet with a schedule of focus weeks run by each department), participation in Scifest, careers days and many other initiatives. Our extensive collections of insects, fossils, birds and plants are an important research and heritage resource.

History of the Albany Museum

The Albany Museum, the second oldest museum in southern Africa, was founded in September 1855. The Museum acquired its own building in 1902 when the core block of the present Natural Sciences Museum was built. The palaeontological and geological collections have their origins with the collections of Andrew Geddes Bain and Dr W Guybon Atherstone; Dr Schonland built up the herbarium and the library.

With Dr Schonland, came the historic ties which the Museum has with Rhodes University. He addressed the Cape Parliament, speaking for the establishment of a university in Grahamstown, and persuaded the trustees of Cecil Rhodes's estate to pledge funds for the establishment of Rhodes University College. When the College was established in 1904, the Director, Dr Schonland became its first professor of Botany. Dr Schonland was succeeded as director by Dr John Hewitt.

John Hewitt's research lay in the fields of vertebrate zoology and archaeology. During this period Grahamstown's longstanding affair with fishes started. In 1930 Dr JLB Smith, Senior Lecturer in Chemistry at Rhodes, identified and catalogued the Museum's marine fish collection.

On 6 September 1941 the Museum was burnt down. The library and most of the collections were saved but there was a great loss of exhibited material. The Museum was rebuilt and the displays were reconstructed.

In 1952 the Museum's collection of fishes was loaned to the University's Department of Ichthyology. Three years later the Museum celebrated its centenary and, in 1957, its staff became Provincial employees. Dr John Hewitt retired the following year, and was succeeded by Dr T. H. Barry.

During Dr Barry's tenure of five years the Hewitt and Rennie Wings were added to the Natural Sciences Museum and the 1820 Settlers Memorial Museum was built.

The period between 1965 and 1977, the directorship of Mr C. F. Jacot Guillarmod, was one of consolidation. The National Collection of Freshwater Organisms was transferred from the CSIR to the Museum. Fort Selwyn was restored by the Province and handed over to the Museum in 1977.

Under Mr Jacot Guillarmod's successor, Mr B. C. Wilmot, the Museum entered a new period of growth. De Beers Consolidated Mines Limited purchased and restored the Observatory and the Priest's House and donated them to the Museum. The Old Provost was restored by the Province.

The freshwater fish collections of the Transvaal and Cape Nature Conservation authorities, the Natal Museum and the South African Museum were transferred to the Albany Museum. Museum staff started teaching short courses at the University and, in 1983, the Museum became an Associated Research Institute of Rhodes University.

The Museum's close relationship with the University was expanded with the consolidation of the herbaria of the two institutions and the formation of the Selmar Schonland Herbarium, housed in the Museum.

BIOPHARMACEUTICS RESEARCH INSTITUTE (BRI)

Executive Director

I Kanfer, BSc (Pharm), BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Director

To be appointed

Senior Clinical Co-Ordinator

E A K Repinz, RN (Gen, Psych & Com)

Research Officer

A. Ramanah, PhD

The Biopharmaceutics Research Institute (BRI) is a Specialty Contract Research Organisation, established in 1987 and dedicated to conducting bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies on topical corticosteroid drug products in accordance with international requirements and specifications. The Institute has been inspected, audited and approved by a number of international regulatory authorities such as the USA's Food & Drug Administration (FDA), the World Health Organization (WHO) and the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (formerly known as the Medicines Control Council – MCC) and is internationally acknowledged as a premier testing site using the Vasoconstrictor Assay (VCA) in accordance with the internationally accepted FDA's guidance for such products. A full range of services for the clinical, statistical and report generation aspects of bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies are undertaken according to Good Clinical Practice (GCP) and standard operating procedures (SOPs). The BRI provides safety and efficacy testing services to pharmaceutical manufacturing companies for topical corticosteroid drug products for national and international regulatory registration purposes as well as for formulation development purposes. Topical corticosteroid products which have been successfully tested at the BRI have received marketing authorization in South Africa, Europe, United States of America and Canada. Studies are conducted in a clinic staffed by experienced investigators including study physicians, registered pharmacists and QA officers where the Executive Director has over 40 years of experience with studies on topical corticosteroids. The Institute has a pool of well-trained professional nurses who assist in general clinical activities. Study protocols are submitted for review for ethical approval according to GCP principles and in accordance with the requirements of the Declaration of Helsinki.

Motivated and responsible volunteers are recruited from male and female members of the Rhodes University student body. The clinic is ideally situated on the Rhodes University campus and is within easy walking distance of volunteers residing in University residences or off-campus - over 50% of the student body reside on campus.

The Institute also provides facilities for postgraduate projects leading to MSc and PhD degrees.

CENTRE FOR SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Director

G Harrison (PhD) (UCT)

Coordinator: B ED

J Hodgskiss

Co-ordinator: Community Development

T Moss

Co-ordinator: RPL

R Nomwebu

ECD facilitators

N Ralo

T Moss

R Nombewu

CD facilitators

J Muroa

B Msimango

Administrative staff

I Harrison

T Nombewu

Financial Administrator

N Stokes

The core educational service offered by the CSD is underpinned by a philosophy that combines leading theoretical approaches to education development with practices that improve the educational outcomes of the target children (1 -9 year olds). Simultaneously the CSD integrated educational model aims to improve the livelihoods of the learners through targeted community development practices.

The CSD Rhodes University ECD Career path

Course

Level 4 FET certificate in ECD (EDTP SETA)

Duration, credits, supervision

One year part-time while working throughout as an ECD practitioner under CSD supervision.

Focusing on young children from birth to 6 years (includes Grade R)

Course

Level 5 National Diploma in ECD

Duration, credits, supervision

18 months part time while working throughout as an ECD practitioner under CSD supervision

Focussing on young children from birth to 6 years (includes Grade R)

Course

Level 7 BED. (Foundation Phase)

Duration, credits, supervision

Three years part-time while working throughout as an ECD practitioner under CSD supervision

Focusing on young children from 5 years until 9 years, within the Foundation Phase

Course

Level 4 FET Certificate in Community Development (CD) ETDP Seta

Duration, credits, supervision

Two years part-time while working throughout as a CD Practitioner under CSD Supervision

Focussing on young children, families and community.

DICTIONARY UNIT FOR SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH (DSAE)

Director

T van Niekerk, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

Senior Editor

B Le Du, BA (UNISA), BA (Hons)(NMMU)

Associate Editor: Systems Development

R Slater, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

The DSAE formally began researching South African English vocabulary and usage in 1969. The project was initiated by the late Professor Bill Branford, Rhodes University's first professor of English Language and Linguistics, and continued over the following decades by new teams of linguists and lexicographers. Almost 30 years later, in 1996, the fruits of the Dictionary Unit's early research were published by Oxford University Press as A Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles (DSAEHist). The archives of the DSAE's research constitute a unique resource for students of the English language as it is used in South Africa. In addition to computerised holdings and a comprehensive library, the Unit's resources include over 300,000 card indexes collected between 1969 and the 1990s showing contexts for words and phrases in South African English. Sources range from early explorers' and settlers' journals to printed books, contemporary newspapers and oral transcriptions.

In 2014 the DSAE's transition to electronic platforms and research methods was signaled by the publication of an electronic version of DSAEHist as a pilot online edition (freely available at <http://dsae.co.za>). Currently the Unit is near the completion of a comprehensive adaptation of this dictionary to produce an enhanced version of the online edition which exploits possibilities new to electronic lexicography. It has played a leading role in the developing domain of electronic dictionary design and produces academic research on electronic lexicography. At the same time the Unit has, in collaboration with the Institute for Information Science and Language Technology at the University of Hildesheim, Germany, embarked on a dramatic expansion of its electronic database holdings by applying computational linguistic methods to a newly-created South African English corpus of about 3 billion words.

In addition to its dictionary projects, the DSAE assists both national and international researchers as well as the general public with enquiries about South African English. It also contributes to the promotion of multilingualism in South Africa by maintaining regular contact with the lexicography units for all the other official languages and participating in the wider language community.

The DSAE is an Associated Institute of Rhodes University, and is a registered Non-Profit Company. As one of eleven National Lexicography Units it is funded by the Pan South African Language Board. In addition the DSAE receives royalties from the sales of its two commercial publications, the Francolin Illustrated School Dictionary for Southern Africa (Francolin 1997/Longman 2001), and the Oxford South African Concise Dictionary (OUP Southern Africa 2010).

For more information, see www.ru.ac.za/dsae/.

INSTITUTE FOR ENVIRONMENTAL BIOTECHNOLOGY (EBRU)

Professor and Director

AK Cowan, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Researcher

RK Laubscher, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), MBA (UCT)

Administrative Officers

X Maganca

G Eustace

Technical Staff

A Magaba

N Singapi

O Baba

Fellows

D Render, Dipl AnalChem (Pret), IMM (Wits)

H Tsikos, PhD (Rhodes)

The Institute for Environmental Biotechnology, Rhodes University (EBRU) targets research in environmental biotechnology at the interface between the fundamental and applied sciences. In doing so it undertakes the innovation and development of bioprocess solutions to environmental problems, and focuses on the diffusion and transfer of environmental technology from laboratory to full-scale industrial application. This activity targets excellence in capacity building and the development of associated academic and applied disciplines. Historically, innovation and development of environmental bioprocesses related to water treatment was the main focus area. More recently, the scope of research and bioprocess development has been widened to include contemporary fields such as alternative energy and bio-fuels. As part of our human resource development programme the institute offers intensive Masters' and Doctoral research opportunities. The various research programmes are focused on the development of human resource capacity and link the application of biotechnology to industrial and municipal related environmental degradation, and clean technology.

Environmental biotechnology may be defined as the development, use and regulation of biological systems and their derivatives and processes for sustainable socio-economic benefit in environmental protection, remediation and energy generation. It is a knowledge-intensive, research-driven field which addresses a broad spectrum of environmental sector needs in the

major areas of soil, air, and water, and in co-product (waste) valorisation. In brief, use of natural products / microbes to perform industrially important tasks in an environmentally sustainable way is the focus of attention. EBRU is located in Belmont Valley, Grahamstown about 6 km from the main campus and is equipped with analytical, molecular microbial ecology, microbiology and bioprocess laboratories. Integrated Ponding Systems, and anaerobic digesters and pilot plants are also to be found.

EBRU welcomes applications to undertake postgraduate research work in various areas of environmental biotechnology. Candidates who are employed and fulfil the admission criteria may after consultation with the Institute register as part-time (not in attendance) and undertake their research remotely. Opportunities are available for MSc and PhD study by research in agricultural biotechnology, industrial and municipal wastewater bioremediation and beneficiation, land rehabilitation, microalgal biotechnology, and renewable energy. The entrance requirements for research MSc and PhD degrees are provided in the General Rules section of the Rhodes University calendar. Candidates with an Honour's degree in the chemical, natural and/or life sciences are welcome to apply for MSc positions, while PhD candidates are required to already be in possession of a relevant postgraduate qualification at time of application. Applications are also welcome from candidates interested in postdoctoral fellowship at the Institute. For further information, please visit the Institute's website (<http://www.ru.ac.za/eburu/>).

THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF THE ENGLISHES OF AFRICA

Director

Associate Professor MG Hendricks, BA, HDE (UCT), BA (Hons), MEd (Rhodes), PhD (Wits)

Alan Macintosh Research Fellow

R Mawela, BA (Andrews), HDE, MEd (Solusi), HDE (UNITRA (To be appointed))

Honorary Professor of Poetry Rhodes University

Professor CM Mann, BA (Wits), MA (Oxon), MA (London), Hon DLitt (Durban-Westville)

Research Officers

NC Fulani, BEd (Hons), SPDT (Cape College), MEd (Rhodes)

A Smailes, BA (Hons), HDE (Rhodes)

School Support Facilitator

(Vacant)

Research Associates

RS Berold, BSc (Eng) (Wits), MA (Cantab)

A P Dladla, BA Hons (Witwatersrand)

N Hayes, MEd (Rhodes)

D Hirson, BA Hons (Witwatersrand), MPhil, PhD (East Anglia)

F Holland, BA Hons (Middlebury), MFA (Florida) M Mahola

P Mason, BA Hons, MA (Witwatersrand), PhD (Rhodes)

M Mbelani, BA (Educ) (UNITRA), BEd (UNISA), ACE (ELT), Med, PhD (Rhodes)

J McNeil, BA Hons (Toronto), MSc (London)

J Metelerkamp, MA (University of Natal)

Dr P Munden, BA Hons (York), D Prof (Middlesex)

E Venter, BA (NWU), BA Hons (UJ), MA (NMU)

B Willan, BA Hons, MA, PhD (London)

Secretary, Shakespeare Society of Southern Africa

C Leff, BA (Wits), BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

Coordinator MA in Creative Writing Programme

P Wessels, MA (Rhodes)

Asst. Coordinator MA in Creative Writing Programme

H Kunju BA, BA Hons, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professionals

Marike Beyers, Mxolisi Nyezwa, Paul Mason,

Stacy Hardy, Mangaliso Buzani

Mellon Writers in Residence 2019 MA in Creative Writing

Jessica Mbangeni

Rustum Kozain

Mellon Scholar in Residence 2019 MA in Creative Writing

(TBC)

Editor: English in Africa

A Birch, BA Hons (UCT), MA, DLitt (UWC)

Editor: New Coin Poetry

(Vacant)

Editor: Shakespeare in Southern Africa

CJ Thurman, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (London), PhD (UCT)

Administrative Officer

C Leff, BA (Wits), BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

Publications Officer

B Cummings-Penlington

Secretary

N Kelemi

The Institute was established in July 1964 during the University's Diamond Jubilee celebrations, at the suggestion of Professor Guy Butler. The mission of the ISEA is to "sponsor research, collect information, provide liaison with South African and overseas scholarship and organize conferences and courses of training for teachers and others interested in language". Since its inception, the Institute has given rise to three independent organisations:

- The National English Literary Museum
- The Dictionary Unit for South African English
- The Molteno Language and Literacy Institute

The first two are separate, nationally funded institutions, while the Molteno Language and Literacy Institute, the largest and most successful language-learning programme in primary education in Southern Africa, is now an independent project of Rhodes University.

Today the ISEA fulfils the aims of its founders in large-scale research and development projects in English education, in the publication of journals devoted to the English language in South Africa, and by providing a research base for scholars working in the field covered by the Institute.

The Language Teacher Professional Development project conducts research to improve the quality of English education principally in the Eastern Cape, in all learning areas. The ISEA offers a BED course for English Language Teachers in cooperation with the Faculty of Education and a BA (Hons) module in collaboration with the African Languages Department. Current SSLP research comprises investigations into the impact of the ISEA's BED programme, into the quality of writing and reading pedagogy in South Africa, into visual literacy in rural areas, and into contrasts between textbooks aimed at English (FAL) and Xhosa (L1) learners. Other research under way in the ISEA includes translanguaging for disciplinary access; tracking teachers' professional development in aspects of the teaching of visual literacy, literature and reading.

The ISEA offers a Masters in Creative Writing which specialises in cross-genre, multilingual, innovative and experimental fiction, poetry, non-fiction, and hybrids in English, isiXhosa, Afrikaans and combinations or variations thereof. The programme is delivered and administered in English

but supervision is available in Afrikaans, English or isiXhosa, and creative work may be offered in these languages as well.

The full-time programme is offered in 2019. The two-year part-time programme has a new intake each alternate year and there will be no new applications available in 2019. Candidates require an Honours degree in any discipline or the equivalent (e.g. a 4-year B. Journ degree) plus a 20-page portfolio of writing. A full course outline is available from <http://www.ru.ac.za/isea/macw/> or from isea@ru.ac.za

The ISEA mounts an extra-curricular Creative Writing Programme each year during the first semester, which is open to staff, students and members of the public. Contact isea@ru.ac.za

The Institute runs Wordfest, a multilingual, multicultural celebration of language and literature held annually during the National Arts Festival in Grahamstown. The event includes lectures, book launches, poetry performances and readings, exhibitions, short courses, its own newspaper, live interviews and word-based shows.

Publications

Periodicals published by the ISEA include English in Africa (from 1974), a scholarly journal devoted to African writing in English, New Coin Poetry (from 1964), and Shakespeare in Southern Africa (from 1987). In addition, the ISEA publishes research reports, scholarly monographs, anthologies and collections of poetry.

The ISEA is a research institute within the University subsidized largely by private donations and endowments, and it retains complete independence in its research.

INSTITUTE OF SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC RESEARCH

Senior Researcher & Head, Neil Aggett Labour Studies Unit (NALSU)

John Reynolds, BA, BSocSc (Hons) (UCT),
MSocSc, PhD (Rhodes)
Matthew Goniwe Chair in Social Policy
Vacant

Associate Professor

Michael Rogan, BA (Washington-Seattle), MA, PhD (UKZN)

Project Administrator, NALSU

Valance Wessels

Administrative Assistant

Bulelani Mothlabane

Editorial Assistant, Journal of Contemporary African Studies

Jamie Alexander, MA (Rhodes)

Financial Administrator

Gail Bint

Professor Emeritus

Valerie Möller, Lic. Phil, PhD (Zurich)

Visiting Professors

Ben Fine, BA, BPhil (Oxon), PhD (London)

Michael Noble, MA, MSc (Oxon), CBE

Edward Webster, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Oxon), BPhil (York), PhD (Wits)

Honorary Professor

Yusuf Sayed, PhD (Bristol), MBA (Brighton)

Research Associates

Rebecca Surender, BA (Hons) Sociology (Essex),

MSc Social Policy, DPhil (Oxon)

Gemma Wright, BA, MSt, DPhil (Oxon)

Erofilis Grapsa, BSc Statistics (Athens University of Economics and Business), PhD (Southampton)

The Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER) was established in Rhodes University in 1954. Strongly grounded in the Eastern Cape since its inception, the ISER soon developed a diverse portfolio of research initiatives involving its own staff and staff members of other Rhodes academic departments. Throughout its existence, engagement by academics from a range of departments within the university in the work of the ISER contributed not only to the content and quality of ISER's research work, but also enriched teaching within those academics' home departments.

Scholars associated with the ISER in the early period of its establishment produced a series of scholarly volumes comprising the Keiskammahock Rural Survey (1947-1952) and the Border Regional Survey (1956-1964) amongst others. Although the former documented changes in Keiskammahock since the establishment of the apartheid regime in 1948, the ISER, in its early years, generally did not systematically engage with the consequences of apartheid for the well-being of the black majority,

and did not challenge the status quo of repressive, white minority rule. This approach gradually changed in later years, when the ISER came to engage more actively with the social conditions and development problems of the Eastern Cape through empirical research and public policy engagement.

ISER has had an abiding influence on a number of institutions within Rhodes University and the wider Eastern Cape. In 1979, the International Library of African Music was moved to Rhodes University under the auspices of the ISER, where it was hosted until its incorporation into the Rhodes Department of Music and Musicology in the mid-nineties. Also in 1979, a Development Studies Unit, headed by a Chair in Development Studies, was started; that unit was discontinued in 1994, when its head, Prof Bill Davies, joined the new Eastern Cape Provincial Government. An International Studies Unit was established in the ISER in 1988 and, in 1992, was migrated to the Rhodes Department of Political Studies, into which it was fully incorporated in the early 2000s, changing the name of the department to the Department of Political and International Studies. In 2003, the East London branch of the ISER was incorporated into the University of Fort Hare as the Fort Hare Institute of Social and Economic Research (FHISER).

Under Prof Peter Vale's Directorship from 1984, the ISER's research agenda directly and indirectly exposed the consequences of the apartheid political economy on the black inhabitants of the Eastern Cape. The ISER developed a research specialisation on well-being studies under Professor Valerie Möller, a leading internationally recognised scholar in the field and Director of the ISER between 1998 and 2006. From 2006 to 2010, the ISER was led by Prof Greg Ruiters, who introduced a vibrant, large-scale programme of research rooted in concerns of political economy and municipal service provision in the Eastern Cape. Prof Ruiters also introduced an annual ISER Winter School, which drew together community-based organisations and leading academics into in-depth discussions on topical social, developmental and political concerns for the province and the country. The winter school was reintroduced as the Vuyisile Mini Winter School in 2015 in honour of the famous trade unionist and liberation fighter from the Eastern Cape, and focuses on trade union officials in that province.

In 2009, ISER started developing Social Policy as a core research and teaching focus area, joined, in late 2012, by Labour Studies. Led by Prof Robert van Niekerk, the Social Policy focus area has developed into a number of collaborative research programmes including programmes on the universalisation of public health, redistributive social policy, the developmental role of the state, social citizenship, as well as social democracy and the public good. Work on this focus area was discontinued in 2018, when Prof Van Niekerk left the ISER.

The establishment of the Neil Aggett Labour Studies Unit (NALSU) within the ISER in 2012 under the leadership of Dr John Reynolds has laid the foundation for the development of a vibrant programme of engaged scholarship in the field of labour studies. NALSU leverages its location in the Eastern Cape in its engagement with the broader South African political economy. NALSU actively facilitates engagement with the field of labour studies from a range of disciplinary, theoretical and methodological perspectives, and, amongst other things, has established the largest seminar series at Rhodes University. NALSU also hosts an Annual Neil Aggett Labour Studies Lecture.

The labour studies focus are currently forms the core of the ISER's work. The ISER has attracted Masters and Doctoral students from a range of backgrounds, including politics, sociology and economics. Those students contribute to a vibrant research programme that probes some of the most challenging social questions of our time. The ISER has been home of the Journal of Contemporary African Studies (JCSA) since 1991. Historically, the ISER has published a Working Paper Series, which was relaunched in 2015 in a new format.

POSTGRADUATE DEGREES

The following are the general requirements for postgraduate study in ISER:

Master's Degree

A Master's degree by thesis may be undertaken on a full-time or part-time basis. To be accepted as a Master's student in the ISER, applicants would usually require an Honours degree with at least a good second class pass in a social science discipline. Applications for Master's study would usually need to be submitted by 15 November of the year

preceding the first year of study, and would require approval of the ISER Research Committee, which would also consider supervisory capacity.

Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the ISER Research Committee and the Higher Degrees Committee of either the Humanities or Commerce Faculties. Under the supervision of an academic staff member, students produce a full-length research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor and approved by the Faculty in which they are registered.

Doctoral Degree (PhD)

A PhD may be taken by thesis (see the General Rules and Higher Degrees Guide). Prospective students must usually be in possession of a good Master's degree in a social science discipline. Applications for PhD study would require approval of the ISER Research Committee, which would also consider supervisory capacity.

Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the ISER Research Committee and the Higher Degrees Committee of either the Humanities or Commerce Faculties. Under the supervision of an academic staff member, students produce a full-length research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor and approved by the Faculty in which they are registered.

THE INSTITUTE FOR WATER RESEARCH

Incorporating the Unilever Centre for Environmental Water Quality (UCEWQ)

Professor and Director

CG Palmer, PhD (Rhodes).

Senior Research Officer and Director of UCEWQ

ON Odume, PhD (Rhodes), Pr.Sci.Nat

Senior Research Officer

SK.Mantel, PhD (University of Hong Kong)

Research Officers

N Griffin, PhD (Cape Town)

J Tanner, PhD (Rhodes), Pr.Sci.Nat

Emeritus Professor

C de Wet, PhD (Rhodes)

DA Hughes, PhD (Wales), Pr.Sci.Nat.

JH O'Keefe PhD (London)

Visiting Professor

JH Slinger, PhD (Stellenbosch) from TU Delft, Netherlands

Senior Research Associates

N Muller PhD (Rhodes)

V Munnik PhD (Wits)

Research Associate

JK Clifford-Holmes PhD (Rhodes)

E Igbinigie PhD (Rhodes)

The Institute for Water Research (IWR) is home to a multi-disciplinary group of researchers and post-graduate students, that contribute to the understanding and sustainable management of water resources in southern Africa. These objectives are achieved through fundamental and applied research into the structure, function and components of natural water systems and their associated social systems, in the landscape. There is an emphasis on the co-development of knowledge, and knowledge sharing, directly and through academic and more accessible publications. Consulting services are offered to solve specific problems through the application of research developments. The IWR contributes to teaching at both undergraduate and postgraduate levels, as well as offering professional training courses and other capacity building and professional training initiatives. Specifically, postgraduate students can register in the Institute for MSc and PhD degrees (by thesis) in both Hydrology and Water Resource Science. The IWR co-hosts the Honours Degree in Environmental Water Management, with the Department of Geography:

Environmental Water Management Honours is offered together by the Geography Department and the Institute for Water Research at Rhodes University. Candidates must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelor's degree, normally majoring in at least one of Geography, Environmental Science/Ecology, Biological/Chemical Sciences or Hydrology. Other candidates with appropriate professional experience in water resource management may be considered. This degree aims to equip students with the conceptual understanding and practical knowledge that are needed to make an effective contribution to the sustainable management of catchment systems and their associated water resources. Students are required to take a core, integrative, module: Adaptive Integrated Water Resource Management

and Water Governance; and must also select three other courses. Recommended courses include: Catchment Systems; Climate Change, Extreme Events and Disasters; Environmental Water Quality; Hydrology; Freshwater Ecology; Extended GIS (Geographical Information Systems); Remote Sensing for a Changing World; or other appropriate courses approved by the Course Coordinator. Please note that entry into the Extended GIS and Remote Sensing modules requires a pass at 3rd year level in the respective disciplines. The research project must be related to Environmental Water Management and approved by the Course Coordinator.

Staff members of the IWR serve on various research, management and policy making committees both within South Africa and internationally. The staff of the Institute actively collaborate with other departments and institutes at Rhodes University including the departments of Geography, Zoology and Entomology, Environmental Science, Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, the Environmental Learning Research Centre, The South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity and the Albany Museum. The Institute also cooperates with other universities, state departments and private consulting companies, both in South Africa and internationally.

The Institute has expertise in several areas within the broad field of water resource science, including hydrology, integrated and transdisciplinary Adaptive Integrated Water Resource Management, freshwater ecology, water chemistry data and analysis, ecotoxicology, biomonitoring, the management of water services, water governance, and community-based engaged education. The combination of research and practical problem solving within the IWR allows recently developed research methods to be rapidly deployed for water resource planning and management. Within the field of ecology, the Institute has focused on understanding the processes and requirements of aquatic ecosystems and the effects of flow variability and anthropogenic stressors. Much of the work has been directed at assessing the environmental water quantity and quality requirements of rivers, an important component of the 'Reserve' determination process designed to ensure the sustainable use of water resources under the National Water Act (No 36 of 1998). This research has been supported by the IWR's long history (over 30 years) of research into

the development and application of methods for analysing and modelling hydrological information for various water resource planning and management purposes. The focus has been on combining a sound understanding of hydrological processes with the development of practical simulation tools. This has included the development of computer software designed to facilitate access to hydrological information and the integration of modelling and data visualisation tools with databases. Recent work has focused on issues of uncertainty (including climate change effects) associated with hydrological estimation and how imperfect information impacts on decision making.

Within the IWR, the Unilever Centre for Environmental Water Quality (UCEWQ) focuses on ecology, ecotoxicology, biomonitoring and water chemistry. Ecotoxicology at the IWR concentrates on determining the tolerances of indigenous riverine macroinvertebrates and algae, under controlled laboratory conditions, to selected water quality variables and complex effluents. Ecotoxicology is included in an integrated approach to assessing the water quality of a water resource and is being practically applied to evaluate the effects of industrial effluents on rivers. UCEWQ is actively involved in the development of policies and strategies for improving the quality of the nation's freshwater resources. In recent years, UCEWQ has initiated research into complex social-ecological systems and the need to account for multiple perspectives and adopt transdisciplinary approaches to solving water resources management problems. UCEWQ research has extended to explicitly include connections between people and their landscapes, viewing surface and groundwater catchments as complex social-ecological systems.

The IWR is largely self-funded and managed through a Board of Control, made up of representatives of Rhodes University, private, government and other university groups who have an interest in water resources. It derives part of its income from research contracts with agencies such as the Water Research Commission, as well as from international research support organisations (e.g. Unilever and the Carnegie Foundation). The majority of the remaining income base is from shorter term consultancy projects through partnerships with consulting companies.

NATIONAL ENGLISH LITERARY MUSEUM

Director

BA Thomas, BFA (Rhodes), BA (Hons)(UNISA), PG Prof Dip Mus (Stell)

Manager: Curatorial Division

CA Warren, HdipLIS (PE Technikon) BA (Hons) (UNISA)

Manager: Education and Public Programmes Division

ZT Matshoba, PTD (Senior)(Masibulele), ACE (Science Education)(Rhodes), PGdip JMS(Rhodes), Bed (Hons)(Fort Hare)

Chief Financial Officer

CW Malan

The National English Literary Museum was founded with a small collection of manuscripts by Professor Guy Butler in the 1960s. In 1972 the Institute for the Study of English in Africa sponsored the foundation of the Thomas Pringle Collection for English in Africa to collect books and manuscripts illustrating the role of English as a language in South Africa. Two years later the National English Documentation Centre was established as an independent body. This then became the National English Literary Museum and Documentation Centre and in 1980, the National English Literary Museum. NELM is funded by the Department of Arts and Culture and although autonomous, maintains close links with the ISEA and is an associated research institute of Rhodes University. In 1981 the museum moved to the Priest's House in Beaufort Street. In 2016 the museum moved to a new custom-designed building in Worcester Street, the first museum in the country to achieve a 5 star rating from the Green Building Council of South Africa. It houses a permanent exhibitions which tells the story of South Africa through literature, with audio and video components and two touch screens. It also has temporary exhibition space and a reading room for visiting researchers.

NELM houses the world's most comprehensive collection of resources relating to South African literature in English. The collections include authors' manuscripts, printers' proofs, diaries, correspondence, publishers' archives, photographs, posters, play-scripts, theatre programmes and over 30 000 published works. All forms of literature are

represented: poems, short stories, novels, plays, autobiographies, travel writing and children's literature.

NELM's satellite museums, Schreiner House in Cradock and the Eastern Star Gallery in Grahamstown, conserve and present two important aspects of the writing and publishing heritage of South Africa.

Olive Schreiner (1855-1920), author of *The Story of an African Farm*, lived at No. 6 Cross Street, a small, typically Karoo house, and one of the oldest still standing in Cradock. Schreiner House contains exhibitions about Schreiner's life and works, a collection of books that belonged to Schreiner and her husband, Samuel Cronwright, and displays relating to domestic life in the 19th century.

The first copy of *The Eastern Star* was printed in Grahamstown in 1871. The Eastern Star Gallery is housed in a building that dates back to the mid-19th century and was donated to NELM by the Argus Group. Exhibition highlights include a 120 year-old Wharfedale printing press and the editorial desk that belonged to John Fairbairn, co-founder in 1823 with Thomas Pringle, of the *South African Journal* and the *South African Commercial Advertiser*, and prime mover for a free press in South Africa.

NELM's staff offer education programmes for schools, talks and public programmes as well as undertaking research into South African literature. The museum's collections are available to researchers on request.

See

<http://mms.ru.ac.za/nelm/index.php/green-museum/>
or <https://www.facebook.com/NationalEnglishLiteraryMuseum> for further information, or e-mail: info@nelm.org.za

RHODES UNIVERSITY MATHEMATICS EDUCATION PROJECT (RUMEP)

Director

T Penlington, HDE (PE College of Education), BA (UPE), BEd(Hons), MEd(Rhodes)

Projects Coordinator

T Haywood, DESP (Dower College),

ACE(Mathematics), BEd (Hons), MEd (Rhodes)

Facilitator (IP & SP) Northern Cape

RM Griqua, BA, HDE, BEd (UWC)

Research coordinator/Facilitator

N. Kangela, PhD (Rhodes), MSc (Warwick), HDE, BEd (UWC), BSc (UNITRA)

Facilitator

S. Wood, BSc (UCT), BA (UCT), HED (Postgraduate)(UNISA)

Cluster Schools Coordinator

F Mkhwane, STD, BA(UNITRA), BEd (UNISA), BTech (Bus Adm.)(PE Tech), MBA (NMMU), MEd (Rhodes)

Cluster Facilitator

Vacant

IT Consultant

S. Balele, BEd (Rhodes), DE (University of Zimbabwe)

Administrative Assistant

L Sparrow

The Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project is an outreach programme of the University. RUMEP engages in the professional development of teachers, and develops curriculum resources for use in schools. It publishes reports, articles and newsletters in the field of mathematics education, and provides a centre for research in mathematics education.

RUMEP offers an accredited three year BEd course (in-service) for practicing Mathematics teachers in all phases. It also conducts short courses for the Department of Education and other NGO's.

SOUTH AFRICAN INSTITUTE FOR AQUATIC BIODIVERSITY (SAIAB)

Managing Director

A Paterson, PhD (Rhodes)

Director's Personal Assistant

N Nyoka

RESEARCH DIVISION

Chief Scientist & DST/NRF South African

Research Chair in Inland Fisheries and Freshwater Ecology

O Weyl, PhD (Rhodes)

Research Scientists

P Cowley, PhD (Rhodes)
 G Gouws, PhD (Stellenbosch)
 N James, PhD (Rhodes)
 A Chakona, PhD (Rhodes)
 F Porri, PhD (Rhodes)
Research Support Administrator
 V Rouhani, MSc (Rhodes)
Freshwater Field Assistant & Driver Trainer
 F Jacobs

SCIENCE PLATFORMS

Marine Research Platforms

African Coelacanth Ecosystem Programme (ACEP)

Human Capital Development Manager

G van Heerden, MSc, MBA (Rhodes)

Technical & Scientific Manager

R Palmer, MSc (Rhodes)

Geophysics Instrument Scientist

E Wiles, PhD (UKZN)

Marine Technician - Port Elizabeth

J Smith

Marine Technician - Durban

T Eriksen

Marine Technician - Durban

S Benya BSc (Hons)(Walter Sisulu)

Administration Officer

Z Canda Nat Dipl. Business Administration (East Cape Midlands College)

Acoustic Tracking Array Platform (ATAP)

Principal Scientist

P Cowley, PhD (Rhodes)

Data Scientist

T Murray, PhD (Rhodes)

Instrument Technician

M Parkinson, MSc (Rhodes)

Marine Remote Imagery Platform (mar-RIP)

Instrument Scientist

A Bernard, PhD (Rhodes)

Instrument Technician

N Schmidt MSc (Rhodes)

Collections and Associated Specialist

Laboratories Platform:

Collections Manager

R Bills, MSc (Rhodes)

Senior Curation Officer

N Mazungula, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes)

Specimen Cataloguer

A Gura, BSc (Fort Hare)

Collections Officers

B Konqobe

M Dwani

V Hanisi

Molecular Laboratory Manager

T Bodill, MSc (Rhodes)

Ecophysiology Laboratory Coordinator

S Reddy, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes)

Biodiversity Information Platform:

Margaret Smith Library Senior Librarian

M Meltaf, Nat Dipl. Info Studies (PE Tech)

Biodiversity Information Manager

W Coetzer, PhD (KwaZulu-Natal)

SUPPORT SERVICES:

Operations Manager

L Coetzee, Nat Dipl. Commerce (CATE)

Finance Manager

E Wolhuter

Communications & Governance Manager

P Haworth, BA (Hons), HDE(PG) Sec(Rhodes)

IT Systems Administrator

A Grant, BSc (Rhodes)

Procurement Specialist

N Khuzwayo, Nat Dipl. Public Procurement &

Supply Management (UNISA)

Human Resources Officer

B Smith

Finance Officers

C Brooks

B Phongolo

Administration Officer/ Receptionist

L Makana

Senior Technical Officer

F Lamont

General Assistants

M. Gule

N. Zabo

N Zuzani

P Mpiyane

HONORARY RESEARCH ASSOCIATES

Dr E Anderson

Prof B Kramer

Dr H Barber-James

Dr S Lamberth

Dr A Becker

Prof M Lipinsky

Dr R Bennett

Dr K Magellan

Dr S Blaber

Dr N Mandrak

Dr A Bok

Dr G Matcher

Prof M Bruton

Dr T Miya

Dr R Chalmers

Dr M Mwale

Dr W Conradie	Dr TF Naesje
Prof A Channing	Dr S Parker-Nance
Dr M Cunningham	Dr R Peel
Dr T Dalu	Dr W Potts
Dr N Deacon	Prof P Skelton
Prof R Dorrington	Dr M Smale
Prof L du Preez	Prof J Stauffer
Dr D Ebert	Prof N Strydom
Dr B Ellender	Dr E Swartz
Prof M Elliott	Dr M Tagliarolo
Dr E Gennari	Dr G Taylor
Mr O Gon	Dr J Taylor
Dr TD Harrison	Dr J Turpie
Mrs E Heemstra	Mr D Tweddle
Dr P Heemstra	Dr F Uiblein
Dr J Hill	Dr S Viana
Mr W Holleman	Prof M Villet
Dr J Jackson	Dr R Wasserman
Dr M Jackson	Dr D Woodford
Dr M Jordaan	
Mr D King	
Dr A Kock	

SAIAB SCIENTIFIC ADVISORY COMMITTEE

Prof Warwick Sauer - HOD, Department of Ichthyology & Fisheries Sciences, Rhodes University
 Prof Jay O'Keeffe - Professor and Research Associate, Rhodes University, Grahamstown
 Dr Lawrence Oellermann - Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban
 Dr Mmbofheni Stanley Liphadzi - Water Research Commission, Pretoria
 Dr Harrison Pienaar - Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Pretoria
 Dr Michelle Hamer - South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria (Chair)
 Prof Charles Griffiths - University of Cape Town

The South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB) is a National Facility of the National Research Foundation and an internationally recognised centre for the study of aquatic biodiversity. SAIAB serves as a major scientific resource for knowledge and understanding of the biodiversity and functioning of Africa's aquatic

ecosystems. With both marine and freshwater biogeographical boundaries, southern Africa is ideally placed to monitor and document climate change and SAIAB's science focuses on the full spectrum of aquatic environments.

From a marine perspective South Africa forms the southern apex of a major continental mass, flanked by very different marine ecosystems on the east and west coasts, and projecting towards the cold Southern Ocean

Large Marine Ecosystem. SAIAB runs unique coastal marine research platforms that provide infrastructure and support to South African universities and research institutions.

The biodiversity of inland waters is equally relevant to the national interest and SAIAB's scientific leadership and expertise in freshwater aquatic biodiversity is vital when dealing with issues arising from exponentially increasing pressures of human population growth and development. To support this core research area, SAIAB hosts the South African Research Chair in Inland Fisheries and Freshwater Ecology.

As a National Facility, SAIAB is required to provide research platforms within the National System of Innovation which are not generally available in other institutions. SAIAB offers five primary research platforms which make unique sets of skills and infrastructure available to the broader research community.

MARINE RESEARCH PLATFORMS

The African Coelacanth Ecosystem Programme (ACEP) offers technical expertise, ships' time, coastal craft, specialised equipment, monitoring networks and dive units. ACEP is the largest inter-institutional, multi-disciplinary, marine programme in South Africa. ACEP is a flagship programme of the Department of Science and Technology and is managed by SAIAB as a Marine Science platform. ACEP promotes competitive, multidisciplinary, multi institutional east coast marine research with an emphasis on building capacity and transforming marine science, providing competitive access to funding, research platforms and marine research infrastructure within the National System of Innovation. ACEP's highly successful coastal craft and instrumentation platform comprises the 13m

LeeCat, uKwabelana, which is based in the port of Port Elizabeth and the more recently acquired 15m Legacy Cat, Phakisa, which is based in Durban, and a Remote Observation Vehicle (ROV) capable of diving to 300m depth, for use by the South African marine research community.

Through ACEP, SAIAB plays a key interface role between researchers and other South African research platforms. ACEP's partner platforms include SAIAB's Acoustic Telemetry Array Platform (ATAP) and Marine Remote Imaging Platform (Mar-RIP), as well as the South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON) Sentinel Site and the SAEON Agulhas System Climate Array (ASCASAEON). Partnerships developed by ACEP with international projects and various South African Government departments have allowed competitive scientific access to the R/V Algoa and other ships.

ACEP has developed an excellent track record of training the next generation of marine scientists, technicians and innovators. SAIAB initiated a profound paradigm shift in 2012 by establishing the Phuhlisha Programme through ACEP to ensure that black South African postgraduates are trained in the marine sector and that marine science is more deeply entrenched at historically black universities. A significant highlight of recent years has been cementing its relationship with the Universities of Fort Hare and Walter Sisulu in the Eastern Cape through the Phuhlisha Programme and extending its reach beyond the Eastern Cape to include the University of the Western Cape and the University of Zululand. One-third of ACEP's funding is dedicated to the Phuhlisha Programme. The focus is on capacity building and generating interest in and enthusiasm for marine sciences at the four universities. Currently, ACEP reaches a minimum of 80 postgraduate students. This is in addition to over 100 students supported in previous phases. The Phuhlisha programme provides a winning model to develop high quality graduates in marine science by inspiring talent at historically black universities in South Africa.

The Acoustic Tracking Array Platform (ATAP) is a collaborative programme which provides a service to the greater marine science community. The ATAP network includes over 100 marine and estuarine acoustic receivers, positioned at

ecologically important points along the coastline from Hout Bay on the cool temperate Atlantic coastline, to Mozambique on the sub-tropical east coast. These receivers detect unique signals sent by acoustic transmitters that have been attached to, or surgically implanted in, marine animals. The ATAP team at SAIAB manages this expanded network of automated data-logging acoustic telemetry receivers. The receivers are serviced by ATAP and its local collaborating partners and data uploaded from these receivers is stored on a national database.

The Marine Remote Imaging Platform (Mar-RIP) provides sophisticated and standardised remote benthic sampling tools and protocols to the marine research community in South Africa. These tools include ten baited, remote underwater stereo-video systems (stereo-BRUVs) for sampling fish assemblages and a benthic jump camera for photographing benthic macro-fauna assemblages. SAIAB partners with the Coastal (Elwandle) Node of SAEON on Mar-RIP projects in the Sundays River catchment area, SAEON's Algoa Bay Sentinel Site and a number of marine protected areas along the South African coast. The synergies with the Elwandle Node are highly significant and position the SAIAB as an international and regional centre for South Western Indian Ocean marine research. Researchers at SAIAB and SAEON Elwandle Node have been developing innovative technology to survey reef fishes of South Africa. Novel sampling techniques aim to provide standardised data to further our understanding of the ecology of South Africa's reef fish and support effective management.

SAIAB also offers a range of customised equipment such as specialised trailers, electro-fishers, inflatable and fixed hull boats, nets and environmental monitoring instruments for working in different aquatic environments in and around South Africa.

The Collections and Specialised Laboratories Platform includes a molecular preparation laboratory, an X-ray laboratory with a digital X-Ray inspection system and, in association with the Rhodes Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, an ecophysiology research laboratory.

SAIAB is the recognised leader in natural history wet collection management and curation in South Africa. The JLB Smith Collection Management

Centre provides a collection-sorting laboratory, accommodation for collection staff and for visiting scientists and students. The Wet Collections Storage Facility provides storage for the National Fish Collection, African Amphibian Collection, a new and developing Cephalopod Collection and Aquatic Biodiversity Tissue Bank. Back-up support includes a separate, ultra-cold-storage tissue biobank and preparation room; a bulk inflammable liquid storage chamber with automated preservative mixing and delivery; specialised specimen preservation laboratories and glass storage; and an isolated dermestarium for the preparation of vertebrate skeletal specimens. SAIAB also manages the National Diatom Collection which is housed at the University of the North-West. These are dynamic research platforms for molecular, systematic and conservation orientated studies.

The Biodiversity Information Platform includes the Margaret Smith Library and the Biodiversity Informatics Unit:

As an academic library, the Margaret Smith Library shares resources and library services with Rhodes University Library to support research and teaching: main users are staff and students of the Rhodes Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science. The Margaret Smith Library houses one of the largest document collections and resource centres for African aquatic biodiversity research in Africa. The Library contributes to the Rhodes University online catalogue and Open Access institutional repositories at Rhodes and the NRF. The Library is also partnered with the Biodiversity Heritage Library - Africa.

The Library was established in the 1940s with a small collection of books and scientific papers belonging to Professor JLB Smith. The early indexing system and card catalogue were developed by Professor Margaret Smith. The collection was first stored in a small room in Artillery Road, which was then part of the Rhodes University Ichthyology Department. The library moved to the present premises in Somerset Street in 1975. After being fully refurbished in 2010, the Library was named for Margaret Smith to commemorate her contribution to preserving the legacy of early Ichthyological research at Rhodes University.

The Library offers users a dedicated computer lab; up-to-date library processes and procedures; social media and Open Access initiatives; additional partners and new collections. The Library holdings include some 5000 books and 2000 serial titles, a large reprint collection dating back to the 1800s and 206 titles in the rare book collection. The Institute has published a number of books on the freshwater fishes of southern Africa, fishes of the Southern Ocean, the biology and ecology of southern African estuarine fishes and coastal fishes of southern Africa as well as the Smithiana monograph and Special Publications series. Popular guides to estuaries and coastal fisheries resources have also been published and are available in the digital commons.

The Biodiversity Informatics Unit supports collections management and is available to anyone with a need for management and analysis of aquatic biodiversity and ecological information. SAIAB offers a hosting platform to various museums and is pioneering new techniques in biodiversity data-mining.

RESEARCH

SAIAB has an internationally recognised profile in aquatic research and a dynamic and active research staff and postgraduate school are involved in numerous collaborative research programmes concerned with aquatic biodiversity and serve on several national advisory committees. They are also involved in teaching undergraduate and postgraduate courses, supervising Honours, MSc and PhD projects particularly through Rhodes and other universities, both nationally and internationally.

The geographical focus of projects extends from the primary focus area, South Africa, through southern Africa to the African continent. SAIABs research strategy is strongly influenced by societal imperatives with an emphasis on demand-driven, collaborative research that is aligned with national and international initiatives (e.g. National Development Plan, Marine and Antarctic Research Strategy (MARS), Phakisa Programme and the Sustainable Development Goals) through three core research areas:

Taxonomy and BioDiscovery which contributes directly to the description and quantification of global biodiversity assets. Core competencies

include taxonomy and systematics, biogeography, molecular biology and biodiversity genomics on a variety of taxa including diatoms, zooplankton, crustaceans, amphibians and fishes.

Biology and ecology, which are the foundation for understanding ecosystems and the services that they provide. This research area directly informs the management of ecological infrastructure to enhance resilience and ensure benefits to society. Key research areas include life-history assessments, biodiversity assessments, predator-prey interactions, plankton ecology, movement biology, food webs, ecophysiology and population modelling.

Drivers of global change and their impacts on aquatic ecosystems is a research area that intends to inform the development of proactive response strategies to mitigate against adverse impacts on ecosystem service provision. Although SAIAB engages in research at all levels of global change, there is a strong focus on understanding the impacts of climate change, invasions and fisheries.

SOUTHERN OCEAN GROUP

Director

PW Froneman, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Research Officer

CD McQuaid, PhD (UCT)

The Southern Ocean Group was established in the Department of Zoology and Entomology in 1981 under the directorship of Professor Brian Allanson. The group was the first unit in South Africa involved in the study of biological oceanography in the Southern Ocean, Antarctica and in the vicinity of the Prince Edward Islands. This programme forms part of the oceanographic component of the South African National Antarctic Research Programme (SANAP) and is concerned with the spatial variability in Southern Ocean ecosystems and its response to global climate change. Present projects concern the spatial and temporal patterns in the plankton community structure and food web dynamics in the Southern Ocean. This research provides opportunities for research towards Honours, Master's and Doctoral degrees, and postgraduates form a very active part of the group.

THE RHODES UNIVERSITY LIBRARY SERVICES

Director, Library Services

t.b.a.

Head, User Services and Research Support

L Naicker, ND LIS (DUT), BTech LIS (DUT),
BBibl (Hons) (UKZN)

Head, Technical Services

WD van der Walt, BTech LIS (UNISA), Dip Bus
Man (UJ), B.Inf (Hons) (UNISA), M.IT (UP)

Head: Cory Library

CC Thomas, PhD (Notre Dame du Lac)

Principal Librarians

MD Booyesen, BA (Natal), B.Inf (UNISA)

LM Cartwright, BA, HDipLib (Rhodes)

CC Clarke, BBibl (NWU)

VT Menze, B.Inf, B.Inf. (Hons) (UNISA)

JA Otto, BA, HDipLib, PGCE (Rhodes)

CA Perold, BA, HDipLib (UCT), HED (UNISA)

Librarians

N Mahleka, ND LIS (DUT), PG Certificate in
Archival Studies (UNISA)

MW Chikafa, B.LIS (UWC)

C Clack, BTech LIS (NMU), PG Certificate in
Archival Studies (UNISA)

NS Dyantyi, B. Bibl Degree (UWC)

SP Gule, BTech LIS (UNISA); BHLIS (Hons,
UKZN)

AE Mente-Mpako, BA (Rhodes), PGDipLIS (UCT)

M Mpokela, B.Inf (UNISA); BHLIS (Hons,
UKZN)

VF Nhanha, LDLIS, BBibl (UFH)

AY Qomfo, NDLIS, BTech: LIS (NMMU)

KE Radebe, BBibl (Hons) (UKZN)

SJ Rionda, BA (Rhodes), HDipLIS, BBibl (Hons)
(Natal)

BC Stoltz, BA, HDE (Rhodes), B.Inf (UNISA),
BBibl (Hons) (UKZN)

Librarian: Scholarly Communication:

DL Martindale, BA, HDE (Rhodes), BBibl
(UNISA)

Information Literacy Co-ordinator

FE Charlton, BA, HDE (Rhodes)

User Access Services:

JLE Nene, BBA, PG Dip LIS (UKZN)

Assistant Librarian

N Fumbatha, BComm, Hons, M.Comm (Rhodes)
E Hart

I Kretzman, BMus (Rhodes)

VT Ntamo, BSc (Rhodes)

Lisa Maholo, BCom Info Sys, Financial

Management (Hons) (Rhodes)

LM Verwey, NDLIS (UNISA)

Inter-Library Loans

ACE Goosen

ICT & Facilities Officer

G Dampies

Assistant to the Library Director

A Leslie

Technical Assistant: ICT

A Sampson, NDip IT (NMMU)

Library Assistants

T Mamani

A Mncwabe, Dip LIS (DUT)

K Yona, NDip IT (WSU)

Senior Administrative Assistant

H Berriman

S Fourie

Shelver

A Bavuma

Rhodes University Library provides all users with:

- A modern environment with dedicated spaces for research, study and learning
- Access to diverse print and electronic library collections and resources
- Professional staff

Registration

A student, staff member or visitor is required to register to use the library, and to renew their registration each year.

Basic Lending Rules

1. The loan schedule of the Main Library is as follows:

a	Undergraduates 6 items for 2 weeks
b	Postgraduates 12 items for 4 weeks
c	Senior Postgraduates 20 items for 8 weeks
d	Academic staff, Research staff and Post- Doctoral scholars 30 items for 12 weeks
e	Visiting members, visiting up to 3 months 6 items for 2 weeks

f	Visiting members, for more than 3 months 20 items for 8 weeks
---	--

2. A borrower is responsible for returning any loaned item by the due date. Items which are retained for longer than the stipulated loan period are subject to fines. The University requires all categories of users to pay such fines. No item may be transferred to any other person.
3. Items which are lost or damaged must be paid for or replaced.
4. The Director: Library Services may at his/her discretion restrict the loan period of any item or refuse its loan altogether. An item on loan may be recalled at any time. Loans for the vacations are allowed at the discretion of the Director.

The Rhodes University Library is open for the following hours:

Term:

Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 22:30
Friday	08:30 to 18:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	13:30 to 17:30

SWOT Week:

Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 01:00
Friday	08:30 to 21:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	09:00 to 21:00

Examination:

Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 00:00
Friday	08:30 to 21:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	09:00 to 21:00

Vacation:

Monday - Friday	08:30 to 17:00
Saturday	09:00 to 12:30

Variations in Library hours, such as Public Holidays and extended times during the examinations, are posted at the main entrance and on the Library's webpage, social media and e-mail.

Electronic Access

Access to the Library's electronic collections is available from the Library's web page: <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/> for current Rhodes University staff and registered students. As a significant portion of these e-resources is subject to terms and conditions stipulated in license agreements, visitors are limited to on-site access only.

http://www.ru.ac.za/media/rhodesuniversity/content/library/documents/e-resources_guidelines_2011.pdf

Research Commons

Located on Level 2 in the Main Library, the Research Commons is a dedicated space for academic staff, researchers and senior post-graduate (Master's and Doctoral) students. A valid Rhodes University ID card is required to gain access to this area.

Postgraduate Commons (PGC)

Located on the Ground Level, the PGC is a dedicated space for academic staff, researchers and postgraduate (Honours, Masters and Doctoral) students. A valid Rhodes University ID card is required to gain access to this area.

Information Commons (IC)

Located on Level 2 in the Main Library, the IC is a dedicated space for undergraduate students, accessible during Library operating hours, with differentiated learning spaces, 56 PCs and a dedicated Information Literacy Co-ordinator available during Library hours.

24/7 study area

This facility is available to all registered students. A valid Rhodes University ID card is required to access the facility from 22:30 to 08:30.

Branch Libraries

Details of staff, locations, holdings and hours of opening for the Cory Library for Humanities Research, Law Library and Sound Library are available from the Rhodes University Library webpage: <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/about/branchlibrariesaffiliatedinstitutes/>

Access and Borrowers' Cards

A valid Rhodes University ID card gives a user access to and use of the Main Library and branch libraries facilities. Students use their student identity cards as Access and Borrowers' cards. Staff use

their staff identity cards as Access and Borrower's cards. Visiting members will be issued with cards after registration at the Library. Loss of a card must be reported to the library immediately to prevent unauthorised use. Users may not use someone else's card to gain access to the libraries, borrow library material or use library facilities. <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/services/accessprivileges/accessmembership/>

Rules and Regulations

A full statement of Library Rules and Regulations is available on the Library's webpage:

<https://www.ru.ac.za/library/about/libraryprofile/policiesandguidelines/libraryrules/>

Library Use and Code of Conduct

A full statement of the Rhodes University Library Use and Code of Conduct is available on the Library's webpage:

<https://www.ru.ac.za/library/about/libraryprofile/policiesandguidelines/libraryrules/>

CORY LIBRARY FOR HUMANITIES RESEARCH

<http://www.ru.ac.za/library/cory/>

Head and Historian

C Thomas, PhD (University of Notre Dame)

Librarian

V Nhanha, LDLIS, BBibl (UFH)

Assistant Librarian

L Verwey, National LIS Diploma (UNISA)

Archivist

Vacant

Administrative Assistant (Access Services)

S Fourie

Cory Library collects archival and published material to support research in the humanities and social sciences. Its book, journal and archival holdings are particularly strong in the fields of Eastern Cape history, heritage and culture, mission and church history, family history, and various southern African topics, including politics, literature, education,

mining, commerce and agriculture. Since the initial deposit of Sir George Cory's collections, there has been a focus on the history of the Eastern Cape and on Grahamstown itself.

Cory Library's collections include manuscripts and other documents, Cape and other government publications, rare and modern books, pamphlets, periodicals and newspapers, maps, photographs, audio-visual recordings, and electronic media.

Access

Cory Library is a non-circulating library. It is open to students and staff of Rhodes University in the first instance. Members of the wider research community and the public are welcome to buy readers' tickets to do research in this library.

Hours of opening

Mondays – Fridays, 08.30 - 16.30

ELECTRON MICROSCOPE UNIT

Acting Head of department

SC Pinchuck BSc, MSc (Rhodes)

Technical Officer

MA Randall

The Electron Microscope Unit was established as an autonomous service department in the Faculty of Science in 1972. Although the unit is used primarily as a research facility by university life scientists, chemists, geologists, and postgraduates, the staff of the unit assist in some undergraduate classes and undertake research. Current instrumentation housed in the unit includes a TESCAN Vega scanning electron microscope which has an Oxford Instruments EDS detector, a Zeiss Libra 120 Plus TEM, an Olympus SZX16 stereo microscope, and three Olympus BX series optical photomicroscopes with facilities for bright field, fluorescence, differential interference contrast and phase contrast imaging. Images from all microscopes are captured digitally. Digital image analysis is possible using various software packages.

ADMINISTRATIVE SENIOR STAFF

REGISTRAR'S DIVISION

Registrar

AL Moodly, DEd (UNISA)

Manager: Legal and Risk Services

TSV Hartzenberg, LLB (UWC)

Manager: Academic Administration

S Flanagan

Manager: Undergraduate Student Funding

E Walters

Manager: Student Bureau

D Wicks (Admissions - Student Bureau)

Manager: Student Recruitment

B Mzamane, BSS (Rhodes)

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S OFFICE

Vice-Chancellor

S Mabizela MSc (UFH), PhD (Pennsylvania State)

Personal Assistant and Manager: Administration

M Burger

Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic & Student Affairs

CM Boughey, MA (St Andrews), MA (Reading),

PGCE (Wales), DPhil (UWC)

Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research & Development

P Clayton, PhD (Rhodes)

Project Officer and PA to DVC: R&D

N Obers, BA (Wits), MEd (Rhodes)

Director: Equity and Institutional Culture

NP Nhlapo, BA (Swaziland), MA (Warwick),

MPhil (Cambridge), MSc (University College, London), MBA (UCT)

Harassment and Discrimination Manager

Dr ZM Mkize MA (UniZulu), PhD (UNISA)

Director: IPU

RC Nnadozie, PhD (UKZN)

Director: Special Projects

S Smailes, BSocSci, LLB (Rhodes), LLM (Wits),
Higher Diploma in Labour Law (Wits), Attorney
at Law

Project Officer (Special Projects)

C Ngamale

CENTRE FOR HIGHER EDUCATION

RESEARCH, TEACHING AND LEARNING

Associate Professor J-A Vorster, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

COMMUNICATIONS & ADVANCEMENT DIVISION

Director

LG Jacobs MA (Rhodes)

DIVISION OF STUDENTS AFFAIRS

Director of Student Affairs

N Mrwetyana MA Counselling Psychology (UFH)
Vacant

Student Services Manager

V Israel, BSocSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

Manager Student Wellness

Christine Lewis MA

FINANCE DIVISION

Director

D Philipson, BCom (Rhodes)

Management Accountant

G Erasmus, BCom (UWC)

Manager: Risk Control

L Kruiskamp, BCompt (UNISA)

Financial Accountant

M Olivier

Accountant - Research and Support Services

DR Harris, FCIS

HUMAN RESOURCES DIVISION

Director of Human Resources

L Govender, MEd (UWC), BA (Hons)(UNISA),

PGCE, PGCM

Deputy Director of Human Resources

SJ Robertson, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

HR Industrial Relations & Equity Specialist

C Peters, BTech (NMMU)

Manager: Learning & Development

S van der Merwe, MCom (Rhodes), BCom (UNW),

NHD Management (TUT)

HR Financial Specialist

A Tait, BCom (UNISA)

Manager: HR Operations

H Saayman, B Tech (UNISA); Nat Dip (UNISA);

Management Programme (TUKS)

Senior HR Practitioners

M Titus, Nat Dip (NMMU)

L Bradfield, BSocSc (Rhodes)

S Duba, BA (NMMU)

N Gongqa, BA (UFH)

M Maccario, BCom Hons (NMMU)

ADMINISTRATIVE SENIOR STAFF

B Nelana, Post Grad Diploma in Enterprise Management (Rhodes University)

INFRASTRUCTURE & OPERATIONS DIVISION

Executive Director: Infrastructure, Operations & Finance

IN L'Ange, DipTh (St Paul's), BTh (Hons), MBA, PhD (Rhodes)

Deputy Director: Residential Operations

J Pillay, NDP MBA (Rhodes)

Deputy Director: Facilities Services

D van Dyk BSc (QS)(UFS)

Deputy Director: Operations Administration, Finance & Procurement

W Lombard, BCom (RAU), BCom (Hons)(UNISA)

Deputy Director: Business Processing

C Cuthbert, BA (Hons), ACISM(UP)

Manager: Campus Food Services

S Wright, NDP(TWR)

Assistant Manager: Campus Food Services

Vacant

Functions (Coordinator)

Vacant

Manager: Housekeeping Services

Vacant

Assistant Manager: Housekeeping

N Magodla

Assistant Manager: Housekeeping (Central Cleaning)

C Langson

Manager: Conferencing & Events

C Avery

Manager: Administration

S Gumede

Manager: Campus Protection Unit

TT Robiyana

Manager: Grounds and Gardens

P Crous

Manager, Building Maintenance

C Dyala

Manager: Electrical Section

Vacant

Manager: Engineering and Mechanical Works

D Martin

INFORMATION AND TECHNOLOGY SERVICES

Director: Information and Technology Services

N Ripley, BSc (Natal)

Manager: Operations

DR Sieborger, MA (Rhodes)

Manager: Service Delivery

T Chambers, MBA (Rhodes)

Manager: Management Information Systems

L Angus, MSc (Rhodes)

Manager: Applications Development

Vacant

INTERNATIONAL OFFICE

Director: International Office

OM Quinlan, MSc (Econ)((London)

Assistant Manager

H Pienaar

RESEARCH OFFICE

Director: Research Office

J Roberts, MSocSci (UND)

Manager: Research Administration

T Mantolo, National Diploma (WSU), B-Tech (DUT)

Manager Postgraduate Funding

JP Gillam, BSc, HDE (Rhodes)

Manager: Contracts and Intellectual Property

T Naidoo, LLB (NNMU)

Manager: Technology Transfer Office

S Wolluter, MSc (Wits)

NRF Grants Specialist

ZD Louw, BSocSci (UFS)

Research Officer

SJ Xulu, BA (Rhodes)

NRF Grants Specialist

ZD Louw, Bachelor of Social Science (University of Free State)

Administrator: Research Administration

J Macgregor

Administrator: Postgraduate Funding

N de Vos, BA, PDEM (Rhodes)

Vacant

Admin Assistant: Postgraduate Funding

S Makeba, HRM (NDip) (NMU)

Admin Assistant: Research Office

N Mkosana, BCom (Hons)(UFH)

Student Wellness Section

HEALTH CARE CENTRE

Head Nurse

H Ferreira, BCur Education and Administration (NWU), 4 year Nursing Diploma (Charlotte Searle NC)

Nurses

N Douglas, 4 year Nursing Diploma (Sharley Cribb NC)

T Fanisi, BTech OCC Health (DUT), Nursing Management (NWU), 4 year Nursing Diploma (Frere NC)

CM Cannon, Diploma Nursing Science, Diploma Occupational Health & Safety (Oxbridge Academy)

L Visagie, Adv Diploma in Nursing Management (NWU), 4 year Nursing Diploma (Sharley Cribb NC)

HIV OFFICE

Institutional Wellness Specialist

T Mzizi, BSocSci (Rhodes), MPhil HIV/AIDS Management (Stellenbosch), PDM HIV/AIDS Management (Stellenbosch)

CAREER CENTRE

Acting Manager: Career Centre

C Lewis, MSocSci (UFH)

Career Officer:

Vacant

COUNSELLING CENTRE

Manager: Student Wellness

N Mrwetyana, MA Counselling Psychology (UFH)

Counselling Psychologists:

S Green, MSocSci (Rhodes) (Acting HoD)

G Wilmot, MA Counselling Psychology (Rhodes)

ST Msengana, MA Counselling Psychology (Rhodes)

SPORTS OFFICE

Manager: Sports Administration

Vacant

Assistant Manager: Sports Administration

E Gallant, BTech Management (UNISA)

HALLS OF RESIDENCE

MEN'S HALLS

THE FOUNDER'S HALL

Hall Warden

G Steele, BA (UPE), BA (Hons), MA, PGDHE (Rhodes)

Botha House

G Steele, BA (UPE), BA (Hons), MA, PGDHE (Rhodes)

College House

P Mashazi, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes), Certificate IP Law (WIPO-UNISA)

Cory House

E Matambo, BA (Rhodes), PGCE (UNISA)

Matthews House

T Sipungu

WOMEN'S HALLS

COURTENAY-LATIMER HALL

Hall Warden

E Tyson, BA (Hons)(UNISA)

Oriel House

L Allan, MPharm (Rhodes)

Beit House

E Tyson, BA (Hons)(UNISA)

Jameson House

N Fumbatha, MCom (Financial Markets)(Rhodes)

ST MARY HALL

Hall Warden

Vacant

John Kotzé House

Vacant

Lilian Britten House

G Muguzi, MSc (London)

Olive Schreiner House

Vacant

Phelps House

Gugulethu Baduza MCom (Information Systems) (Rhodes).

HOBSON HALL

Hall Warden

TL Chambers, MBA (Rhodes)

Dingemans House

TL Chambers, MBA (Rhodes)

Hobson House

F Gunzo

Livingstone House

Z Kota, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes)

Milner House

M Isaacs, MSc (Rhodes)

HALLS FOR MEN AND WOMEN

ALLAN WEBB HALL

Hall Warden

EM Mgwashu, PhD (UKZN)

Winchester House

F Botha, BCom(Law), BCom(Hons)(Economics),
MCom(Applied Econometrics)(UFS), PhD (Socio-
Economics) (Universiteit Antwerpen)

Canterbury House

J Seymour

Canterbury Annexe

Susan Kunju

Salisbury House

EM Mqgqashu, PhD (UKZN)

Truro House

L Maholo, BCom, BCom (Hons)(Rhodes)

DROSTDY HALL
Hall Warden

C Deiner, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

Allan Gray House

T Mothudi ,BA (UKZN), LLB (Rhodes)

Graham House

A Chakona, BSc (Hons)(UZ), MSc (UZ), PhD
(Rhodes)

Prince Alfred House

C Deiner, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

Celeste

S Jeffries, BCom (Rhodes), PGCE(Rhodes)

JAN SMUTS HALL
Hall Warden

V Israel, BSocSci(Hons)(Rhodes)

Adamson House

S Khamanga, BSc (Swaziland), BPharm, MSc
(Pharm)(Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Atherstone House

V Israel, BSocSci (Hons)(Rhodes)

Jan Smuts House

A Chinomona, PhD (UKZN)

New House

L Griffioen, BA (Rhodes)

KIMBERLEY HALL
Hall Warden

J Gambiza, PhD (Zimbabwe)

Gold Fields House

J Gambiza, PhD (Zimbabwe)

De Beers House

G Thondhlana, PhD (Rhodes)

Rosa Parks

B Chitambo

Hilltop 9

J Nene

MIRIAM MAKEBA HALL
Hall Warden

M Naidoo, BSc (UDW), BSc (Hons)(UDW),
B.Pharm (UDW), MSc

Chris Hani House

D Khanye, DFil (UCT)

Enoch Sontonga

M Naidoo, BSc (UDW), BSc (Hons)(UDW),
B.Pharm (UDW), MSc

Thomas Pringle House

C Lewis, MSocSci (UFH)

Walker House

S Roodt, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

GAVIN RELLY POSTGRADUATE VILLAGE
Warden

L Juma, LLD (Rhodes)

NELSON MANDELA HALL
Hall Warden

D Wicks

Stanley Kidd House

J Hellemann

Helen Joseph House

T Tantsi, BEcon (Rhodes), PGDip (Business
Management)(MANCOSA)

Guy Butler House

J Davy, PhD (Human Kinetics and Ergonomics)
(Rhodes)

Adelaide Tambo House

D Wicks

LILIAN NGOYI HALL
Hall Warden

M Ntlabati BSocSc (UCT), BSocSc (Hon)(UCT).

Centenary House

M Chirombo, BFA (Hons)(Rhodes)

Ruth First House

C Hutchinson, BA PGCE(Rhodes)

Victoria Mxenge House

M Jiwaji, PhD (Rhodes)

Joe Slovo House

M Ntlabati BSocSc (UCT), BSocSc (Hon)(UCT)

OPPIDAN HALL
Hall Warden

Vacant

DESMOND TUTU HALL
Hall Warden

ABD Bobo

ADMINISTRATIVE SENIOR STAFF

Margaret Smith House

ABD Bobo, MA

Ellen Kuzwayo House

C Magadza, MSc (Pharm)(Rhodes)

Amina Cachalia House

M Buso

Cullen Bowles House

K Ntकिनca

Calata House

Vacant

Sisulu House

M van Zyl, Diploma Human Resource Management
(TUT), ETDP(UJ)

HILLTOP HALL

Hall Warden

S Zschernack

Calata

K Monaheng

Hilltop 7

J Botha

Hilltop 8

S Zschernack

Sisulu House

M Van Zyl

DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

Full details of rules and regulations for the various degrees, diplomas and certificates may be found in the relevant Faculty sections.

Minimum Duration

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Degrees

BBusSc	Bachelor of Business Science	four years
BCom	Bachelor of Commerce	three years
BCom(Hons)	Bachelor of Commerce with Honours	one year
BEcon	Bachelor of Economics	three years
BEcon(Hons)	Bachelor of Economics with Honours	one year
MBA	Master of Business Administration	two years
MCom	Master of Commerce	one year
MCom	Master of Commerce in Financial Markets	two years
MCom	Master of Commerce in Taxation	two years
MEcon	Master of Economics	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
DEcon	Doctor of Economics	

Diplomas

DipAcc(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy	one year
DipEntMan(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management	one year
DipTax (PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation	one year
DipBA(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis	one year

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

Degrees

BEd	Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) Preservice	four years full-time
BEd	Bachelor of Education (all phases)	three years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education (Honours)	two years part-time
MEd	Master of Education	one year full-time, two years part-time
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years full-time

Diplomas and certificates

PGCE	Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Foundation Phase, Intermediate Phase and Senior/FET Phase)	one year full-time
PG Dip(HE)	Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education	two years part-time

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

BA	Bachelor of Arts	three years
BA (Hons)	Bachelor of Arts with Honours	one year
BFA	Bachelor of Fine Art	four years
BJourn	Bachelor of Journalism	four years
BMus	Bachelor of Music	four years
MA	Master of Arts	two years
MFA	Master of Fine Art	one year
MMus	Master of Music	one year
DMus	Doctor of Music	four years

DLitt	Doctor of Literature	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
BSocSc	Bachelor of Social Science	three years
BSocSc(Hons)	Bachelor of Social Science with Honours	one year
MSocSc	Master of Social Science	two years
DSocSc	Doctor of Social Science	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years

Diplomas and Certificates

HDipPsychotherapy	Higher Diploma in Psychotherapy	one year (min)
HDipTheaStud	Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies	one year (min)
DipFineArt	Diploma in Fine Art	four years
DipELT(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: English Language Teaching	one year
DipIS(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: International Studies	one year
* DipLGA(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: Local Government Administration	one year
DipESL(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language	one year
HDipJourn(PG)	Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate)	one year
* DipMedMgmt(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management	one year
DipPsychol(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology	one year

* *not currently offered*

FACULTY OF LAW

Degrees

LLB	Bachelor of Laws	four years
LLM	Master of Laws	two years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
LLD	Doctor of Laws	

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

Degrees

BPharm	Bachelor of Pharmacy	four years
MPharm	Master of Pharmacy	two years
MSc	Master of Science	two years
PharmD	Doctor of Pharmacy	three years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	three years
DSc	Doctor of Science	

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Degrees

BSc	Bachelor of Science	three years
BSc(Inf Sys)	Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)	three years
BSc(Hons)	Bachelor of Science with Honours	one year
MSc	Master of Science	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
DSc	Doctor of Science	

THE RESIDENCES

Residence accommodation is comfortable and attractive. Most of the older houses, some designed by Baker and Kendall, the original architects of Rhodes, have been restored externally and the interiors modernised. Generally, students have their own rooms. Of the 3829 residence rooms on campus, 110 are double rooms (3%). First year students are allocated to these rooms using a lottery system. Early application for residence accommodation is essential, and ensures a wider choice of residence. For details of residence fees see the Fees and Charges section.

The 55 residences or 'houses' are grouped in 14 halls, all with their own dining-halls, and all within easy walking distance of lectures and town. There are three women's halls, one men's hall and 10 halls accommodating men and women in separate houses, as well as a separate Post-Graduate Village (which is self-catering).

Each hall governs its own internal affairs to a large extent. However, certain rules apply to all students in residence (see the Student Disciplinary Code). It is important to note that a student living in a University residence may at any time be required to leave that residence if the Director of Student Affairs, in consultation with the Hall Warden concerned, is satisfied that this is in the best interest of the residence or of the student concerned. Subject to conditions laid down from time to time by the Director of Student Affairs, Hall Wardens have the right to decide which returning or Oppidan students (who have previously lived in a Rhodes residence) they will admit to their respective halls, and may refuse to admit or readmit a student if they consider this advisable. Should a Hall Warden decide not to admit a student into residence he/she would need to substantiate his/her decision in writing to the Director of Student Affairs. The final decision, with regard to admitting a student into residence shall always be vested with the Vice Chancellor.

A Hall Warden is in charge of each hall, and House Wardens, assisted by Sub-wardens and House Committees, are in charge of individual houses. Senior members of the academic and administrative staff are elected as Fellows of the various Halls, and play an active part in the life of their Hall.

WARDEN'S POWERS OF SEARCH

A Hall or House Warden has the right to search a student's room if they have reasonable grounds for believing that evidence of the commission or attempted commission of a disciplinary offence may be found in the room concerned. In such instances, the Student Protocol for Search and Seizure is closely adhered to.

HOUSEKEEPING

It is important to be aware that there are certain times when Housekeepers are required to enter student rooms. They are trained, as per hotel standards, to knock three times before entering a room. They are also required to say "Housekeeping" between each knock. If there is no response from the room, they are then permitted to enter using the master key, which has been entrusted to them.

Reasons why Housekeeping may be required to enter a student room include: Window cleaning; fumigation; requisition work; checking Rhodes University furnishings etc.

RESPONSIBILITY FOR UNIVERSITY PROPERTY

Each student allocated a room in residence must sign a Room Statement Form as and when required to do so by the Hall Warden listing all University furniture and other property in the room and certifying that it is in good order. At the end of each term when students are required to clear their rooms, the House Warden will check the rooms, and the students will be held responsible for leaving all the furniture, other property and the room itself, in the same good order in which it was found (fair wear and tear excepted).

In the case of damage to, or loss of, University property, the student or students responsible, if known, are required to bear the cost. If not known, the cost of loss or damage will be charged either to a particular group of students or to the general funds of students in the house.

A student should report any damage or loss of University property in a room while he/she is in occupation, and for which he/she is not responsible, immediately, in writing, to the House Warden. If this is not done, it will be presumed that the loss or

damage is the responsibility of the occupant of the room, who will have to bear the cost.

INSURANCE (ACCIDENT)

Students are not covered by University insurance while at Rhodes unless they are injured while engaged in activities for which they are remunerated by the University. All other insurance is the responsibility of each student.

LOSS OF OR DAMAGE TO STUDENTS' PROPERTY

Students are strongly advised to ensure that they carry the necessary insurance against theft, housebreaking, fire and other similar risks.

The University will in no way hold itself responsible for any loss or damage by theft, fire or any other means to students' property kept in the residences either during term time or during vacations.

All students' room doors are fitted with locks. Student rooms should be locked at all times.

PROPERTY LEFT IN RESIDENCE BOX ROOMS

Any property belonging to persons who no longer live in residence, which has been stored or left in residence box rooms, will be sold if it has not been removed from such box rooms by the end of the first vacation of each year. The proceeds will be paid into an official account of the relevant Hall Committee for the benefit of the students of the House concerned.

Property left in residence box rooms is left entirely at the student's own risk.

RESIDENCE DURING VACATIONS

Undergraduate Residences (Undergraduate and postgraduate students)

1. Accommodation in residence is available during the April and September recesses, when normally at least one women's residence and one men's residence are open. No accommodation is offered during the mid-year recess or during December and January each year.
2. Students wishing to stay in the vacation residences during the April and September vacations must submit the appropriate online application on ROSS (Application for Vacation Accommodation Form) two weeks prior to the start of the vacation in question.

3. Students remaining in residence during the April vacation pay an extra fee for room and board (see Fees and Charges section).

NB University residences are used during most vacations for conferences etc. Students whose residences are in use during vacations must clear their rooms. The University has the right to close all, or any, houses and Halls during a vacation, and determines when, for how long and on what conditions residential facilities are available during vacations and at other times.

4. Residence fees do not cover accommodation during vacations, except in the following case:
 - a. Students may move into residence at the beginning of the academic year up to two days before the day on which they register, and one day before the beginning of the second, third and fourth terms.
 - b. A student may remain in residence 24 hours after the end of the first and third terms, and 48 hours after completing the June and November examinations.

5. No reduction in fees is made if students finish their examinations before the official end of term. NB Students not writing examinations (including students who have not obtained DP certificates) must leave residence before the examination period begins. No reduction in residence fees will be granted.

6. Accommodation in residence is normally available during the supplementary/Aegrotat examinations in November and February, and students wishing to return to residence early for the purpose of writing such examinations must submit the appropriate form (Application for Vacation Accommodation) available from the Residential Operations Division, Student Bureau or Hall Wardens, at least two weeks prior to the start of the day accommodation is required. A fee will be charged for such accommodation.

Postgraduate Students (Celeste House, Oakdene House, Gilbert Street PG units)

1. Full-time students will be accommodated in Celeste House, Oakdene House and three smaller houses on campus.
2. Students may remain in residence throughout the year.
3. Students will be charged a fee as set out in the Fees Booklet. This will also allow them to have

meals in a dining hall. In the event of all dining halls being closed, the students will have to make their own arrangements for meals.

4. A pro-rata rebate will only be paid out in the final year of study upon provision of proof of submission of thesis.
5. Cooking is permitted in designated self-catering units only. Subletting of rooms, or permitting squatting, shall result in exclusion from the residence.
6. Students who wish to make use of the self-catering facilities provided only in Oakdene and Celeste residences must apply to the Deputy Director –Residential Operations Division for permission.

Postgraduate Students (Gavin Reilly Postgraduate Village)

1. Students will be charged a fee as set out in the Fees Booklet. This fee does NOT include meals.
2. If students wish to eat meals in one of the dining halls, this must be booked and paid for in advance. This can be done online, via ROSS. A concise user manual to this effect, is available on the meal bookings pages on ROSS.
3. Cooking is permitted in the units. A fridge and hotplate are provided.
4. Subletting of rooms or permitting squatting shall result in exclusion from the village.

RU HEALTH CARE CENTRE

The Health Care Centre is staffed by four qualified nursing sisters and two Health Care Centre assistants. The Sisters attend to minor ailments, dispense medicines, dress wounds, carry out first aid, run a contraception clinic and conduct health education during regular clinic hours. There is a 24-hour emergency service. The Health Care Centre has 8 beds for in-patients, such as those with infectious diseases in need of nursing care or isolation, depression or other psychological disorders. Students may choose any medical practitioner they wish to attend them. They or their parents are responsible for the medical practitioner's charges, the cost of any prescriptions made up by local chemists, and the fees for any additional special nursing required by an individual student. Students requiring operations or specialised attention not given in the Health Care Centre are moved to hospital for treatment, and are responsible for any resultant charges. A student who

is admitted to the Health Care Centre must comply with the Health Care Centre rules and shall obey all lawful instructions by the Health Care Centre sisters.

MAIL TO RESIDENCES

Students should notify their correspondents that letters must be addressed to the particular house they live in, and not merely to Rhodes University.

The following is a list of the appropriate postal addresses and Wardens' telephone numbers:

Hall and Residence *Postal address*

Allan Webb Hall	Private Bag 1027
Hall Warden	6038010
Hall Administrator	6038474
Canterbury House	6038577
Canterbury Annexe	6037238
Salisbury House	6038010
Winchester House	6038011
Truro House	6038519

Courtenay-Latimer Hall	Private Bag 1031
Hall Warden	6038044
Hall Administrator	6038575
Beit House	6038044
Charlotte Maxeke House	6038045
Oriel House & Annex	6038886

Desmond Tutu Hall	Private Bag x1042
Hall Warden	6038336
Hall Administrator	6037452
Ellen Kuzwayo House	6037467
Amina Cachalia House	6037468
Cullen Bowles House	6038038
Margaret Smith House	6038336

Drostdy Hall	Private Bag 1025
Hall Warden	6038016
Hall Administrator	6038586
Allan Gray House	6038014
Celeste	6037602
Graham House	6038015
Prince Alfred House	6038016

Founders Hall	Private Bag 1028
Hall Warden	6038019
Hall Administrator	6038588
College House	6038020
Cory House	6038021
Matthews House	6038022

THE RESIDENCES

Hilltop Hall	Private Bag 1038	Nelson Mandela Hall	Private Bag X1673
Hall Warden	6037716	Hall Warden	6038042
Hall Administrator	6037718	Hall Administrator	6037198
Calata House	6037469	Stanley Kidd House	6038037
Hilltop 7	6037715	Helen Joseph House	6038916
Hilltop 8	6037716	Adelaide Tambo House	6038042
Sisulu House	6037517	Guy Butler	6038693
Hobson Hall	Private Bag 1030	Oppidan	
Hall Warden	6038025	Hall Warden	6038229
Hall Administrator	6038578		
Hobson House	6037467	Postgraduate Hall	
Dingemans House	6038025	Hall Warden	6038581
Livingstone House	6038583	GRPGV	6038581
Milner House	6038855	Oakdene	6038349
Jan Smuts Hall		St Mary Hall	Private Bag 1032
Hall Warden	6038030	Hall Warden	6037510
Hall Administrator	6038589	Hall Administrator	6038576
Atherstone House	P Bag 1036	John Kotze House	6037510
	6038030	Lilian Britten House	6038387
Adamson House	P Bag 1034	Olive Schreiner House	6038049
	6038029	Phelps House	6038048
Robert Sobukwe House	P Bag 1029		
	6038031		
New House	P Bag 1037		
	6038032		
Kimberley Hall	Private Bag 1026		
Hall Warden	6038582		
Hall Administrator	6038590		
De Beers House	6037543		
Gold Fields House	6038582		
Hilltop 9	6037717		
Rosa Parks	6037067		
Lilian Ngoyi Hall	Private Bag X1040		
Hall Warden	6037065		
Hall Administrator	6038692		
Centenary House	6038833		
Ruth First House	6038720		
Victoria Mxenge House	6038697		
Joe Slovo House	6037065		
Miriam Makeba Hall	Private Bag 1041		
Hall Warden	6038035		
Hall Administrator	6038861		
Enoch Sontonga House	6038035		
Thomas Pringle House	6038036		
Walker House	6038039		
Chris Hani	6038069		

DISCIPLINE IN THE RESIDENCES

The relevant rules and procedures are to be found in the Student Disciplinary Code and the Hall and House rules applicable in each house. Students should ensure that they are aware of these.

SPECIAL DIETS

Meat, Vegetarian, Halaal, Hindu, African, Fast Food and Health Diets are offered. Regretfully specialised medical diets cannot be offered.

FEES FOR RESIDENCE ACCOMMODATION

(a) Fees payable for residence accommodation are set out in the "Fees" section of the Calendar.

NB A student who has moved into residence but who leaves before registering for a course of study, will be charged such residence fees as the University determines. The fee normally payable is a daily rate fixed by the Council.

(b) Residence fees are currently set according to a facility-grading system.

(c) Students' accommodation is based on single and double rooms. Adjustments are made where students change residences or (single / double rooms). The total amount is debited to the students' account.

CANCELLATION OF PROVISIONAL OR FINAL RESIDENCE BOOKING

In the case of an early withdrawal from residence, for any reason, other than immediate family bereavement, medical illness or academic exclusion, a cancellation fee of two months residence fee will be levied over and above the fee calculation for the period of residence accommodation. A penalty will not be charged if a provisional residence booking is cancelled prior to the Initial Fee (IF) deadline as set out in the Fees Booklet each year.

SHARING OF DOUBLE ROOMS

Where, for University convenience, students are required to share accommodation, a 25% discount of the lodging fee for a single room is payable to the student for the period that the room was shared. For the purpose of discount and adjustments the residence year is taken as 249 days.

ACCOMMODATION IN UNIVERSITY TRANSIT HOUSING UNITS

In order to meet the demand for residence accommodation a number of students are allocated to suitable transit houses. This accommodation is temporary, and students housed in such accommodation will be required to move into residences as and when vacancies occur in residences. Placement in any particular Hall or residence cannot therefore be guaranteed.

LINEN AND LAUNDRY

Bed linen is supplied and laundered free of charge. Washing machines and tumble driers are installed in each residence for students' personal laundry.

REBATE ON RESIDENCE FEES

No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason.

CANCELLATION OF PROVISIONAL/FINAL RESIDENCE BOOKING

In the case of an early withdrawal from residence, for any reason, other than immediate family bereavement, medical illness or academic exclusion, a cancellation fee of two months residence fee will be levied over and above the fee calculation for the period of residence accommodation. A penalty will not be charged if a provisional residence booking is cancelled prior to the Initial Fee (IF) deadline of 18 January 2019.

RESIDENCE MERIT SCHOLARSHIPS

A number of residence merit scholarships are available each year on application. Specific criteria are laid down for these scholarships. Applications should be made to the House Warden concerned, who will pass them on to the Hall Warden for consideration by a committee consisting of Wardens and students.

STUDENTS LEAVING RESIDENCE DURING THE ACADEMIC YEAR

- (a) Students who wish to withdraw from residence before the end of the academic year, must give notice of such intention, in writing, to the Student Bureau.
- (b) Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves the residence during the course of the year, is liable for fees according to the scale set out in the section on "Fees and Charges".
- (c) Students who have withdrawn from residence during the course of the year must vacate their rooms within 24 hours of having submitted such notification to the University.

ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES

No fridges, hot plates, snackwich makers, immersion heaters or other cooking appliances are permitted in residence rooms. Kettles are allowed.

RESIDENCE BOOKING

Students must apply for residence accommodation for subsequent years by a date made known in a circular published by the Registrar each year. Please note that in view of the demand for residence accommodation, the application must be submitted to the Student Bureau on or before the due date.

MEAL MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A computerised meal management system operates in all dining halls. Students who have been awarded bursaries, NSFAS loans or full financial aid packages may not withdraw any credit balance from their account. Students will be refunded twice yearly (at the end of each semester) with the credit owing to them (up to the maximum refundable amount, as stipulated in the Fees & Charges booklet) as a result of un-booking meals. Meal credits will not be paid out at other times. Meal refunds are limited to a maximum amount per semester. See Fees & Charges for details.

STUDENT DISCIPLINARY CODE

1. APPLICATION OF RULES

1.1 In common with other communities of like size and complexity, the University has rules which contribute to the smooth and harmonious running of the institution.

1.2 If the University identifies a risk and it is in the best interest of the University community to do so, the University may act in terms of these interests in order to avert the risk.

1.3 The rules and procedures in this Student Disciplinary Code apply to every student of the University regardless of whether the alleged conduct in question takes place on or off campus. Where the alleged conduct has taken place off campus, there must be a sufficient link between the alleged conduct in question and the University and/or it must be reasonably likely to bring the University into disrepute. All policies and procedures governing students must be consistent with this Code. In the case of any inconsistency with this Code, the Code prevails. The headings in this Code are for ease of reference only and do not have any relevance to the **interpretation** of the clauses contained herein.

1.3.1 All disciplinary proceedings are confidential except as provided by this code.

1.4 A student shall not contravene:

- (a) Any of the rules set out in Rule 4 of this Code;
- (b) Any rule of the Halls of residence of the University;
- (c) Any rule of the Oppidan Union; or
- (d) Any rule of the SRC or the Sports Council.

A contravention of any of these rules shall be deemed a disciplinary offence.

1.5 The Higher Disciplinary Authority has jurisdiction over all offences which contravene the rules as set out in this Code.

1.6 The Lower Disciplinary Authorities have jurisdiction over all offences which contravene the rules as set out in this Code unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or the equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

1.7 An Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all Oppidan students.

1.8 A Hall/House Warden shall have jurisdiction over:

- (a) All students resident in the Hall/House

concerned; and

(b) All other students who commit any disciplinary offence referred to in Rule 4 in any of the constituent houses of the Hall, the dining halls or the precincts which form part of the Hall. If there is concurrent jurisdiction, the Hall Warden of the Hall where the alleged offence occurred shall exercise jurisdiction unless there is agreement to the contrary.

1.9 A Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students in another Hall where:

- (a) the student's Hall Warden cannot hear a matter because s/he has an interest in the matter and
- (b) in order to ensure a separation of power
- (c) the student's Hall Warden appoints another Hall Warden to hear the case. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

1.10 A House Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students in another House (from within the Hall or another Hall) where:

- (a)) the student's Hall Warden cannot hear a matter because s/he has an interest in the matter and
- (b) in order to ensure a separation of power
- (c) the student's Hall Warden appoints another House Warden to hear the case. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

1.11 The Library, Information Technology Department and Sports Council have jurisdiction over all offences contained in the Library Use and Conduct Code, the IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code and the Sports Council rules respectively unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or an equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

1.12 The Campus Protection Unit have jurisdiction over all offences contained in Rule 4.6 as set out in this Code unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or an equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

1.13 The SRC has jurisdiction over all offences contained in its rules provided that as soon as it determines to take action, it shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer the matter to any other disciplinary authority, in

which case s/he shall immediately inform the SRC of the decision. The SRC Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

1.14 The burden of proof in all disciplinary matters is on a balance of probabilities.

1.15 A student who is convicted of any crime in a court of law shall be rebuttably presumed to have committed the crime(s) of which they have been found guilty.

2. DEFINITIONS

In this Disciplinary Code, unless the context otherwise clearly indicates:

Affirmation means a solemn declaration in lieu of an oath.

Advisor means a person representing an accused student at a disciplinary hearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. An advisor must be a registered student of the University. No accused student may be represented at a Lower Disciplinary Hearing by a person who is qualified to practice as an attorney or advocate whether or not that person is admitted to practice as such or practices as such in the ordinary course. Should the Advisor be a law student, an Assistant Prosecutor may be appointed to represent the University as a presenter at the Lower Disciplinary Hearing.

Appeal means an appeal as contemplated in Section 8.

Assistant Prosecutor means a suitably qualified person appointed by the Vice-Chancellor – for such a period as the Vice Chancellor may periodically determine – to assist the Prosecutor/s in investigating and assessing contraventions of this Code and represent the University before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Appeal Committee. The Assistant Prosecutor is usually appointed from within the ranks of law students.

Competent verdict means any verdict that is provided for in Chapter 26 of the Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977 (as amended).

Compulsory service means any appropriate service as determined by the Registrar or a Hall/House Warden as the case may be.

Common cause means any fact or issue that is not in dispute.

Days means days within official university terms as set out in the Rhodes University Calendar to the exclusion of Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays unless the Vice-Chancellor, in consultation with the

Prosecutor/s, directs that a hearing be commenced or continued outside official University dates, or the accused student agrees thereto

Digs means accommodation in Grahamstown which is not a residence, occupied by a student, with or without his/her parents or guardians.

Disciplinary authority means any Board, Committee or person authorised to hold a disciplinary hearing, or any person required to carry out an investigation to determine whether or not a student should appear at a disciplinary hearing to answer a charge of committing a disciplinary offence.

Disciplinary Board means a panel of three suitably qualified people appointed in the discretion of the Vice-Chancellor, (or his/her delegate), one of whom shall be designated Chairperson, to hear matters deemed by the Vice-Chancellor (or his/her delegate) to be of a serious nature, including but not limited to sexual offences.

Disciplinary Appeal Committee means a panel of three people appointed by the Vice-Chancellor (or his/her delegate), one of whom shall be the designated chairperson, to hear matters on appeal from a Proctor or from a lower disciplinary authority.

Disciplinary Committee means the sub-committee of Senate charged with overseeing disciplinary matters.

Fine means a sum of money payable by a student as a sanction by a student in exceptional circumstances.

Hall Disciplinary Panel means a panel convened in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Hall Warden. The Panel shall consist of at least one Hall Warden, one Senior / Head Student, one House Warden, one Fellow, and one Hall SRC representative. The panel is to be chaired by either a Hall Warden, a Warden or a Hall Fellow.

Hate Speech means any utterance – verbal, written, published, advocated or communicated in person – directed towards any person, that could reasonably be construed to be demonstrate a clear intention to:

- a) Be hurtful
- b) Be harmful or incite harm
- c) Promote or propagate hatred

The grounds of discrimination are as follows: race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language and birth; or any other discrimination-based grounds which

- (i) Causes or perpetuates systematic disadvantage
- (ii) Undermines human dignity

(iii) Adversely affects equal enjoyment of a person's rights and freedoms in a serious manner.

Visiting means no visitors are permitted in a university residence between midnight and 7.30 daily, without the express permission of the warden.

Jurisdiction period means any period during which a student can be held accountable for his/her conduct and includes but is not limited to the following:

(a) Attendance at a Summer School or an Orientation Week Programme or any similar period of attendance at the University, however described.

(b) The time when a registered student is in Grahamstown for a supplementary examination or for any other reason linked to the University and its functions.

(c) The time when any previously registered student has returned to or remained in Grahamstown, and who thereafter registers again and, specifically, a person in this category who is present in Grahamstown during the Orientation Week.

(d) The time when any registered student, whilst out of Grahamstown, is representing the University at any academic, club, cultural, sporting, society or other official University function or activity.

(e) Any other time by agreement with the accused student.

(f) The University retains jurisdiction to prosecute a person for a disciplinary offence, to finality, and in accordance with the Code if that person is still a 'student' in terms of the Code when disciplinary proceedings are instituted (this will include when notice of a hearing has been served on the student). The aforementioned jurisdiction period will include the exercise of the right of appeal in terms of the Code.

No-Contact Order means an absolute prohibition from making contact directly or indirectly, with the named person(s) in any way including but not limited to contact in person, by mail, by telephone, by electronic media or by or through any other medium or person, unless the Vice-Chancellor, Proctor presiding over a disciplinary hearing, or Disciplinary Board determines otherwise.

Oppidan means a student living in 'digs'.

Person with legal qualifications means a person who is a legal practitioner or a person who has an LLB degree or a postgraduate qualification in law.

Presenter means a person in the Lower Disciplinary Authority who investigates and presents a case on behalf of the Hall/House. The status of the presenter may vary from case to case and will normally follow

line authority. For example, a Sub-Warden would present to a Warden and a Warden would present to a Hall Warden. In circumstances where there would be a conflict of interest for a Hall Warden to adjudicate a matter, a Hall Warden may then present the case to another Hall Warden.

Proctor means a suitably qualified person appointed by the Vice-Chancellor, for such a period as the Vice-Chancellor may from time to time determine, to preside at a disciplinary hearing.

Prosecutor means a suitably qualified person, appointed by the Vice-Chancellor for such a period as the Vice-Chancellor may from time to time determine, to investigate and assess contraventions of this Code and represent the University before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Appeal Board and to make written representations to a Disciplinary Appeal Committee.

Public nuisance means any act, omission or condition on any premises, including any building, structure or growth thereon, which is offensive or dangerous, or which materially interferes with the ordinary comfort, convenience, peace or quiet of other people or which adversely affects the safety of the public.

Representative means a person representing a student at a disciplinary hearing before a Proctor, or a Disciplinary Board. A representative may be a SRC Defence Counsellor, a member of the University staff, a registered student of the University, an attorney or advocate.

Residence means a building belonging to or leased by the University housing students either on or off the campus, but excluding digs.

Search and seizure A Hall/House warden (excluding the Oppidan Warden) who is lawfully in charge of a University premises, or a Prosecutor/s, or the Campus Protection Unit, or the Vice-Chancellor or his/her nominee, who reasonably suspects the breach of any law or any breach of this Code may enter such University premises for the purpose of searching the premises and any student thereon. Such search and seizure must be carried out in terms of the **Protocol for search and seizure on Rhodes University campus**.

Settled by Mediation means that the parties to the mediation have reached an agreement that is reduced to writing and signed by both parties.

Student means the following persons:

(a) Any person who is registered as a student at the University.

(b) Any person who has been accepted by the University with a view to his/her becoming a registered student.

(c) Any person who has left the University where the question of the propriety of a degree improperly obtained, or of conduct during an examination, is in issue.

(d) Any person contemplated in (a) to (c) above when disciplinary proceedings are instituted (this will include when notice of a hearing has been served on that person) until disciplinary proceedings (including any appeal proceedings) are finalised.

Suspension in the context of a sanction means a temporary or permanent postponement of the implementation of the sanction subject to a condition. Suspension in the context of the Vice-Chancellor's powers means in terms of Rule 5.1 (a) that a student may be ordered not to attend classes, and/or participate in any other University activities, and/or remain in residence (if applicable), and / or set foot on campus, pending a final decision in a disciplinary matter.

3. MEDIATION

3.1 Any student who has been the victim of any form of harassment (sexual, racial, gender-based, religious etc.), defamation, or other offensive verbal behaviour, may elect to have the complaint settled by mediation rather than at a disciplinary hearing. At the discretion of the Prosecutor/s any other suitable matter may be referred, in writing, to mediation.

3.2 Mediation shall not be an option in matters which are (in the discretion of the Vice-Chancellor/ or his/her delegate) of a serious nature.

3.3 Any student complaining of the type of behaviour set out in 3.1 above (hereafter called the complainant) may approach the Director: Student Affairs. The Director: Student Affairs or his/her designate, may, if the complainant so requests, assist the student in making contact with an appropriate counsellor to assist such student.

3.4 If no counselling is undertaken or if, after counselling, the complainant desires mediation, then the Director: Student Affairs shall contact the person/s who allegedly harassed, defamed or behaved offensively towards (hereafter called the respondent/s) and enquire of him/her/them whether they wish to settle the issue by mediation.

3.5 Where mediation is desired and agreed to by all parties, a suitably trained and qualified person will be appointed to mediate the dispute.

3.6 As mediation is a voluntary process, if at any time either the complainant/s or the respondent/s wish to withdraw from the mediation process, the process shall cease.

3.7 Where the parties do not agree to mediation, or the mediation is unsuccessful, the complainant/s may request to proceed by means of a disciplinary hearing in which case s/he/they must refer the matter to a Prosecutor/s.

3.8 Where the dispute is settled by mediation, the complainant/s will waive his/her/their right to request to proceed with disciplinary action.

3.9 The mediation process shall be privileged, confidential, and no information disclosed during such process shall be disclosed or be admissible at any subsequent disciplinary hearing.

4. RULES AND DISCIPLINARY OFFENCES

4.1 Voluntary intoxication caused by any substance to the extent that a person lacks intention or capacity is not a defence to any offence in this Code.

A contravention of the following rules during the jurisdictional period is an offence:

4.2 A student must comply with any lawful notice, instruction, request, order, direction or sanction issued in terms of this Code. A written mediated agreement has the same status as a lawful notice. Breach of a written mediated agreement is a disciplinary offence. The breach of a no-contact order is a disciplinary offence.

4.3 A student may not commit any common law crime. As far as common law crimes are concerned, the provisions of Section 2 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act 1 of 1988 shall apply.

4.4 A student may not contravene the offence sections of the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act 32 of 2007.

4.5 A student may not commit *furtum usus* (unlawful use or removal of the property of another person without their permission but without any intention to steal e.g. borrowing of another person's clothing without permission) of another's property.

4.6

(a) A student possessing a motor vehicle or motor cycle in Grahamstown must register it with the Student Bureau when registering as a student each year, and supply the make, registration number, and the student's address. In the event of a student acquiring possession of a vehicle in Grahamstown after registration, s/he must register it with the Student Bureau within 72 hours of acquiring it.

(b) A student may not park a vehicle in any area in the precincts of the University reserved for other purposes.

(c) A student is bound by the provisions of the National Road Traffic Act 93 of 1996, and its regulations, as amended, shall apply, with the necessary changes, to all roads on the campus of the University.

(d) A student charged with certain offences under Rule 4.6 may elect to admit their guilt in accordance with an admission of guilt penalties as laid down from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee.

4.7

(a) A student may not contravene the offence sections of the Liquor Act 27 of 1989.

(b) A student may not contravene the offence sections of the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act 140 of 1992, as read with the Protocol for Students on the Use of Illicit Drugs.

(c) A student may not consume and/be in possession of alcohol on any part of the University property without the written permission of the Vice-Chancellor, or such other person to whom the Vice-Chancellor has in writing delegated the authority to control the possession of or use of alcohol.

(d) A student may not be under the influence of alcohol or drugs where this interferes with the rights of other persons or their property.

(e) A student may not be in possession of any glass bottles and glasses containing liquor and soft drinks whilst on any part of the campus that has been designated by the Registrar to be a glass free area.

4.8

(a) A student may not contravene section 2 of the Makana Local Municipality Prevention of Public Nuisances By-Law as published in the Provincial Gazette no.1991 dated 10 October 2008.

(b) A student may not at any time make an unreasonably loud noise. Sound systems shall be turned off at 22h00 on Mondays, Tuesdays, Wednesdays, Thursdays and Sundays and at 24h00 on Fridays and Saturdays. This rule applies equally to students in residence and in 'digs'.

(c) A student may not use abusive or threatening language that is audible beyond the precincts of a digs or a residence.

(d) A student may not remove motor vehicle registration number plates, street signs, street numbers, hotel names, doctor's name plates or any other similar property without the authority of the lawful owner or occupant.

4.9

(a) A student may not contravene the offence sections of the Firearms Control Act 60 of 2000, the Dangerous Weapons Act 71 of 1968 and the Explosives Act 26 of 1956.

(b) A student may not bring a firearm (including an air-rifle and air-gun) or use a firearm on any part of the University property without the permission of the Vice-Chancellor.

4.10

A student may not be violent or disorderly.

4.11

(a) A student may not contravene the Acceptable Use Policy or IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code as published by the Information & Technology Services Department, as read with the relevant legislation.

(b) A student may not contravene the Policy for Advertising on Campus by Students and Student Organisations.

4.12

(a) A student shall notify the Student Bureau of their contact details i.e. home address, address in Grahamstown, e-mail address and cell phone number. In the event of a student moving residences or digs, s/he must notify the Student Bureau of his/her new address within seven days.

(b) A student must identify him/herself by producing a student card or any other satisfactory form of identification upon request by any member of the University staff. Such power shall only be exercised where the staff member seeking the information has reasonable cause to believe that the student has committed a disciplinary offence, or that the student in question is in a position to give information about the commission of a disciplinary offence. Failure by a student in these circumstances to answer promptly and truthfully and provide satisfactory identification will be regarded as a serious breach of discipline.

(c) A student may not damage or deface any property of the University or any property whatsoever within the precincts of the University.

(d) A student may not intentionally interfere with any Rhodes University emergency equipment (emergency assistance buttons, fire-extinguishers, cameras and telephones, etc.).

(e) A student may not put up a poster on any surface not specifically designated or reserved for putting up of posters.

(f) A student may not occupy or use any portion of the University premises otherwise than in accordance with the Rules and Regulations of the

University or in any manner contrary to the purposes for which such premises have been intended to be used by the University or for which they are, in fact, normally used.

4.13

(a) A student shall obey all lawful instructions given by any member of the University staff concerning his/her conduct, including an order to proceed immediately to, and remain at, his/her place of residence or the Campus Protection Unit office.

(b) A student shall obey a lawful instruction by the Prosecutor/s to furnish information to him/her or to appear before any disciplinary authority provided:

(i) that any student appearing before the Prosecutor shall be cautioned that she/he need not answer any question the answer to which is likely to expose him/her to a disciplinary hearing.

(ii) that an accused student appearing before the Prosecutor shall not be compelled to furnish him/her with a written statement. An accused student may, however, furnish the Prosecutor with a written statement if s/he freely chooses to do so.

4.14

(a) A student may not take into an examination/test venue, or have in their possession whilst in such a venue, any cell phone, book, memoranda, notes, papers or other materials whatsoever, except answer books or such other books, or other materials as shall have been supplied by the Examinations Officer or authorised by the examiners.

(b) A student may neither aid/ attempt to aid another candidate during an examination/test, nor obtain/ attempt to obtain aid from another candidate. A student may not communicate or attempt to communicate in any way with any other candidate during an examination/test.

(c) Absence without authority: The incident of a student being absent without authority will be dealt with as an academic matter.

(d) Instances of plagiarism will be dealt with in terms of the University Plagiarism Policy. All students are required to familiarise themselves with and comply with this policy.

(e) Every member of the academic staff shall have the right to exclude from class any student guilty of misconduct or insubordination in such class. If the exclusion is for more than one lecture or other class meeting it shall be reported in writing to the Head of the Department concerned. The HOD may,

after an enquiry where the student/s concerned have been given the right to explain his/her/their alleged misconduct, confirm or vary the order of exclusion. If the order of exclusion is for more than two weeks, it must be reported, in writing, by the Head of the Department to the Dean of that Faculty. After considering the Head of Department's report, the Dean of the Faculty may confirm or vary the order, or refer the matter to the Prosecutor/s.

4.15

(a) While a student may receive visitors in a University student residence (this includes balconies, verandas and common rooms) no visitors are permitted in a University student residence between 24h00 (midnight) and 07h30 daily, without the express permission of the warden. All visitors to any residence must be escorted at all times and hosts are responsible for their guests' conduct during this time.

(b) In application of the above rules, there are residence rules applicable to each hall of residence. Students are required to familiarize themselves with their own residence rules and to ensure that the friends / partners who visit them in the residence are aware of the relevant Hall or House rules.

4.16

(a) A student may not initiate, raid, or coerce another student, with or without the consent of the participants.

(b) A student may not be present in a residence of which he / she is not a member, without being in compliance of the rules of the University.

(c) A student may not engage in conduct which interferes or is likely to interfere with teaching, studying, research, lectures, meetings, or other events at the University, any constituent part of the University, an associated research institute, the administration of the University, or of any other of the normal processes and activities of the University.

(d) A student may not interfere, even by omission, with the governance and proper administration of the University.

(e) A student may not engage in conduct which obstructs or interferes with an officer, member, employee, and any other student in the performance of his/her lawful duties.

4.17

(a) A student may not engage in any conduct which is offensive to / and or defamatory of any staff member, student, or member of the public.

(b) A student may not be insubordinate towards any

member of the University staff.

(c) A student may not utter, distribute, display, show, screen or project disparaging, discriminating, and derogatory material based on a person's race, cultural identity, gender or sexual orientation – this includes hate speech.

(d) A student may not engage in conduct likely to bring the University, or any part of it, into contempt or disrepute.

(e) A student may not engage in any form of harassment or discrimination.

4.18

(a) A student may not intimidate, interfere with, or harass potential University witnesses.

(b) A student may not deliberately mislead a Prosecutor or University official in an attempt to affect the outcome of disciplinary action during an investigation.

(c) A student may neither deliberately nor negligently respond untruthfully to any relevant and lawful question put to him/her in the course of a disciplinary hearing or by a Prosecutor during an investigation into an alleged disciplinary offence.

(d) A student may neither hinder nor obstruct the hearing of any disciplinary proceedings or fail to obey an instruction given by the person chairing or conducting the proceedings.

(e) A student may not fail to attend a disciplinary hearing. During a hearing, a student must remain in attendance until excused.

(f) If a student fails to attend a disciplinary hearing and the person chairing/conducting the proceedings is satisfied that service of the notice had been effected – in terms of rules 7.3 and 7.5 – and that all reasonable attempts to contact the student have been made, then the disciplinary hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

(g) A student may not intentionally:

i) Insult any person lawfully present at a disciplinary hearing during its sitting.

ii) Interrupt the proceedings or otherwise misbehave during a hearing.

A student who contravenes this rule is liable to exclusion from the hearing and to immediate punishment on condition that s/he is first given an opportunity to either explain or to apologise.

4.19 A student may not conspire with or aid and abet anybody in committing an offence.

4.20 A student may not contravene the Library Use and Conduct Code.

4.21 A student may not contravene Rule 1.3.1

subject to the recognition of his/her rights in terms of South African law.

5. DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

5.1 The Vice-Chancellor

The Vice-Chancellor is the Chief Disciplinary Authority of the University and has the following powers:

(a) S/he may take interim action against any student as s/he in his/her discretion may consider desirable in the case of any apparent disciplinary offence by the student. In exercising this power, the Vice-Chancellor may suspend the student concerned from attendance at classes and/or from participation in any other activities of the University pending a final decision in the matter. In suspending the student, the Vice-Chancellor or his/her designate shall allow the student to make an oral representation against suspension.

(b) S/he may delegate all or any of his/her powers in connection with student discipline to a Deputy Vice-Chancellor or any other person.

(c) Any additional powers, functions and/or privileges as assigned to the Vice-Chancellor by council, as contemplated in section 7(6) of the Rhodes University Statute.

(d) Notwithstanding the terms of the appointment of the University Prosecutor/s and Proctor/s, the Vice-Chancellor shall be entitled, at any time, to relieve any of them of the powers entrusted to them herein, and may thereafter appoint another person/s in their stead, subject in all cases to the provisions of the Labour Relations Act 66 of 1995, as amended.

(e) The Vice-Chancellor shall, when exercising disciplinary powers, have jurisdiction over all students, shall be entitled to preside at any disciplinary hearings (alone or, in his/her discretion, with two suitably qualified assessors) and shall have the power to impose the same sanction as any disciplinary authority may impose.

(f) The Vice-Chancellor or the Director: Special Projects in the Vice-Chancellor's Office may determine to withhold examination results of any student, in respect of whom an investigation by a Prosecutor is pending, until any proceedings resulting from the investigation have been completed or withdrawn.

(g) The Vice-Chancellor has the power to exercise clemency. This power shall only be invoked once all internal remedies have been exhausted. Clemency should only be granted in exceptional circumstances

after a thorough investigation.

(h) The Vice-Chancellor (or person designated to perform this function by the Vice-Chancellor) may issue a no-contact order. Such an order may be, on such terms and on such conditions and for such period of time as the Vice-Chancellor (or person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) may in his/her discretion consider desirable. A no-contact order may be issued whether or not a student has lodged a formal complaint against a student in respect of an alleged breach of this Code. Before making such an order the Vice-Chancellor (or the person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) shall allow oral representations in person from the student against whom the order is sought and the university prosecutor as to whether or not a no-contact order is to be issued. The maximum period of a no contact order is six months unless exceptional circumstances exist. Unless the Vice-Chancellor determines otherwise when issuing a no contact order, the order shall constitute an absolute prohibition from making contact, directly or indirectly, with the named person(s) in any way including but not limited to contact in person, by mail, by telephone, by electronic media or by or through any other medium or person. Any student against whom a no-contact order has been issued, may, before the expiration date of the order, approach the Vice-Chancellor (or the person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) with a request to rescind the order on the basis that exceptional circumstances exist that warrant rescission. A hearing, similar to that which preceded the issuing of the order will be held to allow both representations, in person, by both the student and the prosecution, before the decision as to rescission of the order is made.

5.2 The Acting Vice-Chancellor

When the Vice-Chancellor is absent from the University, the Acting Vice-Chancellor (or if no acting appointment has been made, the Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic and Student Affairs) shall take over the disciplinary powers vested in the Vice-Chancellor.

5.3 The Director: Special Projects in the Vice-Chancellor's Office

The Director: Special Projects shall oversee student discipline at the University and may request updates on all matters involving student discipline at all levels and communicate such updates to the Vice-Chancellor.

5.4 The Registrar

The Registrar shall be responsible for the overall administration of the student disciplinary system and shall be responsible for, but not limited to, the following:

- (a) Maintaining a central hard copy repository of all documents relating to the Higher Disciplinary Authorities.
- (b) Making available case precedents to both the Prosecutor/s and the accused and his/her representative. Such precedents must remain in the Registrar's office given their confidential nature.
- (c) Endorsing academic transcripts where directed by a Proctor.
- (d) Exclusion of a student where directed by a Proctor.
- (e) Recording the outcomes of cases on the University Student Discipline Database (Protea).
- (f) Posting outcomes of each Higher Disciplinary case on the designated official University notice board outside the Student Bureau, unless otherwise advised by the Proctor or Director: Special Projects.
- (g) Posting the June and November case summaries as produced by the Prosecutor/s on the designated official University notice board outside the Student Bureau.
- (h) Enforcing and monitoring only the sanctions of compulsory service ordered by the Higher Disciplinary Authorities.
- (i) Withholding examination results where a student has not completed compulsory service in the stipulated time.
- (j) Refusing re-admission to residence at the beginning of a new academic year where a student has not completed compulsory service in the stipulated time.
- (k) Overseeing the progress made by each convicted student as regards their compulsory service and/or payment of compensation orders and/or fines ordered by the higher disciplinary authorities.
- (l) Convening a Disciplinary Appeal Committee and a Disciplinary Board.
- (m) Collating and distributing documents to be placed before a Disciplinary Appeal Committee and a Disciplinary Board.
- (n) Providing administrative assistance if and when requested by the Prosecutor/s.

- (o) Recording the acquisition of vehicles by students after registration in terms of Rule 4.6.

5.5 Director: Student Affairs

The Director: Student Affairs has no disciplinary jurisdiction, but is responsible for the following:

- (a) Posting the June and November case summaries (as produced by the Prosecutor/s) on designated official University notice boards.
- (b) Providing a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Special Projects of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Lower Disciplinary Authorities. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Affairs on designated official University notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.
- (c) Drafting an annual trends analysis of Lower Disciplinary cases in order to identify areas of concern and to ensure consistency of sanctions.
- (d) Communicating any incident report that may involve discipline at the higher level, to the Prosecutor/s within 48 hours. These incident reports should not include statements as these will be gathered by the Prosecutor/s. Such incident reports should contain the following:
 - (i) A description of the incident, including the date, time and place.
 - (ii) The names, student numbers, and contact cell-phone numbers of the affected persons and potential witnesses.
- (e) Liaising with Hall Wardens to ensure that the Hall Administrators are enforcing and monitoring all sanctions of compulsory service and fines ordered by a Lower Disciplinary Authority.

5.6 Campus Protection Unit

The Head: Campus Protection Unit shall be responsible for the following:

- (a) Receiving incident reports and ensuring that they are hand-delivered to the Prosecutor/s **within 48 hours** (it is vitally important that this time frame is adhered to). These incident reports should **not** include statements as these will be gathered by the Prosecutor/s. Such incident reports should contain the following:
 - (i) A description of the incident, including the date, time and place;
 - (ii) The names, student numbers and contact cell-phone numbers of the affected persons and

potential witnesses;

- (b) Serving charge sheets where requested to do so by the Prosecutor/s. The charge sheets must be served **within 48 hours** and a return of service must be delivered to the Prosecutor/s immediately following the service.

6. HIGHER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

6.1 The Proctor

- (a) A Proctor shall have jurisdiction over all students and in respect to all disciplinary offences set out in this Code.
- (b) If, during a hearing before a Proctor, s/he becomes unable to continue to serve and it appears that s/he will be unable to resume participation within a reasonable time, the proceedings may be terminated and new proceedings commenced *de novo* before another Proctor.
- (c) A Proctor may, at any time after the accused student has pleaded in terms of Rule 7.9 and before the proceedings are finalised (either by a finding of not-guilty or by the imposition of sanction in the case of a guilty finding), if there is reason to believe that there are grounds for a no-contact order, or if a no-contact order is requested by any of the parties involved, authorise that a hearing as contemplated in Rule 5.1(h) take place.

6.2. Disciplinary Board

- (a) A Disciplinary Board means a panel of three people appointed by the Vice-Chancellor, one whom shall be the designated Chairperson.
- (b) A Disciplinary Board shall have jurisdiction over all students and over all offences of a serious nature, including but not limited to sexual offences as set out in this Code.
- (c) If, during a hearing before a Disciplinary Board, any member of the Board becomes unable to continue to serve, and it appears that the Board member will be unable to resume participation within a reasonable time, the proceedings may continue with the remaining Board members, or be terminated and new proceedings commenced *de novo* before another Board. This decision will be made by the Chairperson of the Board.
- (d) The decision to prosecute a matter as a sexual offence shall be determined by the Prosecutor/s.

6.3 The Prosecutor

- (a) The Vice-Chancellor, in consultation with the Prosecutor/s, may appoint Assistant Prosecutors to

assist the Prosecutor/s. The Vice-Chancellor may, at his/her discretion, appoint any suitably qualified person to act as an Assistant Prosecutor.

(b) The Prosecutor/s and Assistant Prosecutors shall have the power to investigate any alleged disciplinary offence which is reported, that they are referred to, or of which they become aware. In conducting an investigation, the Prosecutors have the authority to request assistance from any University Official, if so required. If it appears that a student has committed a disciplinary offence they may, at their discretion, convene a hearing.

(c) The Prosecutor/s may, in assessing a case, put the allegation to the student prior to the student being charged with a disciplinary offence. The student must be warned and cautioned that s/he is under no obligation to make any statement whatsoever, but if s/he does, then it should be a voluntary statement in writing which may then be handed in as evidence.

(d) The Prosecutor/s shall have the power to terminate or suspend proceedings already commenced before any of the lower disciplinary authorities referred to in this Code on condition that there are reasonable grounds for doing so and that the rights of the accused are not unduly compromised.

(e) The Prosecutor/s shall provide a written update in June and November of each year to the Director: Special Projects and the Registrar of the progress made in each case they have dealt with. The Registrar will post these updates on the official University notice board outside the Student Bureau.

(f) The Assistant Prosecutors shall draft a case summary for each case with the names of the parties deleted for the Registrar to post on the designated official University notice board.

(g) The Prosecutor/s may direct that a case be heard by a Lower Disciplinary Authority.

(h) At the Prosecutor/s discretion a plea bargain discussion may occur prior to the commencement of a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board.

7. PROCEDURE IN HEARINGS BEFORE A PROCTOR OR DISCIPLINARY BOARD

7.1 A student appearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board may be assisted by any member of the University staff, any registered student of the University, other than a student summoned to answer charges in the same proceedings, or an attorney or advocate, provided that such representation shall be at his/her own cost. A person assisting a student by virtue of this provision will be referred to as their

representative.

7.2 Where the Prosecutor/s is/are satisfied that there is a *prima facie* case against a student, and in the case of an offence that has occurred off campus that it is a matter that should be dealt with by this Code, s/he should draw up a notice setting out:

- (i) The disciplinary offence/s allegedly committed, or any alternative disciplinary offence/s.
- (ii) The date, time, and place of the offence/s.
- (iii) The person/s against whom the offence/s was/were allegedly committed, if any, and any other relevant details sufficient to inform the accused student of the charge/s s/he will be responding to.
- (iv) The date, time, and place of the hearing.

7.3 The notice must be served on the student in person in the first instance by the Prosecutor/s, their nominee, or a member of the Campus Protection Unit. In the case of an Oppidan student, the notice must be served on the student in person in the first instance by the Prosecutor/s, their nominee, a member of the Campus Protection Unit, or an Oppidan Warden. The notice must be served on the accused at least five days before the date of the hearing. Should the student not be located in person in the first instance, the notice may be served by the Prosecutor/s or their nominee via email to the student's official Rhodes University email address. The student shall then be deemed to be served.

(a) In the event that a student is not in attendance in Grahamstown, the notice may be served by the Prosecutor/s or their nominee by email to the student's official Rhodes email address.

7.4 An accused student will be entitled to receive a bundle of the documents, witness statements and/or affidavits, photographs and/or details of any electronic evidence the Prosecutor intends to use at least five days prior to the hearing. In the case of electronic evidence, arrangements will be made for the accused to access such evidence at least three days prior to the hearing. A bundle shall also be provided to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. Witness statements relating to evidence in aggravation of sanction need not be provided.

7.5 The person serving the notice must inform the Prosecutor/s in writing as to when, how, where, and to whom the notice was served.

7.6 The Prosecutor/s shall have the right to direct that any student attends and gives evidence and remains in attendance until excused from a disciplinary hearing.

7.7 The Proctor may, for any good reason, postpone a hearing.

7.8 At a hearing, before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, the reading of the charge, the plea, the evidence of all witnesses, any oral arguments and the reasons for both the judgment and sanction shall be digitally recorded.

7.9 The Prosecutor shall read the charge/s to the accused student only when all the parties are assembled before the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. The accused student will be required to answer the charge/s (i.e. plead to the charge/s). S/he may:

(a) Deny that s/he committed the offence (Not Guilty).

(b) Admit that s/he committed the offence (Guilty).

(c) Admit to a lesser offence (e.g. charged with assault with intent to commit grievous bodily harm but only admits common assault).

(d) Allege that s/he has already been found guilty or not guilty of the disciplinary offence (i.e. the same set of facts).

(e) Allege lack of mental capacity (should this be alleged the evidence to be led must include oral evidence of a psychiatric assessment to support this allegation).

7.10 Where a student admits a charge (pleads guilty), the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall question the student to ensure that the student's admission of the charge (plea of guilty) is a genuine and complete admission on the question of both fact and law.

7.11 Where the accused student is represented, his/her representative may hand in a written plea statement in lieu of the questioning mentioned above.

7.12 If the Proctor or Disciplinary Board is satisfied that the student's answer to the charge is a genuine and complete admission of the charge (a plea of guilty) with no defence, the student may be found guilty of the charge or a competent verdict, as the case may be, without any evidence being heard.

7.13 Where a student denies the charge (pleads not guilty), the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board may question the student to ascertain which of the allegations in the charge/s are in dispute. The student must, however, be informed that s/he is not obliged to answer any such questions. Where a student elects to answer questions and admits to any of the allegations in the charge/s, these charges will be regarded as proved.

7.14 Where a student denies the charge (pleads not

guilty), the Prosecutor shall lead *viva voce* (oral) evidence in support of the charge. The Prosecutor may submit written statements from witnesses. These written statements may be received into evidence if their content is common cause and if the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board allows this.

7.15 Witnesses appearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board will be required to confirm that the evidence they are about to give is truthful.

7.16 Each witness will be examined, cross-examined, or re-examined (as the case may be) by only one person at a time – though not necessarily the same person for different witnesses.

7.17 An accused student shall have the right to remain silent or to give evidence on affirmation, provided that s/he is not compelled either way. Where the student is represented, his/her representative may lead the evidence on behalf of the defence. The student may then be cross-examined by the Prosecutor. After cross-examination, re-examination may follow.

7.18 An accused student will have the right to call witnesses. Should the accused elect to give evidence, his/her evidence must be heard before that of his/her witnesses.

7.19 A bundle of the documents, witness statements and/or affidavits, photographs and/or details of any electronic evidence which the defence intends to use at the hearing must be submitted to the Prosecutor/s at least three days prior to the hearing. A bundle shall also be provided to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. Written statements may be received into evidence if their content is common cause and if the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board allows this.

7.20 The Proctor or the Disciplinary Board may question any witness, including the accused student, at any time while they are giving evidence. The proceedings may be conducted in either the accusatorial or the inquisitorial method; alternatively, a combination of both may be used.

7.21 The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall decide on any question of law, procedure, or the admissibility of evidence. In deciding any question of procedure not provided for in this Code, or on the admissibility of evidence, s/he will not be bound by the formal rules of criminal procedure or evidence applicable in any court of law. Instead, s/he will follow the dictates of fairness, natural justice and relevance, even if this includes the application

of the rules of procedure and evidence applicable in courts of law.

7.22 The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board may call any witness not already called, or recall any witness who has already given evidence, if s/he believes that the evidence or further evidence of that witness is essential to the just decision of the case.

7.23 After all the evidence has been presented, the Prosecutor and the accused student or his/her representative shall have the right to give a closing argument regarding guilt or innocence of the accused to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. This argument may be delivered orally or in writing, or both.

7.24 After the conclusion of the arguments, the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall there and then, or after time is taken to consider the verdict, give a judgment with reasons for the verdict, as to whether or not the accused is guilty of the charge/s, alternative charge/s, or a competent verdict. In a case before a Disciplinary Board a verdict shall be reached by way of a majority vote.

7.25 Where a student is found guilty of a disciplinary offence the Prosecutor and the student or his/her representative may lead evidence in aggravation or mitigation of sanction. Thereafter the Prosecutor and the student or his/her representative may address the Proctor or Disciplinary Board on what the sanction should be.

7.26 A Proctor or Disciplinary Board may, at any time after the accused student has pleaded in terms of Rule 7.9 and before the proceedings are finalised (either by a finding of not-guilty or by the imposition of sanction in the case of a guilty finding), if there is reason to believe that there are grounds for a no-contact order, or if a no-contact order is requested by any of the parties involved, refer the matter in terms of Rule 5.1 (h).

7.27 The Proctor or Disciplinary Board will there and then, or after time is taken to consider the sanction, give a judgment setting out the reasons for sanction and the sanction imposed.

7.28 A Proctor or Disciplinary Board shall have jurisdiction to impose any one or more of the following sanctions upon a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence:

- (a) Deprivation of a degree improperly obtained.
- (b) Permanent exclusion from the University.
- (c) Exclusion from the University, its premises, and from participation in all University activities (which shall include all student activities) for a specified period.

(d) Exclusion from a specific University residence or all residences.

(e) Exclusion from attendance at certain classes and/or University examinations, either permanently or for a specified period.

(f) Exclusion from participation in University activities or from such post or office in the University as may be specified, either permanently or for a specified period.

(g) Imposition of a fine not exceeding 20 % of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(h) Payment of a sum of money required to compensate for any loss, damage, or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence.

(i) A period of compulsory service.

(j) Prohibition from driving or possessing a motor vehicle/motor cycle on campus. (Note: This sanction may only be imposed on a student who is found guilty of a disciplinary offence involving the use and/or driving of a motor vehicle/motorcycle).

(k) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to five years.

(l) Endorsing the academic record of the student to the effect that the student's conduct has been unsatisfactory.

(m) Any other appropriate sanction.

7.29 Where a student has been acquitted due to lack of mental capacity, the student may not remain at the University or return to the University without undergoing a full psychiatric assessment, the findings of which must confirm that the student is of sound mind.

7.30 In assessing the sanction to be imposed on a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence, the Proctor or Disciplinary Board hearing the matter, shall regard the fact that the student was under the influence of alcohol or drugs at the time the offence was committed as an aggravating factor.

7.31 Where a student has been sanctioned in terms of this Code, the sanction shall come into effect immediately regardless of whether the student intends to take the matter on appeal, unless the Vice-Chancellor, on written application by the student, decides that there is good cause to suspend the implementation of the sanction pending the outcome of an appeal. The written application by the student shall set out fully all relevant facts and submissions that he or she wishes the Vice-Chancellor to consider in arriving at a decision in this regard.

7.32 If there is reason to believe that a condition

upon which the whole or a portion of a suspended sanction rests has been breached, the student shall, on two days' notice, be required to attend an enquiry for the purpose of establishing whether or not an order should be made bringing the suspended sanction into operation.

7.33 If a student who has been directed to appear before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board fails to appear at the place, date, and time specified in the notice, fails to remain in attendance or to attend any adjourned proceedings, the Prosecutor shall make all reasonable attempts to locate the student. If the Proctor or Disciplinary Board is satisfied that all reasonable attempts have been made to contact the accused the hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

7.34 If, during the course of a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, it comes to the knowledge of a Prosecutor that a student appearing at such hearing may have committed any disciplinary offence/s other than, or in addition to, those with which s/he has been charged, the Prosecutor may charge the student concerned with such supplementary disciplinary offence/s and, provided that the provisions of this Code in relation to particulars and time to prepare are satisfied, the enquiry may then proceed. The evidence lead until that point will retain its full force and effect.

7.35 At any disciplinary hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, no person/s other than the Proctor, members of the Disciplinary Board, Prosecutor/s, Assistant Prosecutors, the accused and his/her representative, parent/s, legal guardian/s, counsellor or any person requested by the complainant may attend. The status of a parent, legal guardian, counsellor, or person requested by the complainant, is strictly that of an observer who may support the student and not in any way engage in the process. The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board retains the right to exclude any of these parties from a hearing on the grounds of inappropriate behaviour.

7.36 If a student appearing at a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board conducts him/herself in a manner which makes the continuance of the proceedings in his/her presence impossible or impractical, the Proctor or the Chair of the Disciplinary Board may, after warning the student of the consequences of such conduct, direct that s/he be removed. On such occasions, the proceedings will continue in his/her absence.

7.37 Within seven days of the imposition of a

sanction by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall record the charge/s, plea/s, material facts found proved, including aggravating and mitigating circumstances, if any, the reasons for the verdict, the verdict, the sanction imposed, and the reasons for the imposition of the sanction, and forward such record to the Registrar, the Prosecutor/s and the convicted student and his/her representative. This document constitutes the record of the proceedings.

7.38 The record should be made available to the Prosecutor/s and any student summoned to appear before a Proctor, or his/her representative, so that it may be referred to as a precedent in future enquiries or be used by such student in the preparation of her/his defence.

7.39 If either the Proctor or the Director: Special Projects is of the view that the sensitivity of a particular case renders publication of the details undesirable, s/he may withhold or restrict publication.

7.40 If a student is not able to complete any compulsory service within the time specified by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, written application for an extension of time shall be made to the Registrar. The Registrar, after consultation with a Prosecutor, may authorise an extension provided that he/she is satisfied that valid grounds exist.

8. APPEAL FROM A PROCTOR OR DISCIPLINARY BOARD

8.1 A student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board shall, have the right to appeal such decision. Such an appeal will be a 'wide appeal', which may incorporate grounds of appeal and/or review. This Rule must be read in conjunction with Rule 8.7.

8.2 The appeal will be decided by a Disciplinary Appeal Committee appointed by the Vice-Chancellor or his/her designate.

8.3 A student (or his/her representative) wishing to exercise the right of appeal shall, within five days of being sanctioned, advise the Registrar in writing that s/he wishes to have the case appealed. The request for appeal shall be accompanied by a deposit of an amount to be determined on an annual basis and payable to the Registrar, which shall serve as part payment for costs related to the appeal, which shall immediately become due and payable. The deposit shall only be refundable to the student in the event that the conviction is quashed.

8.4 At the request of the student (or his/her representative) the digital recording of the proceedings will be made available to a recognised transcription service. The full cost of the transcription of the entire digital recording shall be borne by the student. If the student wishes to rely on the recording in the appeal proceedings, s/he will be responsible for providing the members of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee and the Prosecutor/s with a transcription of the entire digital recording by an organisation or business that normally transcribes court records, at his/her own cost.

8.5 Within 5 days of the record being transcribed the student (or his/her representative) may submit written submissions (in regard to the appeal) to the Disciplinary Appeal Committee (and a copy provided to the Prosecutor/s).

8.6 Within 5 days of having received the written submissions of the student (or his/her representative), or within 5 days of the record being transcribed (should the student (or his/her representative) fail to submit written submissions) the Prosecutor/s may submit written submissions to the Disciplinary Appeal Committee (and a copy provided to the student or his/her representative).

8.7 Should the Prosecutor/s be of the view that the sanction imposed by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board is so lenient as to be unjust, s/he shall have the right to have the sanction appealed before a Disciplinary Appeal Committee.

8.8 The Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall decide the outcome of the appeal solely upon a consideration of the record and the written submissions of both parties. **No further evidence and/or submissions unless specifically requested by the Disciplinary Appeal Committee, shall be permitted.**

8.9 The Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall have the following powers:

- (a) To confirm, alter or reject the decision or find the student guilty on an alternative charge or competent verdict;
- (b) To confirm, reduce, increase, alter or set aside the sanction and replace it with an appropriate sanction; or
- (c) Generally to give such judgment or impose such sanction or make such order as the Disciplinary Appeal Committee deems fit.

8.10 The decision of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall be determined by a majority vote.

8.11 The Chairperson in consultation with the members of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee

shall within seven days of having received written submissions by both parties (alternatively, should either party not make any written submissions, within 10 days of the record being transcribed) provide the student involved, the Prosecutor/s and the Registrar with a written report setting out the Disciplinary Appeal Committee's decision and the reasons for such decision.

9. LOWER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

Lower Disciplinary authorities include Assistant Wardens, Wardens, Hall Wardens, Oppidan Wardens, a Hall Disciplinary Panel, designated Library staff, designated Information Technology staff and designated Campus Protection Unit staff.

9.1 A member of a Lower Disciplinary Authority shall be disqualified from exercising any of the functions or powers conferred upon him/her by this Code in a disciplinary hearing, if s/he witnessed all or any of the conduct alleged to constitute the disciplinary offence, or is the complainant, or has a personal interest in the matter except in the circumstances outlined in 9.5 below.

9.2 There must be a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and presenting the case in order to comply with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, and the rules of natural justice and fairness.

9.3 Hall/House Wardens shall not have jurisdiction over shoplifting.

9.4 No legal representation or person with legal qualifications will be permitted to represent a student appearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. A student appearing before such authority may, however, be accompanied by a Sub-Warden, a Hall or House Senior/Head Student, a SRC Defence Counsellor, a member of the SRC or any other student. Such person shall be referred to as the accused student's advisor. Should the student's advisor (as per the definition) be a law student, an Assistant Prosecutor may be appointed to represent the University at the Lower Disciplinary Hearing.

9.5 Any student in respect of whom a Hall/House Warden has jurisdiction shall have his/her hearing before the Hall/House Warden alone or in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Hall Warden, before a Hall Disciplinary Panel. A Hall Disciplinary Panel shall consist of at least one Hall Warden, one Senior / Head Student, one House Warden, one Fellow, and one Hall SRC representative. The panel

is to be chaired by either a Hall Warden, a Warden or a Hall Fellow.

9.6 Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may, rather than appearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority, be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee. It should be noted that there are five admissions of guilt sanction documents relating to offences falling within the jurisdiction of Oppidan Hall Wardens, Hall/House Wardens, the Library, Information Technology and the Campus Protection Unit. In the case of an admission of guilt, separation of powers is not necessary. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Oppidan Warden, Hall/House Warden, Director: Library Services or Director: Information Technology, or in the case of traffic offences the Head: Campus Protection Unit, in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

9.7 A Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have jurisdiction over the following **students**:

- (a) all students resident in the Hall/House concerned;
- (b) all students who commit a disciplinary offence in any of the constituent houses of the Hall/House, the dining halls or the precincts which form part of the Hall/House. If there is concurrent jurisdiction, the Hall Warden of the Hall where the alleged offence occurred shall exercise jurisdiction unless there is agreement to the contrary;
- (c) In order to ensure a separation of powers as set out in Rule 9.2 above, a Hall Warden may hear a case emanating from any other Hall. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

9.8 The Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students who are not in residence. Where the alleged conduct has taken place off campus, there

must both be a sufficient link between the alleged conduct in question and Rhodes University, and / or it must be reasonably likely to bring Rhodes University into disrepute. The Oppidan Hall Warden shall not have jurisdiction over shoplifting, domestic violence and contraventions off campus of the National Road Traffic Act 93 of 1996, and its regulations, as amended.

9.9 A Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have jurisdiction over the following **offences**:

- (a) All offences set out in Rule 4 unless there is a possibility that a sanction greater than that of the jurisdiction of a Hall/House Warden may be justified, in which case, the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.
- (b) A contravention of any Hall or House Rule.

9.10 A Hall/House Warden shall have the power to search and seize as set out in the definition section. Such search and seizure must be carried out in terms of the **Protocol for search and seizure on Rhodes University campus**, as read with the **Protocol for Students on the Use of Illicit Drugs**.

9.11 The Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all offences set out in Rule 4 unless there is a possibility that a sanction greater than that of the jurisdiction of a Hall Warden may be justified, in which case, the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter;

9.12 The Hall Wardens and Oppidan Warden shall provide a written update at the end of each term of the cases in their Hall to the Director: Student Affairs of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Hall. The Director: Student Affairs shall collate all such reports and provide a written update in June and November of each year of Lower Disciplinary cases to the Director: Special Projects of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Lower Authorities.

10. PROCEDURE IN HEARINGS BEFORE LOWER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

10.1 Where a Warden is satisfied that a student has committed a disciplinary offence and the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel has jurisdiction, s/he should:

- (a) Draw up a notice setting out the disciplinary offence/s allegedly committed, the date, time and place of the offence/s, the person against whom the offence/s was/were allegedly committed (if any),

the property in respect of which the offence/s were committed (if any), and any other relevant details sufficient to inform the accused student of the charge/s she/he has to meet. The notice must also set out the date, time, and place of the hearing.

(b) The notice must be served on the student in person.

(c) The notice must be served on the accused at least three days before the date of the hearing.

(d) The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may postpone the hearing if a valid reason is given.

(e) When all the parties are assembled the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel shall read the charge/s to the accused student. The accused student will be required to answer the charge/s (i.e. plead to the charge/s). S/he may:

(i) Deny that s/he committed the offence – plead “not guilty”. Should the student plead “not guilty” it is at this point that a separation of power must be implemented.

(ii) Admit that s/he committed the offence – plead “guilty”.

(f) Where a student pleads guilty, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel shall question the student to ensure that the student’s plea includes all the relevant facts of the offence.

(g) If the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel is satisfied that the student’s answer to the charge is a genuine and complete admission of the charge with no defence – pleads guilty – the student may be found guilty of the charge without any evidence being heard.

(h) Where a student denies the charge or pleads not guilty the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel may question the student to ascertain which of the allegations in the charge/s are in dispute. The student must, however, be informed that s/he is not obliged to answer any of the questions posed to him/her. Where a student elects to answer questions and admits any of the allegations in the charge/s, they will be regarded as proved.

(i) Where a student denies the charge – pleads not guilty – the Presenter shall lead oral evidence in support of the charge.

(j) Witnesses appearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel will be required to affirm that the evidence they will

give will be truthful.

(k) An accused student or his/her representative will have the right to cross-examine any witnesses called by the Presenter. Thereafter such witnesses may be re-examined by the Presenter. Each witness will be examined, cross-examined, or re-examined (as the case may be) by only one person at a time – though not necessarily the same person for different witnesses.

(l) An accused student shall have the right to remain silent or to give evidence on affirmation, provided that the student shall not be compelled to give evidence. Where the student is assisted / represented his/her advisor may lead the evidence on behalf of the accused. She/he may then be cross-examined by the Presenter. After cross-examination, re-examination may follow.

(m) An accused student will have the right to call witnesses. Should the accused elect to give evidence his/her evidence must be heard before that of his/her witnesses.

(n) The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may ask questions of any witness, including the accused student, at any time whilst they are giving evidence.

(o) After all the evidence has been led or presented, the Presenter and the accused student or his/her advisor shall have the right to make a final statement should they so wish.

(p) Thereafter the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall deliver a decision as to whether the accused student is found either guilty or not guilty of the charge/s.

(q) Where a student is found guilty of a disciplinary offence/s, both the Presenter and the student or his/her advisor may present argument in aggravation or mitigation of sanction.

(r) Thereafter the Presenter and the student or his/her advisor may address the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel on what the sanction should be.

(s) The Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel will give a decision setting out the reasons for sanction and the sanction imposed.

(t) A Hall Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may impose the following sanctions:

(i) Exclusion from the Hall.

(ii) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(iii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iv) Exclusion from participation in any Hall or House activity for a maximum of 1 (one) term.

(v) Exclusion from any post or office in the Hall, except that of Sub-Warden.

(vi) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 5 (five) years.

(vii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence; and

(viii) Suspension of visiting rights for a period of time.

(u) An Oppidan Warden may impose the following sanctions:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Exclusion from any post or office in the Hall, except that of Sub-Warden.

(iv) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 5 (five) years; and

(v) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

10.2 In assessing the sanction to be imposed on a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel hearing the matter shall regard the fact that the student was under the influence of alcohol/liquor/drugs at the time the offence was committed as an aggravating factor. As far as common law crimes are concerned, the provisions of Section 2 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act 1 of 1988 shall apply.

10.3 A House Warden or Assistant Warden may impose the following sanctions:

(a) A fine not exceeding 5% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(b) Compulsory service up to 50 (fifty) hours.

(c) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 1 (one) year subject to a specified condition; and

(d) Suspension of visiting rights for a period of time.

10.4 The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel must inform the student that they have the right to take the matter on appeal as contemplated in Rule 8 (with the necessary changes as required by the context).

10.5 If a student who has been directed to appear before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel fails to appear at the place and on the date and at the time specified in the notice, or fails to remain in attendance, or to attend any adjourned proceedings, the Presenter shall make all reasonable attempts to locate the student. If the Hall/House Warden is satisfied that all reasonable attempts have been made to contact the accused the hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

10.6 If, during the course of a hearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel, it comes to the knowledge of a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel that a student appearing at such hearing may have committed any disciplinary offence/s other than, or in addition to, those with which she/he has been charged, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may charge the student concerned with such supplementary disciplinary offence/s and, provided that the provisions of this Code in relation to particulars and time to prepare are satisfied, the enquiry may then proceed, the evidence led to that stage retaining its full force and effect.

10.7 The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have the right to direct that any student attends and gives evidence and remains in attendance until excused from a disciplinary hearing.

10.8 If a student appearing at a hearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel conducts him/herself in a manner which makes the continuance of the proceedings in his/her presence impossible or impractical, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may, after warning the student of the consequences of such conduct, direct that s/he be removed. On such occasions, the proceedings will continue in his/her absence.

10.9 Where a student has been sanctioned in terms of this Code, the sanction shall come into effect immediately regardless of whether the student intends to take the matter on appeal, unless the Vice-Chancellor, on written application by the student, decides that there is good cause to suspend the implementation of the sanction pending the outcome of an appeal. The written application by the student shall set out fully all relevant facts and submissions that he or she wishes the Vice-Chancellor to consider in arriving at a decision in this regard.

11. SUB-WARDENING STAFF

Sub-Wardens may only administer admission of guilt sanctions as defined by the Registrar on an annual basis and for minor infringements of house rules, and in imposing such sanctions, shall not exceed 50% of the sanction that a House Warden or Assistant Warden may impose.

12. UNIVERSITY LIBRARY STAFF

(a) Library staff designated by the Director: Library Services shall have jurisdiction over all student library users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in the Library Use and Conduct Code.

(b) There shall be a Library Disciplinary Committee consisting of two members of the Library staff appointed for this purpose by the Director: Library Services.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/ he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Director: Library Services in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Library Disciplinary Committee shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or

to any other person as a result of the offence.

(a) The Director: Library Services shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Special Projects of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Library Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Affairs on designated official University notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted, and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

13. INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY SERVICES STAFF

(a) Information & Technology Services staff designated by the Director: Information & Technology Services shall have jurisdiction over all student computer users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in the IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code.

(b) There shall be an Information & Technology Services Disciplinary Committee consisting of two members of the Information & Technology Services staff appointed for this purpose by the Director: Information & Technology Services.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/ he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Director: Information & Technology Services in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Information & Technology Services Disciplinary Committee consisting of the Manager:

Student Services and Manager: IT Operations, shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

- i. A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.
- ii. Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.
- iii. Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

(f) The Director: Information & Technology Services or his/her nominee shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Special Projects of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Information & Technology Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Affairs on designated official notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted, and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

(a) Copyright and Take Down Notices will be dealt with in the following way:

- i. First Offence – Students will be notified by the Information & Technology Services Division of a warning and can accept guilt or ask to appear before a disciplinary authority;
- ii. Second Offence – Students will be notified and sanctioned 40 hours of compulsory service administered by the Information & Technology Division Committee. If a student declines to accept the admission of guilt, the student shall appear before a hearing;
- iii. Third or any following Offence – Students will be handed over to the University Prosecutor/s by the Information & Technology Services Division;

14. CAMPUS PROTECTION UNIT

(a) Campus Protection staff designated by the Head: Campus Protection Unit shall have jurisdiction over all student vehicle users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in Rule 4.6 of this Code.

(b) There shall be a Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee consisting of the Head: Campus Protection Unit and two members of the Campus Protection Unit staff appointed for this purpose by the Head: Campus Protection Unit.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down

from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in

respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Head: Campus Protection Unit in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Campus Protection Unit Committee shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

- (i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.
- (ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.
- (iii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

(f) The Head: Campus Protection Unit shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Special Projects of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Affairs on designated official notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted and be reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

15. APPEAL FROM A DECISION OF A HALL/ HOUSE WARDEN, OPPIDAN WARDEN, LIBRARY DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE, INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE, CAMPUS PROTECTION UNIT DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE, SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD OR SPORTS COUNCIL DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE

15.1 A student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan

Warden, Library Disciplinary Committee, Information Technology Disciplinary Committee, Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee, SRC Disciplinary Board or Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall have the right to have such verdict and sanction appealed as contemplated in Rule 10.4 above.

15.2 A Prosecutor shall have the right to have a sanction imposed by a lower disciplinary authority appealed on the same grounds as set out in Rule 8 of this Code. The procedure that shall be followed, and the powers of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee, shall be as set out in Rule 8 of this Code.

16. THE SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD

16.1 There shall be a Board of this title consisting of as many members as the SRC shall by resolution from time to time determine.

16.2 This Board shall have the power to enquire into a disciplinary offence allegedly committed by a student at any function organized or controlled by the SRC, both on or off the University premises, provided that as soon as it determines to take such action, it shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer the matter to any other disciplinary authority, in which case s/he shall immediately inform the SRC of the decision. The SRC Disciplinary Board shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

16.3 The Board shall have the following powers to penalize any student found by it to have committed a disciplinary offence:

(a) imposition of a fine not exceeding 2.5% of the Bachelor of Arts fee or 35 hours of compulsory service.

(b) exclusion from participation in SRC functions or facilities for a period not exceeding one term, or both.

(c) payment of such sum of money as may be required to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence.

16.4 The SRC Disciplinary Board must ensure that there is a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and presenting the case, in order to ensure compliance with the rules of natural justice and constitutional rights and fairness. The procedure to be followed shall be the same as contained in Rule 10 as is relevant to the SRC Disciplinary Board.

16.5 A student who has been found guilty and

sanctioned by the SRC Disciplinary Board shall have the same right of appeal as set out in Rule 15 and the procedure to be followed in Rule 15 shall apply.

17. THE SPORTS COUNCIL DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE

17.1 There shall be a Committee of the above title consisting of the Chairperson of the Sports Council or deputy and two further members nominated by the Chairperson or the deputy from the members

of the Student Sports Council. This Committee shall have the power to enquire into any disciplinary offence allegedly committed by a student where the breach alleged has been either:

(a) of a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs;

(b) committed by students on University property set aside by the Council for student activities under the control of the Sports Council; or

(c) committed by students elsewhere than on University property but while members of a University team or touring party are under the control of the Sports Council.

As soon as it determines to take disciplinary action, the Committee shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer it to another disciplinary authority, in which case s/he shall immediately inform the Sports Council of the decision. The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

17.2 The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall have the following powers to penalize any student found by it to have breached a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs:

(a) suspension from participation in any sporting activity of the University either totally or in part for a period not exceeding one term.

(b) imposition of a fine not exceeding 2.5% of the Bachelor of Arts fee or 35 hours of compulsory service.

(c) order the payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

17.3 The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee must ensure that there is a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and presenting the case, in order to ensure compliance with the rules of natural justice

and constitutional rights and fairness. The procedure to be followed shall be the same as contained in Rule 10 as is relevant to the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee.

17.4 In the case of a student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee, the same right of appeal and the same procedure set out in Rule 15 shall apply.

STUDENT AFFAIRS

THE SPORTS COUNCIL

Sport and recreation, due largely to the residential nature of the campus, play a very important role in the life of the student at Rhodes. 1987 saw the introduction of the new Sports Council (formerly Sports Union) constitution which seeks to provide the infrastructure and facilities to cater for all sporting groups on campus.

In order to accommodate these needs, the Sports Council has some thirty (30) affiliated clubs which cater for a wide range of interest at high performance, competitive and social/recreational levels. Sport at Rhodes is unique in that all students are automatically members of the Sport Council and are thus free to make use of certain of the facilities without being obliged to join a particular club. However, students wishing to play sport or take part in recreational pursuits at a higher level do need to join clubs in order to take advantage of the structured programmes presented by the Sports Council.

The compact nature of the campus provides all sporting facilities within easy walking distance of the residences. The easy accessibility and availability of facilities are responsible for the very high participation rate (85%) in sport and recreation by the student population. The student committees of the sports clubs take care of the day to day organization of the club activities assisted by professional Sports Officers who provide the infrastructure which allows the clubs to operate effectively.

The clubs generally provide for participation at two levels. Those students involved in competitive sport participate in the Nelson Mandela Bay and Sarah Baartman District sports federations. The second important level of participation is the intra-mural programme which takes care of the needs of those sportsmen and women who wish to be involved on a more social basis.

It is the Sports Council's philosophy that sport and recreation play a vital role in the overall educational experience of every student. In an attempt to involve as many students as possible the Sports Council offers a wide range of activities which include:

Aikido, Aquatics, Archery, Athletics, Basketball, Canoe, Chess, Cricket, Dance Sport, First Aid, Fly Fishing, Golf, Hockey, Mixed Martial Arts,

Mountain, Netball, Pool, Rifle, Rowing, Rugby, Sailing, Soccer, Squash, Surfing, Table Tennis, Tae Kwon do, Tennis, Volleyball and Underwater.

In addition to these activities the Rhodes University Health Suite offers Aerobics and Indoor Cycling Classes and a well-equipped Weight Training Facility.

OPPIDAN UNION

Oppidan Union Services

The Oppidan Union is responsible for initiating and maintaining a range of student benefits:

- The Oppidan Common Room is situated on the ground floor of the Bantu Stephen Biko Building. The room contains lounge suites, a TV & DSTV decoder, tables & chairs, a pool table and study cubicles. Tea and coffee are served free of charge to all Oppidans twice a day from Monday to Friday.
- The Union assists students in finding accommodation by advertising available houses, flats and rooms. Information pamphlets, lists of available accommodation (<http://www.ru.ac.za/oppidan/digslist/2017/>) and maps of Grahamstown are available from the Secretary.
- The Oppidan Committee consists of various portfolio's and is responsible for looking after the interest of Oppidans, encouraging them to participate in the various activities of the Union e.g. social events, inter-res sports, community engagement etc. The Oppidan Union strives to give Oppi's a well-balanced and enriched University experience. It liaises with the SRC on a regular basis and participates in a mentoring program for first years.
- The Oppidan Union assists with the running of a bus: Monday to Thursday 5pm to 11pm, Friday 5pm to 9pm, Saturday and Sunday 5pm, 8pm and 9pm at the collection point on the hour in front of Geology building on Artillery road, during exams and swot week the times are extended to 24h00.
- The Oppidan Union has a web and Facebook page, which contains information regarding accommodation availability, Oppidan events and relevant information pertaining to Oppidans. The web page can be found on the 'Student Zone' page, under 'Oppidan'.
- The Oppidan Hall Wardens, assisted by five sub-wardens are available for advice, support and

assistance with regards to a student in crises, conflict, lease and Digs mate issues, emergencies etc. Students are encouraged to use the following emergency number, 078-8046328, when the need arises.

The Oppidan Secretary, tel. 046-6038229 is on duty in the Oppidan Office in the mornings from 08h30– 13h30. The Oppidan Office is situated on the first floor, Steve Biko Building. The Secretary is responsible for co-ordinating all areas of the Union's activity and is available to help and advise Oppidans wherever possible.

STUDENTS REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Students' Representative Council is a legislated body whose members are elected annually. Its primary purpose is to represent the student body both within and outside campus. It also negotiates with the university authorities on their behalf. In addition, the University's numerous clubs and societies fall under the Council's jurisdiction. The SRC also organises schemes for the benefit of students.

The SRC can be contacted at the SRC Offices on the top floor of the Bantu Stephen Biko Building. They can also be reached via e-mail at srccpresident@ru.ac.za.

VISION STATEMENT

We, the Students' Representative Council of 2019, envision our future success through the elevation and broadening of the life of the students of Rhodes University. This will be achieved by conducting our activities in a spirit of excellence and professionalism. We also seek to uphold personal integrity and accountability in all our endeavours. To this end, we dedicate ourselves to be responsible, accessible and visible through effective communication with our constituents. In doing this, we hope to become role models for all future SRCs at this University and beyond.

SRC REPRESENTATION ON UNIVERSITY COMMITTEES

SRC members serve on various University committees, including, but not limited to, the following:

Council, Senate, Executive Committee of Senate, Institutional Forum, Budget Committee, Disability Committee, Distinguished Teaching Award, Equity and Institutional Culture Committee, Senate Examinations Committee, Financial Aid Committee, Gender Action Forum, Honorary Degrees Committee, Institutional Planning Committee, Information Technology Steering Committee, Internationalization Committee, Library Committee, Orientation Committee, Board of Residences, Rhodes University Academic Freedom Committee, Safety/Events Committee, Senate Disciplinary Panel, Student Services Council, Teaching and Learning Committee, Visual Representation, Arts and Culture Committee (VRACC) and the Wardens Appointments Committee.

SOCIETIES

Please direct any enquiries regarding societies to the SRC Societies Councillor: srccsocieties@ru.ac.za.

Abasa (Association for the Advancement of Black Accountants Student Chapter)

Activate

Association of Catholic Tertiary Students (Acts)

African Drum

African Union Youth Club

African Women Chart Accountants

Anglican Society (Ansoc)

Art Soc

Astronomy

Babilanto

Ballroom Dancing

Bapedi Ba Rhodes

Black Lawyers Society

Black Management Forum

Book club

Chemistry Society (CHEMSOC)

Chi-Alpha

Common Ground

Democratic Alliance Student Organisation (DASO)

Debating

East African Society (EASOC)

Economic Freedom Fighters Society (EFF)

Enable

Enactus (SIFE)

Forward in faith

Galela amanzi

Game Society (GAMESOC)

Gender Action Project

Geology

Golden Key

Guitar

Hellenic

Hindu Student Society (Hindu)

Hip Hop

His People Bible Society

INK Society (INK)

Inkwenkwezi (SHINE)

Isaiah 26:8

Jehova Jirah Haven (JJH)

Law

Legal Activism

Lesotho

Live Music

Malawian

Masinedane

Marimba

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

Rhodes University Melodies (RUM)	1916	JC Hops
Methodist	1917	EG Gamble
Mixed Martial Arts (MMA)	1918	AK Dugmore
Muslim Student's Society (MSA)	1919	PJ Erasmus
Namibia Society (NAMSOC)	1920	HE Hockley
Neko Anime	1921	NP Sellick
Nhlanhla Ya VaTsonga	1922	EH Wilde
Oppidan Press (Oppipress)	1923	W Thurlbeck
Nkoli- Fassie	1924	AA Morris
Pan African Youth Dialogue (PAYD)	1926	BC Gordon
Photography Society (Photosoc)	1927	H Bennett
PASMA (Pan Africanist Student Movement of Azania)	1928	WH Elliot
Presidents Awards	1928	H Bennett
Rhodes Adventists	1930	G Wynne
Rhodes Business	1931	JT Davidson
Rhodes Economics	1932	GHD Camp
Rhodes Entrepreneurs	1932	HJ Chapman
Rhodes Ultimate	1933	HJ Chapman
Roar (Rhodes Organisation for Animal Rights)	1934	REM Blakeway
Rotaract (Rotary Club Partner)	1935	GCD Hodgson
Rhodes University Computer Users Society (Rucus)	1936	GCD Hodgson
Rhodes University Pharmacy Students Association (RUPSA)	1937	HHC Holderness
South African student's Congress (SASCO)	1938	AL McKenzie
Students Christian Fellowship (SCF)	1938	TFW Harris
Science for Society	1939	JF Gaylard
Southeast Alaska Conservation Council (SEACC / RU GREEN)	1940	GHA Simms
Student HIV/AIDS Resistance Campaign (SHARC)	1941	ECC Owen
SCO (Students Christian Organization)	1942	JD Peter
Skate Ubuntu	1942	DR Butler
Rhodes University Science and Information	1943	HH Hall
Systems Society (SUDO)	1944	RE Lipstrue
Swazi Alive	1946	I Smith
Toastmasters	1947	H Self
Vha Venda	1948	HF Kirby
Voice of Glory	1949	LDS Glass
Wine tasting	1950	MM Tatham
Xhosa	1951	TW Higgs
Youth Quake	1952	HS Perry
Zambian Society (Zamsoc)	1953	PJ Duminy
Zimsoc/Zim Unlimited (Zimbabwe Soc)	1954	LS Melunisky
Zion Christ Church	1954	MJ Roberts
Zoology Society (ZOOSOC)	1955	LS Melunisky
	1956	B Goedhals
	1957	JJ Breitenbach
	1958	WS Yeowart
STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL	1959	JA Benyon
PRESIDENTS	1960	WG Pietersen
The years cited here represent the years in which these individuals were elected President of the SRC:	1961	IA Macdonald
1910 CN Thompson	1962	B Moore
1913 HG Goldwater	1963	M Chapman
1914 HT Gamble	1964	M Bands
1915 HT Gamble	1965	E Webster
	1966	J Sprack

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

1967	P Haxton	1995	V Ndebele
1968	P Harris	1996	C Khoza
1969	KW Meaker	1997	W Mene
1970	R Wanless	1998	P Mothibi
1971	J Whitehead	1999	T Moleko
1971	K Satchwell	2000	M Charlesworth
1972	P Clarke	2001	M Webber
1973	M King	2002	J Chipunza
1976	A Lamprecht	2003	T Moyo
1977	A le Grange	2004	T Halley
1978	I Smuts	2005	B Green
1979	N Willett-Clarke	2006	F Morbi
1980	C Butler	2007	R Pillay
1981	J Campbell	2007	X Nyali
1982	M Kenyon	2008	K Loni
1983	S Rankin	2009	E Ofei
1984	A Williams	2010	A Magubane
1985	J Bowen	2011	M Maralack
1986	J Masey	2012	M Maralack
1987	S Middleton	2013	S Badi
1988	P Tandy	2014	B Bense
1989	R Dixon	2015	S Makhubo
1990	R Dixon	2015	Z Maqubela
1991	R Amner	2016	MG Sandi
1992	D Lee	2017	R Mabaso
1993	C Tsampiras	2018	N Mahlangu
1994	K Jurgensen		

CONSTITUTION FOR STUDENT GOVERNANCE

The full text of this Constitution and its associated Schedules is available from the SRC Offices and from the University Library.

Preamble

We, the students of Rhodes University (hereinafter called “the University”) herenfirm the supreme and inalienable right of all students at the University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge. We determine that the University Student Representatives’ Council (hereinafter called “the SRC”) be our primary governing body in matters falling within its jurisdiction, which will ensure the conveyance of the student voice to the administration, the University Senate and Council in matters of institutional policies. We will promote the welfare and progress of the University community and enforce our rights and uphold our responsibilities; establish an effective, efficient, responsible, and responsive form of co-operative student government; encourage discussion, investigation, and expedient resolution of student problems, concerns, and ideas; support and help implement the desires of the Student Body; provide leadership; recognize student accomplishments so that the role of the student is rewarding and meaningful; retain the authority to appoint and remove student representation on University standing committees and advisory boards to which the SRC normally makes appointments. We task the SRC to report to us through our broadly elected leadership contained in the Student Forum. We, the students of the University, with full confidence in this constitution, do hereby ratify and agree to follow and implement it.

Objectives

This constitution is founded by the students, for the students, with a developmental consideration of the functional needs of the University student population. We, as the active voice of the Student Body, acknowledge our duty to maintain a key responsibility in the workings of the Institution.

This document is intentionally flexible, and simple to accurately represent the unique dynamics of the University.

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION

Article 1.1. Status

This constitution is the supreme authority when

dealing with student matters within the competence of the Student Body. All other constitutions and/or documents within the Student Body, which fall under the SRC, are subject to the provision of, and derive their authority and jurisdiction from this constitution.

Article 1.2. Name

The name of the body hereinafter referred to as the SRC is the “Students’ Representative Council, Rhodes University”.

Article 1.3. Powers and Duties

Subject to the provisions of this constitution the SRC shall be empowered to:

1.3.1. Make representations on behalf of the students of the University to the Council, Senate and other bodies and officers of the University.

1.3.2. Administer the funds placed at its disposal by the University Council for the promotion of student activities as well as such other funds as it may, with permission of the University authorities, raise by subscription or levy or otherwise.

1.3.3. Be responsible for the recognition of student societies and organisations and for the control of such recognised societies and organisations.

1.3.4. Organise social functions and schemes for the benefit of students, and be responsible for the control and administration of such activities.

1.3.5. Affiliate to bodies and organisations outside the university.

1.3.6. Constitute an SRC Disciplinary Board in order to exercise the powers conferred on it by the Student Disciplinary Code.

1.3.7. Summon and conduct general meetings of students and other meetings of the student body.

1.3.8. Represent the student body both on campus and externally.

1.3.9. Do all such other things as bodies of this nature may lawfully do.

Article 1.4. Logo of the SRC

1.4.1. The logo of the SRC shall include Rhodes University’s Coat of Arms with the word “SRC” on the right- hand side alongside the Coat of Arms, and beneath that, the words “Representing Leaders”. The numerals of the substantive year for which the SRC is in office shall be superimposed above and between the two statements described above.

CHAPTER 2 THE STUDENT BODY

Article 2.1. Membership and Voting Rights

2.1.1. All registered students, including full-time, part-time, occasional and continuing education students, shall be voting members of the Student Body.

2.1.2. All students registered with the University that fall outside of the limits set in 2.1.1 are nonvoting members of the Student Body who shall not be counted in determining a quorum, but shall be entitled to request the SRC to represent their interests from time to time should they so desire.

2.1.3. Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to attend and participate in discussions during general meetings, meetings of student governance sub-structures, organisations and student political organisations of which they are members, in accordance with the respective standing rules of order of the relevant meeting.

2.1.4. Voting in terms of Student Governance sub-structures shall be limited to those members who are entitled to vote.

Article 2.2. General Meetings

2.2.1. A General Meeting of the Student Body members shall be held as and when is necessary and only if:

1. the SRC President or 50% of the SRC call such a meeting, or

2. written request therefor is made by at least 20 members to the student body, accompanied by a written motion for consideration by the meeting.

2.2.2. The SRC shall give at least 5 working days notice of the date, time and venue of such a meeting, with disclosure of an agenda.

2.2.3. Student Body members shall be granted a reasonable opportunity to put additional matters on the agenda of such a meeting.

2.2.4. The SRC President or in his/her absence any person appointed by the SRC, shall act as chairperson of a general meeting and shall have an ordinary and casting vote.

2.2.5. The generally accepted rules pertaining to meetings of the SRC, as contained Schedule 8, shall apply at all general meetings.

2.2.6. Quorum

1. Quorum for a general meeting shall be 5% of students qualified to vote.

2. Quorum for an extraordinary meeting, summoned by the SRC or requisitioned by members shall be 5% of students qualified to vote.

3. In the event of there not being a quorum at any meeting, the meeting may elect to continue with those members present and the draft minutes shall be circulated to all members of the Student Forum who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, whereafter they would be taken as confirmed.

4. Once a meeting has been declared quorate, it remains quorate even if members leave during the course of business, thereby resulting in a lack of a quorum as defined above.

2.2.7. Motions of No-Confidence

1. A motion of no confidence shall not be tabled unless such a motion has been published as part of the agenda for the meeting;

2. A motion of no-confidence may be instituted against an individual member of a student governance substructure or against a student governance substructure as a whole.

3. A motion of no-confidence as detailed 2.2.7.2 above shall not:

3.1 be considered unless at least 5% of the student body are present at the meeting;

3.2 take effect unless a resolution is passed by a two-thirds majority of the Student Body present at the meeting.

4. A motion of no confidence may be instituted against an individual member of the SRC.

5. A motion of no-confidence as detailed in 2.2.7.4 in respect of:

5.1 A member of the executive shall not be considered unless at least 10% of the student body is present at the meeting and the resolution is adopted by two-thirds of those present at the meeting.

5.2 A non-executive member of the SRC shall not be considered unless at least two-thirds of the member's constituency is present at a meeting of the relevant constituency and the resolution is passed by a two-thirds majority of the member's constituency.

Article 2.3. Minutes of Meetings

The SRC shall ensure that a designated person shall keep minutes of the proceedings of each general meeting.

Article 2.4. Resolutions

2.4.1. Resolutions may only be adopted in respect of matters disclosed by the agenda, provided that other matters may be added to the agenda if there is no objection thereto by any member present.

2.4.2. A resolution shall be adopted by a simple

majority of the members present at a meeting, except in the case of motions of no- confidence where the provisions of section 2.2.7 shall apply.

2.4.3. A resolution adopted at a general meeting shall take immediate effect unless otherwise stipulated in the resolution.

Article 2.5. Finance

2.5.1. The different student governance sub-structures who rely on the SRC for funding shall annually submit a budget in prescribed form to the SRC before the specified time.

2.5.2. All funds made available by the university for student governance shall only be applied in accordance with an approved budget.

2.5.3. The Finances of the SRC shall be administered according to Schedules 1 and 2 of the Constitution.

CHAPTER 3 THE SRC

Article 3.1. Composition of the SRC

3.1.1. The SRC shall comprise of a President, Vice-President, Secretary General, Treasurer, Academic-, Activism & Transformation-, Community Engagement-, Environmental-, International-, Media-, Oppidan-, Projects Manager, Residence-, Societies-, & Student Benefits-Councillor.

3.1.2. Each member shall have only one vote and in the case of a deadlock, the President (or alternative Chairperson) shall have a casting vote.

3.1.3. The SRC Executive shall comprise of the President, Vice-President, Secretary General, Treasurer and two further positions filled by the eleven non-executive council members.

3.1.3.1 The two open Executive positions shall be filled through an internal SRC vote.

3.1.3.2 The eleven non-Executive Council members shall comprise of the eleven openly contested positions.

3.1.4. The Oppidan Councillor and the Residence Councillor shall be elected from within their respective constituencies.

3.1.5. Each hall shall elect one hall representative to the SRC Residence Representative Committee, and the elected Residence Councillor shall be the Chair of that Committee.

3.1.6. The fifteen openly contested Executive and non-Executive positions shall be campaigned for on a portfolio-specific basis subject to 3.1.7., 3.1.9. and Schedule 6.

3.1.7. An individual running for an openly contested

position may run for one additional openly contested position in one election.

3.1.8. If in terms of 3.1.7. an individual receives the highest number of votes in two positions then s/he must select one of those positions and the runner-up in the other position will assume that portfolio.

3.1.9 Candidates contesting the positions of President and Vice- President shall all run for the position of President and may run for an additional portfolio as envisaged in 3.1.7.

3.1.9.1 The candidate with the highest number of votes shall assume the presidency, unless s/he chooses to waive this privilege, in which event the position shall be offered to the candidate with the next highest number of votes.

3.1.9.2 The candidate with the second highest number of votes shall assume the position of Vice-President. Should any candidate decline either of these positions, that position shall be offered to the candidate with the next highest number of votes.

3.1.10 The SRC may establish committees, task groups (SRC members only) and working groups (SRC members and non- SRC members) as it sees fit.

Article 3.2. The Executive Committee

3.2.1 The SRC Executive shall consist of six members, namely the President, Vice-President, Secretary-General (Chairperson), the Treasurer and two other members elected from amongst its members.

3.2.2 In the event of a tied vote within the executive, the Secretary-General shall have the casting vote.

3.2.1. The duties of the Executive:

3.2.1.1. To deal with urgent matters which affect the interest of students and which arise between SRC meetings.

3.2.1.2. To generally act for and represent the SRC in the period between SRC meetings, in terms of the Constitution.

3.2.1.3. To deal with such matters as the SRC shall from time to time direct.

3.2.1.4. To develop proposals or define the parameters for debate on issues so as to streamline the deliberations and functioning of the SRC.

3.2.1.5. To deal with matters that are required to be dealt with in the period between the last meeting of the outgoing SRC and the election of the new SRC.

3.2.1.6. To assume overall responsibility for ensuring that resolutions of the SRC are executed, and to implement decisions of the Executive where

such decisions do not arise from resolutions of the SRC, until such decisions are ratified by the SRC.

3.2.1.7. To ensure that the new SRC is fully instructed in its role and capabilities prior to handing over responsibility.

3.2.2. Meetings of the Executive

1. The Executive shall meet at least once per fortnight.

2. The Secretary-General shall take the chair at all meetings, and in his / her absence the Chair shall be taken by the President or Vice-President

(see schedule 6).

4. The minutes of each Executive meeting shall be considered, corrected if necessary, and then confirmed by the SRC at its next meeting.

Article 3.3. Meetings of the SRC

3.3.1. The SRC shall meet at least once a week while the University is in session during the undergraduate term time.

3.3.2. All meetings shall be convened by both the President and/or the Vice-President and/or the Secretary-General

3.3.3. Special meetings shall be convened:

1. on request of the President, and during his / her absence, by either the Vice-President or the Secretary-General.

2. when a resolution to this effect is passed by the SRC.

3. when a written request, signed by not less than three members stating the business to be considered, is made to the Secretary-General.

3.3.4. The President shall take the chair at all meetings, and in his / her absence the Chair shall be taken by the Vice-President or Secretary-General, or failing that, by any SRC member mandated by the SRC to do so.

3.3.5. 50% of the members of the SRC shall constitute a quorum, at any given point. In the event of there not being a quorum at any meeting, the meeting shall continue with those members present and the draft minutes shall be circulated to all members of the SRC who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, whereafter they would be taken as confirmed by the SRC.

3.3.6. All questions shall be decided by a consensus or failing this the majority of the members present and voting, except that in the following cases the majority shall be at least two thirds (2/3):

1. Finance;

2. Recognition of Societies;

3. Special Permission for the use of the name of the University by a recognised

4. Rules for the elections;

5. The amendment of any Schedules to this Constitution;

6. The institution of any disciplinary action against an SRC member.

Article 3.4. Forfeiture of Office on the SRC

3.4.1. In keeping with emphasising the right of all students to come to the University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge, and recognising that the leadership of the Student Body should act as examples and be held to the very highest standards in terms of their behaviour, any duly- elected SRC member shall, subject to the provisions of the Student Disciplinary Code, forfeit his or her place on the SRC if he/she is:

1. Subsequently placed on academic probation and/ or academically excluded from the University, or

2. Found guilty during his or her term of office of a University disciplinary offence before a Proctor of the University and sentenced to a fine in excess of 25% of the maximum fine that a Proctor may impose or to any form of exclusion or to community service in excess of 75 hours.

2. If a vote of no confidence against a member of the SRC as detailed in 2.2.7 has been passed.

3.4.2 In the event that an SRC member has forfeited or has been deprived of his/her place on the SRC:

1. Where the forfeited portfolio is that of the SRC President:

1.1 The SRC Vice-President shall assume the portfolio of President

1.2 The SRC Executive shall re -assign executive portfolios by consensus from among themselves, failing which consensus from the SRC

1.3 The SRC shall elect one of its non- executive members to the SRC Executive

1.4 If the runner- up in the vacated constituency is available and willing to take the forfeited place, the SRC shall co- opt the runner- up according to the results of the previous election.

1.5 In the event that no runner- up is willing to be co-opted, the SRC shall convene another election for that Constituency.

2. In the case where the forfeited portfolio is a member of the SRC Executive:

2.1 The procedure outlined in 3.4.2.1.2 – 3.4.2.1.5 shall apply.

3. In the case where the forfeited portfolio is not a

member of the SRC Executive:

3.1 The procedure outlined in 3.4.2.1.4 – 3.4.2.1.5 shall apply.

Article 3.5. Privileges of the SRC

3.5.1. Members of the SRC shall receive certain privileges, in return for their service to the Student Body and the University, specifically:

1. A financial incentive that will be determined by the Dean of Students in conjunction with the SRC President soon after the election of the SRC.

2. Members of the SRC living in residence shall not be expected to pack up their rooms during the vacation, except the December /February vacation, in the same manner as Sub-Wardens and Senior/ Head Students.

Article 3.6. Continuity and handing- over

3.6.1. The previous SRC members shall be responsible for handing- over and familiarising the new SRC with their new portfolios and functions.

3.6.2. At the beginning of the new year the SRC President should arrange for the SRC to meet key staff and students.

3.6.3. Where possible, the old SRC shall shadow the new SRC in the various committees until December of the year in which the new SRC was elected.

3.6.4. The immediate Past President of the SRC shall act as an advisor, in an unpaid capacity, to the new SRC until December of the year he or she was President, and may continue for a mutually agreeable period after that should the new SRC desire.

CHAPTER 4 CLASS AND FACULTY STUDENT REPRESENTATION

Article 4.1. Class Representatives

4.1.1. Every class shall elect at least one class representative.

4.1.2. The election of the class representative may be conducted by a Head of Department / Lecturer-in-Charge or his/her nominee within the first three weeks of the course.

4.1.3. The election process used should be acceptable to the class concerned.

4.1.4. The Class representative shall act as a liaison between students and staff in the department and should retain regular contact with the students in the class and the course co-ordinator and/or Head of Department /Lecturer- in-Charge.

Article 4.2. Faculty / Academic Board Representatives

4.2.1. Two Faculty/Academic Board Representatives shall be elected from among the Class Representatives. This process shall be facilitated by the SRC Academic Councillor in conjunction with the Dean/Associate Dean of the Faculty.

4.2.2. The term of office shall be for two years and shall be staggered so that there is an incoming and outgoing Faculty / Academic Board representative for the purposes of continuity.

4.2.3. These two representatives shall be full voting members of their respective Faculty / Academic Boards; The SRC Academic Councillor shall have observer status on every Faculty and Academic Board and as part of the SRC Executive, shall be a full voting member of Senate.

4.2.4. The Faculty / Academic Board Representatives shall be part of the Student Forum.

Article 4.3. Meetings

4.3.1. The SRC Academic Councillor shall co-ordinate a meeting of all Class and Faculty Representatives at least twice a year; and as and when is necessary.

4.3.2. These meetings may coincide with a meeting of the Student Forum.

CHAPTER 5 HOUSE AND HALL STUDENT REPRESENTATION

Article 5.1. House Representation

5.1.1. Every House shall elect a House Committee who, in accordance with its Hall Constitution, shall be an advisory committee to the House Warden.

5.1.2. The House Senior/Head student shall be a member of the Student Forum.

5.1.3. The exact procedures and portfolios available for election shall be left to the individual House to decide.

Article 5.2. Hall Representation

5.2.1. Every Hall shall elect a Hall Senior/Head Student who, in accordance with its Hall Constitution and with other members of the Hall Committee, shall be an advisory committee to the Hall Warden.

5.2.2. The Hall Senior/Head student shall be a member of the Student Forum.

Article 5.3. Notification of election

5.3.1. The Hall Warden or his/her nominee shall be responsible for informing the SRC Permanent

Secretary-General, within one week of election, of the names and contact details of all student members of the Hall and House Committees.

Article 5.4. Meetings

5.4.1. The SRC Residence Councillor shall co-ordinate a meeting of all House and Hall Senior/ Head Students at least twice a year and as and when is necessary.

5.4.2. These meetings may coincide with a meeting of the Student Forum.

Article 5.5: SRC Residence Representative Committee

5.5.1. Each hall will elect one individual to serve on the SRC Residence Representative Committee.

5.5.2. These elections shall take place at the same time as the SRC general elections, unless a by-election needs to be held.

5.5.3. The Post-Graduate Village and the Oppidan Hall are not considered to be halls for the purposes of this election.

5.5.4. The role of the Committee is to advise the Residence Councillor and to act as a channel between its constituencies and the Residence Councillor.

5.5.5. The Residence Councillor and the Residence Representative Committee shall meet once a fortnight.

5.5.6. Each Hall Representative shall fulfil the functions as outlined in his or her Hall Constitution and any additional function that the Residence Representative Committee may determine.

5.5.7 The Residence Councillor shall chair all Residence Representative Committee meetings, unless unable to do so, in which case the Residence Representative Committee shall elect an alternative chair from among its members.

5.5.8. In the event of a tied vote within the Residence Representative Committee, the Residence Councillor shall have a casting vote.

CHAPTER 6 SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD

The SRC Disciplinary Board (hereinafter referred to as “the Board”) shall at all times be subject to the provisions of the Student Disciplinary Code.

Article 6.1. Composition

6.1.1. The SRC shall invite the third or fourth year LLB students of the Law Faculty to submit applications to sit on the SRC Disciplinary Board.

6.1.2. The applications must include the applicant’s

curriculum vitae.

6.1.3. The criteria for being chosen include practical experience at the University Legal Aid Clinic and/or vacation legal practice experience.

6.1.4. The SRC shall elect five persons as permanent members of the Board.

6.1.5. The term of office of a member of the SRC Disciplinary Board shall be from 1st September of each year until 31st August of the following year.

6.1.6. The SRC shall elect one of the five persons as the Chairperson of the SRC Disciplinary Board.

1. The Chairperson will appoint his/her Secretary-General from this team.

2. The Chairperson will chair all proceedings of the hearings and conduct of the Board.

3. In the absence of the Chairperson, the Chairperson’s nominee will convene the proceedings.

6.1.7. The SRC Disciplinary Board cannot convene any proceedings without the presence of a designated SRC Councillor, who shall have observer status only.

6.1.8. A member of the Board may only be removed from office by the SRC in consultation with the Law Student’s Council on grounds of serious misconduct.

6.1.9. In the event of a vacancy on the SRC Disciplinary Board the SRC shall choose a replacement from applications already in its possession.

6.1.10. Subject to the provisions of the Students’ Disciplinary Code, the SRC may summon a student to appear before the Board to answer any disciplinary charge which the Board is competent to try.

Article 6.2. Functions and Powers

6.2.1. General

1. The Board is competent, upon application and within its area of jurisdiction or with regard to substructures that receive funds from the SRC, to:

1.1 review the proceedings, actions and resolutions of:

1.1.1. student governance substructures;

1.1.2. members of student governance substructures;

1.2 settle disputes relating to:

1.2.1. the validity and fairness of Student Governance substructure elections;

1.2.2. the validity of referenda;

1.2.3. the validity of resolutions taken by student governance substructures;

1.3 the interpretation of this constitution as well of student governance substructures;

1.4 the interpretation of the rules of the SRC;

1.5 any other matter for which provision has been

made in this constitution.

6.2.2. Discipline

1. The Board is empowered, after convicting a member of the Student Body of misconduct, to impose one or more of the following punishments;

1.1 a fine as provided for in the Student Disciplinary Code;

1.2 exclusion from participation in SRC functions or facilities for a period not exceeding one month;

1.3 payment of such sum of money as may be required to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence;

1.4 exclusion from entering the Union Building for a period not exceeding one month;

2. The Board may impose one, two, three or all four of the aforesaid penalties.

Article 6.3. Procedure at Hearings

6.3.1. The model of the proceedings shall be as close as possible to the system allowed for in a hearing before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board as described in the Student Disciplinary Code.

6.3.2. In the event that a person, who has been served with a notification of a SRC Disciplinary Board hearing, cannot attend such a hearing, she or he shall notify the Chairperson of the SRC Disciplinary Board to that effect.

Article 6.4. Quorum

6.4.1. A quorum shall be three members.

Article 6.5. Case Records

6.5.1. A case record must be written for every hearing before the Board.

6.5.2. The case record shall contain the following information:

1. Disciplinary Board (list of members present)

2. Accused(s): name, address and student number

3. The Charge: in terms of the Student Disciplinary Code

4. The date of hearing

5. Plea: The accused(s) plea to the charge.

6. Verdict

7. Facts found proven

8. Mitigating factors

9. Aggravating factors

10. Penalty: to be enforced within 21 days of receipt of the case record which will be sent to the accused(s).

11. Reasons for penalty

12. The signatures of those listed in 2.1.

13. The date that the case record is signed.

6.5.3. Copies of the case record are to be sent to the accused(s), the SRC office, the Dean of Students and the University Investigating Officer and kept for the Board's own records.

6.5.4. A further copy, in which the names of those involved have been deleted, shall be posted on a notice board(s) designated by the Dean of Students for that purpose.

Article 6.6. Findings

6.6.1. A finding shall be made by a majority of votes of the members present.

6.6.2. Findings as well as the reasons therefor shall be put in writing and signed by all the members who agree therewith.

Article 6.7. Admission to Hearings

6.7.1. SRC Disciplinary Board hearings shall take place in camera.

6.7.2. Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to attend non- disciplinary SRC Disciplinary Board hearings.

6.7.3. A non- member of the Student Body may apply in writing to the Board for permission to attend a non- disciplinary Board hearing.

6.7.4. In the event of the Board ordering, upon application of one of the parties, at a nondisciplinary hearing that the proceedings before them, or part thereof, take place in camera, all spectators shall leave the hearing.

Article 6.8. Reviews

6.8.1. If upon consideration of the record the student decides that he/she wishes the case reviewed, he/she shall furnish a written request to this effect to the Dean of Students within 5 days of receipt of the case record.

6.8.2. The procedure to be followed will, thereafter, be in accordance with rule 19.4 of the Student Disciplinary Code.

Article 6.9. Termination of Membership

6.9.1. A person shall cease to be a member of the Board if:

1. a motivated written resignation of that person as a Board member is not withdrawn within fourteen days after it has been noted by the SRC at the SRC meeting; or

2. that person's Board membership is terminated as a result of disciplinary action taken by any

disciplinary organ of the University, and that person is found guilty;
or
3. that person ceases to be a member of the Student Body.

CHAPTER 7 STUDENT PARLIAMENT

Article 7.1 Composition

7.1.1 The Student Parliament shall comprise of:

1. the members of the SRC
2. the Chairpersons of Student Disciplinary Board and the Student Defence Council
3. the Chairperson of the Post-graduate Liaison Sub-Committee
4. the Hall Senior/Head Students
5. the SRC Hall Representatives
6. four representatives from the Oppidan Union, comprising one sub-warden and three elected representatives excluding the SRC Oppidan Councillor
7. the Faculty Representatives
8. the SRC Societies Council
9. the Students Sports Council.

7.1.2 The Speaker, Deputy Speaker and the Secretary of Student Parliament shall be non-SRC members elected by Student Parliament at its first seating of the new academic year. These three members shall form the Executive of Student Parliament;

7.1.3 The SRC Vice-President shall be the convener of Student Parliament.

Article 7.2 Aims and Objectives

Student Parliament,

7.2.1 Shall serve as the collective voice of all student governance substructures on campus;

7.2.2 Shall serve to keep the SRC, its members, and student governance structures accountable, transparent and rooted in the principles and values as laid out in Schedule 5 of this Constitution;

7.2.3 May make recommendations to the SRC and shall receive reports from the SRC and its sub-structures, ensuring that transparent communication between the various student governance sub-structures and the SRC is achieved.

Article 7.3 Constituting

7.3.1 In February, the SRC Vice-President shall call a sitting of Student Parliament at a predetermined time and place;

7.3.2 As soon as the members of Student Parliament are summoned, and the Executive of Student Parliament is elected, the IEB Impartial Officer shall declare the first sitting of Student Parliament duly constituted in terms of the provisions of this Constitution and the Student Parliament Policy.

Article 7.4 Term of Office

7.4.1 The term of office of the Student Parliament shall be for the duration of the academic year.

Article 7.5 Functions and Powers

Student Parliament shall:

7.5.1. Make recommendations to the SRC on policy matters;

7.5.2. Facilitate communication between its members;

7.5.3. Exercise all other powers allowed under this constitution.

7.5.4. Monitor the functioning of the SRC on behalf of the Student Body in general by evaluating the progress of the SRC through reports rendered by members of the SRC

Article 7.6 Obligations

Student Parliament shall:

7.6.1 Act in accordance with the rules of the University when exercising its powers;

7.6.2 Behave in a manner in keeping with the Student Code of Ethics contained in Schedule 5 of this Constitution;

7.6.3 Strive for co-operation and communication between the different student governance substructures.

Article 7.7 Obligations of Members

Members shall:

7.7.1 Individually and collectively serve the interests of the Student Body when formulating policy or making decisions on matters concerning the Student Body;

7.7.2 Perform the duties and functions allocated to them by Student Parliament within reasonable deadlines;

7.7.3 Ensure that effective communication, regarding any resolutions adopted by Student Parliament, is established and maintained with their relevant constituencies.

Article 7.8 Sitzings of Student Parliament

Ordinary Sitzings

7.8.1 Ordinary sittings of Student Parliament shall be held at least once per term and all members shall attend such meetings;

7.8.2 According to the University calendar, the Speaker shall give at least a week's (7 days) notice of the date, time and venue of such a sitting, with the disclosure of a provisional agenda;

7.8.3 Members shall be granted a reasonable opportunity to put matters on the agenda for a period of not less than five (5) days. The opportunity will close 48 hours before the sitting;

7.8.4 The elected Speaker shall chair the sittings of Student Parliament, and the absence of the Speaker, the elected Deputy Speaker shall chair the sitting of Student Parliament;

7.8.5 The Speaker shall only have a casting vote in the event of a deadlock;

7.8.6 The Speaker shall not possess an ordinary vote unless they form part of Student Parliament as provided for in article 7.1 of this constitution;

7.8.6 The generally accepted rules pertaining to meetings of the SRC, as outlined in Schedule 8 of this constitution, shall apply to all sittings of Student Parliament;

Extra-Ordinary Sittings

7.8.7 An extra-ordinary sitting of Student Parliament shall be held if the SRC Vice-President or the Speaker calls such a sitting, or at least 5 members submit a written request to the Speaker for such a sitting, accompanied by a written motivation for consideration at the sitting of Student Parliament;

7.8.8 Notice of the date, time and venue of an extra-ordinary sitting of Student Parliament with disclosure of the agenda shall be given at least twenty-four hours before such a sitting.

Quorum

7.8.9 Quorum shall constitute $\frac{2}{3}$ (two thirds) of all members of Student Parliament.

7.8.10 In the event of quorum not being met, the sitting of Student Parliament shall continue with those members present. Draft minutes of the sitting shall be circulated to all members of Student Parliament who will then be given the opportunity to object any decisions taken by those present within 48 hours, where-after they shall be considered as present by the Executive of Student Parliament.

Article 7.9 Motions of No-Confidence

7.9.1 A motion of no confidence shall not be tabled

unless such a motion has been published as part of the agenda for the sitting of Student Parliament;

7.9.2 A motion of no-confidence may only be instituted against a member of the SRC or a member of the Student Parliament Executive on the condition that a member of Student Parliament shall not be considered unless quorum is met and the resolution is adopted by two thirds majority of Student Parliament; and

7.9.3 Substantial evidence has been provided to the members of Student Parliament detailing the reasons why there should be a Motion of No-Confidence, as guided by the Constitution of Students;

7.9.4. In the event that Student Parliament declares a Motion of No-Confidence against a member of the SRC,

The Executive of Student Parliament shall call a Student Body meeting, with the relevant reason for the meeting being tabled as an agenda item and published to the student body, and

Article 2.2.7 of this constitution shall then take effect

7.9.5 In the event that Student Parliament declares a Motion of No-Confidence against a member of the Student Parliament Executive,

That member, shall with immediate effect, be removed from their position on the Student Parliament Executive;

An election shall take place to fill that position on the Student Parliament Executive with immediate effect.

7.9.6 An IEB member is to conduct this election

Article 7.10 Minutes of Student Parliament

7.10.1 The minutes of Student Parliament shall be circulated within three (3) days after the sitting;

7.10.2 The Secretary of Student Parliament shall keep minutes of the proceedings of each Student Parliament sitting;

7.10.3 The minutes for a sitting of Student Parliament shall be submitted at the following ordinary sitting of Student Parliament for approval, and thereafter signed by the Speaker as ratified;

7.10.4 The minutes thus approved and signed shall be the only official account of the proceedings of Student Parliament and shall be available at the reasonable request of any interested party within three days after the approval of the minutes;

7.10.5 A document register shall be kept of all documents considered by Student Parliament and this register, including the documents, shall be available at the reasonable request of any interested party.

Article 7.11 Recommendations to the SRC

7.11.1 Recommendations may only be made in respect of matters disclosed by the agenda, provided that other matters may be added to the agenda if there is no objection thereto by any member present;

7.11.2 A recommendation shall be adopted by a simple majority of the members present;

Article 7.12 Admissions to Student Parliament

7.12.1 Members of the Student Body, who are not members of the Student Parliament, may attend Student Parliament as observers, but do not hold voting rights; subject to 7.12.2

7.12.2 Members of the Student Body may apply in writing to the Speaker of the Student Parliament to speak at a sitting of Student Parliament on a particular matter disclosed on the agenda; such requests may reasonably be granted or refused. All these applications and their outcomes are to be publicised at the sitting in question.

7.12.3 A non-member of the Student Body may apply in writing to the Speaker of Student Parliament for permission to attend a sitting and/or speak at a sitting of Student Parliament;

7.12.4 The Speaker of Student Parliament may at his/her discretion, invite a non-member of the Student Body to attend and/or to speak at Student Parliament.

Article 7.13 Termination of Membership

A person shall cease to be a member of the Student Parliament if:

7.13.1 a written notification from the particular student governance structure to that effect has been noted by Student Parliament; or

7.13.2 that person is absent, without a valid excuse, from two consecutive sittings of Student Parliament; or

7.13.3 that person failed to attend, without a valid excuse, twenty- five (25) percent of scheduled Student Parliament sittings during his/her term of office.

CHAPTER 8 CONSTITUTIONAL MATTERS

Article 8.1. Amendments

8.1.1. Any proposed amendment to this Constitution must be discussed and recommended for approval by two- thirds of the Student Forum.

8.1.2. Once an amendment has been recommended

for approval, it shall be publicised to the Student Body who may submit comments to the Student Forum regarding the proposed amendment.

8.1.3. The Student Forum shall then discuss the proposed amendment in light of the comments received and recommend a final proposed amendment.

8.1.4. The final proposed amendment shall then be brought before the Senate and Council by the SRC for approval.

Article 8.2. Ratification

8.2.1. Having been approved by two- thirds of the votes cast by the Student Forum, and recommended for approval by the SRC and accepted by Senate and Council, this constitution and all legislation properly enacted thereunder, shall become effective immediately and shall supersede all provisions of student Government.

Article 8.3. Student Liberties

The SRC acknowledges that it is bound to the Student Liberties of:

8.3.1. Freedom of Association

8.3.2. Freedom of Enquiry and Expression

8.3.3. Student Participation in Institutional Government according to the Bill of Rights (Chapter 2) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (1996) and as outlined in Schedule 4.

SCHEDULES TO THE CONSTITUTION:

The full text of this Constitution and its associated Schedules is available from the SRC Offices and from the University Library.

Schedule 1.	SRC Financial Regulations pertaining to Societies
Schedule 2.	Administrative Procedures of the SRC
Schedule 3.	SAUSRC Constitution and Rules of Order
Schedule 4.	Student Liberties
Schedule 5.	Code of Ethics
Schedule 6.	List of Portfolios
Schedule 7.	Rules governing the elections
Schedule 8.	Standing Rules of Order for SRC Meetings

OTHER OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS

Societies Policy

Rhodes University outlines in its mission statement

that it will produce graduates who are innovative, analytical, articulate, balanced and adaptable@. University Societies are an important means of helping students aspire towards these qualities. Students are able to meet each other on a social level and join in an activity or participate in a pursuit with like-minded people, developing inter-personal relationships and enriching their own characters. In order to facilitate this growth amongst students, the SRC needs to manage Societies in a fair and equitable manner that is known by the members of the University Community. Through the SRC Societies Policy the SRC is able to better manage and control the assets of the Societies, which enable them to function and indirectly contribute to the Vision and Mission of the University.

Minutes of the SRC

The SRC also publishes the Minutes of their weekly meetings and they can be found online at <http://src.ru.ac.za/> or are available upon request from the SRC Advisor at the SRC Office.

CODE OF ETHICS

In keeping with emphasising the right of all students to come to Rhodes University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge, and recognising that the leadership of the Student Body should act as examples and be held to the very highest standards in terms of their behaviour, students in leadership positions of Student Governance Sub-structures shall subscribe to, and seek to live by, the principles of:

1. HONESTY:

knowing that honesty, truthfulness, and sincerity are a necessary attribute of good character and effective leadership;

2. SERVICE:

being aware of the fact that true happiness comes only through helpful service to others;

3. INDUSTRIOUSNESS:

knowing that real progress can be achieved only if the mind is alert to comprehend and the hands ready to perform individual and community tasks;

4. HUMILITY:

being convinced that true humbleness of spirit is the only proper attitude to maintain in their relations with their associates;

5. JUSTICE:

believing that it is only right and proper to be just and fair in their dealings with their fellow students; to condemn no one without giving one a chance to defend oneself; to consider all factors before forming an opinion of another's motives, or before passing judgment on ones actions;

6. COOPERATION:

realizing that they must work closely and harmoniously with others in this day of highly organized endeavour;

7. RESPONSIBILITY:

assuming always full responsibility for their actions, and accepting opportunities to fulfill their academic, social, economic, and moral obligations;

8. CHARITABLENESS:

being tolerant, generous and considerate in their relationships with others; and courteous, gentle, and kind in their attitudes and actions toward their fellow students.

9. SELF-DISCIPLINE:

acting with reasonable restraint, organising their time commitments and not indulging in excessive behaviour that brings disrepute to themselves or to the University.

These are the principles that the leaders of the Student Body adhere to in their promotion of scholarship, service, and character.

GENERAL INFORMATION

ACADEMIC COSTUME

Chancellor: A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with gold lace. With this gown is worn a black velvet mortar-board cap with a gold tassel and gold lace edging.

Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellors: A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a silver tassel and silver lace edging.

Pro-Vice-Chancellor and Vice-Principal: A gown made of black silk and having the facings and sleeve-openings edged with silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a silver tassel and a narrow silver lace edging.

Chairperson of Council: A gown made of black silk and having a collar and facings of gold trimmed with black braid. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a tassel of threads of gold to match the facings.

Members of Council: A black gown, the front facings and bottom of the sleeves of which are trimmed with gold ribbon 25mm wide. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a black tassel.

President of Convocation: A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple edged with narrow silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a purple tassel.

Registrar: A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple 150mm wide, and with the lower half of each sleeve covered with purple, with the addition of a 10mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing and between the purple and black on each sleeve. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board with a purple and white tassel.

Bedellus: A plain black gown with wrist-length sleeves. Each sleeve is trimmed with four horizontal bands of purple velvet and has at the top a purple velvet wing edged with narrow silver lace. A black mortar-board cap.

Graduates: Bachelors and Master's wear a black gown of the same design as that worn by Master's

of Arts in the University of Oxford. Doctors of Philosophy wear a scarlet gown of the same design as that worn by Bachelors of Arts in the University of Cambridge. Doctors other than Doctors of Philosophy, wear a scarlet gown of the same design as the scarlet full-dress gown of Doctors in the University of Oxford.

Undergraduates: A black gown of the design worn by scholars in the University of Oxford.

Undergraduate diplomands: Undergraduate gown with a black stole 110mm wide. The length of the stole alternates with bands of white and purple stripes each 10 mm wide. The left end carries a Rhodes University crest, and the right end is embroidered with the letters RU in purple. The stole awarded to fourth-year diplomands has gold tassels and the stole awarded to third-year diplomands has black tassels.

Hoods

Bachelors' hoods are made in an Oxford simple shape. Master's and Doctors' hoods are made in the full shape used in the University of London.

Where a Bachelor's hood is bound with a second colour, the binding is placed over the anterior and posterior sides of the hood and is 13mm wide on the inside and on the outside. The facing on the hood for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy is 50mm wide inside the anterior side at the bottom, tapering to nothing at the centre of the neckband. The edging of the Master's and Doctors' hoods is 7mm wide on the outside of the cowl and the cape.

HOODS FOR DIFFERENT DEGREES

BA	Black lined with white and bound with purple
MA	Black lined and edged with white
DLitt	Scarlet lined and edged with white
BFineArt	Black lined with ultramarine blue
MFineArt	Black lined and edged with ultramarine blue
BJourn	Black lined with cherry red
BMus	Black lined with adonis blue
MMus	Black lined and edged with adonis blue
DMus	Scarlet lined and edged with adonis blue
BSc	Black lined with bottle green

GENERAL INFORMATION

BSc(InfSys)	Black lined with light green
BSc(SofDev)	Black lined with bottle green and faced with primrose yellow
MSc	Black lined and edged with bottle green
DS	Scarlet lined and edged with bottle green
BPharm	Black lined with chartreuse and faced with bottle green
MSc(Pharm)	Black lined with bottle green and bound over with chartreuse
MPharm	Black lined with chartreuse and bound over the cowl with bottle green
DS(Pharm)	Scarlet lined and edged with chartreuse
PharmD	Black lined and edged with scarlet facing
LLB	Black lined with old gold
LLM	Black lined and edged with old gold
LLD	Scarlet lined and edged with old gold
BEd(prev BPrimEd)	Black lined with white and bound with light brown
BEd(Hons)	Black lined with terra cotta
MEd	Black lined and edged with terra cotta
BAcc	Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with dark red
BBusSc	Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with lapis lazuli
BCom	Black lined with primrose yellow
MCom	Black lined and edged with primrose yellow
MBA	Black lined with primrose yellow and bound over the cowl with lapis lazuli
BEcon	Black lined with buttercup yellow
MEcon	Black lined and edged with buttercup yellow
DEcon	Scarlet lined and edged with buttercup yellow
BSocSc	Black lined with silver-grey
MSocSc	Black lined and edged with silver grey
DSocSc	Scarlet lined and edged with silver grey
PhD(all Faculties)	Black lined and edged with scarlet

The hood for the degree of Bachelor with Honours is the hood for the corresponding Bachelor's degree piped down the anterior side with white cord 5mm wide.

All Doctors wear a round black velvet bonnet of the design worn at Cambridge University and trimmed with gold cord and tassels.

Academic costume to be worn by staff members who hold qualifications from universities which do not prescribe their own academic costume:

1. The gown is normally black in colour and of the same pattern as the Bachelor's, Master's or Doctor's gown of Rhodes University, according to the qualification of the person concerned e.g. a Doctor from such a university wears a Doctor's gown and a licentiate wears a Master's gown. The gown must have a facing, 50mm wide down each side in front, in the colour distinctive of the Faculty of which the person concerned is a member.
2. There is no hood.
3. The cap is a plain black mortar-board, with a black silk tassel.

Academic costume and the dress worn with it on particular occasions

Full ceremonial occasions: Full academic costume as prescribed above. Doctors wear scarlet gowns. The dress code should be appropriate for a formal occasion.

Academic occasions: Costume and dress as prescribed for full ceremonial occasions (see above), except that Doctors wear black gowns.

Other occasions: Black gowns are worn without hoods or caps.

Messrs T Birch and Co, Ltd, Grahamstown, have been appointed the University's preferred service provider for academic dress, and have undertaken to keep adequate stocks and sell them at reasonable prices.

AWARD OF COLOURS

Half Colours, Colours and Honours (undergraduate only):

A student must be awarded a degree in the minimum stipulated period of time (N years) with no transfer credits from any Institution or qualification.

Half Colours:

The candidate must obtain at least 60 credits as firsts (1sts) and 60 credits at upper seconds (2A) in the final year and firsts (1sts) in half of the remaining NQF credits.

Colours:

The candidate must obtain 120 NQF credits in firsts (1sts) in the final year (3rd or 4th depending on the degree) and firsts (1sts) in half of the remaining NQF credits.

Honours:

The candidate must obtain firsts (1sts) for every course in the qualification.

Half-Colours Colours and Honours**(postgraduate only):**

To be awarded Colours, the qualification must be awarded with distinction or awarded with 120 NQF credits in the year with first class passes.

FINANCIAL AID

Undergraduate Financial Aid packages, consisting of loans, merit awards, bursaries and rebates, may be offered to financially needy and academically deserving South African Citizens. The criteria for eligibility and value of the financial aid offered are determined annually by the Financial Aid Committee.

For further information please consult our website <http://www.ru.ac.za/registrar/financialaidoffice>

Postgraduate Financial Aid consists of scholarships, bursaries and loans. Rhodes University has several scholarship programmes that attract excellent students and researchers to further their studies at postgraduate level. Further funding for postgraduate study is made available through NRF, WRC, MRC and other funding bodies by way of individual bursaries or project linked bursaries.

For further information please consult our website <http://www.ru.ac.za/research/postgraduates/funding>.

CONVOCATION

Convocation is a statutory body which meets at least once a year to discuss any matters affecting the University, and to convey its resolutions to the University Council and the Senate. All graduates of Rhodes University, the Vice-Chancellor, the Deputy Vice-Chancellors, academic staff, the Registrar, the University Librarian, the Director of Student Affairs; and those former professors and associate professors elected by the senate and council to be emeritus professors or emeritus associate professors,

are members of Convocation. The Registrar is secretary ex officio. All members are entitled to vote for office-bearers.

President: Professor Emeritus PT Mtuzze

Secretary: Dr AL Moody

THE OLD RHODIAN UNION

The Old Rhodian Union was founded in 1911 by Professor Cullen Bowles and Sir George Cory to form a link between past and present students and staff of Rhodes University. All past students who have attended Rhodes University for at least a year, all members of Convocation, past and present Chancellors and Vice-Chancellors, Council members and all members of staff, past and present are automatically members of the Old Rhodian Union. There is no subscription for membership.

The Old Rhodian Union annual general meeting is held at the University as close as possible to every Founders' Day, together with the annual meeting of Convocation.

Old Rhodian reunions are held in all centres where there are branches of the Union. Besides Grahamstown, these include Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Johannesburg, Kimberley, Pietermaritzburg, Port Elizabeth and Pretoria. There are also branches in Bulawayo, Harare, Windhoek, the United Kingdom, United States of America and Australia.

The Old Rhodian Union administers a bursary fund from which it awards a number of bursaries, annually to children and grandchildren of Old Rhodians.

President: Professor RB Walker

Hon Secretary: Ms S Twedde

Hon Treasurer: Mr J Gillam

THE SPORTS COUNCIL AND SPORTS FACILITIES

The Rhodes University Sports Council was established in 1905. The Council promotes sport and physical recreation, and provides and maintains sports facilities and equipment on campus. The Head of Sports Administration and staff are responsible for the day-to-day administration of University sport and sports clubs, and for carrying out the policies of the Sports Council.

The use of sports facilities is restricted to all bona fide students of Rhodes University, Club members, members of Council and full-time members of staff, who are honorary members of the Sports Council. Non Rhodes affiliated people/groups can only use these facilities by prior arrangement with Sports Administration and may be liable for a charge applicable to each facility.

Facility cards may be purchased from the Sports Administration office by the following persons:

- (a) wives/husbands of members of staff and their dependants of 16 years and over;
- (b) Old Rhodians, their wives/husbands and their dependants of 16 years and over;
- (c) students' wives/husbands and their dependants of 16 years and over.

Swimming pool cards may also be purchased from the Sports Administration by the above persons as well as their children of under 16 years.

Whilst all bona fide students, Council members and staff have free access to facilities, official club practices, matches and competitions take priority in the use of all facilities.

Sports facilities

Swimming pool

1 Rugby field (Floodlit)

2 Cricket fields

1 100m Archery Range (Floodlit)

1 Beach Volleyball court (Floodlit)

4 Netball courts (Floodlit)

1 Outdoor Basketball court

3 Soccer fields (Floodlit)

9 Squash courts

1 Rowing tank

1 Athletics track (Floodlit)

8 Tennis courts (Floodlit)

Rifle range

Martial Arts dojo

Health Suite:

- weights facility

- aerobics studio

- spinning studio

Climbing wall

Basketball, Volleyball hall (Alec Mullins Hall)

Rowing; Sailing & Canoe clubhouse at Settlers Dam

1 Hockey field (Floodlit) - artificial surface

Dance Sport, and Karate Hall (The Hangar)

Sports activities

Archery; Athletics (Road Running, Track and Field, Triathlon); Basketball; Canoe; Chess; Cricket; Dance Sport; First Aid; Fly fishing; Golf; Hockey; Health Suite (Gym, Aerobics, Indoor Cycling) Karate; Mixed Martial Arts; Mountain Climbing; Netball, Pool; Rifle; Rowing; Sailing; Rugby; Soccer; Squash; Surfing; Tennis; Taekwon-do; Underwater (SCUBA & Underwater Hockey); Volleyball

Sports Scholarships

One bursary is awarded annually to a prospective student who has above average potential from the Sutherland / Old Rhodian Bursary Fund. The holders must meet the normal entrance requirements of the University. This bursary is tenable for the first year of study only.

Merit sport awards (Colours) are also made each year to those students who have achieved exceptional standards within their codes of sport (provincial / national colours). In addition an award is also made annually to a meritorious rugby player (Ali Weakley Fund).

THE STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Students' Representative Council, elected by the student body, represents the students of Rhodes University both on campus and off campus. The SRC negotiates with the University authorities on behalf of students and administers funds allocated by the Council for student activities.

All student clubs and societies, except sports clubs, are financed by the SRC, which makes grants to student societies, to its various committees, to the publications under its control, and for student social functions.

The SRC assists in the organisation of Orientation Week.

Externally the SRC maintains contact with other educational institutions and arranges seminars and speakers on issues of general interest to students.

In terms of the Student Disciplinary Code, the SRC may take disciplinary action against students who break University rules. All disciplinary action is reported to the Vice-Chancellor, who deals with more serious offences.

THE STUDENT SERVICES COUNCIL (SSC)

In accordance with tertiary education legislation, a Student Services Council has been established. In compliance with this legislation, the SSC has equal university staff and student representation. Being a subcommittee of Senate, the SSC makes recommendations directly to Senate, and thereby to Council.

The SSC has been given the task of examining every aspect of student life with the goal of integrating every student of the University into campus life as quickly as possible, so that each student may become academically productive in the shortest possible time. This will be achieved by ensuring that students from different backgrounds feel socially and culturally at ease in all aspects of campus life.

Students are encouraged to approach the Director of Student Affairs, or indeed any member of the SSC, with recommendations, complaints, etc about any aspect of student life on the Rhodes campuses.

RHODES UNIVERSITY TIMETABLE, 2019

The university lecture and practical timetable, and the distribution of lectures to lecture venues can be found on the website, at <https://scifac.ru.ac.za/timetable>

As last minute adjustments are often made to the timetable after registration has allowed planners to assess the sizes of classes, readers are urged to consult this definitive website regularly. The website also supplies an easy-to-use system that students and others may use to determine whether their favoured combinations of courses can possibly fit into the constraints of the timetable without clashes.

Lectures (of 45 minutes duration) are held from Mondays to Fridays at the following times:

Period 1:	07:45 to 08:30
Period 2:	08:40 to 09:25
Period 3:	09:35 to 10:20
Period 4:	10:30 to 11:15
Period 5:	11:25 to 12:10
Period 6:	12:20 to 13:05
Period 7:	14:15 to 15:00
Period 8:	15:10 to 15:55
Period 9:	16:05 to 16:50
Period 10:	17:00 to 17:45

In Science, Pharmacy and Commerce the afternoons are often used for practical classes that normally run over two or three hours, from 14:00.

Tests and tutorials are scheduled during the day and occasionally in the evening (for very large classes) at a selection of times to suit the structure of each course. These are not shown on the lecture timetable. Some subjects appear to have no timetabled classes

- times for these are arranged by the Department. Others, marked ***, have timetables that may have to be adjusted after registration is completed (these relate to very small classes).

Lectures for several subjects, notably Accounting 1, Computer Science 112, Economics 1, 2 and 3, Information Systems 201, Management 1, Psychology 1, Sociology 1, Statistics 1D and Theory of Finance are offered in alternative slots, as the classes are too large to be accommodated in any of the existing lecture rooms at one time. At the beginning of the year a computer system is run to allocate all registered undergraduates to each of their lectures, practicals and tutorials in a way that optimizes the use of facilities, and students are expected to comply with this allocation.

The lecture timetable is kept as stable as possible from year to year. However, it is the responsibility of students to ensure that their planned and proposed curricula do not contain any clashes, not only for the current year of study, but also for the years ahead. Attention is drawn to General Rule G6.2 of the Calendar. Each year some students complain when they discover that the timetable will not suit them, claim that they “have not been told”, and ask that the timetable be modified to accommodate their lack of forward planning. Such requests cannot be met.

Once it has been drawn up for each semester, the examination timetable is published on the website. Links to this appear at <https://scifac.ru.ac.za/examtime.htm>

FEES FOR 2019

Web address

<http://www.ru.ac.za/studentfeesandfinancialaid/>

There are two basic fees (tuition and residence) and some additional lesser fees (e.g. for handouts or special examination costs).

1. Tuition fees for undergraduate degrees range from R33,162 to R59,052

(refer section (B) for the exact fee for your selected degree)

2. Residence fees range from R60,200 to R63,203 for undergraduate residences and R71 338 for postgraduate residence..

(refer section (E))

PAYMENT OPTIONS

The payment options that are available follow but please note carefully the payment due dates if you wish to be accommodated in residence. Registration will not be permitted if none of the options below have been taken up.

The Initial Fee is required upfront and cannot be paid by payment arrangement unless you opt for a Debit Order.

SOUTH AFRICAN STUDENTS

(excluding NSFAS and missing middle)

Option 1

Pay an Initial Fee Payment (roughly 10% of tuition fees and where applicable 25% of residence fees), by **18 January 2019**;

The Initial Fee Payment:

Tuition only: R5,100. Or

Tuition and Residence: R5,100 + R15,800 = R20,900.

The balance of fees to be paid as set out below;

	<i>Tuition</i>	<i>Residence</i>	
Initial Fee Payment Due Date	18 Jan 2019		
	10%	25%	Paid
A further 25% of fee amount by	31 Mar 2019		
	35%	50%	Paid
A further 25% of fee amount by	30 Jun 2019		
	60%	75%	Paid
A further 25% of fee amount by	30 Sep 2019		
	85%	100%	Paid
Any balance still outstanding	30 Nov 2019		
	100%		Paid

Extras to be paid monthly per student fee statements.

Option 2

Make a direct deposit or internet transfer of the full tuition fee and, if applicable the full tuition and residence fee, prior to 18 January 2019. A 5% discount may be claimed in writing if you opt for this option. The discount cannot be applied to tuition or Residence fee separately they are considered the full fee when taken together.

Option 3

Arrange payment of the full fees by debit order with 11 monthly instalments from 1 February to 1 December. The debit order application form, obtainable from the Student Bureau, the Student Fees Office or on the Rhodes website under Studying, Fees and Financial Aid, must be completed and signed by the person whose bank account is to be debited and returned, together with all other documentation, to the Student Fees Office by 11 January 2019. This may be done via email: debitorders@ru.ac.za or fax: 046 603 7019. Incomplete applications will not be considered and the facility must be approved prior to 18 January 2019.

NSFAS STUDENTS

This applies to all students who have been granted NSFAS funding

Option 1

NSFAS students are not required to pay an Initial Fee Payment, however they must send an email to registrar@ru.ac.za by 18 January 2019 stating that they wish to be in residence in 2019. If no such confirmation is received the residence allocation will fall away. However please note that those with an own contribution will need to settle as set out below:

Initial Fee Payment by 18 Jan 2019

0% Paid

35% of own contribution amount by 31 Mar 2019

35% Paid

60% of own contribution amount by 30 Jun 2019

60% Paid

85% of own contribution amount by 30 Sep 2019

85% Paid

The outstanding balance by 30 Nov 2019

100% Paid

Extras to be paid monthly per student fee statements.

Option 2

Make a direct deposit or internet transfer of the full own contribution prior to 18 January 2019. A 5% discount may be claimed in writing if fees are paid in full before due date of the 18 January 2019.

Option 3

Arrange payment of the full own contribution by debit order with 11 monthly instalments from 1 February to 1 December. The debit order application form, obtainable from the Student Bureau, the Student Fees Office or on the Rhodes website under Studying, Fees and Financial Aid, must be completed and signed by the person whose bank account is to be debited and returned, together with all other documentation, to the Student Fees Office by 11 January 2019. This may be done via email: debitorders@ru.ac.za or fax : 046 603 7019. Incomplete applications will not be considered and the facility must be approved prior to 18 January 2019.

FOR INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS

Option 1

New and returning international students will be required to pay 50% of their tuition and residence fees for the year, by 18 January 2019.

The balance of fees to be paid by the 31 May 2019. Extra's to be paid on receipt of student fee statements.

International Students Initial Fee Payment:

Tuition only	R24,750
or	
Tuition and residence	R56,350

Option 2

Make a direct deposit or internet transfer of the full tuition fee and, if applicable the full residence fee, prior to 18 January 2019. A 5% discount may be claimed in writing if you opt for this option.

Surcharge for International students (compulsory additional charge for all International students)

Undergraduates	Postgraduates
From SADC countries	
R9,950	R6,750

From Africa (excl. SADC)

R12,700	R8,400
---------	--------

Elsewhere

R14,370	R9,950
---------	--------

NOTE: Master/Visa credit card facilities are available for all payments but **no discounts may be claimed if this method of payment is used.**

IMPORTANT INFORMATION FOR ALL STUDENTS

Due dates

If you do not take up one of the options mentioned above by the payment due date you will be regarded as a "no show" for residence purposes and your room will be allocated to a student on the waiting list. You will thus lose your place in residence and the University will have little chance of assisting you other than to suggest that you move into digs. If you have problems please contact us before 18 January 2019 as we will do whatever we can to assist you in retaining your place in residence but after that date there is little we can do.

NOTES FOR ALL STUDENTS

1. Banking details

Rhodes University Student Fees Account, First National Bank, Grahamstown branch:

Account number 62145504553 Branch code 210717
Please note: the deposit slip **MUST** show a reference number and this **MUST** be the student number.

2. Penalty charge

Dishonoured cheques and/or debit orders will attract a fee of R195 per transaction.

3. Cash Deposit Limits

Students are discouraged from making large cash deposits at the University Cashier. Cash deposits exceeding R5,000 must be made at the First National Bank, Grahamstown (branch code 21 07 17), account number 6214 550 4553. Please ensure that the student number (which is the only reference number to be used) is clearly visible as beneficiary reference on the deposit slip, which must be submitted to the Student Fees office, or faxed to (046) 603 7019/ Email: studentfees@ru.ac.za.

4. Holders of recognised bursaries or scholarships including Rhodes University scholarships and merit awards

may offset their bursary/scholarship against the liability for the Initial Fee Payment required prior to registration, but you must inform the University that you are doing so before 18 January 2019.

5. Fee remissions, concessions and special arrangements (full-time students only)

Where a parent has more than one child attending the University at the same time, as full-time students, an application may be made to the Director of Finance in the year in which it applies for a remission of 30% of the normal tuition fees for each child after the first. The Council may also make any concession or special arrangement regarding the amount of fees paid by a student, or the payment of fees, at its discretion.

6. Academic Merit Award Scheme (SA students only)

Special merit awards are automatically made by the University to eligible students enrolling for the first time for an undergraduate degree. The awards, ranging from R32 900 to Full tuition fee, are based on the final National Senior Certificate examination results. The awards do not cover the DHET Fee Adjustment Grant so the grant should be applied for, if applicable. Should the student withdraw from Rhodes University during the academic year, the merit award will be reduced on a pro rata basis. In order to qualify for one of these awards a student would have to obtain at least 47 admission points in the National Senior Certificate examination. Please note that International Students are not eligible for merit awards.

7. Holders of recognised scholarships/ bursaries/ loans

Fees due to the University are a first charge on any scholarship, bursary or loan granted by the University, or paid to the University from other sources, for a student. If the total amount paid exceeds the fees payable, the student may draw the balance on condition that the Bursar has given written permission.

Please note that it is the responsibility of the student to ensure that bursary donors make payments timeously and in accordance with the University

regulations. Students who hold full bursaries are reminded that they will require funds on arrival at the University for the purchasing of books etc., as it is not University policy to make loans or advances against bursaries prior to the funds being received.

8. Oppidan fee

(for clarity please refer <http://www.ru.ac.za/oppidan/faq/>)

Note that there is a compulsory Oppidan fee of R300.00.

9. Caution

Please ensure that payments made to the University are done only by Direct Deposits or Internet Transfers to the University bank account. Payments made by way of cheques made payable to “Rhodes University” marked “Not transferable” will attract a clearance charge of R195 and are strongly discouraged. No responsibility is accepted for bank notes or other forms of remittances missing from letters addressed to the University or to members of the University using its address.

10. External Loans

Please note it is the responsibility of students negotiating loans with financial or other institutions to ensure that all payments are made to the University by the dates specified above.

The Initial Fee Payment may NOT be reduced by virtue of a student having negotiated a loan with a financial or other institution.

Monies once paid into a student account will not be refunded unless all fees have been paid and a credit balance is reflected on the account irrespective of any bursaries held or meal refunds due to the student.

11. Penalties for non-compliance

The University will not issue certificates of any description to students whose fees are in arrears.

12. Unpaid accounts

Unpaid accounts where no prior agreed arrangement has been made and met are subject to an interest charge at the rate of 0.75% per month on amounts in arrears.

13. Payments made to students

Account refunds or payments to students will be made via Electronic Fund Transfer (EFT). Credit

balance refunds will only be made upon receipt of a written application from the person/organisation responsible for paying the account, supported by a certified copy of the bank account details into which the funds are to be deposited.

14. Notice of withdrawal – deregistration from Rhodes as well as withdrawing from residence

All students, both postgraduate and undergraduate, or their parents or guardians must give notice of intention to discontinue attendance, in writing, to the Registrar. A separate letter requesting a refund of any monies due must be sent to the Director of Finance.

- Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason leaves during the year is liable for a pro-rata fee up to the date of cancellation for tuition and or residence fees, the basis of calculation will be on 248 days for the year.
- Any student who withdraws their application for tuition or residence, before registration will be liable for a cancellation fee of 10% if less than one month's notice is given or 2.5% if longer.
- In the case of an early withdrawal from Residence, for any reason, other than immediate family bereavement, medical illness or academic exclusion, a cancellation fee of two months Residence Fee will be levied over and above the fee calculation for the period of residence accommodation. A penalty will not be charged if a provisional residence booking is cancelled prior to the Initial Fee (IF) deadline of 18 January 2019.

In terms of Section 17 of the CPA it states;

“(3) a service provider may charge a reasonable fee for cancellation.

(4) regard must be had to the nature of the service, the length of notice to cancellation, the reasonable potential to find an alternative consumer (in our case this would be a student) and the general practice of the relevant industry (in our case, other universities)”

TUITION FEES

Block fees

The regulations of the various faculties prescribe the number of courses full-time students are normally expected to take in each year of their curriculum. Unless otherwise stated, the annual block fees

include tuition fees for classes and laboratories, fees for ordinary University examinations and library fees for the normal number of courses. Full-time students taking fewer than the normal number of courses in any given year, will still be liable for the full block fee.

OTHER FEE CONSIDERATIONS

Additional courses

Subject to the regulations of the various Faculties, undergraduate students may take in any year one course more than the normal number prescribed for that year of their curriculum without extra charge. Full-time postgraduate students may take in any year one undergraduate course free of charge, provided that they have obtained the prior approval of their head of department and of the Dean of the Faculty, and provided also that a postgraduate student in Law may take first year courses in any one language subject in any year without extra charge. The undergraduate course becomes payable separately once deregistered from full-time course.

Single course fees

Students doing one course towards their degree must be registered as full-time, but will be charged the single course fee.

Departmental and additional charges

These are for course materials, handouts, field trips, printing vouchers, etc. and are additional charges to the student fee account. These charges vary as they depend on the courses taken and options chosen in each year of study.

Societies: Charges to student accounts

These refer to subscriptions to societies to be charged to student accounts. No further subscriptions will be charged after 31 March of each academic year.

Cost of meals:

Meals for Oppidans (Students who live off-campus)

Meal options available are breakfast, lunch and supper on weekdays and weekends. The costs vary:

Breakfast	R13.52
Lunch/Supper	R36.38 (each)

Meals for residence students:

Breakfast	R10.33
Lunch/Supper	R24.34 (each)

EXAMINATION FEES

Must be paid at the start of each semester for ordinary examinations written by students returning to write on extended DP certificates.

Students who fail to provide acceptable identification at examinations will be fined R300.00 per exam session.

(A) GENERAL FEES		
New students – SA and International		
		2019 Fees
Application fee: up to 30 September (SA and International applicants)		100
Tuition Acceptance Fee (non- refundable)		800
Residence Acceptance Fee (non-refundable)		1,000
Initial Fee Payments		see prior pages
Returning students – SA and International		
Initial Fee Payments		see prior pages
Master's Internship research: Psychology		3 316
PhD retrospective registration	per year	15 353
Late registration: not in attendance on prescribed date		1 478
Examination fees		
Special case examinations	per course	1 167
Misreading examination timetable		4 568
Supplementary examinations		
Per course or half course		1 167
Per subsidiary course (PGCE)		318
Extended DP examinations – per course		1 167
– per half course		724
Extended DP Initial Fee Payment		638
Initial Fee Payment: Special categories including upgrading NCP's		638
Re-scrutiny	see note 4	1 792
Copy of Script		196
Other Penalties/Levies		
Foreign Drafts Levy/ Dishonored Cheques/ Unpaid Debit Order		195
Failure to produce ID at examinations/Cell phone ringing at exams		285

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

(B) TUITION FEES PER ANNUM		
FULL-TIME BACHELORS DEGREES - see note 7		
BA (<i>Please note: students not registered for BJourn who take Journ 2, 3, or 4 courses will be charged the BJourn degree fee</i>)		45 690
BA Foundation Course: first two years	<i>per year</i>	33 162
BBusSc		
First three years	<i>per year</i>	49 988
Fourth year		40 040
BCom		49 988
BCom Foundation Course: first two years	<i>per year</i>	36 109
BEcon		49 988
BEd		45 631
BFineArt	<i>see also other fees</i>	45 690
BJourn (<i>Please note: the equipment levy for students studying Journalism 2, 3, 4 & Diploma has been included in the Journalism tuition fee</i>)		
First year		45 690
Second year (includes equipment levy)		53 611
Third year (includes equipment levy)		57 640
Fourth year (includes equipment levy)		59 052
BMus : all years of study (see also other fees)	<i>per year</i>	48 392
BPharm		
First year (includes handouts)		47 778
Second year (includes handouts)		51 831
Third year (includes handouts)		54 042
Fourth year (includes handouts)		57 113
BSc		47 532
BSc Foundation Course: first two years	<i>per year</i>	32 670
BSc (Information Systems)		49 988
BScD (Software Development)		49 988
BSocSc		45 690
BSocSc : Foundation Course	<i>per year</i>	33 162
LLB		51 253
FULL-TIME DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES		
PG Diploma in Business Analysis		45 000
PG Diploma in International Studies		35 619
PG Diploma in Enterprise Management		39 303
DipAcc (PG) (Preliminary) 1, 2, 3 or more courses HDAP		48 392
DipAcc (PG) HDAC		50 234

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

PG Diploma in Taxation		35 619
PG Diploma English Language Teaching		35 619
Diploma Fine Art		45 690
PGCE		37 250
PG Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies		57 640
PG Diploma in Media Management		52 199
PART-TIME DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS		
BEd In-service	<i>per year</i>	11 790
PG Diploma in Business Analysis	<i>75% 1st year 25% 2nd year</i>	45 000
PG Diploma in Enterprise Management	<i>per year</i>	39 303
PG Diploma English Lang Teaching	<i>per year</i>	21 494
PG Diploma in International Studies	<i>per year</i>	21 494
PG Diploma in Economics Journalism	<i>per year</i>	16 458
PGDHE	<i>per year</i>	18 055
PGCE	<i>per year</i>	18 423
SINGLE COURSE FEES		
Science (incl. Geography & Psychology)		18 178
Final course in major or principal subjects		22 845
Other (including Mathematics)		17 441
Half courses (Two half courses = cost of 1 full course: not 2 x60%)		
FULL-TIME HONOURS DEGREE - see note 1		
Science (includes Environmental Science), Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information Systems		
First year		42 128
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	17 564
Accounting		
First year		50 234
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	17 584
Journalism & Media Studies		
First year		48 305
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	17 564
Financial Management		
First year		35 619
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	17 564
Other		
First year		34 513
Additional year	<i>per year</i>	17 564

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

PART-TIME HONOURS DEGREE		
Science (includes Environmental Science), Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information Systems per year		26 161
Accounting	<i>per year</i>	33 162
BEd (Hons) First two years	<i>per year</i>	17 072
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	7 369
BEd (Hons) Namibia	<i>per year</i>	20 388
Journalism & Media Studies	<i>per year</i>	26 161
Other Honours degrees	<i>per year</i>	19 406
MASTER'S DEGREES - Tuition and Supervision –see note 2		
If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.		
All Faculties other than as specified below	<i>per year</i>	22 968
Bioinformatics	<i>per year</i>	30 460
Business Administration (MBA)		
MBA Full Time (Accelerated Program)		
Registered in 2018		29 784
Registered in 2019		117 936
MBA Part-time		
Registered in 2017 & prior		29 784
Registered in 2018		58 968
Registered in 2019		58 968
Education (incl. English Language Teaching in the depart. of English Language & Linguistics)		
Students Full Time:		
First two years	<i>per year</i>	15 721
Subsequent years	<i>per year</i>	21 986
Students Part Time:		
First three years	<i>per year</i>	11 914
Subsequent years	<i>per year</i>	17 809
Namibia	<i>per year</i>	25 670
Financial Markets (including cost of Financial Exchange exams)		
First year		47 776
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	19 406
Journalism and Media Studies		
Part Time – First two years	<i>per year</i>	11 545
Third year (thesis year)		7 984
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	15 230
Psychology – Clinical/Counseling		
First year		22 968

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

Second year		8 598
Third year		15 721
Psychology – By Thesis only		
Full Time	<i>per year</i>	15 721
Part Time	<i>per year</i>	8 106
TAXATION		
First three years	<i>per year</i>	27 266
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	33 653
SPECIAL MSc DEGREES		
MSc (Environmental Biotechnology)		
First year of registration		57 538
Additional years	<i>per year</i>	33 653
MSc (Expl/Econ part-time)		
Module	<i>per module</i>	7 984
Field courses	<i>per field trip</i>	15 353
Attendance of modules for non-degree purposes	<i>per week</i>	9 519
Students not in attendance	<i>per year of registration</i>	5 527
Thesis supervision and laboratory fees	<i>per year of registration</i>	7 984
Equipment Levy	<i>per annum</i>	307
MSc (Economic Geology – full time)		
Students completing degree in one year		15 967
Field courses	<i>per field trip</i>	15 353
Thesis supervision and laboratory fees	<i>per year of registration</i>	7 984
PhD CANDIDATES		
If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.		
Tuition, supervision and examination fees - see note 2		
All Faculties other than Education	<i>per year</i>	22 968
Education		
Students Full Time :		
First three years	<i>per year</i>	15 721
Subsequent years	<i>per year</i>	21 986
Students Part Time:		
First three years	<i>per year</i>	11 914
Subsequent years	<i>per year</i>	17 809
Namibia	<i>per year</i>	25 702

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

PHD in Psychotherapy		12 159
DOCTOR OF PHARMACY (Pharm D)		52 445
SENIOR DOCTORATES		
Examination fee. (No other fees are payable)		22 968
AD EUNDEM GRADUM CANDIDATES As for Master's degrees above		

			2019 Fees
16a Prince Alfred Street Adamson House Adamson House Doubles Adelaide Tambo House Amina Cachalia House Calata House Canterbury Annex Canterbury Annex Doubles Canterbury House Canterbury House Doubles Cullen Bowles House Ellen Kuzwayo Helen Joseph Annex Doubles Helen Joseph House	Joe Slovo House New House New House Annex 1 Dble New House Annex 4 New House Annex 4 Double Prince Alfred House	Rosa Parks House Salisbury House Salisbury House Doubles Sisulu House Stanley Kidd Doubles Stanley Kidd House Truro House Winchester House	60 200
Allan Gray House Allan Gray House Doubles Atherstone House Atherstone House Doubles Beit Flat Beit House Botha House Botha House Doubles Centenary House Chris Hani House College House College House Doubles Cory House De Beers House De Beers House Doubles Dingemans House Founders Annex Goldfields House Goldfields House Doubles Graham House	Guy Butler House Hobson House Hobson House Doubles Jameson House Jameson House Doubles John Kotze House LB Annex Doubles LB Annex Single Lilian Britten Doubles Lilian Britten House Livingstone House Margaret Smith House Matthews House 31 South Street Milner House Milner House Doubles Olive Schreiner House Olive Schreiner House Doubles	Oriel Annex Doubles Oriel Annexe Oriel House Oriel House Doubles PG Holding Residence Phelps House Piet Retief House	63 203

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

POST GRADUATE RESIDENCES (SPECIFIED)			
Gavin Reily Postgraduate Village (Self catering accommodation)			
Single room without air-conditioning			53 065
Single room with air-conditioning			56 695
Celeste, Oakdene, 5 Gilbert Str and 6 Gilbert Str, JK Annexe, Gilbert Str PG Units			71 338
Residence fees during vacations:			118
April recess: (inc. meals)	per day		118
Early arrivals or late departures: (inc. meals)	per day		56
MISCELLANEOUS FEES			162
Loss of room key			219
Failure to return room key : the end of 2nd and 4th terms			120
Loss of cupboard key			432
Additional length bed			118

RESIDENCE FEES – ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

a. Residence fees differ because some residences have better facilities and/or are desirably located.

b. Students' accommodation is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made in fees where students change residences. All residence fees are levied at the full rate for a single room in the appropriate residence at the beginning of the year. Where, for University convenience, students are permitted to share accommodation a 25% discount of the lodging fees may be claimed by the student for the period that the room was shared and per term. ***Application for the rebate must be made to the Administrative Assistant: Student Accommodation in the Residential Operations Division at the end of each term. Claims for rebate which have not been lodged by the end of the following term will be disallowed.*** For the purpose of discounts and adjustments the residence year is taken as 248 days (PG Residences 340 days). A student does not have the right to claim an allowance for sharing a room where single accommodation in the residence is available.

c. No charge is made for linen supplied or for laundry services. Students must provide their own towels and toilet soap.

d. No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason, other than where the prescribed course of study required such absence. (certificates to this effect must be obtained from the relevant academic Head of Department and submitted to the Residential Operations Division).

e. Unbooked meals will be refunded to students' fee accounts at the end of each semester. Refunds will be limited to a maximum of **R2,124** per semester for those in undergraduate residences and **R3010.00** per semester for those in postgraduate residences.

f. Accommodation for students in undergraduate residences is available for a specific fee during the April vacation periods. No vacation accommodation is offered during the mid-year recess or the December/January period.

g. Students who have withdrawn from residence must vacate their rooms within 24 hours of having given such notification to the University.

Residence fee remissions

Applications for residence fee remissions must be made to the Deputy Director: Residential Operations. Residence fee remissions will only be considered in cases of family emergencies (e.g.: immediate family bereavement, illness of student, etc.).

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

(D) MISCELLANEOUS FEES		
Exemptions: Per course		651
Per half course		356
Certificates see note 6		
Certified statements of course on application: Pre-1982		404
Replacement degree or diploma certificate		687
Amended degree parchment		687
Supporting transcript documentation- Fee on application to Academic Administration		
Student identity and meal cards		198
Dallas Chip		104
Printing vouchers (optional)	<i>see note 3</i>	
Photocopying vouchers (optional)	<i>see note 3</i>	
Off-campus Student Network access	<i>see note 9</i>	380
IT consumables such as USB flash sticks and external harddrives	<i>see note 8</i>	
Financial Mail Subscription (for Economics Students)	<i>per year</i>	To be advised
Visiting Research Students	<i>per year</i>	2 162
	<i>per semester</i>	1 093
	<i>per term</i>	564
NON DEGREE, DIPLOMA OR CERTIFICATE COURSES.		
Additional music instruction		
Registered music students taking instruction beyond that required by regulation		7 725
All students not registered: music degree/diploma		10 489
Occasional students	<i>per course</i>	<i>as for single course fees</i>
Continuing education and casual students per course		4 494

(E) DEPARTMENTAL CHARGE ESTIMATES FOR 2019		
NOTE: These charges are provisional only and may be revised during the year. However, charges for handouts (as determined) are compulsory		
ACCOUNTING		
Accounting 101, 102 & 112	<i>per semester</i>	32
Accounting 2		105
Accounting 3		153
Auditing 3		142
Introduction to Professional Accounting (1 Semester)	<i>per semester</i>	68
Introduction to Taxation (1 Semester)	<i>per semester</i>	247
Principles of Professional Accountancy		316
Management Accounting and Finance 3		184

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

Taxation 3		269
Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy		1,580
Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation		737
Acc Honours (Financial Accounting)		1,580
AFRICAN LANGUAGES		
isiXhosa I (MT & NMT)		369
isiXhosa II and III (MT & NMT)	each	369
Honours & Field Trips		369
Honours (Joint)		190
Masters		137
AFRIKAANS & NEDERLANDS STUDIES		
Afrikaans I & Nederlands I		232
Afrikaans & Nederlands II and III	each	284
Afrikaans & Nederlands Honours		221
Afrikaans & Nederlands Honours (Joint)		200
Modern Fiction		253
ANTHROPOLOGY		
Anthropology I & II – hand outs	each	284
Anthropology III – Fieldtrips and hand outs	each	284
Anthropology Honours - Fieldtrips and hand outs		284
BIOCHEMISTRY		
Biochemistry 2 Course Material	each	116
Biochemistry 3 Course Material		126
Biochemistry 2 and 3 Locker Fee	each	463
Biochemistry 3 Field Trip		116
Biochemistry Honours: Course material		116
BIOTECHNOLOGY		
Biotechnology Honours: Course materials		190

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

BOTANY		
Botany 102 (BOT102)	<i>second semester only</i>	137
Botany 1 field trip	<i>second semester only</i>	737
Botany 201, 202, 301 and 302	<i>each per semester</i>	137
Botany 2 pracs and field trip	<i>per semester</i>	853
Botany 3 pracs and field trip	<i>per annum</i>	853
Botany Honours (includes a field trip)	<i>per annum</i>	1,706
CHEMISTRY		
Chemistry 101,102	<i>each per semester</i>	337
Chemistry 201,301,202,302		358
CHERTL		
PhD		674
PGDHE		570
CHINESE STUDIES		
Chinese 1 and 2 and 3	<i>per annum</i>	695
Chinese for Specific Purposes (course materials, textbooks)	<i>per annum</i>	358
Chinese Studies Honours	<i>per annum</i>	242
CLASSICS		
Classics 101 and 102	<i>per annum</i>	347
Classics 201 and 202	<i>per annum</i>	284
Classics 301 and 302	<i>per annum</i>	284
Classics Honours	<i>per annum</i>	200
Classics Honours(Greek/Latin)	<i>per annum</i>	200
Classics Honours (Joint)	<i>per annum</i>	116
Classics Masters	<i>per annum</i>	116
Greek 101 and 102	<i>per annum</i>	95
Greek 2	<i>per annum</i>	158
Greek 3	<i>per annum</i>	211
Latin 101	<i>per annum</i>	158
Latin 102	<i>per annum</i>	84
Latin 2	<i>per annum</i>	158
Latin 3	<i>per annum</i>	211

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

COMPUTER SCIENCE		
Introduction to ICT	<i>each</i>	53
Computer Science 101	<i>each</i>	190
Computer Science 102	<i>each</i>	84
Computer Science 112	<i>each</i>	53
Computer Science 201	<i>per semester</i>	369
Computer Science 202	<i>per semester</i>	147
Computer Science 301	<i>per semester</i>	168
Computer Science 302	<i>per semester</i>	84
Computer Science Honours		263
Computer Science Coursework Masters	<i>per year</i>	5 265
Computer Science Thesis Masters	<i>per year</i>	1 053
Levy: Computer usage		
Introduction to ICT	<i>per semester</i>	221
Computer Science 112	<i>per semester</i>	221
First year (Main stream)	<i>per semester</i>	279
Second year	<i>per semester</i>	380
Third year	<i>per semester</i>	505
Honours (100% and 60%)	<i>per annum</i>	1 121
DRAMA		
All courses:		
Course Material	<i>each</i>	101
Theatre instruction and equipment	<i>each</i>	933
ECONOMICS & ECONOMIC HISTORY		
Economics 101 and 102	<i>each per semester</i>	147
Economics 201 and 202	<i>each per semester</i>	84
Economics 312,313,314,315,316,317,318	<i>each per semester</i>	47
Economics Honours full	<i>per annum</i>	600
Economics Honours Joint	<i>per annum</i>	400
Economics 4 (BBS)	<i>per annum</i>	600
Economics (BBS) Joint	<i>per annum</i>	400
Masters in Financial Markets: Coursework	<i>per annum</i>	358
Masters in Financial Markets : Thesis	<i>per annum</i>	168
Masters by research thesis	<i>per annum</i>	168

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

EDUCATION (incl. Printed materials, Dalro royalties, field trips and printing costs for electronic submitted material)		
PGCE (FP/IP)		1 600
PGCE (SP/FET)		1 600
BEd (FP) 1st year		1 800
BEd (FP) 2nd year		1 500
BEd (FP) 3rd year		1 500
BEd (FP) 4th year		1 500
BEd (IP)	<i>per year x 2 years</i>	1 500
BEd (ICT, LO, Science)		1 000
MEd (full supported Thesis or Coursework)	<i>Full amount Year 1, ½ amount additional years</i>	1 425
MEd (full supported Thesis or Coursework) – Additional years	<i>each</i>	712
MEd (Namibia)	<i>Year 1</i>	1,920
MEd (Namibia)	<i>Year 2</i>	1 100
Full Thesis (Other)	<i>Full amount Year 1, ½ amount additional years</i>	1 000
Full Thesis (Other) – Additional years	<i>each</i>	500
BEd (Hons) Namibia		1,780
BEd (Hons) Ght Foundation Course		1,950
BEd (Hons) Ght elective courses	<i>for 2015 only</i>	1 080
PhD		700
PhD (Namibia)		1 920
ENGLISH (incl. supplementary readings, study guides etc and Dalro fees where applicable)		
English I	<i>per annum</i>	300
English II and III	<i>each per annum</i>	216
English Honours	<i>per annum</i>	375
Karoo Trip - Honours	<i>per annum</i>	1 410
ENGLISH LANGUAGE & LINGUISTICS		
English Language & Linguistics 1	<i>per annum</i>	432
English Language & Linguistics 2	<i>per annum</i>	337
English Language & Linguistics 3	<i>per annum</i>	337
Applied English Studies 2	<i>per annum</i>	143
Applied English Studies 3	<i>per annum</i>	179
English Language Teaching Honours (P-T)	<i>per annum</i>	74

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

English Language and Linguistics Honours (Jnt)	<i>per annum</i>	74
English Language and Linguistics Masters	<i>per annum</i>	116
Linguistics and English Masters	<i>per annum</i>	116
Linguistics & Applied Language Studies Honours	<i>per annum</i>	116
Postgraduate Diploma in ELT	<i>per annum</i>	116
Coursework Masters	<i>per annum</i>	116
Professional Communications	<i>per annum</i>	190
ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE		
Environment Science 201 and 202	<i>each</i>	190
Environment Science 2nd yr: Field Trips	<i>each</i>	579
Environment Science 301 and 302	<i>each</i>	190
Environment Science 3rd yr: Field Work/ Trip	<i>each</i>	579
Environmental Science Honours	<i>each</i>	400
Environmental Science Honours :Field Trip	<i>each</i>	2 633
Environmental Science Honours :EIA Course		1 706
EXTENDED STUDIES (FOUNDATION COURSES)		
Science (Handouts, Field trip & Lab expenses, computer skills)		569
Humanities (Handouts, Field trip & Lab expenses, computer skills)		347
Commerce (Handouts, Field trip & Lab expenses, computer skills)		347
FINE ART : Material Costs		
<i>Please NOTE that these are average costs, as costs vary from student to student</i>		
Fine Art Practice 1 and 2		3 686
Fine Art Practice 3	<i>varies</i>	3 685 – 6 844
Fine Art Practice 4	<i>varies</i>	3 685 – 8 950
Art History & Visual Culture 1- 4	<i>each</i>	105
FRENCH		
French 1P	<i>each</i>	369
French 1,2, 3	<i>each</i>	305
French Honours Joint		190
French Honours Full - time		369
GEOGRAPHY (includes course material and non-residential field trips)		
Earth Science 101	<i>1st semester</i>	126
Geography 102	<i>2nd semester</i>	105
Geography 201, 202	<i>each per semester</i>	158
Geography 301	<i>1st semester</i>	158
Geography 302	<i>2nd semester</i>	263

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

Geography Honours	<i>per module</i>	305
Geography Enviro Water Man Hons	<i>per module</i>	305
Geography Spatial Development Honours	<i>per module</i>	305
Full Time Masters and PhD		305
Field Courses : (this amount is an average – destination, transport and available accommodation dependent)		
Geography 201/202		621
Geography 301		527
Geography 302		621
Geography Honours	<i>per module where appropriate</i>	737
Geography Honours Students' Conference		906
Geography Honours Introductory Field Trip		853
GEOLOGY		
Earth Science 101	<i>per module</i>	126
Course Material:		
GLG 102	<i>per semester</i>	168
GLG 201, 202	<i>each per semester</i>	168
GLG 301, 302	<i>each per semester</i>	168
Geology Honours	<i>per annum</i>	411
Field Courses :		
GLG 102	<i>per annum</i>	305
GLG 2	<i>per annum</i>	1 253
GLG 3	<i>per annum</i>	1 358
Geology Honours	<i>per annum</i>	2 211
Equipment Levy:		
GLG 201,202	<i>each per semester</i>	28
GLG 301,302	<i>each per semester</i>	34
Geology Honours	<i>per annum</i>	337
Research MSc/PhD	<i>each per annum</i>	505
GERMAN		
German 1, 2 & 3 (Foreign Language)	<i>each</i>	295
German Honours		147
German Masters		126

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

HISTORY		
History 101, 102	<i>each</i>	95
History 201, 202	<i>each</i>	95
History 3	<i>per semester</i>	95
HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS		
HKE 1 & 2	<i>per annum</i>	242
HKE 3	<i>per annum</i>	316
Honours : manuals, handouts and field trips	<i>per annum</i>	653
ICHTHYOLOGY		
Ichthyology 2:		
Course Materials and Practical's	<i>per semester</i>	158
Field Trip	<i>per annum</i>	790
Ichthyology 3:		
Course Materials and Practical's	<i>per semester</i>	158
Field Trip	<i>per annum</i>	906
Ichthyology Honours		
Course Materials	<i>per annum</i>	442
Field Trips	<i>per annum</i>	5 917 – 8 424
INFORMATION SYSTEMS (includes handout and copyright charges)		
Information Systems 201	<i>per semester</i>	95
202	<i>per semester</i>	21
203	<i>per semester</i>	21
203 Textbook	<i>per semester</i>	527
301	<i>per semester</i>	105
302	<i>per semester</i>	74
Information Systems Honours : 100% and 60%	<i>per year</i>	126
Honours : 40%	<i>per year</i>	84
Startup week	<i>per year</i>	527
Information Systems Masters	<i>per year</i>	105
(A Dalro fee not in excess of R210.00 may be charged per course)		
Levy: Computer usage		
First year	<i>See Computer Science</i>	
Second year	<i>per semester</i>	337
Third year	<i>per semester</i>	505
Honours 100% and 60%	<i>per annum</i>	1 121

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

JOURNALISM & MEDIA STUDIES		
Handouts and Dalro :		
JMS 1		50
JMS 2		150
JMS 3		200
JMS 4		700
PGDip		100
Hons		450
MA (Year 1)		1,000
MA Production (Year 1)		500
MA Digital (Year 1)		500
PDMM:Course Materials, Readers & Handouts		3 000
EQUIPMENT LEVY		
JMS (1st Year of study)		253
JMS 2		2 058
JMS 3		4 116
JMS 4		4 762
PGDip		4 116
Honors		2 058
Masters (1st Year of study)		1 556
Consumables:		
JMS 1		100
JMS 2		50
JMS 3	<i>each</i>	530
JMS 4		570
PGDip		572
Honours	<i>each</i>	100
Masters		300
JMS 4 Studio Fees, Fieldtrips, Documentary Project, Prof Printing & Exhibition Expenses :		
Fieldtrips	<i>Per fieldtrip</i>	3 000
PhotoJournalism Studio Fees	<i>Per Student</i>	1 000
Exhibition expenses	<i>Per Student</i>	600
Television Documentary Project Expenses	<i>Per Student</i>	2 000
Design Professional Printing Expenses	<i>Per Student</i>	1 000

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

LAW		
<i>LLB Students only: This is a charge per degree and these students will not be charged for the individual law courses</i>		
LLB-N2		812
LLB-N3		1 148
LLB-N4		1 116
Introduction to Law		110
Foundations of Law		116
Legal Interpretation		25
Constitutional Law A		49
Constitutional Law B		25
Customary Law		61
Law of Contract A		25
Law of Persons		18
Law of Property A		13
Law of Contract B		18
Law of Life Partnerships		43
Law of Property B		18
COL 101		61
COL 102		13
COL 201 & COL 202		61
MANAGEMENT (includes handouts and DALRO royalties)		
Management 101, 102	<i>each per semester</i>	116
Management 211	<i>once off</i>	400
Management 212, 213 and 214	<i>each per term</i>	116
Management 311	<i>once off</i>	453
Management 312, 313 and 314	<i>each per term</i>	168
BBS 4 / Honours – Papers 1 - 6	<i>each per term</i>	790
BBS 4 / Honours – Paper 7	<i>once off</i>	1 759
Masters (by research thesis)	<i>once off</i>	2 043
MATHEMATICS (PURE & APPLIED)		
Mathematics 1C1,1C2,1S		84
Mathematics 1L	<i>per annum</i>	168
Mathematics & Applied Mathematics MAM 201	<i>first semester</i>	84
Mathematics & Applied Mathematics MAM 202	<i>second semester</i>	84
M313, M314, AM313, AM314	<i>first semester</i>	42
M311, M312, AM311, AM312	<i>second semester</i>	42

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

MICROBIOLOGY		
Microbiology 2 Course Material	<i>per annum</i>	116
Microbiology 3 Course Material	<i>per annum</i>	179
Microbiology 2 & 3 Locker fee		463
Microbiology 2 Field Trip		769
Microbiology 3 Field Trip		116
Microbiology Honours Course Material		116
MUSIC & MUSICOLOGY (includes course materials and use of equipment)		
History & Appreciation of Music	<i>per annum</i>	337
Music 1	<i>per annum</i>	400
MCH: 1 Jazz	<i>per annum</i>	400
Ethnomusicology 101	<i>1st semester only</i>	400
Ethnomusicology 102	<i>2nd semester only</i>	400
Instrumental Music Studies 1	<i>per annum</i>	569
Sound Technology	<i>per annum</i>	400
Instrumental Music Studies 2 & 3	<i>per annum</i>	569
Music 2 & 3	<i>per annum</i>	400
MCH: 2 Jazz	<i>per annum</i>	400
Ethnomusicology 2 & 3	<i>per annum</i>	569
Music 4	<i>per annum</i>	537
Music & Musicology Honours	<i>per annum</i>	569
Music & Musicology Honours Joint	<i>per annum</i>	569
Music Masters by Performance	<i>per annum</i>	537
Music Master's Thesis	<i>per annum</i>	537
Music, Health and the Brain	<i>2nd semester only</i>	537
PHILOSOPHY		
Introduction to Philosophy	<i>each</i>	158
Philosophy 2	<i>each</i>	400
Philosophy 3	<i>each</i>	1 000
Honours	<i>each</i>	1 590
Joint Honours	<i>per paper</i>	411
PHYSICS		
Physics 101, 102, 1E1 and 1E2	<i>each</i>	158
Physics 201 and 202	<i>each</i>	179
Physics 301 and 302	<i>each</i>	200
Physics Honours	<i>per annum</i>	379

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

POLITICAL & INTERNATIONAL STUDIES (incl. course material, handouts, DALRO and photocopying)		
Political and International Studies One	<i>annually</i>	342
Political and International Studies Two		137
Political and International Studies Three		168
Diploma	<i>per course</i>	126
Honours	<i>per course</i>	126
Joint Honours	<i>per course</i>	126
Masters	<i>per course</i>	126
PhD (Resident only)		895
PSYCHOLOGY		
Psychology 1		100
Psychology 2		263
Psychology 3		263
Organisational Psychology 2		263
Organisational Psychology 3		263
Psychology Honours		579
Clinical Psychology Professional fee		2 633
Clinical Psychology Resale		1 580
Masters in Research Psychology		158
Counseling Master's Resale Fee		1 580
Counseling Master's Professional Fee		2 633
PhD by Thesis		158
SOCIOLOGY		
Sociology 1 ,2 & 3		500
Industrial Sociology 2 & 3	<i>each</i>	500
Honours and Masters	<i>per course</i>	250
STATISTICS		
Theory of Finance , Statistics 1 D and Statistics 101	<i>each</i>	305
Statistics 102		74
Mathematical Statistics 201, 202	<i>each per semester</i>	74
Mathematical Statistics 301, 302	<i>each per semester</i>	158
Mathematical Statistics Honours /Masters		505
ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY		
Cell Biology Handouts	<i>1st semester</i>	137
Zoology 101 Handouts	<i>2nd semester</i>	105
Lab Class Materials: Zoo 101; Zoo 301	<i>Per semester</i>	263

FEES AND CHARGES FOR 2019

Zoology 101 E-Text Book	<i>2nd semester</i>	421
Zoology Handouts 200, 300	<i>each per semester</i>	158
Zoology 201 E-Text Book	<i>1st semester</i>	421
Entomology 201, 202, 301, 302	<i>each per semester</i>	158
Honours : African Vertebrate Biodiversity, Ento, Marine Biology&Zoo	<i>each</i>	91
Field Trips : All Honours		2 106
Field Trips: Zoology 201,202	<i>per semester</i>	305
Field Trips: Zoology 301, 302	<i>per semester</i>	674
Field Trips: Entomology 201, 301	<i>per semester</i>	611
Field Trips: Entomology 202	<i>per semester</i>	674
Field Trips: Entomology 302	<i>per semester</i>	305
Collecting kit & drawing paper : Entomology 200	<i>per annum</i>	474
Practical requirements : Entomology 300	<i>per annum</i>	116

ADDITIONAL NOTES

1. Candidates for Honours degrees may attend an introductory language course without extra charge.

2. (i) Registration and tuition fees must be paid even if candidates in a particular year make no call on their supervisor's time.

(ii) The minimum period of study for a Master's degree is two years after a Bachelors degree (if permitted) or one year after an Honours degree.

(iii) The minimum period of study for a PhD degree is three years after an Honours degree or two years after a Master's degree.

(iv) A pro-rata fee will be applied upon registration of Masters and PhD students

3. Laboratory credits to printing accounts and photocopying credits will be charged against student accounts on completion, by the student, of a voucher. The charges will be in multiples of R50 and R100. The cost of printing 1 A4 black and white page is 45c in 2019.

4. The fee is refundable if re-examination changes the classification of the result to the student's advantage.

5. Degree certificates are handed to candidates when they graduate, or posted as soon as possible after the graduation ceremony to those graduating in absentia. Other certificates are posted to candidates as soon as possible after the results are issued. A duplicate certificate is issued on production of an affidavit or the damaged original certificate. An amended degree parchment: issued as a result of student error or negligence in providing information such as the spelling of names, etc.

6. An invigilation fee per paper may also be payable.

7. Undergraduate students registering for the second semester will be charged 50% of the annual fee.

8. IT consumables such as USB flash sticks and external hard drives etc are available from the IT Shop. Please see <https://www.ru.ac.za/informationtechnology/itshop/> for pricing and more information.

9. Applies when connecting to the Student Network from one of the private flat complexes in town where such access is available. See <http://www.ru.ac.za/studnet> for details.